











## Description of symbols

-  Refers you to a section within a chapter which contains important information and safety notes  that should always be observed.
-  The arrow indicates that the section will continue on the next page.
-  The arrow indicates the end of a section.
-  The symbol indicates situations when the vehicle must be stopped as quickly as possible.
-  The symbol indicates a registered trademark. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any term.
-  → Symbols like this refer you to warnings within the same section or on a given page. They draw your attention to possible risks of accident or injury and let you know how these can be avoided.
-  →
-  →
-  → Cross-reference to information about possible damage to your vehicle within the same section or on a given page.

### DANGER

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which could lead to fatal or severe injuries if you do not observe the warning.

### WARNING

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which could lead to fatal or severe injuries if you do not observe the warning.

### CAUTION

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which could lead to slight or severe injuries if you do not observe the warning.

### NOTICE

Texts with this symbol indicate situations which could cause vehicle damage if you do not observe the warning.



Texts with this symbol contain additional information on the protection of the environment.



Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

## Thank you for choosing Volkswagen

By purchasing this Volkswagen, you have become the owner of a vehicle fitted with the most up-to-date technology and a multitude of convenience functions for your use and enjoyment.

**Before using your vehicle for the first time, please read and observe the information in this owner's manual. It will quickly help you to become familiar with your vehicle and all of its functions as well as making you aware of dangers to yourself and others and of how these dangers can be avoided.**

If you have any further questions about your vehicle, or you think that the vehicle wallet has not covered everything, please get in touch with your Volkswagen dealership. They will always be happy to deal with your questions, suggestions or problems.

We hope you get great driving pleasure from your vehicle. Happy motoring.

**Volkswagen AG**

# About this owner's manual

- This Owner's Manual is valid for all models and versions of the Passat saloon.
- An [alphabetical index](#) is included at the end of this manual.
- A [list of abbreviations](#) detailing abbreviations and terms can be found at the end of the manual.
- [Directions and positions](#) such as left, right, front and rear are normally relative to the vehicle's direction of travel, unless otherwise indicated.
- [Illustrations](#) help with orientation and should be regarded as a general guide.
- This Owner's Manual was written for left-hand drive vehicles.
- In [right-hand drive vehicles](#) the controls may sometimes be different to those displayed in illustrations or described in the text → [Overview of the driver side](#) .
- Any technical changes made to the vehicle after publication of this booklet are included in a [supplement](#) included with the vehicle wallet.

All equipment and models are described without indicating whether the equipment is optional or specific to the model type. This means that your vehicle may not have some of the equipment described, or it may only be available in certain markets. The scope of equipment fitted in your vehicle can be found in the sales documentation and you can contact your Volkswagen dealership for further information.

All data in this owner's manual correspond to the information available at the time of going to print. Because the vehicle is constantly being developed and further improved, there may be differences between your vehicle and the data in this owner's manual. No discrepancy in data, illustrations or descriptions shall become the basis for any legal claim.

Please make sure the complete vehicle wallet is always in the vehicle if you lend or sell the vehicle to someone else.

## Standard booklets in the vehicle wallet:

- Service schedule
- Owner's manual

## Additional booklets in the vehicle wallet (optional):

- Supplement
- Radio / navigation system
- Provision for mobile telephone
- *Other supplements*

# Overview of the vehicle

## Exterior views

### Side view

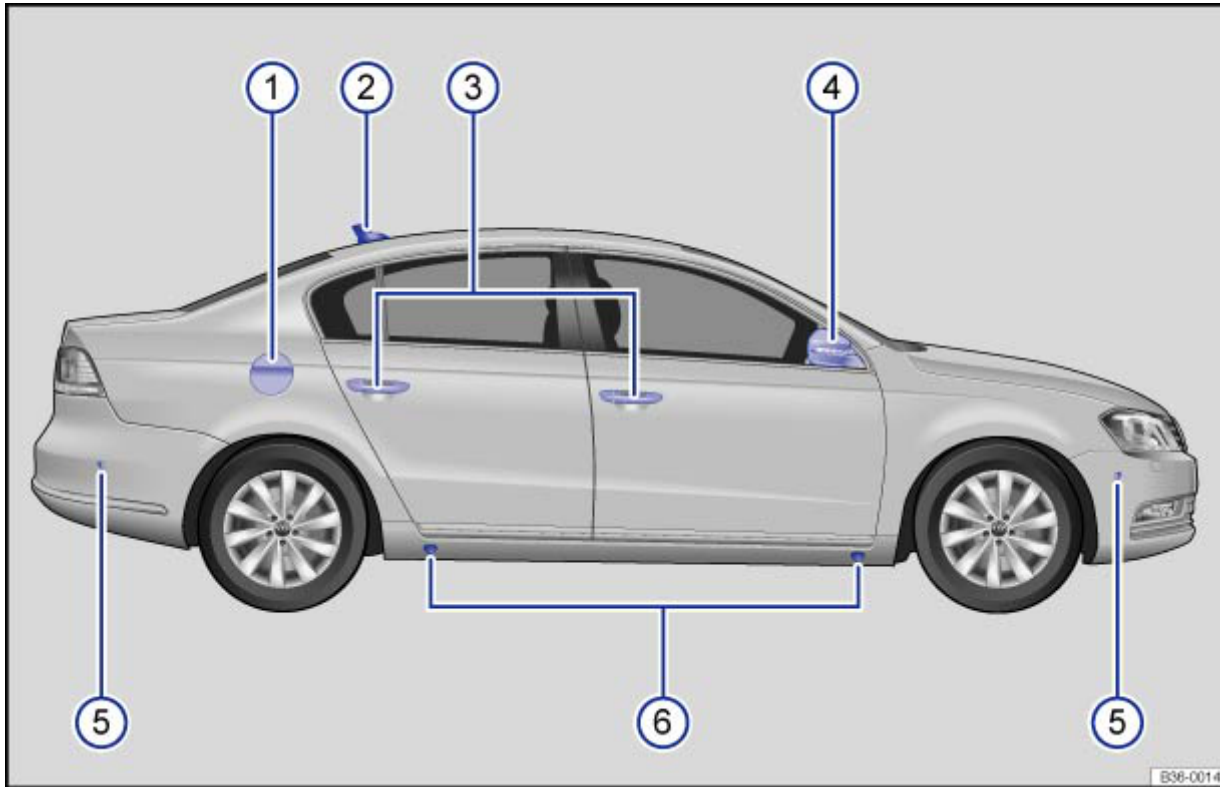


Fig. 1 Overview of the driver side

#### Key for → Fig. 1:

- 1 Tank flap → *Filling the tank*
- 2 Roof aerial → *Consumer information*
- 3 Exterior door release lever → *Doors*
- 4 Exterior mirrors → *Mirrors*
  - Display of lane change assist system (Side Assist) → *Lane change assist system (Side Assist)*
  - Additional turn signal light → *Lights*
  - Surround lighting → *Lights*
- 5 Sensor for the parking distance warning system → *Parking distance warning system* or Park Assist system → *Park Assist system*
- 6 The jacking points → *Changing a wheel*

### Front view

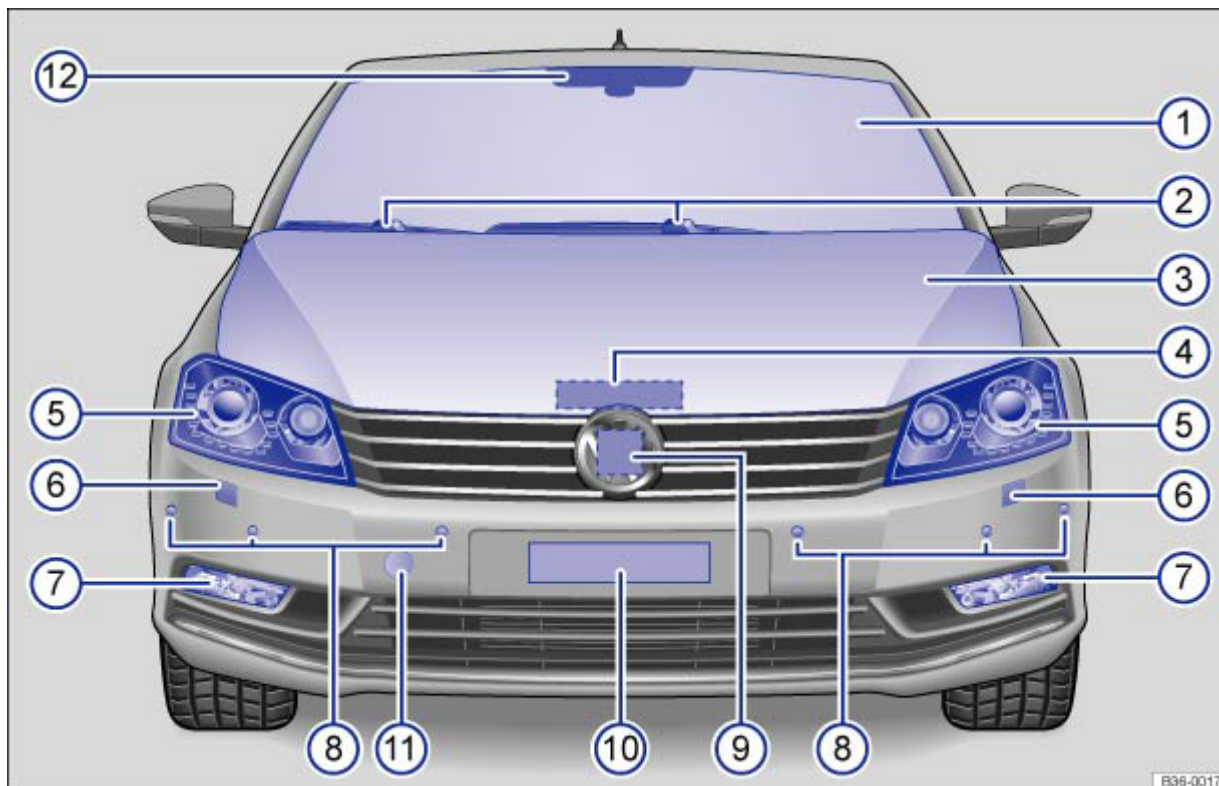


Fig. 2 Overview of the front of the vehicle

**Key for → Fig. 2:**

- ① Windscreen  
- Heated windscreen → *Heating, ventilating, cooling*
- ② Front windscreen wipers → *Windscreen wiper and washer*
- ③ Bonnet → *In the engine compartment*
- ④ Bonnet release lever → *Preparation for working in the engine compartment* , **LOW**
- ⑤ Headlights → *Lights* , → *Changing bulbs*
- ⑥ Headlight washer system → *Windscreen wiper and washer*
- ⑦ Fog lights or static bend lighting → *Lights* → *Changing bulbs*
- ⑧ Sensors for the front parking distance warning system → *Parking distance warning system* or Park Assist system → *Park Assist system*
- ⑨ Radar sensor behind the Volkswagen emblem → *ACC (adaptive cruise control)*
- ⑩ Front number plate holder
- ⑪ Mounting for the front towing eye behind a cover → *Tow starting and towing*
- ⑫ Sensor or camera window on the mirror base for:
  - Rain sensor → *Windscreen wiper and washer*
  - Main beam assist → *Lights*
  - Lane assist → *Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist)*

**Rear view**

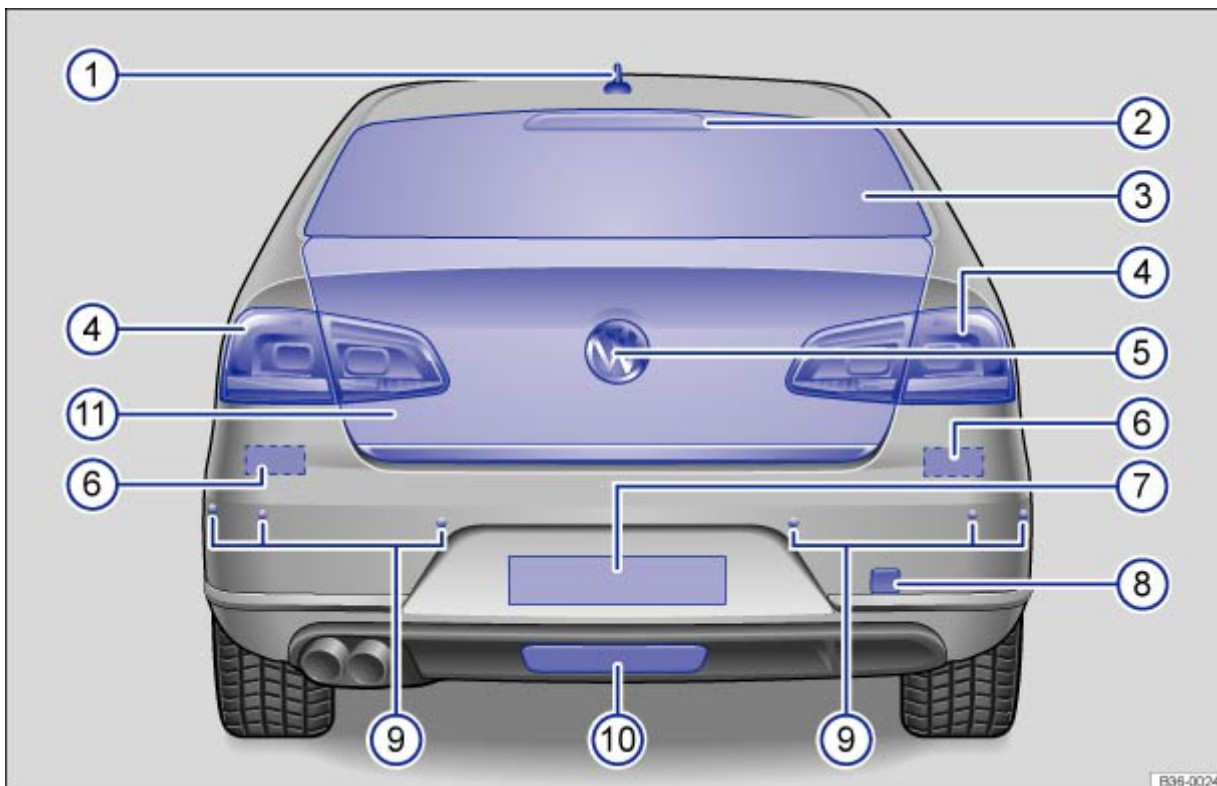


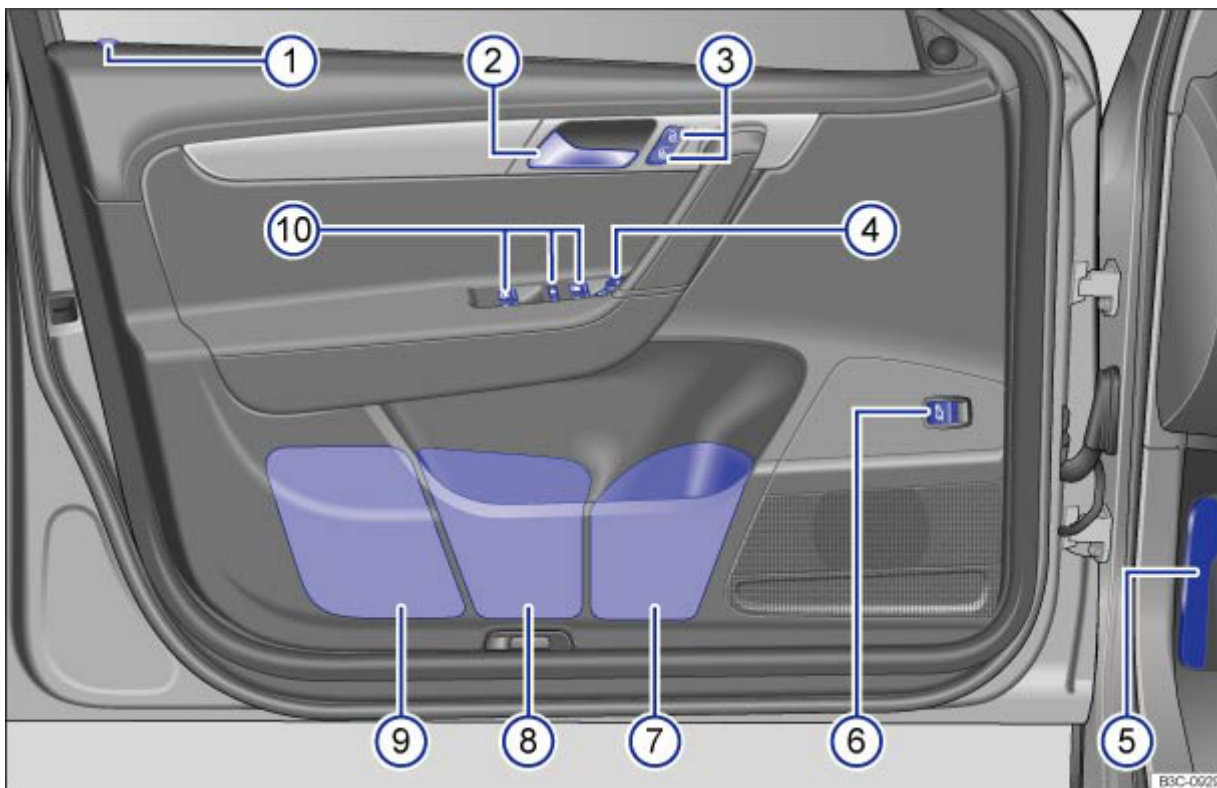
Fig. 3 Overview of the rear of the vehicle

**Key for → Fig. 3:**

- ① Roof aerial → *Consumer information*
- ② High-mounted brake light
- ③ Rear window
  - Rear window heating → *Heating, ventilating, cooling*
  - Window aerial → *Consumer information*
- ④ Tail light cluster → *Lights* → *Changing bulbs*
- ⑤ Volkswagen badge for opening the boot lid → *Boot lid* and area of camera for Rear Assist system → *Rear Assist system*
- ⑥ Lane change assist system radar sensors behind the rear bumper → *Lane change assist system (Side Assist)*
- ⑦ Rear number plate holder
- ⑧ Mounting for the rear towing eye behind a cover → *Tow starting and towing*
- ⑨ Sensors for the rear parking distance warning system → *Parking distance warning system* or Park Assist system → *Park Assist system*
- ⑩ Area of towing bracket → *Towing a trailer*
- ⑪ Boot lid → *Boot lid*








## Vehicle interior

### Overview of the driver door



**Fig. 4** Overview of the controls in the driver door (left-hand drive vehicles). The controls are mirrored for right-hand drive vehicles

**Key for → Fig. 4:**

- ① Indicator lamp for the immobilizer → *Starting and stopping the engine* , the anti-theft alarm and the SAFELOCK mechanism → *Central locking system*
- ② Door release lever → *Doors*
- ③ Central locking button for locking and unlocking the vehicle  -  → *Central locking system*
- ④ Switch for adjusting the exterior mirrors → *Mirrors*
  - Exterior mirror setting **L - 0 - R**
  - Exterior mirror heating 
  - Folding in exterior mirrors 
- ⑤ Handle for releasing the bonnet → *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*
- ⑥ Boot lid release button  → *Boot lid*
- ⑦ Bottle holders → *Drink holder*
- ⑧ Stowage compartment → *Stowing*
- ⑨ Compartment for high-visibility waistcoat → *In an emergency*
- ⑩ Buttons for operating the electric windows → *Electric windows*
  - Electric windows 
  - Safety button for the rear electric windows 

Overview of the driver side

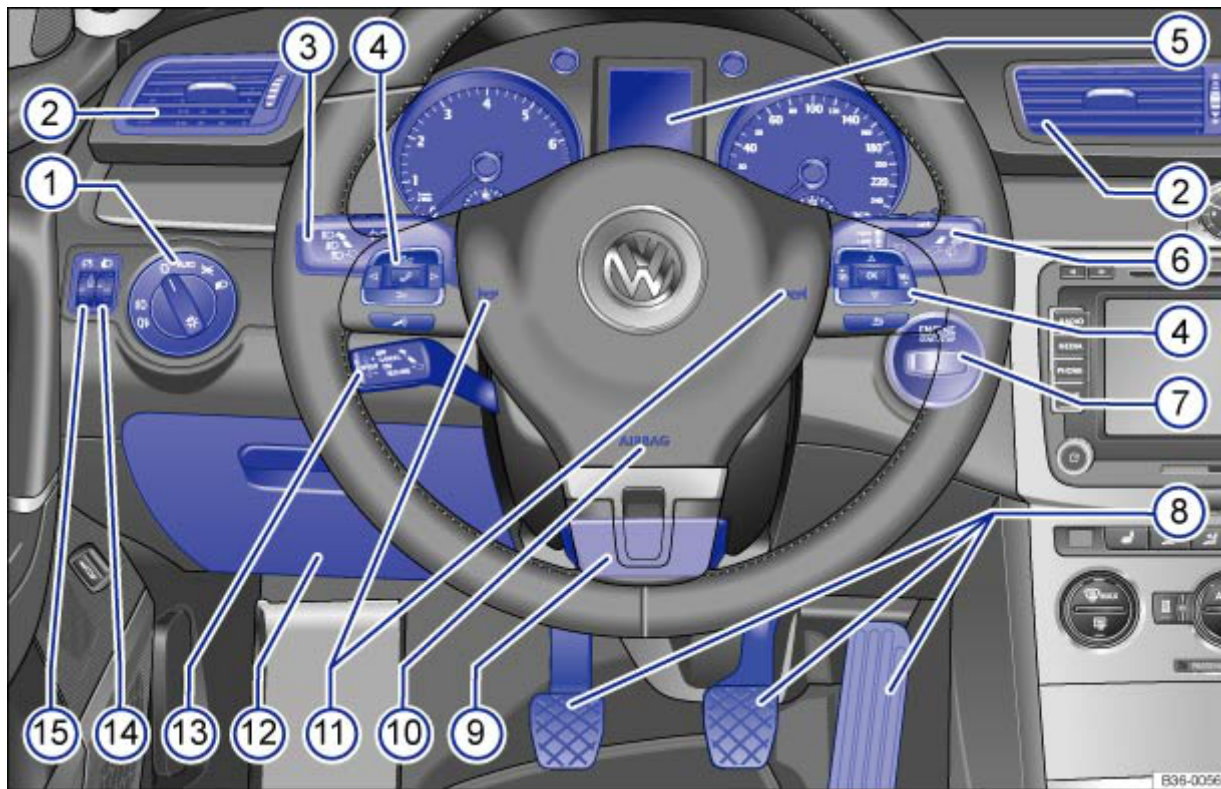


Fig. 5 Overview of the driver side (left-hand drive vehicles)

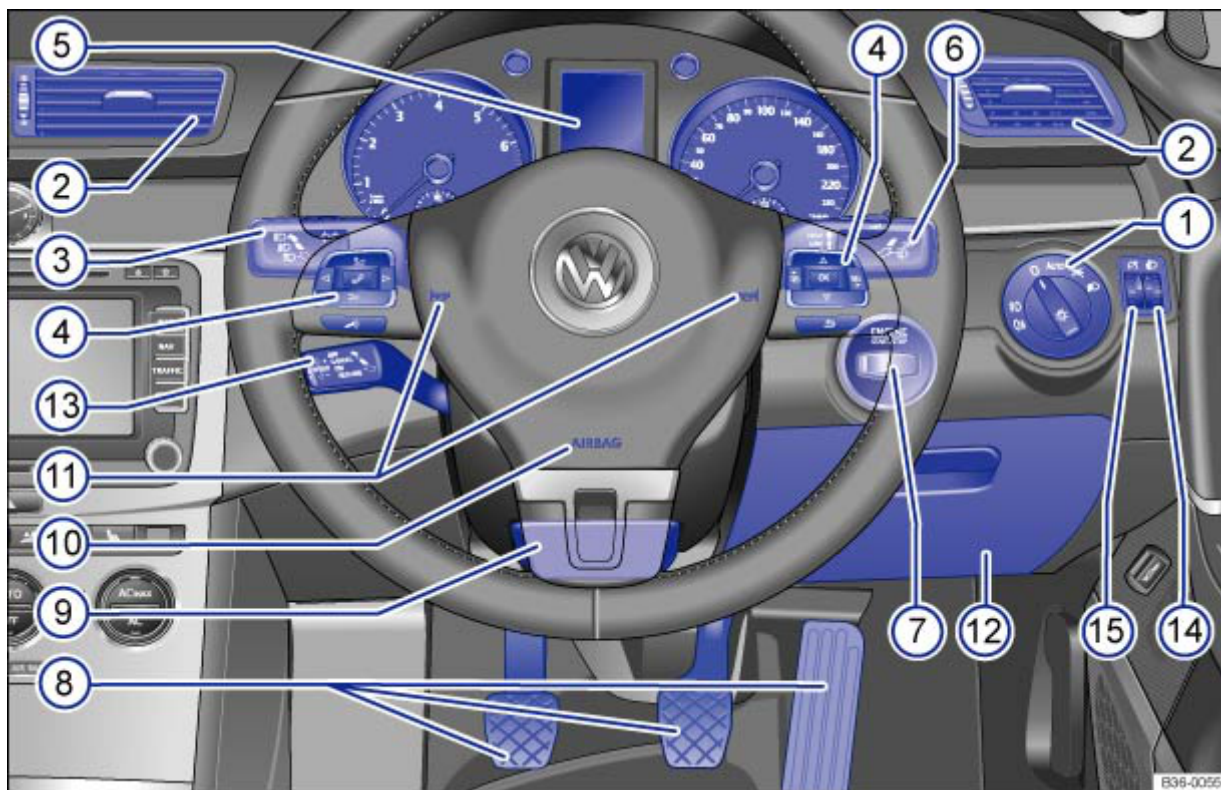


Fig. 6 Overview of the driver side (right-hand drive vehicles)

Key for → Fig. 5 and → Fig. 6:

Interior monitoring  OFF → Central locking system




- 1 Light switch  → *Lights*
- Light switched off or daytime running lights - 
  - Automatic headlight control - **AUTO** -
  - Side light and dipped beam 
  - Fog lights 
- 2 Vent → *Heating, ventilating, cooling*
- 3 Lever for → *Lights*
- Main beam headlights 
  - Headlight flasher 
  - Turn signal 
  - Parking light 
  - Button for the driver assist systems → *Volkswagen information system*
- 4 Controls on the multifunction steering wheel → *Volkswagen information system*
- Volume setting for the radio, navigation announcements or a telephone conversation 
  - Mute function for the radio or activating the voice control system 
  - Audio, navigation 
  - Opening the telephone main menu or accepting a telephone call 
  - Controls for the Volkswagen information system 
- 5 Instrument cluster:
- Instruments → *Instruments*
  - Display → *Instruments*
  - Warning lamps and indicator lamps → *Warning lamps and indicator lamps*
- 6 Lever for → *Windscreen wiper and washer*
- Windscreen wipers **HIGH - LOW**
  - Interval wipe for the windscreen 
  - Flick wipe 
  - Windscreen wiper 
  - Wash and wipe system for the windscreen 
  - Controls for the Volkswagen information system **TRIP- , OK/RESET** → *Volkswagen information system*
- 7 Ignition lock → *Starting and stopping the engine*
- 8 Pedals → *Changing gear*
- 9 Lever for adjustable steering column → *Adjusting the seat position*
- 10 Driver front airbag → *Airbag system*
- 11 Horn (works only when the ignition is on)


12 Stowage compartment → *Stowing*

13 Lever for:

- the cruise control system (CCS) **OFF - CANCEL - ON - RESUME / - SPEED - / - SET** → *Cruise control system (CCS)*

- with adaptive cruise control (ACC) – **DISTANCE+** → *ACC (adaptive cruise control)*

14 Headlight range control  → *Lights*

15 Brightness control for instrument and switch illumination  → *Lights*

## Overview of the centre console

### Upper section of the centre console

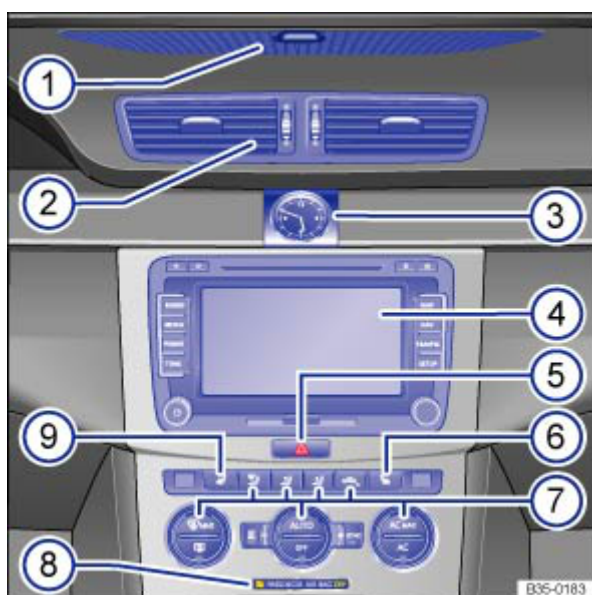


Fig. 7 Overview of the upper section of the centre console


Key for → *Fig. 7:*


1 Air outlets for indirect ventilation → *Heating, ventilating, cooling*

2 Air outlets → *Heating, ventilating, cooling*

3 Analogue clock → *Instruments*

4 Radio or navigation system (factory-fitted) ⇒ *BookletRadio*, or ⇒ *BookletNavigation system*,

5 Hazard warning lights button  → *In an emergency*

6 Button for seat heating  front right → *Seat functions*

7 Controls for:

- Air conditioning system (manual) → *Heating, ventilating, cooling*

- Climatronic → *Heating, ventilating, cooling*

- Auxiliary heater (supplementary heating system) → *Heating, ventilating, cooling*

8 Indicator lamp for the front passenger front airbag switch-off function → *Airbag system*

9 Button for seat heating front left → *Seat functions*

## Lower section of the centre console

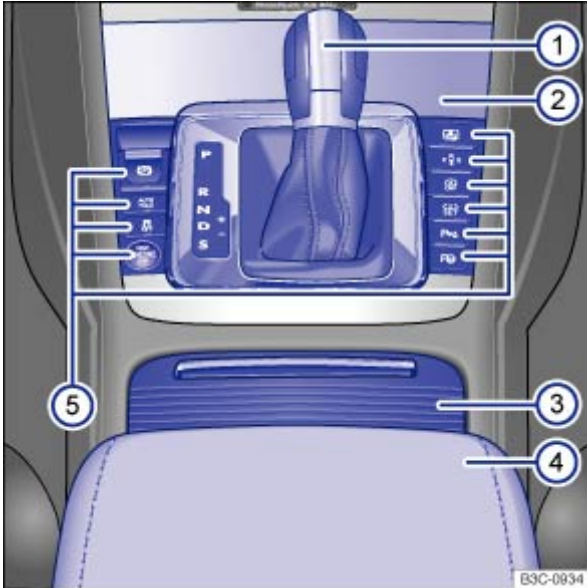


Fig. 8 Overview of the lower section of the centre console (left-hand drive vehicles)

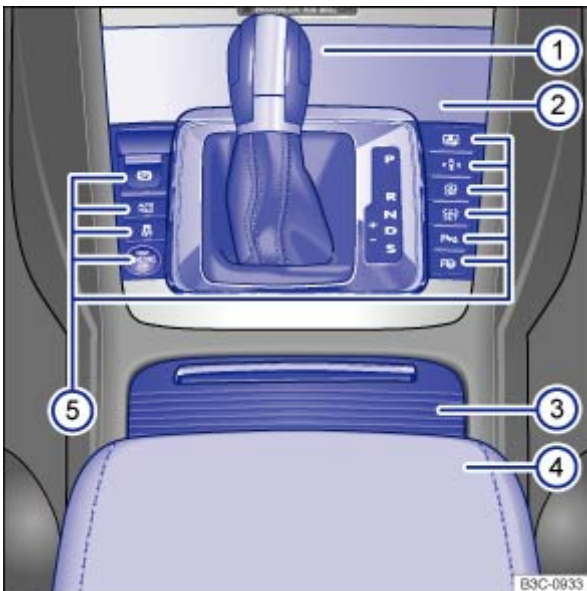


Fig. 9 Overview of the lower section of the centre console (right-hand drive vehicles)

Key for → Fig. 8 and → Fig. 9:

1 Lever for:

- Manual gearbox → *Changing gear*
- Automatic gearbox → *Changing gear*






2 Stowage compartment → *Stowing*

- With 12-volt socket → *Electrical sockets*
- With ashtray and cigarette lighter → *Ashtray and cigarette lighter*

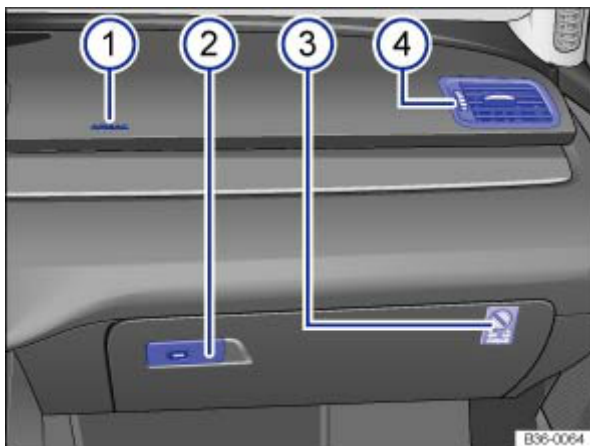
3 Stowage compartment with drink holder → *Drink holder*

4 Stowage compartment in the centre console → *Stowing*

5 Buttons for:

- Electronic parking brake (P) → *Braking, stopping and parking*
- Auto Hold **AUTOHOLD** → *Pull-away assist systems*
- Traction control system (TCS)  → *Braking, stopping and parking*
- Keyless Access starter button → *Starter button*
- Sun blind for the rear window  → *Protection from the sun*
- Adaptive chassis control (DCC) **C - S** → *Adaptive chassis control (DCC)*
- Start/stop system  → *Pull-away assist systems*
- Parking distance warning system (ParkPilot)  → *Parking distance warning system*
- Park Assist system  → *Park Assist system*

## Overview of the front passenger side



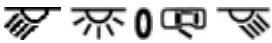


**Fig. 10** Overview of the front passenger side (left-hand drive vehicles). The controls are mirrored for right-hand drive vehicles

**Key for** → *Fig. 10*:

- 1 Location of front passenger front airbag in the dash panel → *Airbag system*
- 2 Opening lever with lock for the stowage compartment → *Stowage compartment on the front passenger side*
- 3 Key-operated switch in the stowage compartment for switching off the front passenger front airbag → *Airbag system*
- 4 Vent → *Heating, ventilating, cooling*



## Symbols in the roof

Symbol	Meaning
--------	---------

	Interior lights and reading lights → <a href="#">Lights</a> .
	3-button module ⇒ Booklet <a href="#">Provision for mobile telephone</a> .
	Sliding/tilting roof → <a href="#">Sliding/tilting roof</a> .

## Instrument cluster






















### Warning lamps and indicator lamps


























The warning and indicator lamps indicate a number of warnings → , faults →  or different functions. Some warning and indicator lamps light up when the ignition is switched on and should go out once the engine is running or the vehicle is in motion.



















Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, additional text messages could appear in the display on the instrument cluster to provide further information or to ask you to perform certain tasks → [Instruments](#) .

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, symbols may be displayed in the instrument cluster instead of warning lamps.

Acoustic warning signals can be heard when some warning or indicator lamps light up.

Symbol	Meaning → 	See
	 <b>Do not drive on!</b> Electronic parking brake switched on.	→ <a href="#">Braking, stopping and parking</a>
	 <b>Do not drive on!</b> Brake fluid level too low or fault in the brake system.	
	Lit up:  <b>Do not drive on!</b> Coolant level too low, coolant temperature too high or coolant level system faulty.	→ <a href="#">Coolant</a>
	Flashing: fault in engine coolant system.	
	 <b>Do not drive on!</b> Engine oil pressure too low.	→ <a href="#">Engine oil</a>
	 <b>Do not drive on!</b> At least one vehicle door is open or not properly closed.	→ <a href="#">Doors</a>
		
	 <b>Do not drive on!</b> Bonnet open or not properly closed.	→ <a href="#">Preparation for working in the engine compartment</a>
	 <b>Do not drive on!</b> Boot lid open or not properly closed.	→ <a href="#">Boot lid</a>
	Lit up or flashing:  <b>Do not drive on!</b> Fault in the vehicle steering.	→ <a href="#">Steering</a>
	<b>Engine cannot be restarted!</b> AdBlue level too low.	→ <a href="#">Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue)</a>
	<b>Brakes!</b> Collision warning from the area monitoring system (Front Assist).	→ <a href="#">ACC (adaptive cruise control)</a>
	Driver or front passenger seat belt not fastened.	→ <a href="#">Seat belts</a>

Symbol	Meaning → 	See
	Depress the brake pedal!	Changing gear → <i>Changing gear</i> Brakes → <i>Braking, stopping and parking</i> ACC (adaptive cruise control) → <i>ACC (adaptive cruise control)</i>
	Fault in the alternator.	→ <i>Vehicle battery</i>
	Dual clutch gearbox DSG® is too hot.	→ <i>Changing gear</i>
	Brake pads worn.	→ <i>Braking, stopping and parking</i>
	Lit up: ESP fault or switched off for system-related reasons.	
	Flashing quickly: ESP/TCS is taking corrective action.	
	Flashing slowly: TCS switched off manually (if indicator lamp  not available).	
	TCS switched off manually.	
	ABS faulty or not functioning.	
	Fault in electronic parking brake.	
	Rear fog light switched on.	→ <i>Lights</i>
	Vehicle lighting not working partially or completely.	→ <i>Changing bulbs</i>
	Problem with the bend lighting system.	→ <i>Lights</i>
	Fault in catalytic converter.	→ <i>Engine management system and exhaust purification system</i>
	Lit up: glow period for a diesel engine.	
	Flashing: fault in engine management system.	
<b>EPC</b>	Fault in engine management system.	
	Diesel particulate filter has become saturated with soot.	
	Fault in steering system.	→ <i>Steering</i>
	Tyre pressure too low or tyre monitoring system fault.	→ <i>Wheels and tyres</i> → <i>Tyre monitoring systems</i>
	Windscreen washer fluid level too low.	→ <i>Windscreen wiper and washer</i>
	Fuel tank almost empty.	→ <i>Filling the tank</i>
	Flashing: engine oil system fault.	→ <i>Engine oil</i>
	Lit up: engine oil level too low.	
	Fault in airbag and belt tensioner system.	→ <i>Airbag system</i>
	Refill AdBlue or AdBlue system faulty.	→ <i>Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue)</i>
	The tank cap is not closed properly.	→ <i>Filling the tank</i>
	Fault in the area monitoring system (Front Assist), not active.	→ <i>ACC (adaptive cruise control)</i>
	Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist) switched on, not active.	→ <i>Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist)</i>
	Turn signal left or right.	→ <i>Lights</i>

Symbol	Meaning → 	See → <i>In an emergency</i>
	Hazard warning lights switched on.	→ <i>Lights</i>
	Daytime running lights switched on.	→ <i>Lights</i>
	Lit up: depress the brake pedal!	Changing gear → <i>Changing gear</i>
	Flashing: the lock button in the selector lever is not engaged.	Braking, stopping and parking → <i>Braking, stopping and parking</i>
	CCS activated.	→ <i>Cruise control system (CCS)</i>
	ACC is switched on.	→ <i>ACC (adaptive cruise control)</i>
	Status indicator for natural gas mode.	→ <i>Filling the tank</i>
	The area monitoring system (Front Assist) is switched on and active.	→ <i>ACC (adaptive cruise control)</i>
	Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist) is switched on and active.	→ <i>Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist)</i>
	Lane change assist system (Side Assist) switched on and active	→ <i>Lane change assist system (Side Assist)</i>
	Main beam is switched on or the headlight flasher is being operated.	→ <i>Lights</i>
	Engine coolant temperature is too low in vehicles with natural gas engine.	→ <i>Coolant</i>
	Main beam assist (Light Assist) or automatic main beam assist (Dynamic Light Assist) is switched on.	→ <i>Lights</i>
<b>SAFE</b>	Immobilizer active.	→ <i>Starting and stopping the engine</i>
	Service interval display.	→ <i>Service interval display</i>
	Start/stop system: Request to start the engine.	→ <i>Pull-away assist systems</i>
	Start/stop system not available.	
	For vehicles with a diesel engine: engine starting.	→ <i>Starting and stopping the engine</i>

## WARNING

Failure to observe the illuminated warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore warning lamps and text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.
- Stop the vehicle at a safe distance away from moving traffic and so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass.
- A broken down vehicle increases the risk of accidents – both for you and other road users. If necessary, switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle in order to warn other road users.
- Before opening the bonnet, switch off the engine and allow it to cool down sufficiently.
- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous area. Serious injuries can be sustained here → [Preparation for working in the engine compartment](#) .

## NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Instruments

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Instrument overview](#)
- [Displays](#)
- [Compass](#)
- [Service interval display](#)

### Additional information and warnings:

- Warning lamps and indicator lamps → [Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)
- Selected gear display (for vehicles with an automatic gearbox) → [Changing gear](#)
- Information on service intervals ⇒ Booklet [Service schedule](#),

## WARNING

Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted.

- Never press the buttons on the instrument cluster while the vehicle is in motion.

### Instrument overview

---



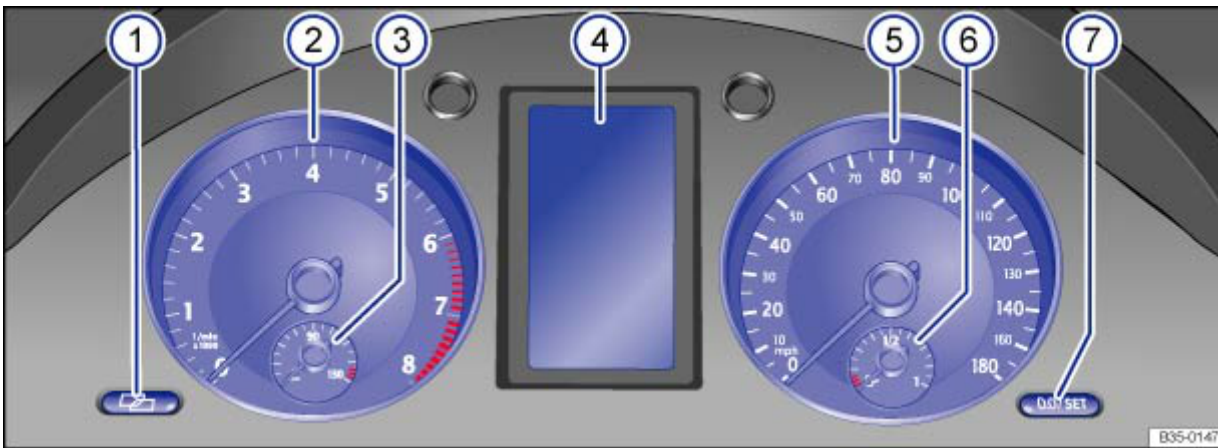


Fig. 11 Instrument cluster in the dash panel

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

Descriptions of the instruments → [Fig. 11](#):

- 1 **Button for setting the clock in the instrument cluster, for the radio or navigation system and the analogue clock** <sup>1)</sup>.
  - Press the button to mark either the hours or minutes display.
  - Press the **0.0 / SET** button to continue. Press and hold to scroll through the minutes quickly.
  - Press the button again to finish setting the clock.
- 2 **Rev. counter** (revolutions x 1000 per minute of running engine). The start of the red zone on the dial indicates the maximum engine speed which may be used in each gear when the engine is warm and after it has been run in properly. You should change up a gear or move the selector lever to **D** (or lift your foot off the accelerator) before the needle reaches the red zone → .
- 3 **Engine coolant temperature display** → [Coolant](#) or **Natural gas fuel tank display** in vehicles with natural gas engine → [Filling the tank](#) .
- 4 **Displays** → [Displays](#) .
- 5 **Speedometer**
- 6 **Fuel gauge** → [Filling the tank](#) .
- 7 **Reset button** for the trip recorder display (trip).
  - Press **0.0 / SET** button to reset to zero.

### NOTICE

- When the engine is cold, avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and over-loading the engine.
- In order to avoid damage to the engine, the needle on the rev counter may only briefly point into the red area.



Changing up a gear early will help to save fuel and minimise engine noise.

<sup>1)</sup> Depending on the vehicle equipment level, clock settings may also be made using the **Settings** menu on the instrument cluster display → [Settings menu](#) .

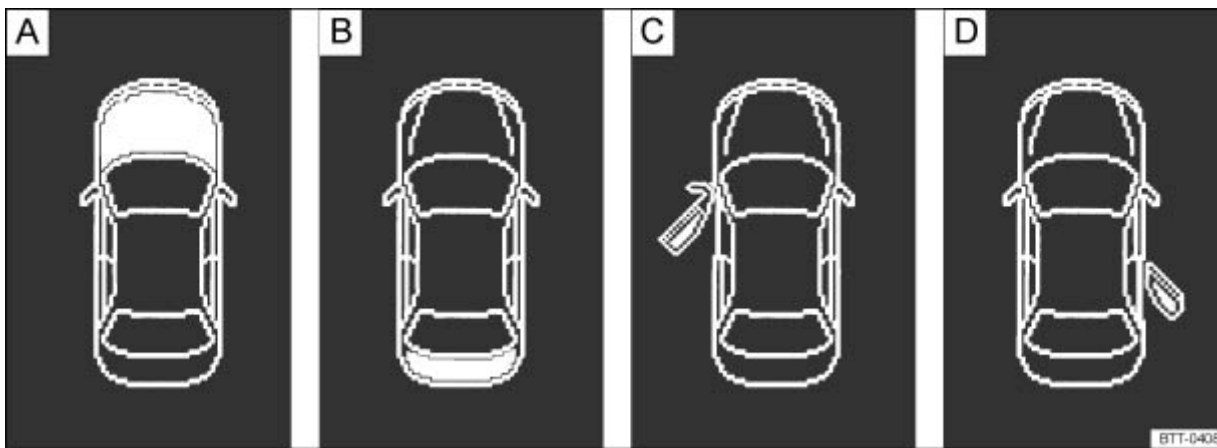


Fig. 12 A: bonnet open, B: boot lid open, C: front left door open, D: right rear door open






First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, various information can be displayed in the instrument cluster → [Fig. 11](#) @ :

- Open doors, bonnet and boot lid → [Fig. 12](#)
- Warning and information messages
- Mileage displays
- Time
- Outside temperature
- Compass display
- Selector lever positions → [Changing gear](#)
- Gear-change indicator (manual gearbox) → [Changing gear](#)
- Multifunction display (MFD) and menus for various settings → [Volkswagen information system](#)
- Service interval display → [Service interval display](#)
- Second speed (**Settings** menu) → [Volkswagen information system](#)
- Start/stop system status display → [Start/stop system status display](#)
- Road signs detected by the road sign recognition system → [Road sign recognition \(Sign Assist\)](#)

## Warning and information messages

The system runs a check on certain components and functions in the vehicle when the ignition is switched on or while the vehicle is moving. Functional faults are indicated by red and yellow symbols with warning and information messages on the instrument cluster display ( → [Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#) ). An acoustic warning is also given in certain cases. The screen may vary according to the version of the instrument cluster fitted.


Type of message	Symbol colour	Explanation
Priority 1 warning report.	red	The symbol flashes or lights up – sometimes together with an acoustic warning signal.  <b>Do not drive on!</b> It is dangerous →  . Check the fault and correct the cause. Seek expert assistance if necessary.
Priority 2 warning report.	yellow	The symbol flashes or lights up – sometimes together with an acoustic warning signal. If there is a malfunction, or if service fluids are running low, your vehicle could be damaged or break down. →  . Check the fault as soon as possible. Seek expert assistance if necessary.
Information message.	–	Information about various procedures within the vehicle.

## Mileage displays

The *odometer* registers the total distance travelled by the car.

The *trip recorder (trip)* shows the distance travelled since the trip recorder was last reset. The final digit shows distances of 100 m.

## Outside temperature display

If the outside temperature falls below +4°C (+39°F), the display also shows a snowflake symbol (ice warning). This symbol flashes and then remains permanently lit until the outside temperature rises above +6°C (+43°F) → .

If the vehicle is stationary, the auxiliary heating ( → [Auxiliary heater \(supplementary heating system\)](#) ) is on or the vehicle is travelling at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual outside temperature due to heat radiated from the engine.

The measuring range lies between -40°C (-40°F) and +50°C (+122°F).

## Compass display

When the ignition and navigation system are switched on, the instrument cluster display shows the direction of travel → [Compass](#) .

## Selector lever positions

The gear selected is displayed on the side of the selector lever and on the display in the instrument cluster. The display may show which gear has been selected if the lever is in **D** or **S**, or in Tiptronic mode.


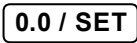
## Gear-change indicator (manual gearbox)

While the vehicle is in motion, the instrument cluster shows which gear should be selected to reduce fuel consumption → [Changing gear](#) .

## Second speedometer display (mph or km/h)

In addition to the tachometer display, the speed can also be displayed in another unit of measurement (mph or km/h) while you are driving. To do this, select the menu option **Second speed** in the **Settings** menu → [Volkswagen information system](#) .

Vehicles without menu display on the instrument cluster:

- Start the engine.
- Press the  button three times. The odometer in the instrument cluster display flashes.
- Press the  button once. The vehicle speed in km/h or mph is shown briefly in the display instead of the odometer.
- This turns on the second speedometer display. It can be deactivated in the same manner.

It is not possible to switch off the second speedometer display in those countries where the law stipulates that the display cannot be deactivated.

## Start/stop system status display

The instrument cluster display shows information about the current status → [Pull-away assist systems](#) .

**! WARNING**

Failure to observe the illuminated warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore warning lamps and text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.
- A broken down vehicle increases the risk of accidents – both for you and other road users. If necessary, switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle in order to warn other road users.
- Stop the vehicle at a safe distance away from moving traffic and so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass.

**! WARNING**

Streets and bridges can be iced over at outside temperatures above zero degrees.

- Black ice may be on the roads at outside temperatures above +4°C (+39°F) and also when no snowflake symbol is displayed as a black ice warning.
- You should never rely solely on the outside temperature display!

**! NOTICE**

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

**i** Different instrument clusters are available, which means that the versions and displays may vary. In displays without warning or information texts, faults are indicated exclusively by the indicator lamps.

**i** If several warning reports are detected, the symbols will appear for several seconds, one after another. The symbols will appear until the faults are rectified.

**Compass**

---

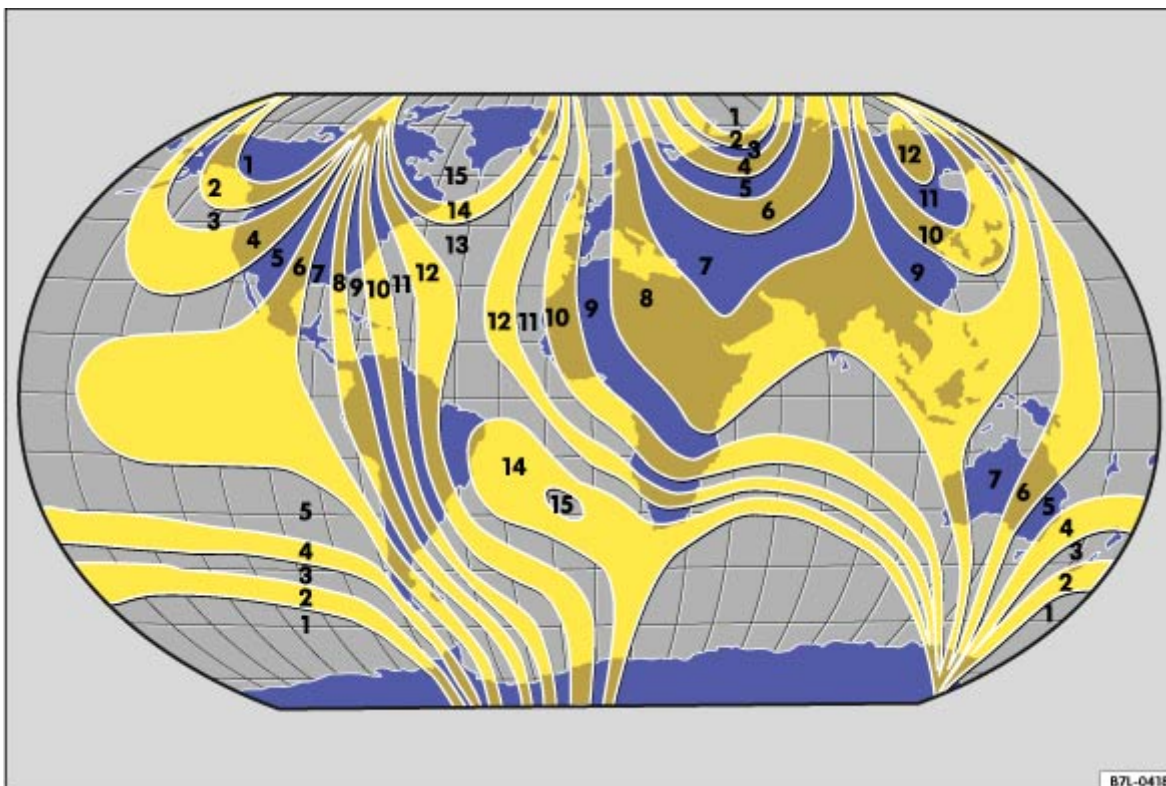


Fig. 13 Compass zones

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The compass will not have to be recalibrated if there is a factory-fitted navigation system in the vehicle. There is no menu option for the **compass**.

The compass in vehicles without a factory-fitted navigation system is calibrated permanently automatically. If electrical or metallic equipment is retrofitted in the vehicle, e.g. mobile telephone, television, the compass will have to be recalibrated manually.

### Setting the compass zone

- Switch on the ignition.
- Select the **Settings** menu and then the menu options **Compass** and **Zone**.
- Select the compass zone to match your location → [Fig. 13](#).
- Set and confirm the compass zone (1-15).

### Calibrating the compass

The requirements for calibrating the compass are the valid compass zone for your location and enough space to drive in a circle.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Select the menu **Settings** and then the menu options **Compass** and **Calibration**.
- Confirm **To calibrate drive round a complete circle** with **OK** and then drive the vehicle in a full circle at a speed of approximately 10 km/h (6 mph).

During calibration, the display on the instrument cluster shows **CAL**. The calibration procedure is complete when the compass direction is shown in the display.

### Service interval display

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The service display is shown on the instrument cluster → [Fig. 11 @](#) .


Service schedules at Volkswagen are divided into two categories, *with* oil change, e.g. interval service, and *without* oil change, e.g. inspection service. This service interval display provides information only on services that include an oil change. A sticker on the door pillar of the vehicle and the service schedule booklet provide information on all other services, for example, the next inspection service or brake fluid service.

In vehicles with **service dependent on the time/distance travelled**, the service intervals are fixed.

In vehicles with **LongLife Service**, the service intervals are calculated on an individual basis. Technical progress has made it possible to considerably reduce servicing requirements. With the LongLife System, Volkswagen uses technology to ensure that the vehicle is serviced only when necessary. The length of the service intervals (maximum of 2 years) is also determined by factors such as conditions under which the vehicle is used and personal driving style. The service reminder is displayed 20 days before the service is due. The distance is rounded to the nearest 100 km; the remaining time is rounded to full days. The current service information cannot be called up until you have driven 500 km since the last service. Until this point the display only shows lines.


## Service reminder

If the vehicle is due to be serviced, a **service reminder** will appear on the display when the ignition is switched on.

In *vehicles without text messages* in the instrument cluster display, a spanner symbol  and a **km** display will appear. The number of kilometres shown corresponds to the maximum number of kilometres that can still be driven until the service appointment is due. The display changes after a few seconds. A clock symbol appears along with the number of days left until the service appointment should be carried out.



In *vehicles with text messages*, **Service in --- km or --- days** appears in the instrument cluster display.

## Service

If a **service is due**, a signal will sound and the spanner symbol  will appear for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. In *vehicles with text messages*, **Service now** appears in the instrument cluster display.

## Calling up service messages

You can call up the current **service messages** whenever the ignition is switched on, the engine is not running and the vehicle is stationary.

- Press the  button in the instrument cluster until the spanner symbol  appears.
- **OR:** select the **Settings** menu.
- Select the menu option **Info** in the **Service** submenu.

An **overdue service** is indicated by a minus sign in front of the mileage or trip reading. In *vehicles with text messages*, **Service since --- km or --- days** appears in the instrument cluster display.

## Resetting the service interval display

If the service was not performed by a Volkswagen workshop, the display can be reset as follows:


---

### Vehicles with text messages:

---

Select the **Settings** menu.

Select the menu option **Reset** in the **Service** submenu.

Confirm the request by pressing .

---



---

### Vehicles without text messages:

---

Switch off the ignition.

---

---

## Vehicles without text messages:

---

Press and hold the **0.0 / SET** button.

---

Restart the ignition.

---

Release the **0.0 / SET** button and press the  button within approximately 20 seconds.

---

Do **not** reset the display between service intervals otherwise the display will be incorrect.

If you manually reset the service interval display while the LongLife Service is valid, the service dependent on the time/distance travelled will be activated. The service interval will no longer be calculated on an individual basis ⇒ Booklet *Service schedule*, .



The service message will go out after a few seconds once the engine is running or by pressing the **OK** button.



If the vehicle battery is disconnected for long periods in a vehicle with LongLife Service, the system is not able to calculate the time when the next service is due. The service displays could then display incorrect information. If this is the case then please observe the maximum service intervals shown in ⇒ Booklet *Service schedule*, .

## Volkswagen information system

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Overview of the menu structure](#)
- [Using the menus in the instrument cluster](#)
- [Button for the driver assist systems](#)
- [Main menu](#)
- [menu \(multifunction display\)](#)
- [menu](#)
- [submenu](#)
- [submenu](#)
- [submenu](#)
- [Personal convenience settings](#)

With the ignition switched on, the different display functions can be accessed via the menus.

The buttons in the windscreen wiper lever are not fitted in those vehicles equipped with a multifunction steering wheel. The multifunction display is controlled using the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel only.

The scope of the menus in the instrument cluster display depends on the vehicle electronics and the level of vehicle equipment.

A qualified workshop can program and modify other functions depending on the vehicle equipment level. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Some menu options can only be called up when the vehicle is stationary.

If any priority 1 warning reports are being displayed, you will be unable to call up any menus. After a few seconds, all warning reports are switched off automatically. Some warnings can also be confirmed with the **OK** button and switched off.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior mirrors → [Mirrors](#)
- Driver assist systems → [Driver assist systems](#)
- Auxiliary heating → [Auxiliary heater \(supplementary heating system\)](#)

- Radio or navigation system ⇒ Booklet*Radio*, or ⇒ Booklet*Navigation system*,
- Mobile telephone provision ⇒ Booklet*Mobile telephone provision*,

## WARNING

Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted.

- Never open the menus on the instrument cluster while the vehicle is in motion.

## Overview of the menu structure



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  *Introduction*

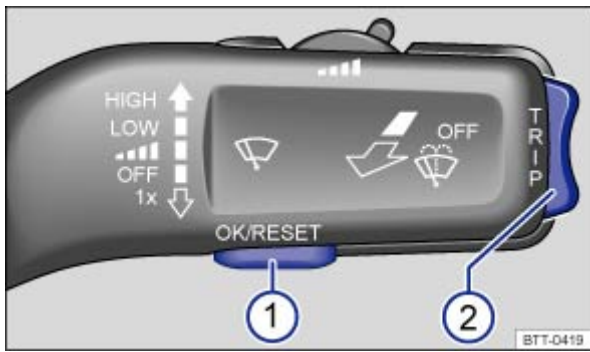
- **MFD (multifunction display)** → *MFD menu (multifunction display)*
  - Driving time
  - Current fuel consumption
  - Average fuel consumption
  - Fuel range
  - SCR range
  - Distance
  - Average speed
  - Digital speed display
  - Digital oil temperature display
  - Speed warning --- km/h
- **Assistance view** → *Main menu*
- **Audio** ⇒ Booklet*Radio*, or ⇒ Booklet*Navigation system*,
- **Navigation** ⇒ Booklet*Navigation system*,
- **Telephone** ⇒ Booklet*Provision for a mobile telephone*,
- **Auxiliary heating** → *Auxiliary heater (supplementary heating system)*
  - Activation
    - Program ON/Program OFF<sup>1)</sup>
    - Selected preset time 1
    - Selected preset time 2
    - Selected preset time 3
    - Deactivating
  - Preset time 1-3
    - Day of the week
    - Hour
    - Minute
    - Activation
  - Running time
  - Mode



- Heating
- Ventilation
- Day of the week
- Factory setting
- **Driver assist systems** → *Main menu*
  - Sign Assist on/off
  - Side Assist on/off
  - Lane Assist on/off
  - Front Assist on/off
  - Bend lighting on/off
- **Vehicle status** → *Main menu*
- **Settings** → *Settings menu*
  - Language
  - MFD data
    - Driving time
    - Current fuel consumption
    - Average fuel consumption
    - Distance
    - Average speed
    - Digital speed display
    - Digital oil temperature display
    - Speed warning --- km/h
  - Compass
  - Convenience → *Convenience submenu*
    - ATA confirm on/off
    - Easy open on/off
    - Door opening
      - Manual (all doors, single door, side of vehicle, individual)
      - Automatic (Auto Lock, Auto Unlock)
    - Window operation
      - Off
      - All
      - Driver
    - Mirror lowering function on/off
    - Mirror adjustment
      - Synchronised
      - Individually
    - Factory setting

- Light & Vision → **Light & Vision submenu**
  - Coming Home
  - Leaving Home
  - Ambient light
  - Footwell lights
  - Daytime running lights on/off
  - Lane change flash on/off
  - Travel mode on/off
  - Factory setting
- Freewheel on/off
- Time
- Winter tyres
- Units
- Assist systems → **Assistants submenu**
  - Sign Assist
    - System on/off
    - Towing a trailer
  - Side Assist
    - System on/off
    - Brightness
  - Lane Assist
    - System on/off
  - Front Assist
    - System on/off
    - Acoustic warning
  - ACC
    - Basic setting (convenience, normal, sport)
    - Distance (very small, small, medium, large, very large, last)
  - Driver Alert system on/off
- Tyre pressure
- Second speed display on/off
- Service
  - Information
  - Reset
- Factory setting

<sup>1)</sup> Will only show the current status. No menu option available for selection.



**Fig. 14** Vehicles without multifunction steering wheel: press button ① in the windscreen wiper lever to confirm the menu point and rocker switch ② to change the menu





**Fig. 15** Right-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel: controls for the menus in the instrument cluster






First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Calling up the main menu

- Switch on the ignition.
- If a message or vehicle pictogram is being displayed, press the **OK** button ( → [Fig. 14](#) ① or → [Fig. 15](#) ).
- *When operated using the windscreen wiper lever:* the main menu → [Main menu](#) is listed.
- *When operated using the multifunction steering wheel:* the main menu → [Main menu](#) is not listed. To navigate through the individual menu options, press the button  or  several times.


### Opening a submenu

- Press the rocker switch → [Fig. 14](#) ② up or down or press the button  or  on the multifunction steering wheel until the desired menu option is selected.
- The selected menu option is located between the two horizontal lines. There is also a triangle on the right-hand side .
- To open the submenu, press the **OK** button.

### Making settings in the menu

- Make any desired changes using the rocker switch on the windscreen wiper lever or the arrow buttons on the multifunction steering wheel. If necessary, press and hold the controls to increase or decrease the values quickly.
- Use the **OK** button to mark or confirm the selection.

### Returning to the main menu

- *Within the menu:* in the submenu, select the menu option **Back** to leave the submenu.
- *Using the windscreen wiper lever:* press and hold the rocker switch.
- *Using the multifunction steering wheel:* press the  button.

## Button for the driver assist systems



Fig. 16 On the turn signal and main beam lever: button for driver assist systems

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

You can switch the driver assist systems listed in the **Assistant** menu on and off with the button on the turn signal and main beam lever → [Driver assist systems](#) .

### Switching individual driver assist systems on or off

- Briefly press the button → [Fig. 16](#) (arrow) to call up the **Assist systems** menu.
- Select the driver assist system and switch it on or off → [Using the menus in the instrument cluster](#) . A tick indicates when a driver assist system is switched on.
- Then confirm the selection by pressing .

### Switching all driver assist systems on or off

- Press the button → [Fig. 16](#) (arrow) **for longer than one second** to switch all the driver assist systems that are selected in the **Assist systems** menu on or off at the same time.
- All driver assist systems will be switched on if none of the driver assist systems in the **Assist systems** menu were active.

## Main menu

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

Menu	Function	See
<b>MFD</b>	Information on the multifunction display (MFD).	→ <a href="#">MFD menu (multifunction display)</a>
<b>Assistance view</b>	Information on the ACC and Lane Assist system.	→ <a href="#">Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist)</a> → <a href="#">ACC (adaptive cruise control)</a>
<b>Audio</b>	Station display in radio mode. Track display in CD mode. Track display in media mode.	⇒ <a href="#">BookletRadio</a> , or ⇒ <a href="#">BookletNavigation system</a> ,
<b>Navigation</b>	Information messages when the navigation system is switched on: turning arrows and proximity bars will be shown if the route guidance function is active. The screen is similar to the symbols shown in the navigation system. The direction of travel (compass) and the name of the current street will be shown if the route guidance function is not active.	⇒ <a href="#">BookletNavigation system</a> ,
<b>Telephone</b>	Information and settings for the mobile telephone provision.	⇒ <a href="#">BookletProvision for mobile telephone</a> ,

Menu	Function	See
<b>Auxiliary heater</b>	Information and settings for the supplementary heating system: switching the auxiliary heater on or off. Selecting switch-on times and operating mode.	→ <i>Auxiliary heater (supplementary heating system)</i>
<b>Assist systems</b>	Switching the individual driver assist systems on and off.	→ <i>Button for the driver assist systems</i> → <i>Pull-away assist systems</i> → <i>Lights</i>
<b>Vehicle status</b>	Display of tyre pressures, current warning or information messages. The current number of messages is shown on the display. Example: 1/1 or 2/2.	→ <i>Instruments</i>
<b>Settings</b>	Various settings for convenience, lights & vision, time, speed warning for winter tyres, tyre pressure monitoring system, language and units.	→ <i>Settings menu</i>

## MFD menu (multifunction display)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  *Introduction*

The multifunction display (MFD) is equipped with 2 automatic memories: **1 - Trip memory** and **2 - Total journey memory**. The number of the current memory on display will be shown in the upper right-hand corner of the display.

With the ignition switched on and memory in display **1** or **Since start** or **2** or **Long term** press the **OK** button to switch between the two memories.



<b>1</b> or <b>Since start</b>	Trip memory	The memory collects the travel and fuel consumption data from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours, the memory is automatically deleted. If the journey is continued within 2 hours of the ignition being switched off, the new values will be added to the existing trip recorder.
<b>2</b> or <b>Long term</b>	Total journey memory	The memory collects journey data for any number of individual journeys up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes travel time or 9,999 km distance travelled. Once these total limits have been reached, the memory will be deleted automatically and begin again at 0.

## Possible displays






Menu	Function
<b>Driving time</b>	Driving time in hours (h) and minutes (min) that has elapsed since the ignition was switched on.
<b>Current fuel consumption</b>	While the vehicle is motion, current consumption is displayed in l/100 km. When the engine is running and the vehicle is stationary it is measured in litres/hour.
<b>Average fuel consumption</b>	The average fuel consumption will be shown after a distance of approximately 100 metres has been travelled. The display will show dashes until this point. The displayed values will be updated approximately every 5 seconds.
<b>Fuel range</b>	Approximate calculation of the distance in km that can still be travelled with the current fuel level under the current driving conditions. One factor used for calculating this figure is the current level of fuel consumption.
<b>SCR range</b>	Approximate calculation of the distance in km that can still be travelled with the current AdBlue tank level under the current driving conditions. The display can be seen only when the remaining distance that can be travelled is 2,400 km or less.
<b>Distance</b>	The distance travelled in km since the ignition was switched on.
<b>Average speed</b>	The average speed will be shown after a distance of approximately 100 metres has been travelled. The display will show dashes until this point. The displayed values will be updated approximately every 5 seconds.

Menu	Function
Digital speed display	Current vehicle speed displayed digitally.
Digital oil temperature display	Current temperature of the engine oil displayed digitally.
Warning at --- km/h or Warning at --- mph	If the saved speed (within the range of 30 km/h (18 mph) and 250 km/h (155 mph)) is exceeded, an acoustic warning will be given, along with a visible warning if required.


## Switching between displays

- Vehicles without a multifunction steering wheel: press the rocker switch on the windscreen wiper lever.
- Vehicles with a multifunction steering wheel: press button  or .

## Saving a speed for the speed warning

- Select display **warning at --- km/h** or **Warning at --- mph**.
- Press the  button to save the current speed and activate the warning system.
- If necessary, use the rocker switch on the windscreen wiper lever or the buttons  or  on the multifunction steering wheel within approximately 5 seconds to set the desired speed. Then press  again or wait a few seconds. The speed is now saved and the warning is activated.
- To deactivate, press . The stored speed will be deleted.

## Deleting memory 1 or 2 manually

- Select the memory that you wish to delete.
- Press and hold the  button for approximately 2 seconds.

## Personal selection of displays

In submenu **MFD data** in the **Settings** menu, you can specify which of the MFD displays should be shown in the instrument cluster display. You can also change the units of measurement for the display → [Settings menu](#) .

## Settings menu



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Settings menu	Function
Language	Setting the language for the display texts and messages in the navigation system.
MFD data	Settings for which MFD data should appear in the instrument cluster display → <a href="#">MFD menu (multifunction display)</a>
Compass	Settings for the compass zone and for calibrating the compass. Observe the displays in the instrument cluster when calibrating.
Convenience	Settings for the vehicle's convenience functions → <a href="#">Convenience submenu</a> .
Light & Vision	Settings for the vehicle lighting → <a href="#">Light &amp; Vision submenu</a> .
Freewheel	Switching the freewheel on and off in vehicles with an automatic gearbox. In freewheel mode the engine will be disengaged and run in freewheel mode → <a href="#">Changing gear</a> .
Time	Setting the hours and minutes of the clock in the instrument cluster, in the infotainment system and in the analogue clock. The digital clock displays can be set to 12- or 24-hour format. Switching to summer time / winter time. An <b>S</b> may be shown in the upper part of the display to indicate that summer time is selected.

Settings menu	Function
Winter tyres	Setting the visual and acoustic speed warning. Use this function only when the winter tyres fitted are not designed for the vehicle's top speed.
Units	Setting the units for temperature, consumption values and distances.
Assist systems	Settings for the various driver assist systems → <a href="#">Assistants submenu</a> .
Tyre pressure	Settings for the tyre pressure monitoring system, e.g. vehicle load and the type of tyres used.
Second speed	Switching the second speed display on or off.
Service	Calling up service messages or resetting service interval displays.
Factory setting	Some functions in the <b>Settings</b> menu are reset to the factory settings.
Back	Return to the main menu.

## Convenience submenu



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

Convenience menu	Function
ATA confirm	Switching the acoustic re-confirmation function for activating the anti-theft alarm on or off → <a href="#">Central locking system</a> .
Easy open	Switching boot lid with sensor-controlled opening (Easy open) on or off → <a href="#">Central locking system</a> .
Door opening → <a href="#">Central locking system</a>	<p>The following doors are unlocked when the vehicle is unlocked with the vehicle key, depending on the setting:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– <b>All doors</b>: all doors are unlocked.</li> <li>– <b>Single door</b>: only the driver door is unlocked when the vehicle is unlocked with the vehicle key. All the doors and the boot lid will not be unlocked until the  button is pressed twice.</li> <li>– <b>Vehicle side</b>: the doors on the driver side are unlocked.</li> </ul> <p>In vehicles with Keyless Access → <a href="#">Central locking system</a> , the driver door and the doors on the side where a valid vehicle key is located will be unlocked when a door handle is operated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– <b>Individual</b>: only the driver door is unlocked. In vehicles with Keyless Access, the corresponding door or the boot lid as well as the driver door will be unlocked when a door handle is operated → <a href="#">Central locking system</a> .</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Automatic</b></p> <p><b>Auto Lock</b>: automatically locks all the doors and boot lid once a speed of approximately 15 km/h (10 mph) is reached. To unlock while the vehicle is stationary, press the central locking button or remove the vehicle key from the ignition.</p> <p><b>Auto Unlock</b>: all doors and the boot lid are unlocked when the key is removed from the ignition.</p>
Window operation	Settings for the electric windows and the sliding/tilting roof: all the windows can be opened or closed when locking or unlocking the vehicle. This opening function can only be activated for the driver door → <a href="#">Electric windows</a> .
Mirror lowering function	Switches the front passenger mirror lowering function on and off. For example, to get a better view of the kerb → <a href="#">Mirrors</a> .
Mirror adjustment	When adjusting the driver exterior mirror, the front passenger exterior mirror will be adjusted at the same time if the setting <b>both mirrors</b> is selected in the menu.
Factory setting	Some functions in the <b>Convenience</b> submenu are reset to the factory settings.
Back	The display returns to the <b>Settings</b> menu.

## Light & Vision submenu



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Light & Vision menu	Function
Coming Home	Settings for how long the vehicle should be lit once it is locked or unlocked, or for switching the function on or off → <a href="#">Coming Home and Leaving Home functions (orientation lighting)</a> .
Leaving Home	
Ambient light	Setting the brightness of the background lighting or switching the function on or off.
Footwell lights	Setting the brightness of the footwell lights when the dipped beam headlight is on, or switching the function on or off.
Daytime running lights	Activating/deactivating daytime running lights.
Lane change flash	Switching the lane change flash on or off. When the lane change flash function is switched on, the turn signal will flash at least 3 times when the turn signal lever is gently tapped → <a href="#">Lights</a> .
Travel mode	Switching travel mode on and off. When the travel mode is switched on, the headlights of a left-hand drive vehicle will be adjusted for use on the left-hand side of the road and those in a right-hand drive vehicle for use on the right-hand side of the road. Adjust the headlights in countries in which the traffic drives on the other side of the road. Travel mode may only be used for a short period of time and must be deactivated as soon as it is no longer required.
Factory setting	All the settings in the <b>Light and Vision</b> submenu are reset to the factory settings.
Back	The display returns to the <b>Settings</b> menu.

## Assistants submenu




First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Assist systems menu	Function
Sign Assist	Switch road sign recognition system on or off. The trailer mode can also be switched on or off → <a href="#">Road sign recognition (Sign Assist)</a> .
Side Assist	Switching the lane change assist system on or off and adjusting the base brightness of the warning → <a href="#">Lane change assist system (Side Assist)</a> .
Lane Assist	Switching the lane departure warning system on and off → <a href="#">Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist)</a> .
Front Assist	Switching the area monitoring system on or off. The acoustic warning can also be switched on or off → <a href="#">ACC (adaptive cruise control)</a> .
ACC	Set ACC to its basic setting. Including settings for which distance should be activated when the system is switched on → <a href="#">ACC (adaptive cruise control)</a> .
Driver Alert system.	Switching the Driver Alert system (suggestion for breaks) on and off → <a href="#">Driver Alert system (recommendation of rest breaks)</a> .

## Personal convenience settings



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

If two people use a vehicle, Volkswagen recommends that each person always uses their own individual vehicle key. When the ignition is switched off and when the vehicle is locked, the personal convenience settings are automatically stored and allocated to the vehicle key → [Volkswagen information system](#) .

The personal convenience settings for the following menus options are allocated to the vehicle key:

- **Auxiliary heating** menu
- **Settings** menu
  - Time



- Language
- Units
- **Settings – Convenience** menu
  - Door opening (single door unlocking, Auto Lock)
  - Convenience mode for the windows
  - Mirror lowering function
- **Settings – Lights & Vision** menu
  - Coming Home and Leaving Home function
  - Footwell lights
  - Lane change flash
- **Settings – Assistants** menu
  - Brightness of the lane change assist system display (**Side Assist**)

The stored settings are automatically called up when the ignition is switched on at the latest. Also see the information and notes concerning the memory seats → [Seat functions](#) .

# Before the journey

## Before setting off

### Driving tips

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Preparing for a journey and driving safely*
- *Driving abroad*
- *Driving through water*

Depending on where the vehicle is used, it could be a good idea to have an engine and transmission guard installed. An engine and transmission guard can reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle's underbody and engine oil sump, for example when driving over kerbs, driveways or unsurfaced roads. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

#### Additional information and warnings:

- Sitting correctly and safely → *Sitting correctly and safely*
- Transporting → *Transporting*
- Starting the engine, changing gear and parking the vehicle → *Starting the engine, changing gear and parking the vehicle*
- Driving with respect for the environment → *Driving with respect for the environment*
- Consumer information → *Consumer information*

#### **WARNING**

**Driving under the influence of alcohol, drugs, medication or narcotics could cause accidents and fatal injuries.**

- **Alcohol, drugs, medication and narcotics can severely impair senses, reaction times and driving safety. This could cause you to lose control of the vehicle.**










## Preparing for a journey and driving safely

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

### Checklist

**Observe the following information both before and during the journey to ensure your own safety and the safety of all your passengers** →



-  Check that all lights and turn signals are working properly.
-  Check the tyre pressure ( *Wheels and tyres Wheels and tyres Tyres see Wheels and tyres\_2* ) and fuel level ( *Filling the tank Filling the tank* ).
-  Make sure that you have a good, clear view through all of the windows.
-  Secure all objects and luggage in the stowage compartments, the luggage compartment and if applicable on the roof *Transporting Transporting* .
-  Free access to the pedals must be ensured at all times.
-  Secure any children travelling in the vehicle in a restraint system suitable for their weight and size *Child seats (accessories) Child seat ISOFIX see Child seat LATCH see Child seat* .
-  Adjust the front seats, head rests and mirrors properly in accordance with the size of the occupants *Adjusting the seat position Sitting* .
-  Wear shoes that provide proper support for your feet when using the pedals.
-  The floor mat in the footwell on the driver side must leave the pedal area free and must be securely fastened

- ✓ The feet that in the footrest on the driver side must leave the pedal area free and must be securely fastened.
- ✓ Assume a correct sitting position before setting off and maintain this position while driving. This also applies to all passengers Adjusting the seat position Sitting .
- ✓ Fasten your seat belt correctly before setting off and keep it properly fastened throughout the journey. This also applies to all passengers Seat belts Seat belts .
- ✓ Each vehicle occupant must sit in a seat of their own and must have their own seat belt.
- ✓ Never drive if your driving ability is impaired, e.g. by medication, alcohol or drugs.
- ✓ Do not allow yourself to be distracted from the traffic, e.g. by passengers, a telephone call or by opening menus.
- ✓ Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- ✓ Observe traffic regulations and speed limits.
- ✓ When travelling long distances, stop and take a break regularly – at least every 2 hours.
- ✓ Secure animals in the vehicle using a system that is suitable for their weight and size.



## WARNING

**Always observe the highway code, observe all speed limits and think ahead when driving. Correct interpretation of a driving situation can make the difference between reaching your destination safely and having an accident with serious injuries.**



Servicing the vehicle is not only about vehicle maintenance – it also ensures that your vehicle remains roadworthy and in perfect working order.

Servicing work should therefore be carried out in accordance with the service schedule. Some work may have to be carried out before the date of the next service if the vehicle is subjected to severe operating conditions. Severe operating conditions are, for example, regular stop and go driving, regular driving with a trailer and driving in areas with high levels of dust. Further information can be obtained from your Volkswagen dealership or qualified workshop.

## Driving abroad



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

## Checklist

**In some countries, special safety standards and emissions-related legislation apply that may differ from the construction of the vehicle. Volkswagen recommends that you visit your Volkswagen dealer before travelling abroad to find out about any legal requirements and the following points concerning your destination:**

- ✓ Does the vehicle need any technical modifications for driving abroad, e.g. masking or switching the headlights over?
- ✓ Are the necessary tools, diagnosis equipment and spare parts available for service and repair work?
- ✓ Are there any Volkswagen dealerships in the country of destination?
- ✓ For petrol engines: is unleaded petrol with the correct octane number available?
- ✓ For diesel engines: is diesel fuel with a low sulphur level available?
- ✓ Are the correct engine oil ( Engine oil Engine oil Engine compartment Engine oil\_3 Oil see Engine oil\_3 ) and other service fluids in accordance with Volkswagen specifications available in the destination country?
- ✓ Will the factory-fitted navigation system work in your destination with the navigation data available?
- ✓ Are special tyres necessary for travelling in the destination country?



## NOTICE


**Volkswagen is not responsible for any vehicle damage caused by low-quality fuel, inadequate servicing work or lack of availability of Genuine Parts.**

## Driving through water



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

Please follow these points in order to prevent damage to your vehicle when driving through water, for example on flooded streets:

- Check how deep the water is before driving through it. The water may be **no higher** than the lower edge of the body → .
- Do not drive faster than walking speed.
- Never stop the vehicle, reverse or switch off the engine while in water.
- Oncoming vehicles will create waves that could increase the water level for your vehicle to such an extent that it is not safe to drive through the water.
- When driving through water, always switch start/stop system off → [Pull-away assist systems](#) .



## WARNING

**After driving through water, mud, slush etc., the brakes may react slowly and the braking distance will be increased as the brake discs and pads will be wet, or possibly frozen (in winter).**

- **You can dry and de-ice the brakes using careful braking manoeuvres. Make sure that you do not endanger any other road users or violate any legal requirements while doing this.**
- **Avoid abrupt and sudden braking manoeuvres directly after driving through water.**



## NOTICE

- **If you drive through water, parts of the vehicle, such as the engine, drive train, running gear and vehicle electrics, could sustain severe damage.**
- **Never drive through salt water as salt can cause corrosion. Rinse all components that have been exposed to salt water thoroughly with fresh water.**

## Technical data



### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Vehicle identification data](#)
- [Engine data](#)
- [Dimensions](#)
- [Performance figures](#)

The vehicle data sticker in the service schedule or the vehicle registration documents show which engine is installed in your vehicle.

All data in the official vehicle documents take precedence over these data. All data in this manual are valid for the basic model. The figures may be different if additional equipment is fitted, for different models, for special vehicles and for other countries.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Transporting → [Transporting](#)
- Driving with respect for the environment → [Driving with respect for the environment](#)
- Fuel → [Fuel](#)
- Engine oil → [Engine oil](#)
- Engine coolant → [Coolant](#)
- Wheels and tyres → [Wheels and tyres](#)
- Consumer information → [Consumer information](#)

## ⚠ WARNING

Ignoring or exceeding the values given for the weights, payloads, vehicle dimensions and maximum speed could lead to accidents and serious injuries.

### Vehicle identification data

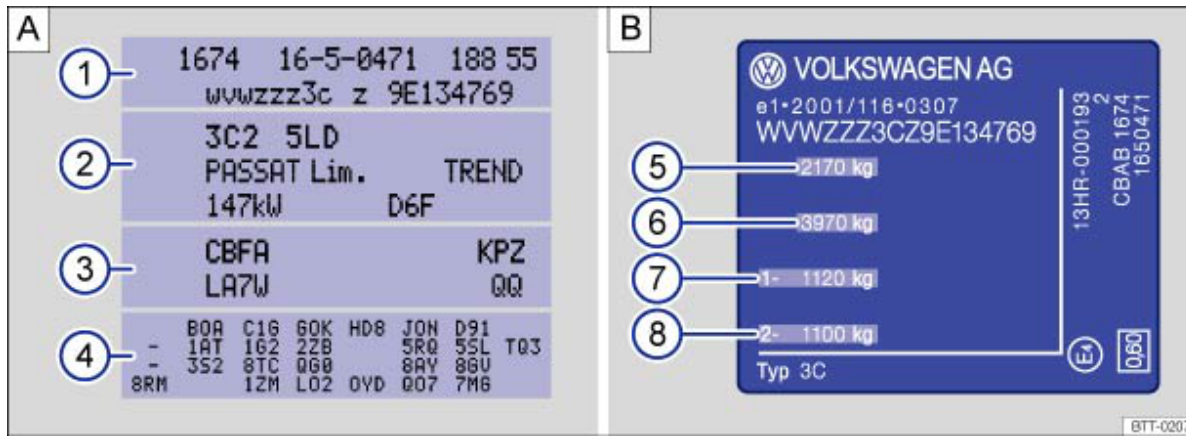


Fig. 17 (A) Vehicle data sticker: example shows a vehicle with engine code CBFA © (B) Type plate

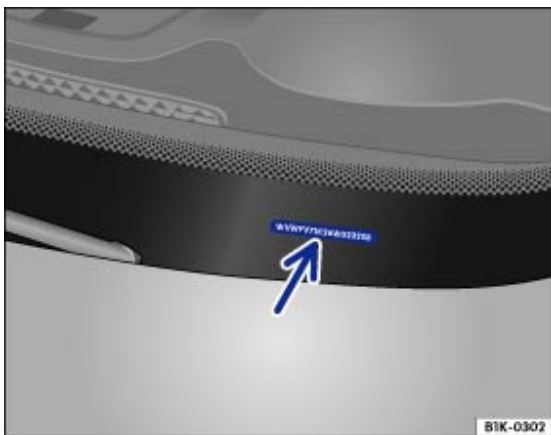


Fig. 18 Vehicle identification number

📖 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → ⚠ Introduction

### Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number can be read from outside the vehicle through a viewer in the windscreen → Fig. 18. The viewer is located on the side in the lower part of the windscreen. The vehicle identification number is also engraved on the right water drain channel. The water drain channel is located between the suspension turret and wing. You have to open the bonnet ⚠ to gain access to the vehicle identification number → Preparation for working in the engine compartment .

### Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker → Fig. 17 A is in the spare wheel well area in the luggage compartment. It contains the following data:

- ① Vehicle identification number (chassis number)
- ② Vehicle type, engine power, gearbox type
- ③ Engine and gearbox code, paint number, interior equipment. In the example, the engine code is CBFA → Fig. 17.
- ④ Optional extras, PR numbers

These vehicle data are also contained in the service schedule.

## Type plate

The type plate → Fig. 17 B can be seen on the lower part of the door pillar when the door is open. Vehicles for certain export countries do not have a type plate.

The type plate contains the following data:

- 5** Gross vehicle weight rating
- 6** Gross combination weight (vehicle plus trailer)
- 7** Gross axle weight rating, front
- 8** Gross axle weight rating, rear

## Engine data

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

For reasons of vehicle registration and vehicle taxation, the power output and performance of some engines may vary in some countries from the information given in this booklet.

### Petrol engines

Engine power	Injection technology	EC	Maximum torque	Cylinders, capacity
90 kW at 5,000 rpm	TSI®	CAXA	200 Nm at 1,500 – 4,000 rpm	4 cylinders, 1,390 ccm
118 kW at 4,500 – 6,200 rpm	TSI®	CDAA	250 Nm at 1,500 – 4,500 rpm	4 cylinders, 1,798 ccm
155 kW at 5,300 – 6,200 rpm	TSI®	CCZB	280 Nm at 1,700 – 5,200 rpm	4 cylinders, 1,984 ccm
220 kW at 6,600 rpm	FSI®	BWS	350 Nm at 2,400 – 5,300 rpm	6 cylinders, 3,597 ccm

### Diesel engines

Engine power	Injection technology	EC	Maximum torque	Cylinders, capacity
77 kW at 4,400 rpm with DPF	TDI®	CAYC	250 Nm at 1,500 – 2,500 rpm	4 cylinders, 1,598 ccm
100 kW at 4,200 rpm with DPF	TDI®	CFFA	320 Nm at 1,750 – 2,500 rpm	4 cylinders, 1,968 ccm
103 kW at 4,200 rpm with DPF	TDI®	CFFB	320 Nm at 1,750 – 2,500 rpm	4 cylinders, 1,968 ccm

Engine power	Injection technology	EC	Maximum torque	Cylinders, capacity
125 kW at 4,200 rpm with DPF	TDI®	CFGB	350 Nm at 1,750 – 2,500 rpm	4 cylinders, 1,968 ccm

Engine power	Injection technology	EC	Maximum torque	Cylinders, capacity
125 kW at 4,200 rpm with PRS	TDI®	CLLA	350 Nm at 1,750 – 2,500 rpm	4 cylinders, 1,968 ccm

### Natural gas engine

Engine power	Injection technology	EC	Maximum torque	Cylinders, capacity
110 kW at 5,500 rpm	TSI®	CDGA	220 Nm at 1,500 – 4,500 rpm	4 cylinders, 1,390 ccm

### E85 MultiFuel engine

Engine power	Injection technology	EC	Maximum torque	Cylinders, capacity
118 kW at 5,800 rpm	TSI®	CKMA	240 Nm at 1,500 – 4,500 rpm	4 cylinders, 1,390 ccm

## Dimensions



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

Length	4,769 – 4,874 mm
Width	1,820 mm
Height at kerb weight	1,455 – 1,490 mm
Wheelbase	2,711 mm
Minimum turning circle diameter <sup>a)</sup>	11.4 m
Front track <sup>a)</sup>	1,542 – 1,553 mm
Rear track <sup>a)</sup>	1,541 – 1,555 mm
Ground clearance at gross vehicle weight rating	120 mm



### NOTICE

- Take care when driving in car parks with protruding pavement elements or bollards, for example. These objects which protrude from the ground surface can damage the bumper and other vehicle components when you are parking your vehicle.
- Drive carefully over driveways, ramps, kerbstones and other objects. Low-lying vehicle components such as the bumper, spoiler and parts of the running gear, engine or exhaust system could be damaged.

<sup>a)</sup> Deviations are possible, depending on wheel and tyre size.

## Performance figures



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

For reasons of vehicle registration and vehicle taxation, the power output and performance of some engines may vary in some countries from the information given in this booklet.

### Petrol engines

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	Maximum speed
90 kW	CAXA	MG6	203 km/h <sup>a), b)</sup>
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 7	203 km/h <sup>c), b)</sup>
118 kW	CDAA	MG6	220 km/h
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 7	220 km/h <sup>c)</sup>
155 kW	CCZB	MG6	240 km/h <sup>a)</sup>
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 6	238 km/h
220 kW	BWS	DSG <sup>®</sup> 6 4MOTION	250 km/h

### Diesel engines

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	Maximum speed
77 kW with DPF	CAYC	MG6	195 km/h <sup>d)</sup>
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 7	193 km/h <sup>e)</sup>
77 kW BlueMotion with DPF		MG6	198 km/h <sup>d)</sup>
100 kW with DPF	CFFA	MG6	210 km/h <sup>d)</sup>
103 kW with DPF	CFFB	MG6	213 km/h <sup>d)</sup>
		MG6 4MOTION	210 km/h
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 6	211 km/h <sup>d)</sup>
125 kW with DPF	CFGB	MG6	227 km/h
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 6	223 km/h <sup>d)</sup>
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 6 4MOTION	220 km/h
125 kW with PRS	CLLA	– <sup>f)</sup>	– km/h <sup>f)</sup>

### Natural gas engine

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	Maximum speed
110 kW	CDGA	MG6	214 km/h <sup>g)</sup>
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 7	214 km/h <sup>h)</sup>

### E85 MultiFuel engine

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	Maximum speed
118 kW	CKMA	MG6	220 km/h <sup>i)</sup>
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 7	220 km/h <sup>j)</sup>



In certain vehicles with heavy duty suspension, the engine could be governed to provide a maximum speed of 210 km/h.



The performance figures were measured without equipment which may influence performance, such as a roof carrier or mud flaps.



- “ Maximum speed is reached in 5th gear.
- b) For vehicles with start/stop system: 205 km/h.
- c) Maximum speed is reached in 6th gear.
- d) Maximum speed is reached in 5th gear.
- e) Maximum speed is reached in 6th gear.
- f) Figures were not available at time of publication.
- g) Maximum speed is reached in 5th gear.
- h) Maximum speed is reached in 6th gear.
- i) Maximum speed is reached in 5th gear.
- j) Maximum speed is reached in 6th gear.

## Open and close

### Vehicle key set

#### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Vehicle key](#)
- [Spare key](#)
- [Indicator lamp in the vehicle key](#)
- [Replacing the battery](#)
- [Synchronising the vehicle key](#)

#### Additional information and warnings:

- Settings in the Volkswagen information system → [Volkswagen information system](#)
- Central locking system → [Central locking system](#)
- Starting and stopping the engine → [Starting and stopping the engine](#)
- Consumer information → [Consumer information](#)
- Manually closing or opening → [Manual opening or closing](#)

#### DANGER

Swallowing batteries with a diameter of 20 mm or other lithium batteries can result in severe or even fatal injuries within a very short period of time.

- Always keep the vehicle key, key ring with batteries, spare batteries, round cells and other batteries that are larger than 20 mm out of

the reach of children.

- Obtain medical assistance immediately if you suspect that someone has swallowed a battery.

## **⚠ WARNING**

Always take care when using the vehicle key otherwise you could cause accidents or injuries.

- Always take all vehicle keys with you each time you leave the vehicle. Children or unauthorised persons could lock the doors and boot lid, start the engine, switch on the ignition and thus operate electrical equipment, such as the electric windows.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the car in an emergency and will not be able to get themselves to safety. Depending on the time of year, for example, a locked vehicle can be subjected to very high or very low temperatures. This could cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially for small children.
- Never remove the vehicle key from the ignition if the vehicle is in motion. The steering column lock may be activated and you will no longer be able to steer the vehicle.

## Vehicle key



Fig. 19 Vehicle key

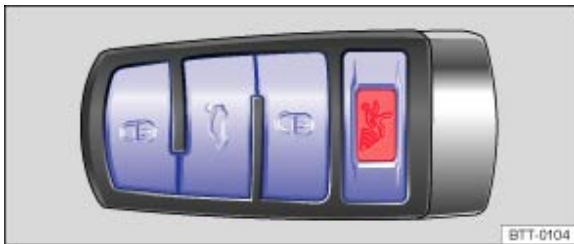


Fig. 20 Vehicle key with alarm button



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [⚠ Introduction](#)

### Vehicle key

The key can be used to lock and unlock the car from a distance.

The remote control transmitter and the battery are integrated in the key. The receiver is in the vehicle interior. The remote control range is several metres around the vehicle when the battery is fully charged.

If the vehicle cannot be opened and closed using the vehicle key, the vehicle key will have to be re-synchronised → [Synchronising the vehicle key](#) , or the battery in the key replaced → [Replacing the battery](#) .

Several vehicle keys can be used.

### Alarm button

Only press the alarm button in the event of an emergency → [Fig. 20!](#) Once the button is pressed, the horn is sounded and the vehicle lights flash. Press the alarm button again to switch off the alarm.

## Replacement key

The vehicle chassis number is required if you order a replacement key or additional remote control keys.

Every new key contains a microchip which must be encoded with the data for the vehicle's electronic immobilizer. A vehicle key will not work if it is not fitted with a microchip, or if the microchip has not been encoded. This also applies to keys which have been cut to fit the vehicle.

New vehicle keys or replacement keys are available from Volkswagen dealerships or from qualified workshops and authorised key services which are qualified to manufacture these keys.

New and replacement keys need to be synchronised before use → [Synchronising the vehicle key](#) .

### **!** NOTICE

**Every vehicle key contains electronic components. Protect the key from damage, moisture and excessive vibration.**

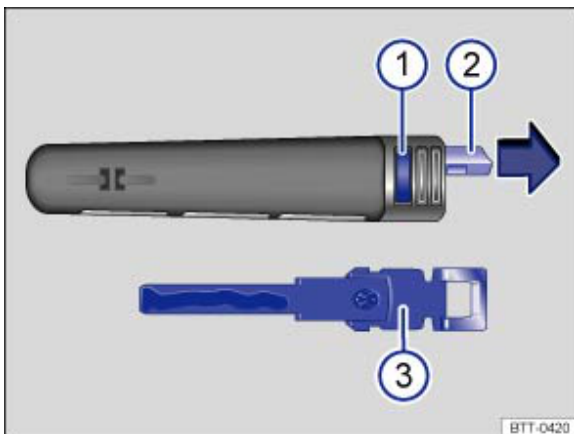
**i** Press the buttons on the key only if the corresponding function is actually needed. Pressing a button when the function is not required could lead to the vehicle being unlocked unintentionally or the alarm going off. This also applies even when you are not within the effective range.

**i** The function of the vehicle key can be affected temporarily if there is more than one transmitter in the direct vicinity working on the same frequency (e.g. a two-way radio or mobile telephone).

**i** Obstacles between the key and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and a weak battery can reduce the range of the remote control.

**i** If the buttons on the vehicle keys → [Fig. 19](#) or → [Fig. 20](#) or one of the central locking buttons → [Central locking system](#) are pressed repeatedly within a short period of time, the central locking system will switch off briefly to prevent overloading. The vehicle will then be unlocked. Lock the vehicle if necessary.

## Spare key



**Fig. 21** Vehicle key: press button ① and remove the spare key ③ by the ring ②

**📖** First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

A spare key → [Fig. 21](#) ③ is located in the vehicle key. It can be used for manual locking and unlocking.

**In the vehicle key** → [Fig. 21](#) :

**1** Press button to remove the spare key. Pull out the spare key.

2 Spare key in vehicle key with attachment ring, e.g. for securing to key ring.

3 Spare key removed.

To store the spare key in the opening, push it into the opening for the vehicle key until the spare key engages.

The spare key is intended to be used for the following tasks:

- Switching the front passenger front airbag on or off manually using the key switch → *Airbag system* .
- Locking or unlocking the stowage compartment on the front passenger side → *Stowing* .
- Manually locking and unlocking the vehicle → *Manual opening or closing* .

## Indicator lamp in the vehicle key

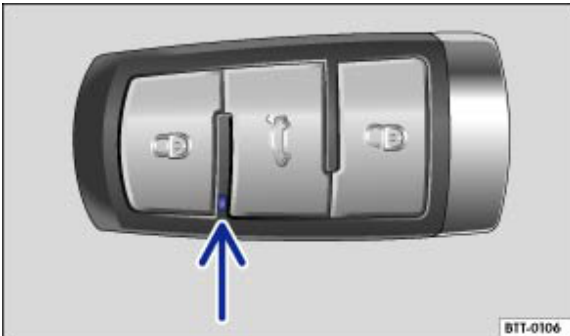


Fig. 22 Indicator lamp in the vehicle key

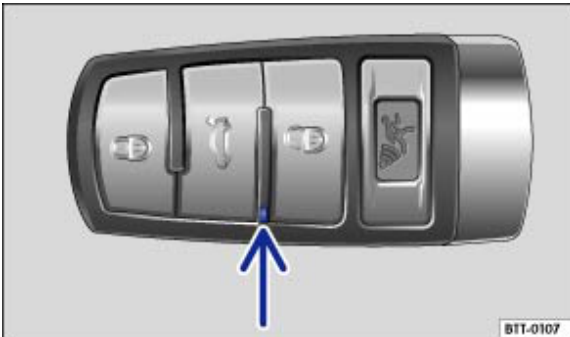


Fig. 23 Indicator lamp in the vehicle key

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

If a button in the vehicle key is pressed briefly, the indicator lamp (arrow) → *Fig. 22* or → *Fig. 23* flashes once. The lamp will flash several times if the button is pressed and held, e.g. convenience opening.

If the indicator lamp in the key does not light up when a button is pressed, the battery in the key should be replaced → *Replacing the battery* .

## Replacing the battery





Fig. 24 Opening the battery cover on the vehicle key

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → [Introduction](#)

Volkswagen recommends having the batteries changed by a qualified workshop.

The battery is located on the rear side of the vehicle key underneath a cover → [Fig. 24](#).

## Replacing the battery

- Remove the spare key from the vehicle key → [Spare key](#) .
- Push the cover → [Fig. 24 A](#) in the direction of the arrow and remove → .
- Remove the cover on the rear of the vehicle key with a suitable object in the direction of the arrow → [Fig. 24 B](#) .
- Using a suitable thin object, lever the battery out of the battery compartment → [Fig. 24 C](#) .
- Insert the new battery as shown → [Fig. 24 C](#) and push into the battery compartment against the direction of the arrow → .
- Fit the cover as shown → [Fig. 24 B](#) and push onto the vehicle key housing against the direction shown by the arrow until it engages → .
- Push the cover as shown → [Fig. 24 A](#) onto the vehicle key housing and push against the direction of the arrow until it engages.

### NOTICE

- **The vehicle key can be damaged if the battery is not changed properly.**
- **Unsuitable batteries can damage the vehicle key. Replace a discharged battery only with a new battery of the same voltage rating, size and specification.**
- **Ensure that the battery is fitted the right way round.**



Dispose of discharged batteries in accordance with regulations governing the protection of the environment.

## Synchronising the vehicle key

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → [Introduction](#)

It may no longer be possible to lock or unlock the vehicle with the remote control if the button is pressed repeatedly outside of the effective range of the vehicle key. If this is the case, the vehicle key should be re-synchronised as follows:

- Remove the spare key from the vehicle key → [Spare key](#) .
- Remove the cover of the door handle in the driver door → [Manual opening or closing](#) .
- Press the button in the vehicle key. Remain standing close to the vehicle.
- Unlock the vehicle with the spare key within one minute.
- Switch on the ignition using the vehicle key. The synchronisation process is complete.
- Push the spare key into the vehicle key and fit the cover.

## Central locking system

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

→ [Description of the central locking system](#)

- [Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the outside](#)
- [Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside](#)
- [Locking and unlocking a vehicle with](#)
- [SAFELOCK mechanism](#)
- [Anti-theft alarm](#)
- [Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm](#)

The central locking system will only work correctly when all doors and the boot lid are properly closed. The vehicle *cannot* be locked with the key if the driver door is open.

If the vehicle is unlocked and not used for a long time (e.g. in your own garage) the vehicle battery could discharge or the engine may not start.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views → [Exterior views](#)
- Personal convenience settings in the Volkswagen information system → [Manual opening or closing](#)
- Vehicle key set → [Vehicle key set](#)
- Doors → [Doors](#)
- Boot lid → [Boot lid](#)
- Electric windows → [Electric windows](#)
- Sliding/tilting roof → [Sliding/tilting roof](#)
- Towing a trailer → [Towing a trailer](#)
- Manually closing or opening → [Manual opening or closing](#)



## WARNING

**Improper use of the central locking system could cause serious injury.**

- **The central locking system locks all doors. Locking the vehicle from the inside may prevent the doors from being opened unintentionally and unauthorised persons from entering the vehicle. However, locked doors can delay assistance to passengers inside the vehicle in the event of an accident or emergency.**
- **Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. All doors can be locked from the inside using the central locking button. This may mean that people lock themselves in the vehicle. Persons locked in the vehicle may be subjected to very high or very low temperatures.**
- **Depending on the time of year, a locked vehicle can be subjected to very high or very low temperatures. This could cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially for small children.**
- **Never leave anyone inside a locked vehicle. People in the vehicle could become trapped in an emergency and will not be able to get themselves to safety.**
- **Doors and the boot lid should therefore only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in their path.**

## Description of the central locking system



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)


The central locking system enables you to lock and unlock all the doors, the boot lid and the tank flap from one point:

- From outside the vehicle with the vehicle key → [Vehicle key set](#) .
- From outside with Keyless-Access → [Locking and unlocking a vehicle with Keyless Access](#) .
- From inside the vehicle with the central locking button → [Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside](#) .

Special functions for the central locking system can be activated or deactivated using the **Convenience** submenu in the **Settings** menu or by a qualified workshop → [Volkswagen information system](#) .

The doors and the boot lid can be locked or unlocked manually if the vehicle key or central locking system fails.

### Automatic locking (Auto Lock)


The vehicle may lock itself automatically as of a speed of approximately 15 km/h (10 mph) → *Volkswagen information system* . The indicator lamp  in the central locking button will light up yellow when the vehicle is locked → *Fig. 27* .


### Automatic unlocking (Auto Unlock)

When the vehicle key is removed from the ignition lock, the vehicle will automatically unlock all doors and the boot lid if necessary → *Volkswagen information system* .

### Locking the vehicle after the airbags have been deployed

The entire vehicle is unlocked if the airbags are activated during an accident. Depending on the level of damage, the vehicle can be locked after an accident as follows.

Function	Action
Locking the vehicle with the central locking button:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Switch off ignition.</li> <li>– Open one of the vehicle doors once.</li> <li>– Press central locking button  .</li> </ul>
Locking the vehicle using the vehicle key:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Switch off the ignition.</li> <li><b>OR:</b> remove the key from the ignition lock.</li> <li>– Open one of the vehicle doors once.</li> <li>– Lock the vehicle with the vehicle key.</li> </ul>

 If the buttons → *Vehicle key set* on the vehicle key or one of the central locking buttons → *Central locking system* are pressed repeatedly within a short period of time, the central locking system will switch off briefly to prevent overloading. The vehicle is then unlocked for approximately 30 seconds. If no door or the tailgate are opened during this time the vehicle will lock again automatically.

### Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the outside






**Fig. 25** Buttons in the vehicle key




**Fig. 26** Vehicle key with alarm button



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  *Introduction*

Function	Buttons to be used in the vehicle key → Fig. 25 or → Fig. 26
Unlocking the vehicle.	Press the  button. Press and hold for convenience opening.
Locking the vehicle.	Press the  button. Press and hold for convenience closing.
Unlocking the boot lid.	Press the  button. The boot lid opens upwards automatically → <a href="#">Boot lid</a> .

**Please note:** depending on the settings made for the central locking system in the **Convenience** submenu, all of the doors and the boot lid may only be unlocked once the  button has been pressed twice → [Volkswagen information system](#) .

The vehicle key will lock or unlock the vehicle only when the battery has enough power and the key is located within a few metres of the vehicle.

- When the vehicle is locked, all turn signals will flash *once* as confirmation.
- When the vehicle is unlocked, all turn signals will flash *twice* as confirmation.

If the turn signals *do not* flash as confirmation, at least one of the doors or the boot lid is not closed.

The vehicle cannot be locked using the vehicle key if the driver door is still open. The vehicle will be locked again automatically if you do not open one of the doors or the boot lid a few seconds after unlocking the car. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlocking button is pressed by mistake.

### Convenience opening and closing

- See electric windows – functions → [Electric windows](#) .
- See sliding/tilting roof – functions → [Sliding/tilting roof](#) .

## Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside




**Fig. 27** In the driver door: central locking button

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

**Press the button** → [Fig. 27](#) :

 Unlocks the vehicle.

 Locks the vehicle.



The central locking button works when the ignition is switched on and when it is switched off. *All* doors must be closed.


If the vehicle has been locked with the vehicle key, the central locking button does not work.

Please note the following when using the central locking button to lock the vehicle:

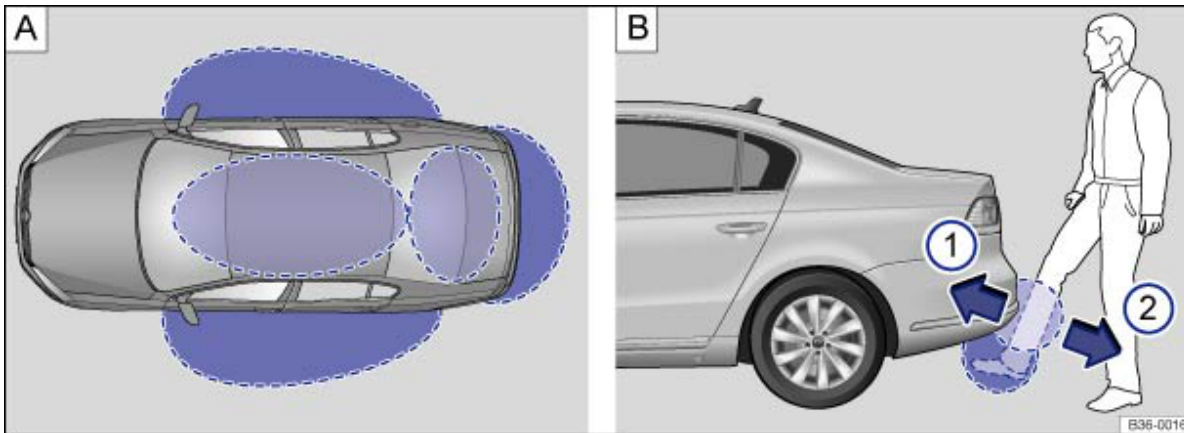
- The indicator lamp  in the button → [Fig. 27](#) will light up yellow when all doors and the boot lid are locked.



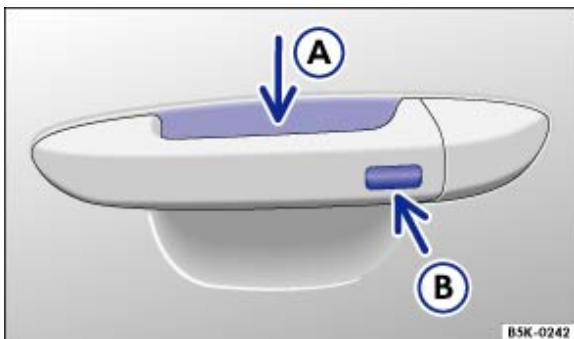
- The indicator lamp  in the button → [Fig. 27](#) will light up yellow when all doors and the boot lid are locked.
- The SAFELOCK mechanism **will not** be activated → [SAFELOCK mechanism](#) .
- The anti-theft alarm will **not** be activated.
- It is not possible to open the doors or boot lid from *outside*, for instance when stopped at traffic lights.
- The doors can be unlocked and opened from inside by pulling the door release handle. The indicator lamp  goes out. You may have to pull the door release lever more than once.

The vehicle will unlock automatically once the vehicle has come to a standstill and the vehicle key has been removed, if the automatic unlocking function is active → [Description of the central locking system](#) , or the  → [Fig. 27](#) button is pressed.

## Locking and unlocking a vehicle with Keyless Access




**Fig. 28** Keyless Access locking and starting system: (A) operating ranges. (B) Boot lid with sensor-controlled opening (Easy open)



**Fig. 29** Keyless Access locking and starting system: sensor  for locking on the inside of the door handle and sensor  for unlocking on the outside of the door handle

### First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

Keyless Access is a locking and starting system that allows the vehicle to be locked or unlocked without using the key. The only requirements are that a valid vehicle key is located in the operating range of the vehicle → [Fig. 28 A](#) and that one of the door handle sensors → [Fig. 29](#) is touched or the Volkswagen badge on the boot lid is activated → [Boot lid](#) → .

### General notes

If a valid vehicle key is in the operating range → [Fig. 28 A](#), the Keyless Access locking and starting system authorises the key to obtain access to the vehicle as soon as the sensor on the door handle is touched or the Volkswagen badge on the boot lid is activated. The following functions can then be performed without active use of the vehicle key:

- Keyless entry: unlocks the vehicle via the 4 door handles or the Volkswagen badge on the boot lid.
- Keyless Go: starts the engine and drives. To do this, there must be a valid vehicle key inside the vehicle, and the starter button must be pressed → [Starting and stopping the engine](#) .
- Keyless Exit: locks the vehicle via one of the 4 door handles.

- Easy open: opens the boot lid through a foot movement underneath the rear bumper.

The central locking system functions as with the *normal* unlocking and locking system. Only the control elements are different.

The vehicle unlocking procedure is confirmed by all the turn signals flashing *twice* and the locking procedure by the turn signals flashing *once*.

The vehicle will be locked again if you do not open one of the doors or the boot lid a few seconds after unlocking the car.

### Unlocking and opening the doors (Keyless Entry)

- Grip the door handle. In the process, the sensor → [Fig. 29](#) Ⓐ (arrow) in the door handle is touched and the vehicle is unlocked.
- Open the door.

### Closing and locking the doors (Keyless Exit)

- Close the driver door.
- Touch the sensor in the door handle → [Fig. 29](#) Ⓑ (arrow) *once*. The car is locked with the SAFELOCK mechanism → [SAFELOCK mechanism](#) active. The door being used must be closed.
- Touch the sensor → [Fig. 29](#) Ⓑ (arrow) in the door handle *twice* to lock the vehicle without the SAFELOCK mechanism → [SAFELOCK mechanism](#) .

### Locking and unlocking the boot lid

If the vehicle is locked, the boot lid will be unlocked automatically when opened if a valid vehicle key is located within the operating range of the boot lid → [Fig. 28 A](#).

- Open and close the boot lid *as normal* → [Boot lid](#) .

The boot lid is locked automatically after it is closed. The boot lid will not lock automatically after it is closed if the following does *not* happen:

- The vehicle is completely unlocked.
- There is a valid vehicle key inside the vehicle.

### Boot lid with sensor-controlled opening (Easy open)

Once a valid vehicle key enters the operating range of the boot lid → [Fig. 28 A](#), the boot lid can be unlocked and opened by moving your foot in the sensor area underneath the rear bumper → [Fig. 28 B](#).

- Switch off the ignition.
- Stand in front of the middle of the rear bumper.
- Make quick movements with your foot and shin as close as possible to the bumper. The shin must be over the sensor area and foot underneath it → [Fig. 28 B](#) ⓐ.
- Quickly remove foot and shin once more from the sensor areas → [Fig. 28 B](#) ⓑ. The boot lid will then open.

The high-level brake light will light up once to show that the boot lid is being opened using Easy open.

The boot lid will lock again automatically, provided that the vehicle was locked beforehand and as long as there is no valid vehicle key inside the vehicle.

Easy open is not available or has limited availability in the following situations (examples):

- If the rear bumper is dirty.
- If the rear bumper has become wet from salty water, e.g. after driving through streets with salt on them.
- If the electrically folding ball coupling is swivelled out.
- If the vehicle is towing bracket has been retrofitted.

During heavy rain, Easy open will be deactivated automatically in order to prevent an incorrect activation, e.g. by a flow of water.

Easy open can be set to remain on or off via the **Convenience settings** in the Volkswagen information system → [Volkswagen information system](#) .

## Response when locking the vehicle with a second vehicle key


If a vehicle key is located inside the vehicle, the vehicle will only lock from the outside if a second valid vehicle key is located outside the vehicle, within the keyless access system's operating range.

## Automatic switch-off of the sensors

If the vehicle has not been locked or unlocked for a long period of time, the sensors on the front passenger door and rear doors will switch off automatically.

If a sensor in one of the door handles on a locked vehicle is activated unusually often, for example, if branches from a hedge are rubbing against it, all of the proximity sensors will be switched off for some time.

The sensors are reactivated if any of the following takes place:

- Some time has passed.
- **OR:** the vehicle is unlocked using the  button in the remote control key.
- **OR:** opening the boot lid.
- **OR:** the vehicle is unlocked with the spare key.

## Convenience functions

To use **convenience closing** for all electric windows and the sliding/tilting roof, hold your finger on the locking sensor → [Fig. 29](#) ® (arrow) in the door handle for a few seconds until the windows and/or the sliding/tilting roof have closed.

When a door handle is grasped, **door opening** will occur corresponding to the settings activated in the Volkswagen information system **Settings – Convenience** menu → [Volkswagen information system](#) .


### CAUTION


Once a valid vehicle key enters the operating range of the boot lid the Easy open function can sometimes be triggered and the boot lid can open, e.g. when sweeping underneath the rear bumper, by a powerful jet of water or steam or with maintenance and repair works in the rear bumper area. If the boot lid is opened by mistake it can cause damage to persons in the path of the boot lid and material damage.


- Always make sure there are no valid vehicle keys left unattended in the operating range of the boot lid.
- Always switch off the Easy open function via the Volkswagen information system before any maintenance and repair works.
- Always switch off the Easy open function via the Volkswagen information system before the vehicle is being washed.
- Always switch off the Easy open function via the Volkswagen information system before fitting a bicycle rack or towing a trailer.


 **NOTICE**

It is possible that sensors in the door handles will be activated by a powerful jet of water or steam if a valid vehicle key is within its operating range at the same time. If at least one window is open and the sensor → [Fig. 29](#) ® (arrow) in a door handle is permanently activated, all windows close. It is possible that all windows will open if the jet of water or steam is moved away from the door handle sensor → [Fig. 29](#) ® (arrow) briefly and then moved back onto it → [Convenience functions](#) .

 It may not be possible to lock or unlock the vehicle using Keyless Access if the vehicle battery or battery in the vehicle key is weak or discharged. The vehicle can be locked or unlocked manually → [Manual opening or closing](#) .




 If there is no valid vehicle key in the vehicle or if this is not recognised, a corresponding display will be shown in the instrument cluster display. This may occur if the vehicle key is obstructed by another radio signal or is covered by another item, e.g. an aluminium suitcase or briefcase.


 The function of the door handle sensors may be limited by dirt, e.g. by salty deposits. Clean the vehicle as necessary → [Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior](#) .

 A vehicle with an automatic gearbox can only be locked if the selector lever is in position P.

## SAFELOCK mechanism

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Function	Action
Locking the vehicle and activating the SAFELOCK mechanism.	Press the  button on the vehicle key <i>once</i> .
Locking the vehicle without activating the SAFELOCK mechanism.	Press the  button on the vehicle key <i>twice</i> .
	Press the central locking button  in the driver door <i>once</i> .

The SAFELOCK mechanism deactivates the door opening levers if the vehicle has been locked. This makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle. The doors can no longer be opened from the inside →  .

When the ignition is switched off, the instrument cluster display will inform you about the activated SAFELOCK mechanism (**SAFE locking** or **SAFELOCK**).

### The following applies when the SAFELOCK mechanism is deactivated:

- The vehicle can be unlocked and opened from the inside using the door release lever.
- The anti-theft alarm is active.
- The interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm are deactivated.

### Indicator lamp in the driver door

After locking the vehicle:	Meaning
A red LED flashes for approximately 2 seconds, firstly at short intervals and then more slowly.	The SAFELOCK mechanism is activated.
A red LED flashes for approximately 2 seconds and then goes out. The LED light starts to flash again after approximately 30 seconds.	The SAFELOCK mechanism is deactivated.
A red LED is lit permanently for approximately 30 seconds.	Fault in the locking system. Go to a qualified workshop.

 **WARNING**

**Always take care when using the SAFELOCK mechanism otherwise you could cause accidents or injuries.**

- **Never leave anybody in the vehicle if the vehicle has been locked using the vehicle key. The doors can no longer be opened from the inside once the SAFELOCK mechanism is activated.**
- **Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency. People could become trapped inside in an emergency if the doors cannot be unlocked.**

## Anti-theft alarm



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

The anti-theft alarm makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle or steal it.

The anti-theft alarm is activated automatically when the vehicle is locked using the vehicle key.


### When does the system trigger an alarm?



The anti-theft alarm will sound an acoustic alarm for approximately 30 seconds and trigger a visible warning for up to 5 minutes if any of the following unauthorised actions are performed while the vehicle is locked:


- When a door that was unlocked mechanically with the spare key → [Vehicle key set](#) is opened.
- A door is opened.
- The bonnet is opened.
- The boot lid is opened.
- The ignition is switched on using an invalid key.
- The vehicle battery is disconnected.
- Movement inside the vehicle (in vehicles with interior monitoring → [Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm](#) ).
- Towing of the vehicle (vehicles with anti-tow alarm only → [Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm](#) ).
- Lifting of the vehicle (vehicles with anti-tow alarm only → [Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm](#) ).
- The vehicle is transported on a car ferry or by rail (vehicles with anti-tow alarm or interior monitoring) → [Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm](#) .
- A trailer that is connected to the anti-theft alarm system is removed → [Towing a trailer](#) .


### Switching off the alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the unlock button on the vehicle key or switch on the ignition using a valid vehicle key. In vehicles with Keyless Access, the alarm can be switched off by gripping the door handle → [Locking and unlocking a vehicle with Keyless Access](#) .

 The alarm will be triggered again if a person gains access to the same or a different secured zone after the alarm has been switched off. For example, if the boot lid is opened after a door had been opened.

 The anti-theft alarm will **not** be activated if the vehicle is locked from the inside using the central locking button  .

 If you unlock the driver door mechanically using the spare key, only the driver door is unlocked, and not the whole vehicle. The SAFELOCK mechanism on all doors is not deactivated (the doors are however not unlocked) and the central locking button is not activated until the ignition is switched on.

 The anti-theft alarm will not function correctly if the vehicle battery is weak or discharged.

## Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm



**Fig. 30** Next to the driver seat: button for switching off the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

The interior monitoring system will trigger an alarm if movement is detected inside the vehicle when the vehicle is locked.

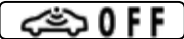
The anti-tow alarm will be triggered if the vehicle is lifted.

### Switching on the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm


Lock the vehicle using the vehicle key. When the anti-theft alarm is switched on, the interior monitoring and anti-tow alarm are also active.

### Switching off the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm

The orientation lighting in the button → *Fig. 30* must be lit up when switching the systems off. To switch the orientation lighting on, remove the key from the ignition or open one of the doors.

- Press the  button → *Fig. 30*. A yellow indicator lamp will light up in the button until the vehicle is locked.
- Close all doors and the boot lid.
- Lock the vehicle using the vehicle key. The interior monitoring and anti-towing alarm are switched off until the next time the vehicle is locked.

Therefore switch off the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm before locking the vehicle in any of the following, or similar, situations:

- If you leave animals inside the vehicle for a short period  → *Central locking system* .
- If the vehicle is to be loaded onto another vehicle.
- If the vehicle is transported (e.g. on a ferry).
- If the vehicle is going to be towed with one axle off the ground.

### Risk of false alarm

Interior monitoring can work properly only if the vehicle is closed fully. Observe legal requirements. A false alarm could be triggered in any of the following circumstances:

- If one or more windows are fully or partly open.
- If the stowage compartment in the roof console (glasses compartment) is open.
- If the sliding/tilting roof is fully or partly open.
- If items such as loose pieces of paper and items attached to the interior mirror (e.g. air-fresheners) are left in the vehicle.
- If a mobile telephone that is left in the vehicle vibrates.



If doors or the boot lid are still open when the anti-theft alarm is activated, only the anti-theft alarm is activated. Interior monitoring and the anti-tow alarm are not activated until all doors and the boot lid are closed.

## Doors

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Warning lamp](#)
- [Childproof lock](#)

#### Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views → [Exterior views](#)
- Vehicle key set → [Vehicle key set](#)
- Central locking system → [Central locking system](#)
- Manually closing or opening → [Manual opening or closing](#)

### WARNING

A door which is not closed properly could open suddenly while the vehicle is in motion. This could lead to severe injuries.

- Stop as soon as possible and close the door.
- Make sure that the door is closed properly and that the lock has engaged. The closed door must be flush with the surrounding body panels.
- Therefore doors should only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in their path.



### WARNING

A door which is being held open by the door check may close in strong winds or if the vehicle is on a slope. This could lead to injuries.



- Always keep a good grip on the handle when opening and closing doors.

### Warning lamp

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Lit up	Possible cause	Correction
	At least one vehicle door is opened or not properly closed.	 <b>Do not drive on!</b> Open the appropriate vehicle door and then close it again.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.

A warning lamp  or  lights up in the instrument cluster display if a door is open or not properly closed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, symbols may be displayed in the instrument cluster instead of warning lamps. These symbols are also visible when the ignition is switched off. The display will go out approximately 15 seconds after the vehicle has been locked.

### Childproof lock



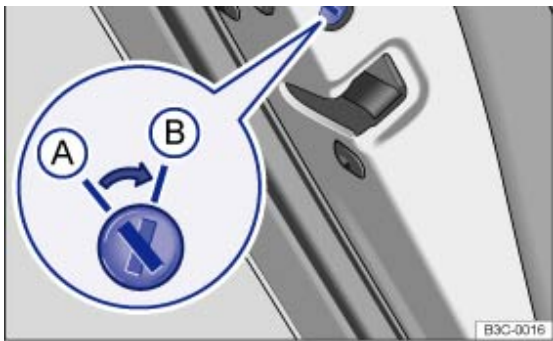


Fig. 31 In the left rear door: childproof lock Ⓐ switched off, Ⓑ switched on

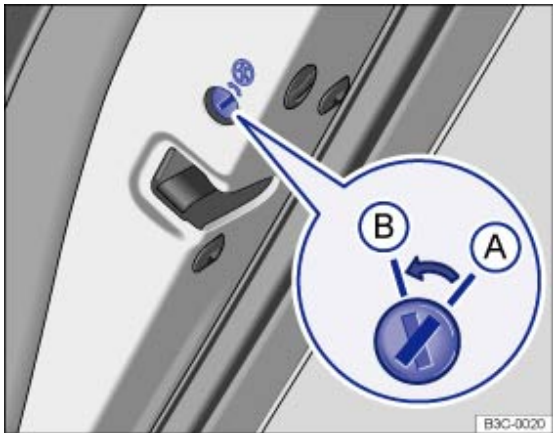


Fig. 32 In the right rear door: childproof lock Ⓐ switched off, Ⓑ switched on

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

The childproof lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside, e.g. so that children cannot open the doors accidentally while the vehicle is in motion. When the childproof lock is activated the door can only be opened from the outside.

### Switching the childproof lock on or off

- Unlock the vehicle and open the appropriate rear door.
- Use the spare key to turn the slot to the desired position.

Slot position → [Fig. 31](#) or → [Fig. 32](#):

**A** Childproof lock is switched off.

**B** Childproof lock is switched on.

## WARNING

When the childproof lock is activated, the door cannot be opened from the inside.

- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle when the doors are locked. This may mean that these people lock themselves in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency and will not be able to get themselves to safety. Persons locked in the vehicle may be subjected to very high or very low temperatures.
- Depending on the time of year, a locked vehicle can be subjected to very high or very low temperatures. This could cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially for small children.

## Boot lid



## Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Warning lamp*
- *Opening the boot lid*
- *Closing the boot lid*

### Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views → *Exterior views*
- Central locking system → *Central locking system*
- Transporting → *Driving notes*
- Manually closing or opening → *Manual opening or closing*

## WARNING

Always take care when unlocking, opening or closing the boot lid otherwise you could cause accidents and serious injuries.

- The boot lid should only be opened or closed when no-one is in the direct path of the boot lid as it moves.
- After closing the boot lid, check to make sure that it is closed and locked correctly so that it does not open while the vehicle is in motion. The closed boot lid must be flush with the surrounding body panels.
- Always keep the boot lid closed while the vehicle is moving so that no poisonous exhaust fumes can enter the vehicle interior.
- Never open the boot lid if a load is attached to it, e.g. a rack or luggage carrier. In the same way, the boot lid cannot be opened if there are objects, e.g. bicycles, attached to it. Once opened, the boot lid may close under its own weight due to the additional load. Support the boot lid as necessary or remove the load from the surface.
- Close and lock the boot lid and all vehicle doors when the vehicle is not in use. Ensure that no one remains in the vehicle.
- Never leave children playing unattended in or around the vehicle, especially when the boot lid is open. Children could climb into the luggage compartment and shut the boot lid, thereby trapping themselves inside. Depending on the time of year, a locked vehicle can be subjected to very high or very low temperatures. This could cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially for small children.

- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could use the vehicle key or central locking button to lock the vehicle and thereby trap themselves inside.



## ! NOTICE

Before opening the boot lid, please check that there is enough space to open and close the boot lid, e.g. when towing a trailer or when in a garage.


## Warning lamp



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  *Introduction*

Lit up	Possible cause	Correction
	The boot lid is open or not properly closed.	 <b>Do not drive on!</b> Open the boot lid and then close it again.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.

A warning lamp  lights up in the instrument cluster display if the boot lid is open or not properly closed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, symbols may be displayed in the instrument cluster instead of warning lamps. These symbols are also visible when the ignition is switched off. The display will go out approximately 15 seconds after the vehicle has been locked.

## ! WARNING

A boot lid which is not closed properly could open suddenly while the vehicle is in motion. This could lead to severe injuries.

- Stop as soon as possible and close the boot lid.
- After closing the boot lid, always check that it is properly secured.

## Opening the boot lid

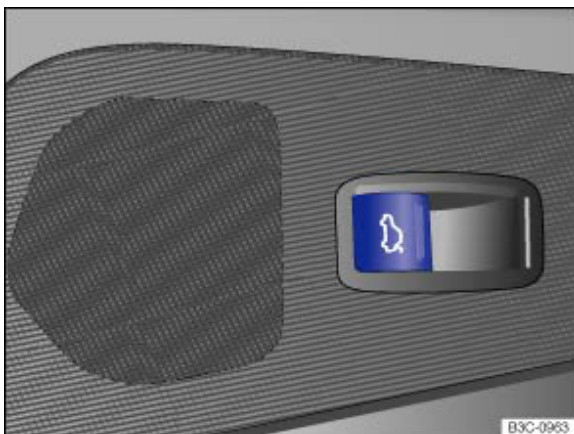
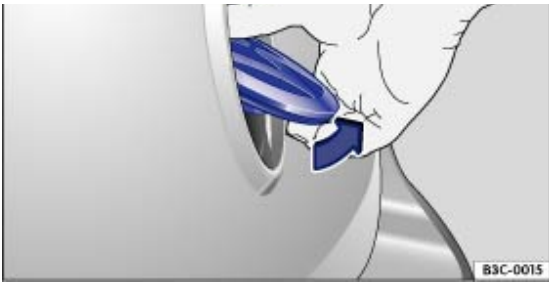


Fig. 33 In the driver door: release button for the boot lid





**Fig. 34** Opening the boot lid from the outside

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → [Introduction](#)

Before opening the boot lid, always remove any items of luggage that are on the luggage carrier attached to the boot lid → .

### Opening boot lid with the button in the driver door

Pull up the button in the driver door → [Fig. 33](#). The boot lid will then open itself.

The button works even when the ignition is switched off.

### Opening the boot lid using the vehicle key

Keep the button in the vehicle key pressed down until the boot lid opens itself → [Central locking system](#).

### Opening boot lid with sensor-controlled opening (Easy open)

In vehicles with Keyless Access the boot lid can be opened by moving your foot in the sensor area underneath the rear bumper → [Central locking system](#).

### Opening using the Volkswagen emblem

- Unlock the vehicle or open one of the doors.
- Press the top part of the Volkswagen badge → [Fig. 34](#) with your thumb and push out the bottom part of the badge. The boot lid will then open itself.

## WARNING

Serious injuries could occur if the boot lid is unlocked or opened incorrectly or without due care and attention.

- The boot lid may not always be detected as being unlocked if there is a carrier and items attached to it. The boot lid may open suddenly while the vehicle is in motion if it is unlocked.

At outside temperatures of less than 0°C (+32°F), the gas struts cannot always lift the opened boot lid automatically. In this instance, guide the boot lid up by hand.

### Closing the boot lid





Fig. 35 Open boot lid: handle recesses for closing the boot lid



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)


## Closing boot lid

- Grip one of the recesses in the interior trim of the boot lid → [Fig. 35](#) (arrow).
- Pull the boot lid down with some force until it engages in the lock.
- Check that the boot lid is securely locked.

## Locking the boot lid

The vehicle will be locked again automatically if you do not open one of the doors or the boot lid approximately 30 seconds after unlocking the car. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlocking button is pressed by mistake.

The boot lid can only be locked when it is properly closed and engaged.

- The boot lid is also locked by the central locking system.
- If the boot lid of a locked vehicle is unlocked using the  button in the vehicle key, it will lock again as soon as it is closed.
- If the boot lid is closed but not locked, it will be locked automatically once the vehicle reaches a speed of approximately 9 km/h (6 mph).

## WARNING

Serious injuries could occur if the boot lid is closed incorrectly or without due care and attention.

- Never leave children playing unattended in or around the vehicle, especially when the boot lid is open. Children could climb into the luggage compartment and shut the boot lid, thereby trapping themselves inside. Depending on the time of year, a locked vehicle can be subjected to extremely high or low temperatures. This could cause serious injuries or illness. It could even have fatal consequences.



Before closing the boot lid, check that the vehicle key is not in the luggage compartment.

## Electric windows

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Opening or closing the windows electrically](#)
- [Electric windows – functions](#)
- [Roll-back function for the electric windows](#)

Additional information and warnings

**Additional information and warnings:**

- Volkswagen information system → *Volkswagen information system*
- Central locking system → *Central locking system*

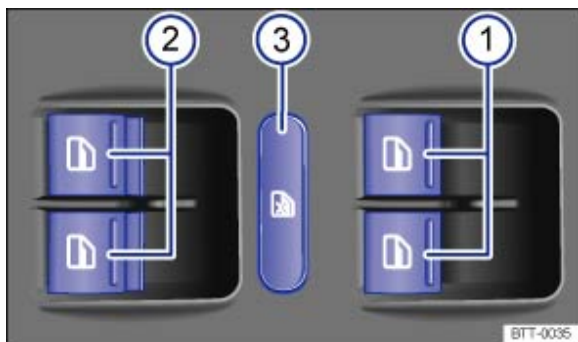
**⚠ WARNING**

Always take care when using the electric windows otherwise you could cause accidents or injuries.

- The electric windows should only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in their operating area.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle when the vehicle is locked. The windows can no longer be opened in an emergency.
- Always take all vehicle keys with you each time you leave the vehicle. The windows can still be operated using the buttons several minutes after the ignition has been switched off, provided the driver door and the front passenger door are not opened.
- When transporting children on the rear bench seat, the rear electric windows should always be deactivated using the safety button so that they cannot be opened or closed.

**⚠ NOTICE**

During sudden rain showers, water could enter the vehicle interior via open windows and cause damage to the vehicle.

**Opening or closing the windows electrically**

**Fig. 36** In the driver door: buttons for the front and rear electric windows




First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → *Introduction*

**Buttons in the driver door**

Key for → *Fig. 36*:

- 1 For the windows in the front doors.
- 2 For the windows in the rear doors.
- 3 Safety button.

## Opening and closing the windows

Function	Action
Opening:	Press the  button.
Closing:	Pull the  button.
Stopping the one-touch function:	Press or pull the button for the appropriate window again.
	The safety switch → <a href="#">Fig. 36</a> Ⓞ disables the electric window buttons in the rear doors. The yellow indicator lamp in the button will light up.

The windows can still be operated using the buttons several minutes after the ignition has been switched off, provided the driver door and the front passenger door are not opened. If the vehicle key is removed from the ignition lock and the driver door is opened, all electric windows can be opened or closed by operating and holding the corresponding window button in the driver door. After a few seconds, convenience opening / closing is started → [Convenience opening and closing](#) .

## Electric windows – functions



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### One-touch opening and closing

The one-touch opening and closing function makes it possible to fully open and close the windows. The individual buttons do not have to be held down to do this.

**For one-touch closing:** pull the button for the appropriate window up briefly into the second position.

**For one-touch opening:** press the button for the appropriate window down briefly into the second position.

**Stopping the one-touch function:** press or pull the button for the appropriate window again.

### Restoring one-touch opening and closing

The one-touch opening and closing function is deactivated if the vehicle battery has been disconnected or discharged while windows were not fully closed. The function will have to be reset.

- Close all windows and doors.
- Pull up the button for the window and hold it in this position for at least one second.
- Let go of the button then pull it up again and hold it in this position. The one-touch function is now ready for operation.

The one-touch function can be restored for individual windows or for several windows at the same time.

### Convenience opening and closing

The windows can be opened and closed from outside the vehicle using the vehicle key:

- Press and hold the locking or unlocking button in the vehicle key. All electric windows will be either opened or closed.
- To interrupt this function, let go of the locking or unlocking button.

During convenience closing, first the windows and then the sliding/tilting roof will be closed.

The **Settings - Convenience** menu can be used to make various settings for operating the windows → [Volkswagen information system](#) .

**! WARNING**

Always take care when using the electric windows otherwise you could cause accidents or injuries.

- The electric windows should only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in their operating area.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle when the vehicle is locked. The windows can no longer be opened in an emergency.
- Always take all vehicle keys with you each time you leave the vehicle. The windows can still be operated using the buttons several minutes after the ignition has been switched off, provided the driver door and the front passenger door are not opened.
- When transporting children on the rear bench seat, the rear electric windows should always be deactivated using the safety button so that they cannot be opened or closed.



The one-touch function and roll-back function will not work if there is a fault in the electric windows. Go to a qualified workshop.

## Roll-back function for the electric windows



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

The roll-back function for the electric windows can reduce the risk of injuries when the windows are closing → . If the one-touch closing function for a window does not work because it is stiff or is being obstructed, the window will automatically open again.

- Check to see why the window has not closed.
- Try to close the window again.
- If the window is not able to close twice within about 10 seconds because it is stiff or is being obstructed, automatic closing is switched off for approximately 10 seconds.
- If the window is still obstructed, the window stops at this point. To close the window without the **roll-back function**, press the button again within 10 seconds → .

## Closing the window without the roll-back function

- Try to close the window again within about 10 seconds by holding the button. **The roll-back function is deactivated for a small function area of the closing path!**
- If the closing process takes longer than approximately 10 seconds, the roll-back function will be reactivated. The window will then stop again if it meets another obstacle.
- Please go to a qualified workshop if the window still cannot be closed.

**! WARNING**

Closing the electric windows without the roll-back function could lead to severe injuries.

- Always take care when closing electric windows.
- Ensure that nobody obstructs the path of the electric windows, especially if the roll-back function is not active.
- The roll-back function does not prevent fingers or other body parts getting pinched against the window frame and becoming injured.



The roll-back function is also activated if the windows are closed using the vehicle key for convenience closing → [Convenience opening and closing](#)

## Sliding/tilting roof

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Opening or closing the sliding/tilting roof*
- *Sliding/tilting roof – functions*
- *Roll-back function for the sliding/tilting roof*
- *Solar fan and solar roof*

#### **Additional information and warnings:**

- Volkswagen information system → *Volkswagen information system*
- Central locking system → *Central locking system*
- Manually closing or opening → *Manual opening or closing*


### **WARNING**

**Always take care when using the sliding/tilting roof otherwise you could cause accidents or injuries.**

- **Therefore the sliding/tilting roof should only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in its operating area.**
- **Always take all vehicle keys with you each time you leave the vehicle.**
- **Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the car, particularly if they have access to the vehicle key. Unsupervised use of the vehicle key can lock the vehicle, start the engine, switch on the ignition and operate the sliding/tilting roof.**
- **The sliding/tilting roof can be operated for a short period after the ignition has been switched off, provided the driver door and front passenger door are not opened.**

### **NOTICE**

- **In order to avoid damage in winter, remove ice and snow from the roof of the vehicle before opening or tilting the sliding/tilting roof.**
- **The sliding/tilting roof should always be closed when you leave the vehicle or when it starts to rain. Any rain entering the vehicle when the sliding/tilting roof is open could cause considerable damage to the electrical system. Other damage to the vehicle could also follow.**

 Leaves and other loose items must be removed from the guide rails of the sliding/tilting roof at regular intervals, using a vacuum cleaner or by hand.





If there is a fault in the sliding/tilting roof, the roll-back function will not work properly. Go to a qualified workshop.

## Opening or closing the sliding/tilting roof

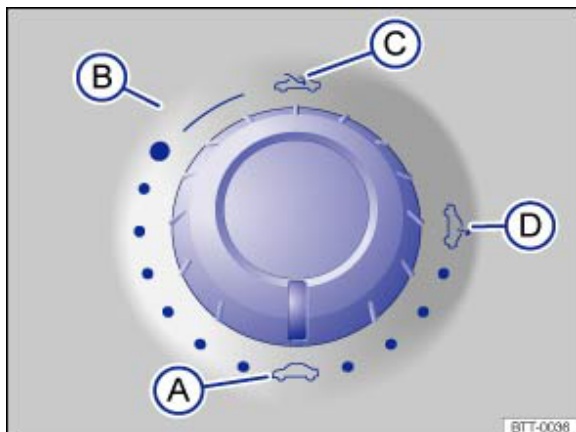


Fig. 37 Roof: rotary switch for the sliding/tilting roof



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

Turn the rotary knob → [Fig. 37](#) to the required position to select the following positions for the sliding/tilting roof:

- A** Closed
- B** In the convenience position
- C** Fully open
- D** Tilted

The sliding/tilting roof will work only when the ignition is switched on. The sliding/tilting roof can be operated several minutes after the ignition has been switched off, provided the driver door and front passenger door are not opened.

### Sliding headliner

The sliding headliner opens with the sliding/tilting roof and can be closed manually when the roof is closed.

## Sliding/tilting roof – functions



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

### Convenience closing

The sliding/tilting roof can be closed from outside the vehicle using the vehicle key:

- Press and hold the lock button on the vehicle key. The sliding/tilting roof closes.
- Let go of the lock button to interrupt this function.

During convenience closing, first the windows and then the sliding/tilting roof closes.

The **Settings - Convenience - Window setting** menu can be used to make various settings for operating the windows and sliding/tilting roof  
→ [Volkswagen information system](#) .



The sliding/tilting roof rotary switch remains in the last position selected if the roof is closed from outside the vehicle using convenience closing. It will




have to be re-positioned the next time you drive.

## Roll-back function for the sliding/tilting roof



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The roll-back function can reduce the risk of injury when closing the sliding/tilting roof → . If the sliding/tilting roof is not able to close because it is stuck or obstructed, then it will open again automatically.

- Check to see why the sliding/tilting roof has not closed.
- Try to close the sliding/tilting roof again.
- If the sliding/tilting roof is still obstructed, the sliding/tilting roof stops at this point. The sliding/tilting roof then closes without the roll-back function.

### Closing the sliding/tilting roof without the roll-back function

- Push the rotary knob at the front in position → [Fig. 37 @](#) until the sliding/tilting roof is fully closed.
- **The sliding/tilting roof then closes without the roll-back function.**
- Please go to a qualified workshop if the sliding/tilting still cannot be closed.

## WARNING

Closing the sliding/tilting roof without the roll-back function could lead to severe injuries.

- **Always close the sliding/tilting roof carefully.**
- **Ensure that nobody obstructs the operating area of the sliding/tilting roof, especially if the roll-back function is not active.**
- **The roll-back function does not prevent fingers or other body parts getting pinched against the roof frame and becoming injured.**



The roll-back function is also activated if the windows and sliding/tilting roof are closed using the vehicle key for convenience closing

→ [Convenience opening and closing](#) .

## Solar fan and solar roof



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The roof operation essentially corresponds to the description of the sliding/tilting roof → [Sliding/tilting roof](#) . Unlike the sliding/tilting roof, the sliding headliner on the solar roof cannot be pushed open or closed manually.

In parked vehicles equipped with a solar roof, the blower for the air conditioning system will be **automatically** switched over to solar operation provided there is sufficient sunlight. The blower motor then uses solar energy and blows air from outside into the vehicle.

Conditions for optimum ventilation:

- The air vents must be open.
- The air conditioning system's air recirculation mode must be switched off.

### Requirements for automatic ventilation

- The ignition must be switched off.
- The ambient temperature must be warmer than approximately +10°C (+50°F).
- There must be sufficient sunlight.
- The sliding/tilting roof must be closed or tilted.

- The solar cells should not be covered with leaves, a roof carrier system or any other items.

## NOTICE

Do not damage the solar cells when you are cleaning the vehicle.



The sun visor for the solar roof is fixed to the roof and cannot be moved on its own.

# Sitting correctly and safely

## Adjusting the seat position

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *The dangers of assuming an incorrect sitting position*
- *Correct sitting position*
- *Mechanical controls on the front seats*
- *Electrical controls on the front seats*
- *Sports seats with pneumatic lumbar support and side supports*
- *Adjusting the head restraints*
- *Removing and fitting the head restraints*
- *Adjusting the steering wheel position*
- *Centre armrest*

### Number of seats

The vehicle has a total of 5 seats: 2 at the front and 3 at the rear. Each seat is equipped with a seat belt.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Seat functions → *Seat functions*
- Seat belts → *Seat belts*
- Airbag system → *Airbag system*
- Child seats (accessories) → *Child seats (accessories)*

## WARNING

Assuming an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle can increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre in the event of a collision or accident or if the airbags are triggered.

- All vehicle occupants must assume a correct sitting position before setting off. Maintain this position throughout the trip. This also applies for the fastening of seat belts.
- The number of vehicle occupants must never exceed the number of seats with seat belts in the vehicle.
- Always secure children in the vehicle in an authorised restraint system which is suitable for their height and weight → *Child seats (accessories)* , → *Airbag system* .
- Always keep your feet in the footwell while the vehicle is in motion. Never place your feet on the seat or on the dash panel and never hold your feet out the window. The airbag and seat belt can otherwise not provide optimal protection and can actually increase the risk of injury during an accident.

## WARNING

Always adjust seats, seat belts and head restraints to their correct position before any journey and ensure that all passengers have

Always adjust seats, seat belts and head restraints to their correct position before any journey and ensure that all passengers have fastened their seat belt.

- Push the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Adjust the driver seat in such a way that there is at least 25 cm between your breastbone and the hub of the steering wheel. If your build makes it impossible to fulfil this requirement then you must contact a qualified workshop so they can make any necessary modifications.
- Never travel with the backrest tilted far back. The further the backrest is tilted to the back, the greater the risk of injury caused by incorrect seat belt routing or an incorrect sitting position!
- Never travel with the backrest tilted far forwards. When an airbag is triggered it could force the seat backrest backwards and injure vehicle occupants on the back seats.
- Adopt and maintain the greatest possible distance to the steering wheel and dash panel.
- You should always sit upright with your back against the seat backrest with the front seats properly adjusted. Do not position any body part too close to the fitting location of the airbag.
- The risk of serious injury is increased for passengers on the rear seat if they are not sitting upright because the seat belts are incorrectly positioned.

## WARNING

Incorrect adjustment of the seats can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- The seats may only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary as the seat could otherwise change position unexpectedly while the vehicle is in motion leading to a loss of control over the vehicle. Furthermore, an incorrect seating position is adopted while adjusting the seat.
- Only adjust the height and tilt of the seat or move it forwards and backwards when the area around the seat is clear.
- The area for adjustment of the front seats may not be restricted by any items.

## The dangers of assuming an incorrect sitting position



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

If the seat belts are not worn or are worn incorrectly, the risk of severe or fatal injuries increases. Seat belts can provide optimal protection only if seat belt routing is correct. An incorrect sitting position considerably impairs the level of protection provided by a seat belt. This could lead to severe or even fatal injuries. The risk of severe or fatal injuries is especially increased when a deploying airbag strikes an occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position. The driver is responsible for all vehicle passengers, especially if they are children.

The following list contains examples of sitting positions which could be dangerous for all occupants.

### Whenever the vehicle is in motion:

- Never stand in the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.

- Never kneel on the seats.
- Never tilt the backrest too far to the rear.
- Never lean against the dash panel.
- Never lie on the rear bench seat.
- Never sit on the front edge of a seat.
- Never sit sideways.
- Never lean out of a window.
- Never put your feet out of a window.
- Never put your feet on the dash panel.
- Never place your feet on the seat cushion or seat backrest.
- Never travel in a footwell.
- Never sit on the front or rear armrests.
- Never travel on a seat without wearing the seat belt.
- Never travel in the luggage compartment.

## WARNING

Every incorrect sitting position in the vehicle increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden driving or braking manoeuvre.

- All vehicle occupants must maintain a correct sitting position and be properly belted in while the vehicle is in motion.
- Sitting in an incorrect position, not fastening the seat belt or too short a distance to the airbag exposes the occupants to critical or fatal injuries, especially if the airbags deploy and strike an occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position.

## Correct sitting position

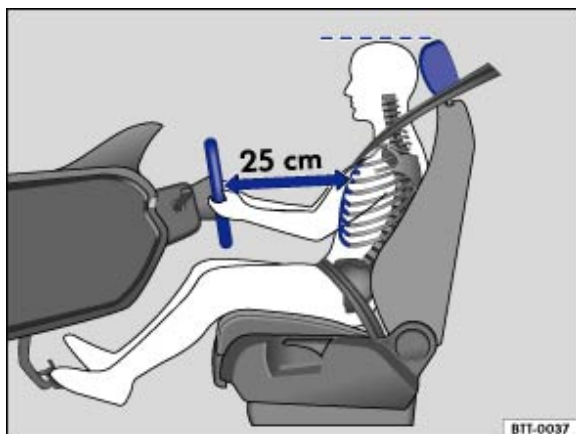
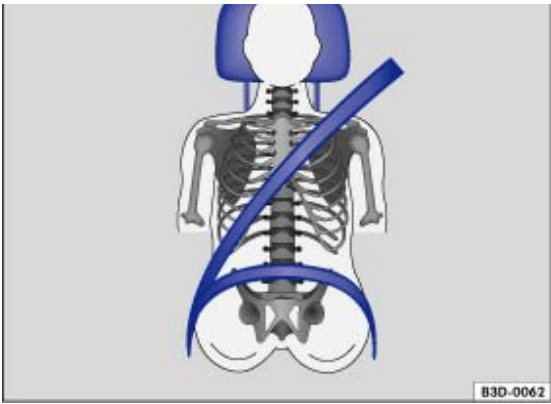


Fig. 38 There must be a distance of at least 25 cm between the driver and the steering wheel



**Fig. 39** Correct seat belt routing and head restraint adjustment



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → ⚠ *Introduction*

The following points describe the correct sitting positions for the driver and passengers.

If any vehicle occupants cannot assume a correct sitting position due to their physical build, they should contact a qualified workshop to find out about possible special modifications. The seat belts and airbags can only provide a maximum level of protection if a correct sitting position is assumed. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Volkswagen recommends the following seating position for your own safety and to reduce the level of injury in the case of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident:

### The following applies to all vehicle occupants:

- Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same height as the top of the head, but not lower than eye level. Position the back of your head as close to the head restraint as possible → *Fig. 38* and → *Fig. 39*.
- In vehicles with head restraints that are adjustable longitudinally, place the head restraints as close as possible to the back of your head.
- When adjusting for short people, push the head restraint all the way down, even if the head is then located underneath the top edge of the head restraint.
- For taller people, push the head restraint up as far as it will go.
- Keep both feet in the footwell while the vehicle is in motion.
- Adjust and fasten seat belts properly → *Seat belts*.

### Additional points for the driver:

- Move the backrest into an upright position so that your back rests completely against it.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the steering wheel and your breastbone is at least 25 cm → *Fig. 38* and the circumference of the steering wheel can be held at the sides with the arms slightly bent.
- The steering wheel must always point towards the breastbone and not towards the face.
- Adjust the driver seat so that you are able to press the pedals with your knees still slightly bent.
- Adjust the height so that you can reach the highest point of the steering wheel.
- Always leave both feet in the footwell in order to maintain control over the vehicle at all times.

### Additional points for the front passenger:

- Move the backrest into an upright position so that your back rests completely against it.
- Push the front passenger seat as far back as possible so that the airbag can provide maximum protection if it is deployed.

## Mechanical controls on the front seats

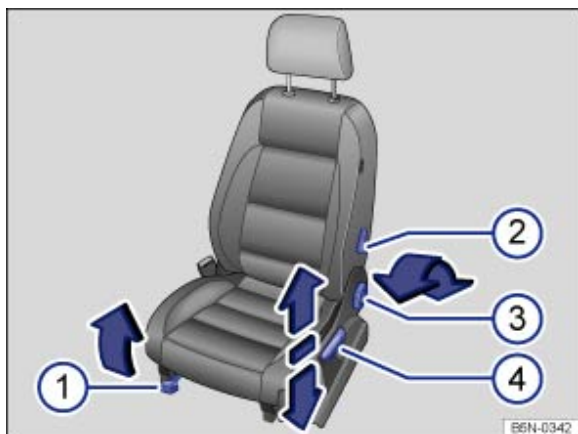


Fig. 40 Front left seat controls

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → Introduction

The controls are mirrored for the front right-hand seat.

The seat may have a combination of mechanical and electrical controls.

→ Fig. 40	Function	Action
①	Pushing the front seat forwards or backwards.	Lift the lever and move the front seat. The front seat must engage after releasing the lever!
②	Adjusting the lumbar support	Change lever position.

→ Fig. 40	Function	Action
③	Adjusting the backrest.	Turn handwheel.
④	Adjusting the seat height.	Move the lever up or down, several times if necessary.

### Electrical controls on the front seats

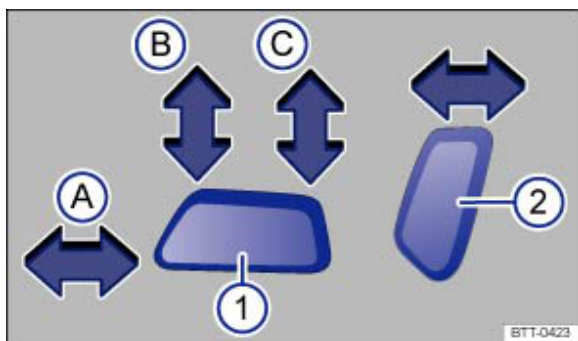


Fig. 41 Moving the front left seat forwards and backwards, adjusting the backrest and the seat cushion for height and tilt

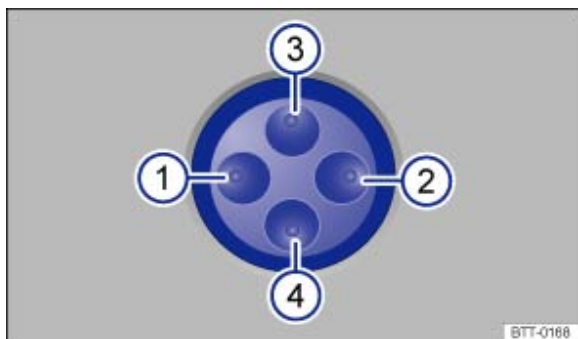


Fig. 42 Adjusting the lumbar support



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → **Introduction**

The controls are mirrored for the front right-hand seat.

The seat may have a combination of mechanical and electrical controls.

→ **Fig. 41 Pressing the switch in the direction of the arrow:**

	Ⓐ	Slides the seat forwards or backwards.
①	Ⓑ and Ⓒ	Raises or lowers the seat.
	Ⓑ or Ⓒ	Adjusts the angle of the seat cushion.
②	<i>Forwards or backwards</i>	Adjusts the angle of the backrest.

→ **Fig. 42 Pressing the switch in the appropriate area:**

① or ②	Adjusts the curve of the lumbar support.
③ or ④	Adjusts the height of the lumbar support.



## WARNING

Always take care when using the electric front seats as you could otherwise cause accidents or injuries.

- The electrical front seat adjustment also works with the ignition off. Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle.
- In the case of an emergency, stop the electrical adjustment by pressing another button.



## NOTICE

To avoid damaging the electrical components in the front seats, do not kneel on the seats or apply sharp pressure at a single point on the seat cushion and backrest.



If the battery charge level is low, the seats may not be able to be adjusted electrically.



Starting the engine will interrupt the seat adjustment procedure.

## Sports seats with pneumatic lumbar support and side supports

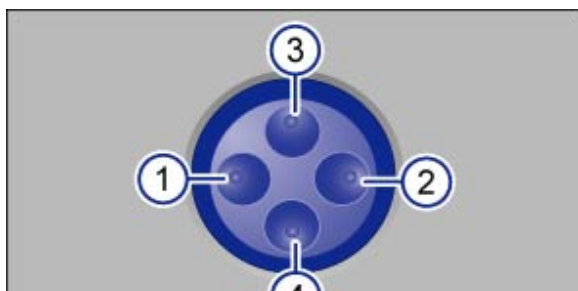






Fig. 43 Switch for adjusting the lumbar support

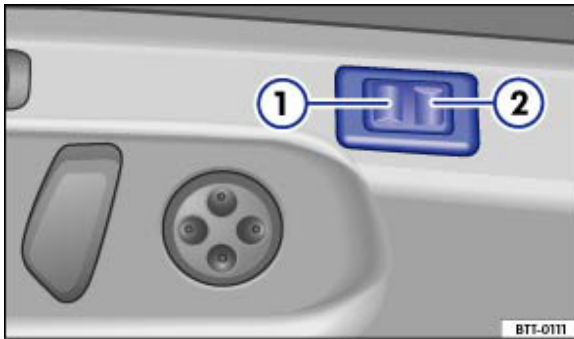


Fig. 44 Switch for adjusting the side supports

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Adjusting the lumbar support

→ Fig. 43 Press and hold the switch in the appropriate position:

- 1 Inflates the middle air cushion.
- 2 Deflates the air cushions. Before making a new setting, the air cushions have to be deflated fully.
- 3 Moves the lumbar support up. The top air cushion is inflated and the bottom air cushion is deflated **at the same time**.
- 4 Moves the lumbar support down. The bottom air cushion is inflated and the top air cushion is deflated **at the same time**.

### Adjusting the side supports

Press the switch forwards → Fig. 44  or backwards → Fig. 44  to inflate or deflate the air cushions in the side supports.

### NOTICE

To avoid damaging the electrical and pneumatic components in the front seats, do not kneel on the seats or apply sharp pressure at a single point on the seat cushion and backrest.

### Adjusting the head restraints

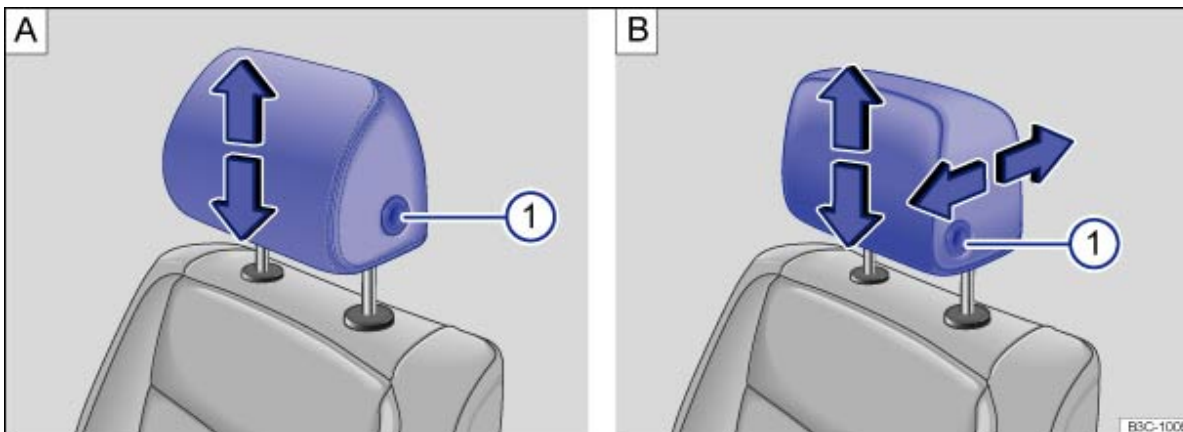


Fig. 45 Adjusting front head restraints: for vehicles without (A) and with (B) with longitudinally adjustable head restraints

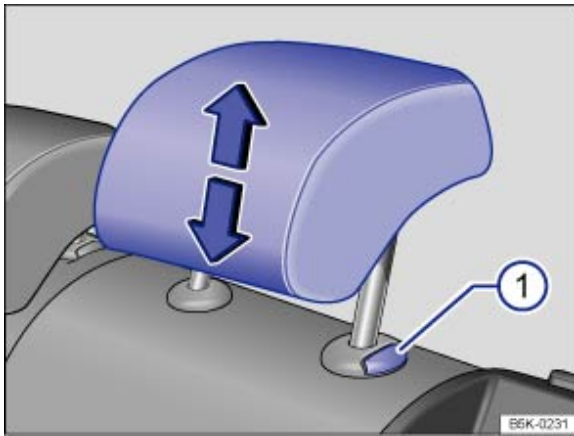


Fig. 46 Adjusting rear head restraint

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → *Introduction*

Every seat is fitted with a head restraint. The centre rear head restraint was designed for use with the centre rear seat only. Therefore, do not install head restraints in any of the other positions.

### Adjusting the height of the head restraint

- Push the head restraint up in the direction of the arrow or push it down with the button pressed → Fig. 45 or → Fig. 46 → .
- The head restraint must click securely into position.

### Adjusting front head restraint in longitudinal direction

- Push the head restraint forwards in the direction of the arrow or push it backwards with the button pressed → Fig. 45 **B** .
- The head restraint must click securely into position.

### Correct head restraint setting

Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same height as the top of the head, but not lower than eye level. Position the back of your head as close to the head restraint as possible. In vehicles with head restraints that are adjustable longitudinally, place the head restraints on the front seats as close as possible to the back of your head.

### Head restraint setting for small people

Push the head restraint all the way down, even if the head is then located underneath the top edge of the head restraint. There may be a small gap between the head restraint and backrest in the lowest position.

### Head restraint setting for tall people

Push the head restraint up as far as it will go.

## **WARNING**

Driving without head restraints or with incorrectly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden driving or braking manoeuvre.

- If a seat is occupied, the head restraint for that seat must be fitted and adjusted correctly.
- Each vehicle occupant must adjust the head restraint to suit their body size in order to reduce the risk of neck injuries in an accident. The upper edge of the head restraint must, as far as possible, be level with the top of the head, but no lower than eye level. Position the back of your head as close to the head restraint as possible.
- Never adjust the head restraint when the vehicle is in motion.

## Removing and fitting the head restraints

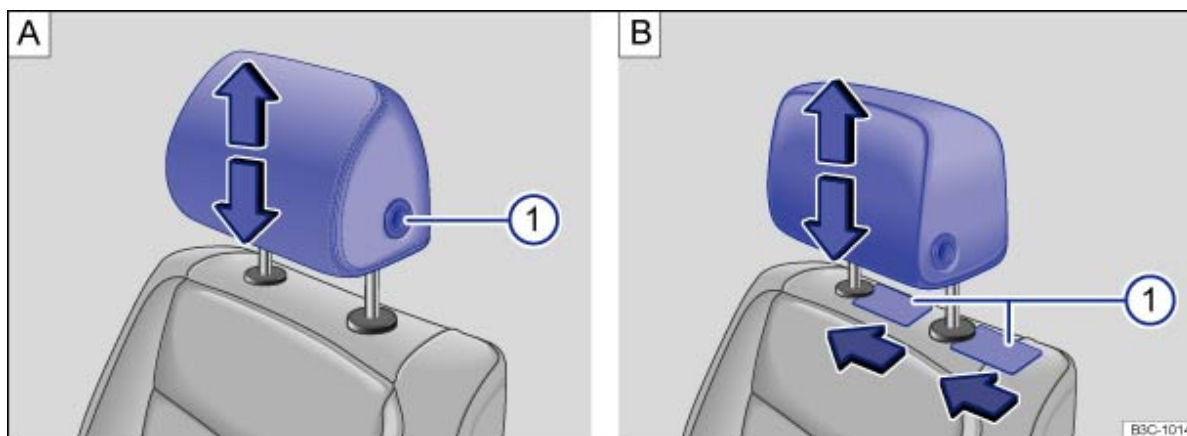


Fig. 47 Removing front head restraints: for vehicles without (A) and with (B) with longitudinally adjustable head restraints

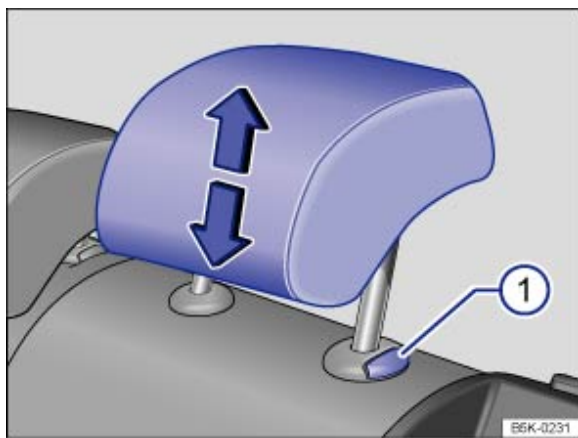




Fig. 48 Removing the rear head restraints



 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

Every seat is fitted with a head restraint. The centre rear head restraint was designed for use with the centre rear seat only. Therefore, do not install head restraints in any of the other positions.


### Removing front head restraints for vehicles without longitudinally adjustable head restraints

- If necessary, adjust the backrest so that the head restraint can be removed.
- Push the head restraint all the way up → .
- Properly press and hold the button → Fig. 47 A  and pull the head restraint out fully.

### Removing front head restraints for vehicles with longitudinally adjustable head restraints

- If necessary, adjust the backrest so that the head restraint can be removed.
- Push the head restraint all the way up and backwards → .
- Insert a flat object, e.g. a plastic card, each between the seat cover and the cover of the rods holding the head restraint and release the rods simultaneously using slight force → Fig. 47 B .
- Pull the head restraint out completely.



### Fitting front head restraints for vehicles without longitudinally adjustable head restraints

- Position the head restraint correctly over the head restraint guides and then insert into the guides of the corresponding seat backrest.
- Properly press and hold the button → *Fig. 47 A*  and push the head restraint downwards.
- Adjust the head restraint so that a correct sitting position can be assumed → *Adjusting the head restraints* .


### Fitting front head restraints for vehicles with longitudinally adjustable head restraints

- Pull both head restraint rods out as far as possible.
- Position the head restraint correctly over the head restraint guides and then insert into the guides of the corresponding seat backrest.
- Push down the head restraint until both the rods are securely engaged.
- Adjust the head restraint so that a correct sitting position can be assumed → *Adjusting the head restraints* .

### Removing the rear head restraints

- Release the rear seat backrest and fold the backrest forwards slightly → *Luggage compartment* .
- Push the head restraint all the way up →  .
- Press the button → *Fig. 48*  while a second person pulls the head restraint out fully.
- Push back the rear seat backrest and allow to engage securely.

### Fitting the rear head restraints

- Release the rear seat backrest and fold the backrest forwards slightly → *Luggage compartment* .
- Position the head restraint correctly over the head restraint guides and then insert into the guides of the corresponding seat backrest.
- Press and hold the button → *Fig. 48*  and push down the head restraint.
- Push back the rear seat backrest and allow to engage securely.
- Adjust the head restraint so that a correct sitting position can be assumed → *Adjusting the head restraints* .

## WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with incorrectly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden driving or braking manoeuvre.

- If a seat is occupied, the head restraint for that seat must be fitted and adjusted correctly.
- Head restraints that have been removed should be fitted as soon as possible so that passengers have correct protection.

## NOTICE

When removing or fitting head restraints, make sure that they do not hit the roof or other parts of the vehicle. The roof and other vehicle parts could otherwise be damaged.

## Adjusting the steering wheel position







Fig. 49 Adjusting the steering wheel position mechanically


 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

Adjust the steering wheel position before setting off and only when the vehicle is stationary.

- Push down the lever → Fig. 49 .
- Adjust the steering wheel so that you can hold it on the outside of the ring (at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions) with both hands and slightly bent arms.
- Push the lever up firmly until it lines up with the steering column → .

## WARNING

Incorrect use of the steering column position adjustment and an incorrect adjustment of the steering wheel can cause serious or fatal injuries.

- After adjusting the steering column, always move lever → Fig. 49  up so that it engages securely. This prevents the steering column from moving spontaneously while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is in motion. If you determine that a readjustment is necessary, stop the vehicle safely and adjust the steering wheel to the correct position.
- The steering wheel must always point towards the chest and not towards the face. This ensures that the driver front airbag provides maximum protection in the event of an accident.
- While driving, always keep both hands on the outside of the steering wheel, in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions. This reduces the risk of injury if the driver front airbag is deployed.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or in any other manner, e.g. on the hub of the steering wheel. If the driver airbag is triggered, you could receive severe injuries to the arms, hands and head.

## Centre armrest



Fig. 50 Front centre armrest

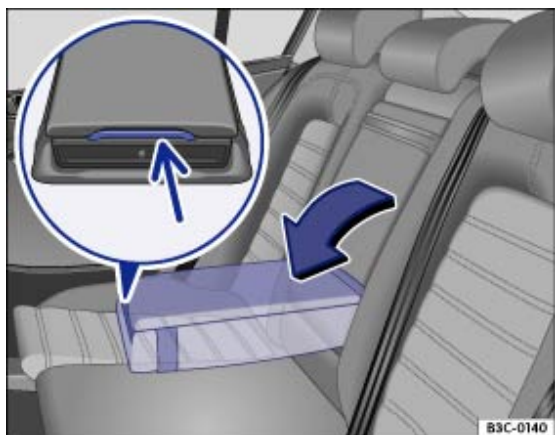


Fig. 51 Rear centre armrest with stowage compartment (small arrow)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → *Introduction*

### Front centre armrest

To *lift*, pull the centre armrest up gradually in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 50.

To *lower*, pull the centre armrest all the way up. Then lower the centre armrest.

### Rear centre armrest

A centre armrest with a stowage compartment can be folded out of the middle seat backrest of the rear bench seat → .

## WARNING

The centre armrest could obstruct the driver's arm movements which could cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Always keep the stowage compartments in the centre armrest closed while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never transport an adult or child on the centre armrest. An incorrect seating position can cause serious injury.
- Never place hot drinks or fluids in the drink holders. These could be spilt during a braking or driving manoeuvre.

## NOTICE

Never press on the drink holder cover when lifting the rear centre armrest. The drink holder could open and become damaged.

## Seat functions

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Seat heating*
- *Ventilated seats*
- *Memory seats*
- *Back massage function*
- *Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards*

### Additional information and warnings:

- Adjusting the seat position → *Adjusting the seat position*
- Seat belts → *Seat belts*

Seat belts → [Seat belts](#)

- Airbag system → [Airbag system](#)
- Child seats (accessories) → [Child seats \(accessories\)](#)
- Exterior mirrors → [Mirrors](#)

## WARNING

Incorrect use of the seat functions can cause serious injuries.

- Always assume a correct sitting position before you drive and maintain this position throughout the trip. This also applies to all passengers.
- The ventilation of the ventilated seats should only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary.
- The memory seat should only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary.
- Switch the back massage function on and off only when the vehicle is stationary.
- Keep hands, fingers, feet and other body parts away from the moving parts of the seats.

## Seat heating

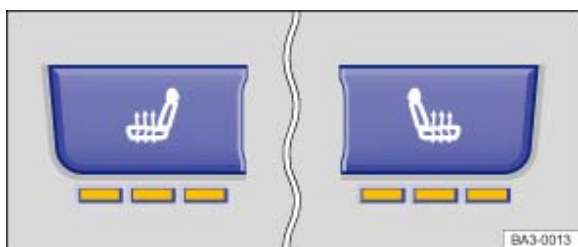


Fig. 52 In the centre console: buttons for the front seat heating



Fig. 53 In the rear centre console: controls for the rear seat heating

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)







The seat cushions can be heated electrically when the ignition is switched on. In some versions, the backrests may also be heated.

Do not switch on the seat heating if one of the following conditions applies:

- The seat is not in use.
- The seat is fitted with a protective cover.
- A child seat is installed on the seat.
- The seat cushion is damp or wet.
- The interior or exterior temperature is warmer than 25°C (77°F).

Always switch off the seat heating if the seat is not occupied.

Function	Seat heating front seat → <a href="#">Fig. 52</a>	Seat heating rear seats → <a href="#">Fig. 53</a>

Switching on:	Press the  or  button. Seat heating is switched on at the highest setting.	Turn the control to the desired heating level.
Adjusting the heating output:	Press the  or  button repeatedly until the required heat level is set.	Turn the control to a different heating level.
Switching off:	Press the  or  button until the indicator lamps in the button go out → Fig. 52.	Turn the control to 0.

## WARNING

Anyone experiencing reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature due to medication, paralysis or chronic illness (e.g. diabetes) could sustain burns on the back, buttocks and legs when using the seat heating. These burns may take a long time to heal or may never heal fully. Please consult a doctor to determine your own level of health.

- Anyone experiencing reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature should never use the seat heating.

## WARNING

Wet upholstery can cause a fault in the seat heating and increase the risk of burns.

- Ensure that the seat cushion is dry before the seat heating is used.
- Do not sit on the seat when wearing damp or wet clothing.
- Do not set any damp or wet objects or items of clothing on the seat.
- Do not spill any liquids on the seat.

## NOTICE

- To avoid damaging the heating elements, do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point on the seat cushion and backrest.
- Liquids, sharp objects and insulating materials such as a protective cover or child seat on the seat could damage the seat heating.
- If the system starts to emit a smell, switch the seat heating off immediately and have it checked by a qualified workshop.



The seat heating should be switched off when it is no longer needed. Fuel is wasted otherwise.

## Ventilated seats







Fig. 54 On front seat: switch for seat ventilation

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → **Introduction**

The seat cushion and backrest and the seat and backrest sides of the front seats can be ventilated from the inside at 3 different ventilation levels (**low**, **medium** and **high**) → .

The seat is ventilated with air from the vehicle interior, which draws moisture away from the body. There is no direct cooling of the seat.

On long journeys, Volkswagen recommends selecting a **low** ventilation level for the seat ventilation.

### Switching seat ventilation on and off

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press button → Fig. 54 to switch on the seat ventilation. The indicator lamp in the front seat → Fig. 54 is lit up.
- Press button → Fig. 54 to switch off the seat ventilation. The indicator lamp in the front seat → Fig. 54 goes out.

The seat ventilation may need to be switched on again after you switch the ignition off and back on.

### Setting ventilation level

- Push the blower switch → Fig. 54 to the end in direction to set the **low** ventilation level.
- Push the blower switch → Fig. 54 to the centre position to set the **medium** ventilation level.
- Push the blower switch → Fig. 54 to the end in direction to set the **high** ventilation level.

If the indicator lamp in the front seat lights up → Fig. 54 , there is a fault. Have the seat ventilation checked by a qualified workshop.

## WARNING

Those persons who, due to their medication, paralysis or chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), suffer from reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature, could sustain cold injuries on the back, buttocks and legs when using the seat ventilation. These injuries may take a long time to heal or may never heal fully.

- People who have reduced sensitivity to pain or heat must not use the seat ventilation.

### Memory seats

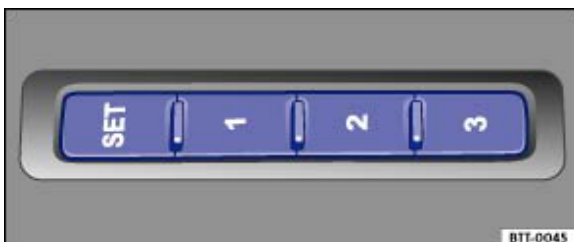


Fig. 55 Memory buttons on the outside of the driver seat



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

## Memory buttons

You can assign individual settings for the driver seat and exterior mirrors to each of the memory buttons.

### Storing driver seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forwards

- Switch on the electronic parking brake.
- Put the gear into neutral.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Adjust the driver seat and exterior mirror.
- Press the **SET** button for longer than one second → [Fig. 55](#).
- Within approximately 10 seconds press the memory button you wish to use. A gong signal will sound to confirm that the settings have been saved.


### Storing front passenger exterior mirror settings for reversing

- Switch on the electronic parking brake.
- Put the gear into neutral.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the appropriate memory button.
- Select the reverse gear.
- Adjust the exterior mirror on the front passenger side so that you have a good view of the kerb area.
- The settings for the mirror position will be saved automatically and assigned to the vehicle key that is used to unlock the vehicle.


### Accessing driver seat and exterior mirror settings

- While the vehicle is stationary and the ignition is switched on, briefly press the required memory button.
- **OR:** while the ignition is switched off, press and hold the required memory button until the saved position is reached.
- The front passenger exterior mirror will leave the reversing position automatically if the vehicle drives forwards at a speed of at least 15 km/h (10 mph) or if you turn the rotary knob out of its position **R** and into another position.

### Activating memory function of the vehicle key


- Unlock the driver door.
- Press the desired memory button → [Fig. 55](#) and keep it pressed till the end of the activation process.
- If required, keep the memory button pressed until the saved seat position is reached.
- Keeping the memory button pressed, simultaneously press the unlocking button  in the vehicle key within 10 seconds. A gong will sound to confirm that the settings have been activated.


### Deactivating memory function of the vehicle key

- Press the **SET** → [Fig. 55](#) button and then keep it pressed till the end of the deactivation process.
- Keeping the memory button pressed, simultaneously press the unlocking button  in the vehicle key within 10 seconds. A gong will sound to confirm that the settings have been deactivated.

### Assigning driver seat and exterior mirror settings to a vehicle key

- Activate memory function of the vehicle key.
- Unlock the vehicle using the same vehicle key.
- Adjust exterior mirror and driver seat.

- Lock the vehicle using the  button in the remote control key in order to save the settings.

After the settings are saved, the driver seat and exterior mirror always assume the saved position automatically, if the  button in the vehicle key is used to unlock the vehicle and open the driver door.



## Initialising memory seats

The memory system needs to be initialised if, for example, the driver seat is changed.



The initialising process deletes all of the saved settings and assignments for the memory seats. The memory buttons can then be reprogrammed and resynchronised with a vehicle key.

- Open the driver door but do not get into the vehicle.
- Adjust the seat from the outside.
- Adjust the angle of the backrest to as far forwards as possible.
- Let go of the switch for adjusting the backrest angle and press it again until a gong sounds.

## Back massage function

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

When the back massage function is switched on, the lumbar support moves and massages the lumbar region. The in/out position of the lumbar support can be adjusted using the appropriate switch during a massage → [Adjusting the seat position](#) .

Function	Action
Switching on:	Press the  button in the seat control panel.
Switching off:	Press the  button in the seat control panel again.
Automatic switch-off:	The back massage function is switched off automatically after approximately 10 minutes.

## Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards

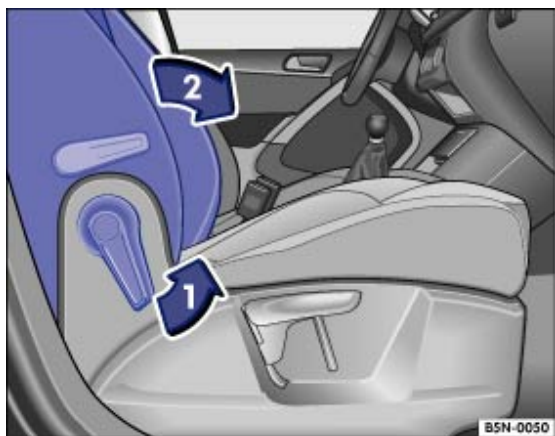


Fig. 56 Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards





Fig. 57 Unlatching the folding front passenger seat backrest






First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)


The front passenger seat backrest can be folded forward to a horizontal position.

The front passenger front airbag must be switched off if any items are to be transported on the front passenger seat when folded forwards → [Airbag system](#) .

### Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards


- Remove any items from the front passenger seat cushion →  .
- Lower the front passenger seat down as far as possible → [Adjusting the seat position](#) .
- Push the head restraint all the way down → [Adjusting the seat position](#) .
- Release the front passenger backrest in the direction of the arrow → [Fig. 56](#)  .
- Fold the front passenger seat backrest forwards in the direction of the arrow → [Fig. 56](#)  until it is horizontal.
- When it is folded down, the front passenger seat backrest must click securely into place.

### Folding the front passenger seat backrest back

- When folding back, check to make sure that there are no items or body parts near the hinges.
- To fold back, release the front passenger seat backrest → [Fig. 56](#)  .
- Fold back the front passenger seat backrest so that it is upright. The backrest must click into place securely.

## WARNING

Injuries could be caused if the front passenger seat backrests are folded forwards and backwards carelessly.

- Fold the front passenger seat backrest forwards and backwards only when the vehicle is stationary.
- The front airbag must be switched off and the indicator lamp  PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** must light up for as long as the front passenger seat backrest is folded forwards.
- When folding forwards and backwards, keep all hands, fingers, feet and other body parts away from the seat hinges and seat release mechanism.
- Floor mats or other objects could get caught in the hinges on the front passenger seat backrest. This could cause the front passenger seat backrest to fail to engage securely when it is returned to the upright position.
- When being folded back, the front passenger seat backrest must be securely locked in the upright position. If the front passenger seat backrest is not locked properly it could move suddenly and cause severe injuries.

## WARNING

The open seat anchors and hinges of the folded front passenger seat backrest could cause serious injuries in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or accident.


- Never transport people (adults or children) on the front passenger seat if the front passenger seat backrest is folded forwards.
- If the front passenger seat backrest is folded forwards, you should only use the outer rear seat behind the driver seat. This also applies to children in child seats.

# Seat belts

## Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Warning lamp](#)
- [Frontal collisions and the laws of physics](#)
- [What happens to passengers who have not fastened their seat belts](#)
- [Seat belts protect](#)
- [Using seat belts](#)
- [Fastening and unfastening seat belts](#)
- [Seat belt routing](#)
- [Belt height adjuster](#)
- [Automatic belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter](#)
- [Service and disposal of belt tensioners](#)

Regularly check the condition of all seat belts. If the belt webbing, belt connections, belt retractor or part of the buckle become damaged, they should be replaced immediately by a qualified workshop → . The qualified workshop must use the correct spare parts which are compatible with the vehicle, equipment level and model year. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Adjusting the seat position → [Adjusting the seat position](#)
- Airbag system → [Airbag system](#)
- Child seats (accessories) → [Child seats \(accessories\)](#)
- Integrated child seats → [Integrated child seat](#)
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → [Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)

## WARNING

**Incorrectly fastened or unfastened seat belts increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries. Seat belts will only offer the optimum level of protection when they are fastened and used properly.**

- **Seat belts are the most effective means of reducing the risk of serious and fatal injuries in the case of an accident. For the protection of the driver and of all vehicle occupants, the seat belts must always be fastened properly when the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Before every trip, each vehicle occupant must adopt the correct sitting position, correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to their seat and keep it fastened properly throughout the trip. This applies for all vehicle occupants and also in town traffic.**
- **While the vehicle is in motion, secure all children travelling in the vehicle in a restraint system suitable for their weight and height. They must also wear correctly fastened seat belts → [Child seats \(accessories\)](#) .**
- **Only start driving when all passengers have correctly fastened their seat belts.**
- **Never insert the latch plate into a buckle which does not belong to the occupied seat and always ensure it engages properly. Using a buckle which does not belong to the seat you are occupying reduces the level of protection and can lead to severe injuries.**
- **Never let any foreign bodies or liquids get into the slot for the seat belt buckle. This could prevent the belt buckle and seat belt from working properly.**
- **Never unfasten the seat belt while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Never allow more than one person to share the same seat belt.**
- **Never travel when children or babies are being carried on somebody's lap and fastened with the same belt.**
- **Never travel wearing loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket). This could prevent the seat belts from fitting and functioning properly.**

**WARNING**

Damaged seat belts are very dangerous and could cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Never damage the belt by trapping it in the door or in the seat mechanism.
- If the belt webbing or any other part of the seat belt becomes damaged, the seat belts may tear during an accident or sudden braking manoeuvre.
- Damaged seat belts must be replaced immediately with new seat belts approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type. Seat belts used in and stretched during an accident must be replaced by a qualified workshop. Renewal may be necessary even if there is no apparent damage. The belt anchorage should also be checked.
- Never try to repair, modify or remove the seat belts yourself. All repairs to the seat belts, belt retractors and buckles must be carried out by a qualified workshop.


**Warning lamp**




Fig. 58 Warning lamp in the instrument cluster





Fig. 59 Seat belt status for the rear seats in the instrument cluster

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)


Lights up or flashes	Possible cause	Correction
	The driver and front passenger seat belts are not fastened (if the front passenger seat is occupied).	Fasten seat belts.
	There are items on the front passenger seat.	Remove items from the front passenger seat and stow them safely.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.

An acoustic signal will be emitted for some seconds if the seat belts are not fastened as the car pulls off and reaches a speed of more than 25 km/h (15 mph) or if the seat belts are unfastened while the vehicle is in motion. The seat belt warning lamp will also flash .

The seat belt warning lamp  does not go out until the driver and front passenger fasten their seat belts while the ignition is switched on.

**Belt status display for the rear seats**

After the ignition has been switched on, the driver can see the belt status display in the instrument cluster display and therefore knows whether the rear passengers have fastened their seat belts or not. The symbol  indicates that the passenger on this seat has fastened their seat belt → Fig. 59.

The belt status display will be shown for approximately 30 seconds if a seat belt is fastened or unfastened on the rear seats. The display can be hidden by pressing the **0.0 / SET** button.

If a seat belt for one of the rear seats is unfastened while the vehicle is in motion the belt status display will flash for a maximum of 30 seconds. If the vehicle is travelling faster than approximately 25 km/h (15 mph) an acoustic signal will also sound.

## WARNING

Incorrectly fastened or unfastened seat belts increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries. Seat belts only offer the optimum level of protection when they are used properly.

## Frontal collisions and the laws of physics

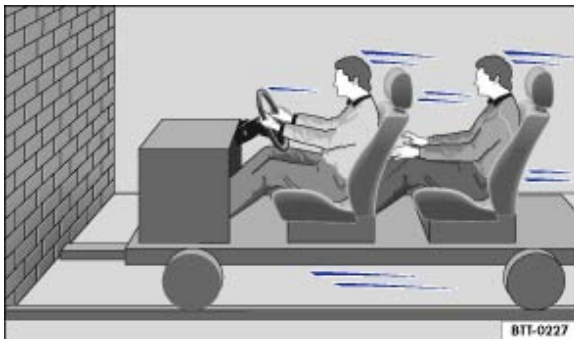


Fig. 60 Unbelted occupants in a vehicle heading for a brick wall

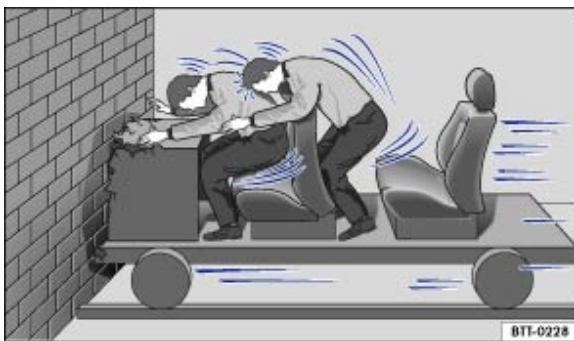


Fig. 61 Unbelted occupants in a vehicle striking a brick wall



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  Introduction

The physical principles involved in a frontal collision are relatively simple. Both the moving vehicle → Fig. 60 and the passengers possess energy, which is known as kinetic energy.

The higher the vehicle speed and the greater the weight of a vehicle will mean that more energy will have to be released in an accident.

The most significant factor, however, is the speed of the vehicle. If the speed doubles from 25 km/h to 50 km/h (15 mph to 30 mph), for example, the kinetic energy increases by a factor of four.

The amount of kinetic energy depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the vehicle and passengers. The higher the speed and the greater

The amount of kinetic energy depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the vehicle and passengers. The higher the speed and the greater the weight, the more energy there is to be released in an accident.

Passengers not wearing seat belts are not attached to the vehicle. In a frontal collision they will continue to move forward at the speed their vehicle was travelling just before the impact, until something stops it! Because the passengers in our example are not restrained by seat belts, the entire amount of kinetic energy has to be absorbed at the point of impact → *Fig. 61*.

Even at speeds of 30 km/h (18 mph) to 50 km/h (30 mph), the forces acting on bodies in a collision can easily exceed one tonne (1,000 kg). At greater speed these forces are even higher.

This example applies not only to frontal collisions, but to all accidents and collisions.

## What happens to passengers who have not fastened their seat belts



**Fig. 62** An unbelted driver is thrown forward



**Fig. 63** The unbelted rear passenger is thrown forward violently, hitting the belted driver



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → ⚠ *Introduction*

Many people believe that the occupants can brace their weight with their hands in a minor collision. This is not true.

Even at low speeds the forces acting on the body in a collision are so great that it is not possible to brace oneself with arms and hands. In a frontal collision, unbelted passengers are thrown forward and will make unchecked contact with the steering wheel, dash panel, windscreen or whatever else is in the way → *Fig. 62*.

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts. When deployed, airbags provide only additional protection. Airbags will not be triggered in all kinds of accidents. Even if the vehicle is equipped with an airbag system, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must fasten their seat belt and wear it correctly while the vehicle is in motion. This will reduce the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident – regardless of whether an airbag is fitted for the seat.

An airbag can only be triggered once. To achieve the best possible protection, the seat belt must always be worn properly so that you will be protected in accidents in which no airbag is deployed. Any vehicle occupants not wearing a seat belt can be thrown out of the vehicle and sustain even more severe or



even fatal injuries as a result.

It is also important for the rear passengers to wear seat belts properly, as they could otherwise be thrown forward violently in an accident. Rear passengers who do not use seat belts endanger not only themselves and the driver, but also other people in the vehicle → [Fig. 63](#).

## Seat belts protect



**Fig. 64** Driver with properly positioned seat belt is well protected if the brakes are applied suddenly



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

Seat belts, if fastened properly, hold the vehicle occupants in the correct sitting positions and considerably reduce the kinetic energy in the event of an accident. Seat belts also help to prevent uncontrolled movements which could lead to severe injuries. In addition, properly worn seat belts reduce the danger of being thrown from the vehicle → [Fig. 64](#).

Passengers wearing seat belts correctly benefit greatly from the ability of the belts to reduce the kinetic energy. The front crumple zones and other passive safety features (such as the airbag system) are also designed to reduce kinetic energy. The amount of energy will thus decrease, thereby reducing the risk of injury.

The examples describe frontal collisions. Of course, properly worn seat belts substantially reduce the risk of injury in all other types of accidents. This is why seat belts must be fastened before every trip – even if you are just driving round the corner. Ensure that all passengers also wear their seat belts properly.

Accident statistics have shown properly worn seat belts to be an effective means of substantially reducing the risk of injury and improving the chances of survival in a serious accident. Furthermore, properly worn seat belts improve the protection provided by airbags in the event of an accident. For this reason wearing a seat belt is required by law in most countries.

Although the vehicle is equipped with airbags, the seat belts must be fastened and worn. For example, the front airbags will only be deployed in certain types of front collision. The front airbags will not be triggered during minor frontal collisions, minor side collisions, rear collisions, rolls or accidents in which the airbag trigger threshold in the control unit is not exceeded.


Therefore, always wear your seat belt and ensure that your passengers have fastened their seat belts properly before you drive off!

## Using seat belts



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

## Checklist

**Using seat belts** →  :

- ✓ Regularly check the condition of all seat belts.
- ✓ Keep the seat belts clean.
- ✓ Never let any foreign bodies and liquids get on to the seat belt, the latch plate or into the slot for the seat belt buckle.
- ✓ Do not trap or damage the seat belt and latch plate, for example when closing the door.
- ✓ Never remove, modify or repair the seat belt or any part of the belt fixture system.
- ✓ Always fasten the seat belt correctly before any journey and wear it properly while the vehicle is in motion.

### Twisted seat belt

If it is difficult to remove the seat belt from the belt guide, the seat belt may have become twisted if it was returned too quickly into the side trim:

- Take hold of the latch plate then slowly and carefully pull out the seat belt.
- Untwist the seat belt and guide it back slowly by hand.

Fasten the seat belt even if you are unable to undo the twist. However, the twist should not be in part of the seat belt which comes into direct contact with the body. The twist should be corrected immediately by a qualified workshop.

## ⚠ WARNING

Using seat belts incorrectly increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries.

- Regularly check to see if the seat belt and its related parts are in perfect condition.
- Always keep the seat belt clean.
- Do not allow the belt webbing to become jammed, damaged or to rub on any sharp edges.
- Always keep the latch plate and slot in the buckle free from foreign bodies and liquids.

## Fastening and unfastening seat belts



Fig. 65 Inserting the seat belt latch plate into the buckle



Fig. 66 Removing the latch plate from the buckle



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → ⚠ Introduction

If worn properly, seat belts hold the vehicle occupants in the correct sitting position during an accident or braking manoeuvre, providing maximum protection → ⚠.

## Fastening the seat belts

Fasten seat belts before every trip.

- Always adjust the front seat and head restraint correctly → *Adjusting the seat position* .
- Take hold of the latch plate and pull it evenly across your chest and pelvis. Do **not** twist the belt in the process → ⚠.
- Insert the latch plate securely into the buckle belonging to the occupied seat → *Fig. 65* .
- Pull on the seat belt to ensure that the latch plate is securely locked in the buckle.

## Unfastening the seat belts

Unfasten seat belts only when the vehicle is stationary → ⚠.

- Press the red button in the buckle → *Fig. 66* . The latch plate is released and springs out.
- Guide the belt back by hand so that it rolls up easily, without twisting the seat belt and without damaging the trim.

## ⚠ WARNING

Incorrect seat belt routing can cause severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.

- The seat belts offer best protection only when the backrests are in an upright position and the seat belts have been fastened properly according to the occupant's height.
- Unfastening seat belts while the vehicle is in motion can lead to severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden braking manoeuvre.

## Seat belt routing

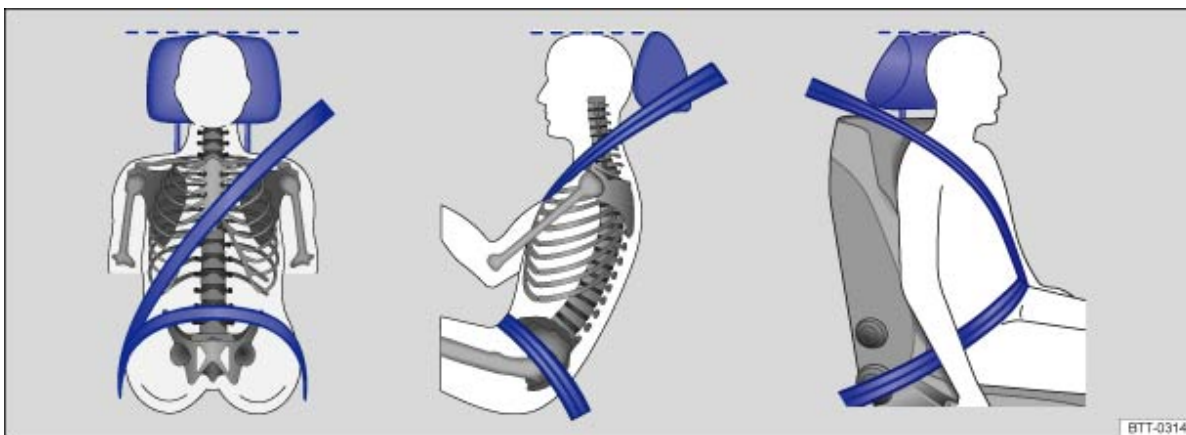


Fig. 67 Correct seat belt routing and head restraint adjustment





**Fig. 68** Correct seat belt routing during pregnancy



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  **Introduction**

Seat belts will offer an optimum level of protection during an accident only when they are routed correctly. Correct seat belt routing reduces the risk of severe or fatal injuries. Correct seat belt routing also holds the vehicle occupants in position so that an inflating airbag can offer the maximum level of protection. Therefore you must always fasten seat belts and make sure the seat belt routing is correct.

An incorrect sitting position can cause severe or fatal injuries → [Adjusting the seat position](#) .

## Correct seat belt routing

- The shoulder part of the seat belt must always lie on the centre of the shoulder, never across the neck, over or under the arm or behind the back.
- The lap part of the seat belt must always lie across the pelvis, never across the stomach.
- The seat belt must always lie flat and snugly on the body. Tighten the belt if necessary.

For **pregnant women** the seat belt must be positioned evenly over the chest and as low as possible over the pelvis. It must lie flat so that no pressure is exerted on the lower body - this applies for the entire course of the pregnancy → [Fig. 68](#) .

## Correct seat belt routing according to height

The following equipment can be used to adjust the seat belt routing:

- Belt height adjuster for the front seats.
- Front seat height adjustment.

## **WARNING**

**Incorrect seat belt routing can cause severe injuries in the event of an accident or a sudden braking or driving manoeuvre.**

- **The seat belts offer best protection only when the backrests are in an upright position and the seat belts have been fastened properly.**
- **The seat belt itself or a loose seat belt can cause serious injuries if the seat belt shifts from harder body parts in the direction of softer body parts (e.g. stomach).**
- **The shoulder part of the seat belt must lie on the centre of the shoulder and never under the arm or across the neck.**
- **The seat belt must lie flat and snugly on the chest.**
- **The lap part of the seat belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach. The seat belt must lie flat and snugly on the pelvis. Tighten the belt if necessary.**
- **For pregnant women, the lap part of the seat belt must be as low as possible over the pelvis and lie flat around the round stomach.**
- **Do not twist the belt webbing while the seat belt is being worn.**
- **Never hold the seat belt away from the body by hand.**
- **The belt webbing should not lie over hard or fragile objects, such as glasses, pens or keys.**
- **Never use seat belt clips, retaining rings or similar items to alter the seat belt routing.**



If a person's physical build prevents them from routing the seat belt properly, contact a qualified workshop to find out about any special modifications so that the seat belts and airbags can provide the optimum level of protection. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## Belt height adjuster

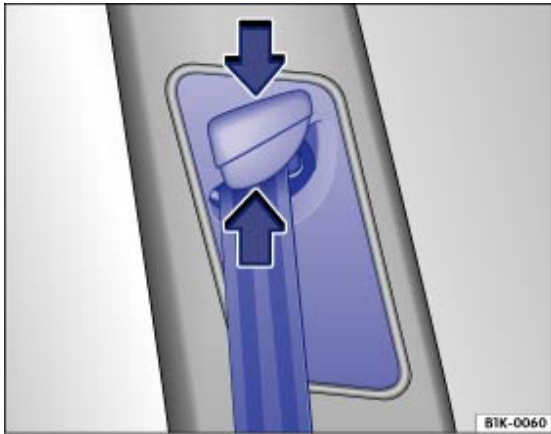


Fig. 69 Next to the front seats: belt height adjuster

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

The seat belt height adjusters for the front seats can be used to adjust the position of the seat belt on the shoulder so it can be fastened properly:

- Push the shoulder belt guide together in the direction of the arrows and hold → *Fig. 69* .
- Push the shoulder belt guide up or down so that the seat belt lies over the middle of the shoulder → *Seat belt routing* .
- Let go of the shoulder belt guide.
- Pull sharply on the seat belt to check whether the shoulder belt guide is engaged securely.

### **WARNING**

**Never adjust the seat belt height when the vehicle is in motion.**

## Automatic belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

The seat belts in the vehicle are part of the vehicle safety concept → *Components of the vehicle safety concept* and are made up of the following important functions:

### Automatic belt retractor

Every seat belt is equipped with an automatic belt retractor on the shoulder part of the belt. Full freedom of movement is made possible when the shoulder belt is pulled slowly or when the vehicle is travelling at normal speeds. However, if the belt is pulled out quickly or during sudden braking, during travel in mountains or bends and during acceleration, the automatic belt retractor is locked.

### Belt tensioners

The seat belts for the front seats and possibly the outer rear seats are equipped with belt tensioners.

The belt tensioners are activated by sensors during severe frontal, side and rear collisions. They retract the seat belts against the direction in which they

are pulled. A loose seat belt is pulled in, which can reduce the forward movement or the movement of the vehicle occupants in the direction of the impact. The belt tensioner works together with the airbag system. If the side airbags are not activated, the belt tensioner will not be activated if the vehicle rolls over.

A fine dust may develop when the airbags are triggered. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

## Belt tension limiter

The belt tension limiter reduces the pressure exerted by the seat belt on the body during an accident.



All safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. Qualified workshops are familiar with these requirements → [Service and disposal of belt tensioners](#) .

## Service and disposal of belt tensioners



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → [Introduction](#)

Seat belts may become damaged during any work on the belt tensioners or while removing or refitting any vehicle parts in conjunction with any other repair work. This damage will not always be noticeable. The consequence may be that the belt tensioners could function incorrectly, or not function at all, in the event of an accident.

Regulations must be observed to ensure that the effectiveness of the belt tensioner is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution. Qualified workshops are familiar with these requirements.

### WARNING

**The risk of severe or fatal injuries may be increased if the seat belts, automatic belt retractors and belt tensioners are not used correctly or if they are repaired by a non-professional. As a result, the belt tensioners may not be triggered when they should, or they may be triggered unexpectedly.**

- Any repairs, adjustments or removal and refitting of parts in the belt tensioners or seat belts should always be carried out by a qualified workshop and never by yourself → [Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#) .
- Belt tensioners and automatic belt retractors cannot be repaired. They must be replaced.



The airbag modules and belt tensioners may contain perchlorate. Please comply with legislation regarding disposal.

## Airbag system

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Types of front passenger front airbag system](#)
- [Indicator lamp](#)
- [Description and function of the airbag system](#)
- [Front airbags](#)
- [Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off manually using the key-operated switch](#)
- [Side airbags](#)
- [Curtain airbags](#)

The vehicle is equipped with a front airbag for the driver and passenger. The front airbags can provide the front seat occupants additional protection for the chest and head if the seat, the seat belts and the head restraints and the steering wheel for the driver are adjusted and used correctly. Airbags are meant only for additional protection. The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts. Seats belts must always be worn, even when the front seats are equipped with airbags.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Driving tips → [Driving tips](#)
- Correct sitting position → [Adjusting the seat position](#)
- Seat belts → [Seat belts](#)
- Child seats (accessories) → [Child seats \(accessories\)](#)
- Cleaning and caring for the interior → [Cleaning and caring for the interior](#)
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → [Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)
- Consumer information → [Consumer information](#)

## WARNING

Never rely on the airbag system exclusively for your protection.

- The airbag has merely a supportive function for your protection, even if it is triggered.
- The airbag system offers the best levels of protection when seat belts are properly worn and reduce the risk of injury → [Seat belts](#) .
- Before every trip, each vehicle occupant must adopt the correct sitting position, correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to their seat and keep it fastened properly throughout the trip. This applies to all vehicle occupants.

## WARNING

The risk of injury is increased if there are any items located between the occupant and the deployment zone of the airbag. This will impinge on the deployment zone of the airbag or the items will be flung against the body.

- Never hold any objects in your hand or on your lap while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never transport any objects on the front passenger seat. The objects could enter into the deployment zone of the airbag during sudden braking or driving manoeuvres and then be flung dangerously through the vehicle interior if the airbag is activated.
- Occupants of the front seats and rear outer seats must never carry any people, pets or objects in the deployment zone between them and the airbags. Please ensure that this is also adhered to by children and passengers.

## WARNING

The airbag system can only be triggered once. The system will have to be replaced if the airbags have been triggered.

- Used airbags and any system parts that are affected should be replaced as soon as possible by new parts that are approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle.
- Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should only be carried out by a qualified workshop. Qualified workshops have the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information and qualified personnel.
- Never use recycled airbag components or components that have been taken from end-of-life vehicles in your vehicle.
- Never alter any components of the airbag system.

## WARNING

A fine dust may develop when the airbags deploy. This is normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

- The fine dust can cause irritation to the skin and eye membranes as well as cause breathing difficulties, particularly for those people suffering from asthma or other respiratory health problems. In order to reduce breathing difficulties, get out of the vehicle or open the windows or doors in order to breathe fresh air.
- If you should come into contact with the dust you should wash your hands and face with a mild soap and water before eating.
- Do not rub the dust into your eyes or into open wounds.
- Rinse your eyes with water if dust is in your eye.

## WARNING

Solvents cause the surface of the airbags to become porous. In an accident which triggers the airbag, loose plastic parts can cause serious injury.




- Never clean the dash panel or the airbag covers with cleansers that contain solvents.

## Types of front passenger front airbag system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  *Introduction*

Volkswagen offers 2 different front airbag systems for front passengers:

A	B
<p>Features of the front passenger front airbag that can <b>only be switched off by a qualified workshop</b>.</p>	<p>Features of the front passenger front airbag that can <b>be switched off manually</b> using the key-operated switch → <i>Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off manually using the key-operated switch</i> .</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster.</li> <li>– Front passenger front airbag in the dash panel.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster.</li> <li>– Indicator lamp in the dash panel  PASSENGER AIR BAG <b>OFF</b>.</li> <li>– Key-operated switch in the stowage compartment in the dash panel on the front passenger side.</li> <li>– Front passenger front airbag in the dash panel.</li> </ul>
<p>– <b>Name: airbag system.</b></p>	<p>– <b>Name: airbag system with front passenger front airbag deactivation.</b></p>

## Indicator lamp







Fig. 70 Indicator lamp for front passenger front airbag switched off in dash panel

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → *Introduction*

Lit up	Location	Possible cause	Correction
	Instrument cluster.	Fault in airbag and belt tensioner system.	Go to a qualified workshop to have the system checked immediately.
	Dash panel.	Fault in the airbag system.	Go to a qualified workshop to have the system checked immediately.
<b>OFF</b>		Front passenger front airbag switched off.	Check whether the airbag should stay switched off.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.

If the indicator lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** is **not permanently** lit or if it lights up together with the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster when the front passenger front airbag is switched off, there may be a fault in the airbag system → :

## DANGER

If there is a fault in the airbag system, the airbag may not trigger correctly, may not trigger at all or may trigger unexpectedly. This could cause severe or fatal injuries.

- The airbag system should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
- Never fit a child seat to the front passenger seat or remove a child seat that is already fitted! The front passenger front airbag may deploy during an accident in spite of the fault.

## NOTICE

To avoid damage to your vehicle, always observe the indicator lamps and associated warning texts.

## Description and function of the airbag system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → *Introduction*

The airbags can protect vehicle occupants during frontal and side collisions by reducing the occupants' movements in the direction of the collision.


Each triggered airbag is filled by a gas generator. This causes the airbag covers to break and the airbags are inflated with high power within milliseconds in their deployment zones. Once an occupant wearing a seat belt starts to sink into the inflated airbag, the gas inside the airbag starts to escape to cushion the occupant and slow down their movement. This reduces the risk of severe and fatal injuries. A triggered airbag will not always prevent other injuries from occurring, such as swelling, bruising and grazing. Deployment of an airbag could also result in frictional heat.

Airbags provide no protection for arms or the lower part of the body.

The most important factors for triggering the airbag are the type of accident, the angle of impact, the vehicle speed and the type of object with which the vehicle collides. Therefore, visible damage to the vehicle does not always mean that the airbag should have been triggered.



The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the electronic control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the vehicle may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage in an accident is not necessarily an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not. It is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds and reference values, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. It is therefore impossible to cover every possible kind and angle of impact that would trigger the airbags. Important factors in the triggering of the airbag include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object that the vehicle hits, the angle of impact as well as vehicle speed.

Airbags only serve as a supplement to the three-point seat belt in some accident situations when the vehicle braking is sufficient to trigger the airbags. Airbags can only be triggered once and only in certain situations. The seat belts are always there to provide protection in situations when the airbags are not triggered or have already been triggered. For example, if the vehicle collides with a further vehicle following a first collision or is hit by another vehicle.

The airbag system is part of the vehicle's overall passive safety concept. The airbag system can only work effectively when the occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly and have assumed a proper sitting position  → *Adjusting the seat position* .

## Components of the vehicle safety concept

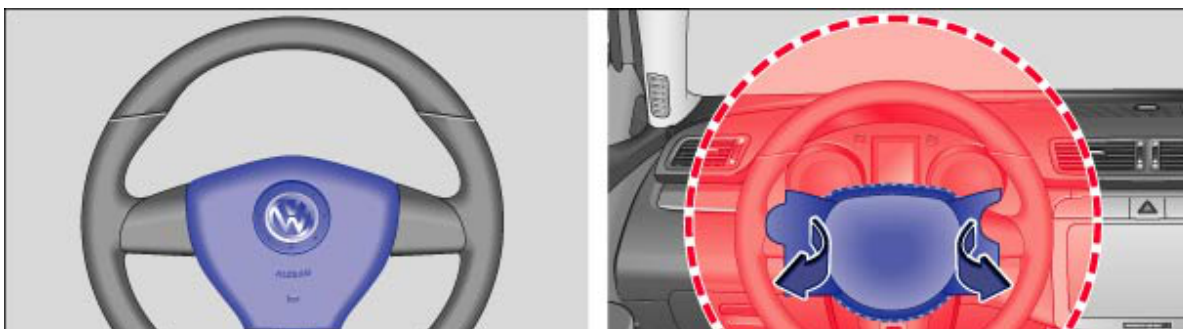
The following vehicle safety equipment makes up the vehicle's safety concept to reduce the risk of severe and fatal injuries. Depending on the vehicle equipment level, some of the equipment may not be fitted in your vehicle. It may not be available at all in some countries.

- Optimised seat belts for all seats.
- Belt tensioners for the driver and front passenger and also on the rear outer seats if in conjunction with side airbags.
- Belt tension limiter for the driver, front passenger and for the rear outer seats.
- Belt height adjuster for the front seats.
- Seat belt warning lamp.
- Front airbags for driver and front passenger.
- Side airbags for the driver, front passenger and, if applicable, for the rear outer seats.
- Curtain airbags on the right and left.
- Airbag indicator lamp .
-  PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** indicator lamp
- Control units and sensors.
- Height-adjustable head restraints optimised for rear impact.
- Adjustable steering column.
- If applicable, anchor points for child seats on the rear outer seats and on the front passenger seat.
- If applicable, securing points for the top tether for child seats.

## Situations when the front, side and curtain airbags will not be triggered:

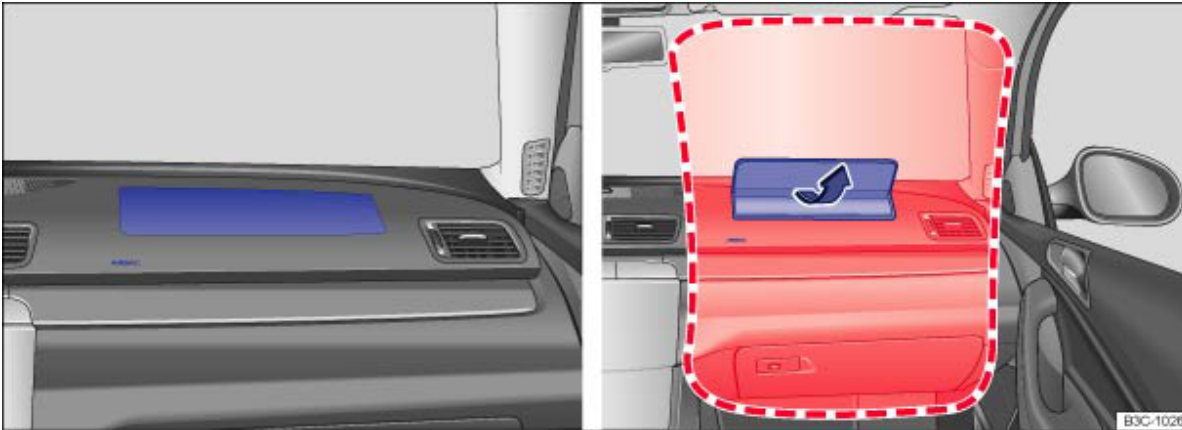
- If the ignition is switched off during a collision.
- If the level of deceleration measured by the control unit is too low during a collision at the front of the vehicle.
- During a minor side collision.
- During rear collisions.
- If the vehicle rolls over.
- If the speed in a collision is lower than the reference value specified in the control unit.

## Front airbags





**Fig. 71** Location and deployment zone of the driver front airbag




**Fig. 72** Location and deployment zone of the front passenger front airbag



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

In conjunction with the seat belts, the front airbag system gives the front occupants additional protection for the head and chest in the event of a severe frontal collision. Always keep as far away from the front airbag as possible → *Adjusting the seat position* . This way, the front airbags can deploy fully when they are triggered thus providing their maximum protection.

The front airbag for the driver is located in the steering wheel → *Fig. 71* and the front airbag for the front passenger is located on the dash panel → *Fig. 72* . The airbag locations are identified by the text AIRBAG.

The areas inside the red lines → *Fig. 71* and → *Fig. 72* are covered by the front airbags when deployed (deployment zone). For this reason, you must never leave or attach any items in these areas →  . The factory-fitted accessories, such as the base plate for the mobile telephone holder, will not be struck when the driver and front passenger front airbags are deployed.

The airbag covers fold out of the steering wheel → *Fig. 71* or dash panel → *Fig. 72* when the driver and front passenger front airbags deploy. The airbag covers remain connected to the steering wheel or the dash panel.

## DANGER

The airbag deploys in fractions of a second and at high speed.

- Always leave the deployment zones of the front airbags clear.
- Never attach any items, such as drink or telephone holders, to the covers of the airbags or anywhere in the airbag deployment zone.
- Occupants in the front seats must never carry any people, pets or objects in the deployment zone between them and the airbags.
- Do not attach any items to the windscreen above the front airbag on the front passenger side.
- Do not cover or stick anything on the steering wheel hub or the soft plastic surface of the airbag unit on the front passenger side, and do not obstruct or modify them in any way.

## WARNING

The front airbags are deployed in front of the steering wheel → *Fig. 71* and dash panel → *Fig. 72* .

- When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the ring at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions.
- Adjust the driver seat in such a way that there is at least 25 cm between your breastbone and the hub of the steering wheel. If your build makes it impossible to fulfil this requirement contact a qualified workshop.

- Adjust the front passenger seat so that the distance between the passenger and the dash panel is as large as possible.

## Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off manually using the key-operated switch



Fig. 73 In the stowage compartment on the front passenger side: key switch for disabling and enabling the front airbag on the front passenger side

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

The front passenger front airbag must be switched off when securing a rear-facing child seat to the front passenger seat.

### Disabling the front passenger front airbag

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the stowage compartment on the front passenger side.
- Remove the spare key from the vehicle key → [Vehicle key set](#) .
- Use the spare key to turn the key switch to the **OFF** position → [Fig. 73](#) .
- Close the stowage compartment on front passenger side.
- When the ignition is switched on, the indicator lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** will light up permanently in the dash panel → [Indicator lamp](#) .

### Enabling the front passenger front airbag

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the stowage compartment on the front passenger side.
- Remove the spare key from the vehicle key → [Vehicle key set](#) .
- Use the spare key to turn the key switch to the **ON** position → [Fig. 73](#) .
- Close the stowage compartment on front passenger side.
- Check that the indicator lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** in the dash panel does *not* light up when the ignition is switched on → [Indicator lamp](#) .

### Identifying characteristics for a disabled front passenger front airbag

A disabled front passenger front airbag is identified **only** when the indicator lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** is displayed in the dash panel ( **OFF** lights up yellow permanently) → [Indicator lamp](#) .

If the indicator lamp **OFF** in the centre console is **not lit up permanently**, or if it lights up at the same time as indicator lamp in the instrument cluster, do not attach any child restraint system to the front passenger seat for safety reasons. The front passenger front airbag may deploy during an accident.

## WARNING

The front passenger front airbag should only be switched off in exceptional circumstances.

- In order to prevent damage to the airbag system, only switch the front passenger front airbag on and off when the ignition is switched off.
- It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the key-operated switch is set to the correct position.
- Only switch the front passenger front airbag off if, in exceptional circumstances, a child seat has to be attached to the front passenger seat.
- Switch the front passenger front airbag back on again as soon as the child seat on the front passenger seat is no longer being used.

## Side airbags

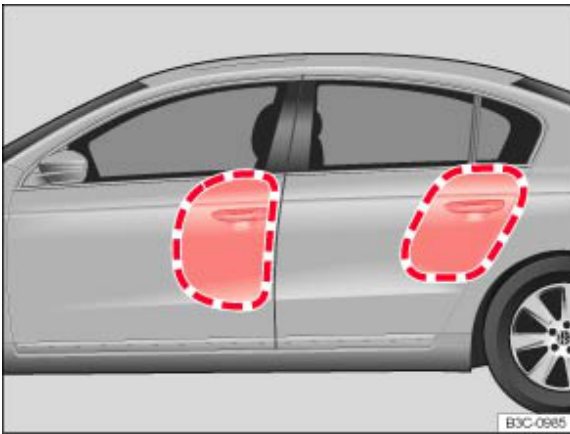


Fig. 74 On left-hand side of vehicle: deployment zones of side airbags

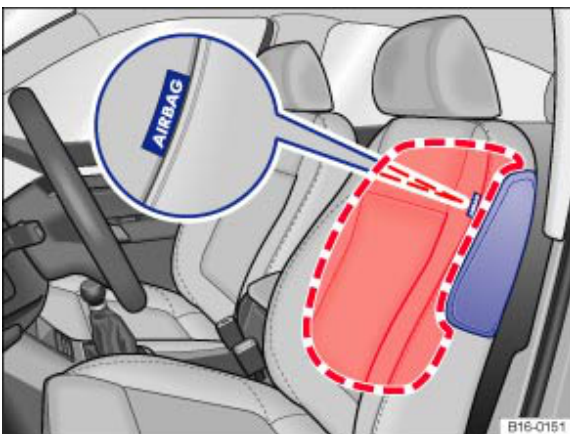


Fig. 75 On the side of the front seat: location and deployment range of the side airbag

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

The side airbags are located in the outer seat backrest cushions of the driver seat and front passenger seat → Fig. 75. Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle, side airbags may also be fitted for the outer rear seats. They are located between the door opening and the backrests. The locations of the airbags are marked with stickers with the word AIRBAG. The areas marked in red → Fig. 74 and → Fig. 75 indicate the deployment zones of the side airbags.

During a side collision, the side airbags will be deployed on the vehicle's side of impact, reducing the risk of injury to the areas of the occupants' bodies facing the impact.

## ⚠ WARNING

The airbag deploys in fractions of a second and at high speed.

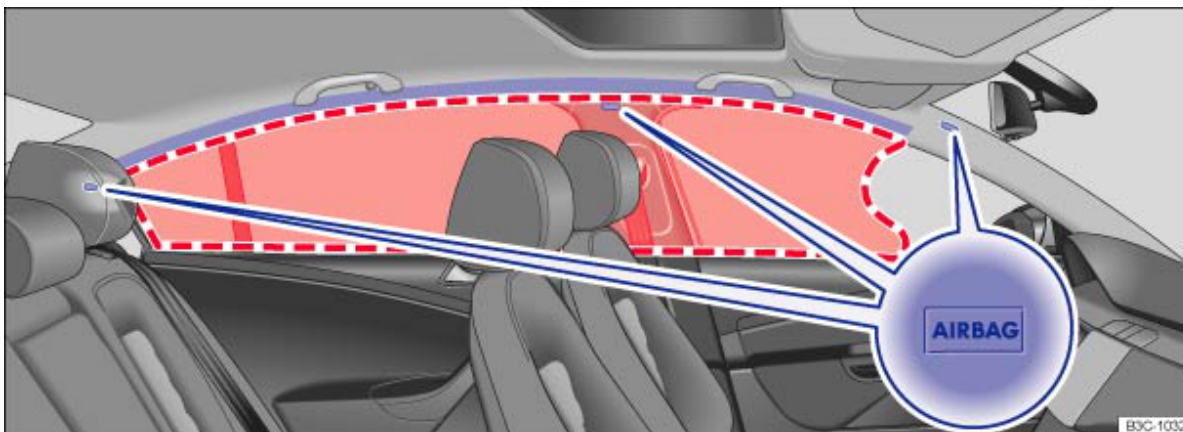
- Always leave the deployment zones of the side airbags clear.
- Occupants of the front seats and rear outer seats must never carry any people, pets or objects in the deployment zone between them and the airbags.
- The built-in coat hooks should be used only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp objects in the pockets.
- Do not fit any accessories onto the doors.
- Do not fit seat covers or protective covers over the seats unless they have been expressly approved for use in the vehicle. Otherwise the side airbag may not be able to deploy if it has been triggered.

## ⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the driver and front passenger seat could hinder the proper function of the side airbag and cause serious injury.

- Never remove the front seats from the vehicle or alter any components of these seats.
- If too much pressure is applied to the backrest side bolster, the side airbags may not be triggered correctly, may not trigger at all, or may trigger unexpectedly.
- Any damage to the original seat upholstery or around the seams of the side airbag units must be repaired immediately by a qualified workshop.

## Curtain airbags



**Fig. 76** On the left-hand side of the vehicle: location and deployment zone of the curtain airbag

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

In the interior, a curtain airbag is fitted above the doors on both the driver and front passenger sides → *Fig. 76*. The airbag location is identified by the text AIRBAG.

The area in the red frame → *Fig. 76* is covered by the curtain airbag when triggered (deployment zone). For this reason, you must never leave or attach any items in this area.

In a side collision the curtain airbag is triggered on the impact side of the vehicle.

In a side collision the curtain airbags reduce the risk of injury to the areas of the body facing the impact for passengers on the front seats and the outer rear seats.

## WARNING

The airbag deploys in fractions of a second and at high speed.

- Always leave the deployment zones of the curtain airbags clear.
- Never secure any items to the cover or in the deployment zone of the curtain airbag.
- Occupants of the front seats and rear outer seats must never carry any people, pets or objects in the deployment zone between them and the airbags.
- The built-in coat hooks should be used only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp objects in the pockets.
- Do not fit any accessories onto the doors.
- Do not install any sun blinds onto the side windows unless they have been expressly approved for use in your vehicle.
- If suitable blinds are fitted, then only pull the sun blinds down over the side windows if there are no items attached to them (such as pens or a remote control for a garage door).

## Child seats (accessories)

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *General information on transporting children in the vehicle*
- *Various securing systems*
- *Using a child seat on the front passenger seat*
- *Using a child seat on the rear seats*
- *Securing a child seat with a seat belt*
- *Attaching child seats using lower anchoring points (ISOFIX, LATCH)*
- *Securing child seats with the top tether*

It is absolutely necessary to read all of the information concerning the airbag system before transporting babies or children in a child seat on the front passenger seat.

This information is very important for the safety of the driver and the safety of all passengers, babies and small children in particular.

Volkswagen recommends using child seats from Volkswagen's range of accessories. These child seats were developed and approved for use in Volkswagen vehicles. Child seats for the various different securing systems are available from a Volkswagen dealer.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Seat belts → *Seat belts*
- Airbag system → *Airbag system*
- Integrated child seats → *Integrated child seat*

## WARNING

Children who are not strapped in or who are not strapped in properly could sustain severe or fatal injuries while the vehicle is in motion.

- Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat when the front passenger front airbag is switched on.
- Children up to 12 years of age should always be transported on the rear seat.
- Always secure children in the vehicle in an authorised restraint system which is suitable for their height and weight.
- Always fasten children's seat belts correctly and ensure that they assume a correct sitting position.
- Adjust the seat backrest to an upright position if a child seat is to be used on this seat.
- Do not allow children to sit with their heads or any other body parts in the side airbag's deployment zone.
- Make sure the seat belt routing is correct.
- Never travel when children or babies are being carried on somebody's lap.
- Only ever fasten one child into a child seat.
- Read and follow the instructions by the manufacturer of the child seat.

## WARNING

An unsecured, unoccupied child seat could be flung through the vehicle interior in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or accident. This could cause injuries.

- Always secure child seats safely or stow them in the luggage compartment if they are not being used while the vehicle is in motion.



Replace child seats that withstand any force during an accident as they could have sustained damage which may not be visible.

## General information on transporting children in the vehicle



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  *Introduction*

Legislation and legal requirements take precedence over the descriptions in this owner's manual. Various standards and regulations control the use of child seats and methods for securing them. For example, this could mean that in some countries you are not allowed to use child seats on certain seats in the vehicle.

The laws of physics which come into force on a vehicle during a collision or any other kind of accident also apply for children → *Seat belts*. In contrast to adults and teenagers, however, children's muscles and bones are not yet fully developed. There is a higher risk for children than for adults of sustaining serious injuries in an accident.

Children must be transported using child restraint systems specially suited to their size, weight and build as children's bodies are not yet fully developed. In many countries there are laws which require the use of approved child restraint systems for babies and small children.

Use only suitable, approved and authorised child seats in your vehicle. If you are unsure, always speak to your Volkswagen dealership or a qualified workshop.

## Checklist

Transporting children in the vehicle →  :



Observe any country-specific legal requirements.



Volkswagen recommends that children under 12 years of age are always transported on the rear seats.

## Country-specific standards for child seats (selection)



- ✓ A child should only be transported on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances Using a child seat on the front passenger seat Child seat On the front passenger seat . The safest seat in the vehicle is on the rear seat behind the front passenger seat.
- ✓ Always secure any children in the vehicle in a restraint system. The restraint system must be suitable for the child's height, weight and build.
- ✓ Transport only one child per child seat.
- ✓ Observe the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat and always keep them in the vehicle.
- ✓ When securing a child seat using the seat belt, always guide the belt through or around the child seat as described in the instructions from the child seat manufacturer.
- ✓ Always make sure that the seat belt routing is correct for children and that they are sitting in the correct position.
- ✓ Whenever possible, fit the child seat on the rear bench seat behind the front passenger seat so that children can exit the vehicle on the kerb side.
- ✓ Do not leave any toys or other objects loose in the child seat or on the seat while the vehicle is in motion.

The child seats must correspond to the standard ECE-R 44<sup>1)</sup>. Further information can be provided by a Volkswagen dealership or on the Internet at [www.volkswagen.com](http://www.volkswagen.com).

### Group classification for child seats according to ECE-R 44

Weight class	Child's weight	Age
Group 0	up to 10 kg	up to approx. 9 months
Group 0+	up to 13 kg	up to approx. 18 months
Group 1	9 to 18 kg	approx. 8 months to 3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> years
Group 2	15 to 25 kg	approx. 3 to 7 years
Group 3	22 to 36 kg	approx. 6 to 12 years

Not every child will fit in the seat specified for his or her weight group. Likewise, not every seat will fit in every vehicle. Therefore, always check whether the child fits correctly in the child seat and whether the seat is securely attached in the vehicle.

Child seats that have been tested and approved under the ECE R 44 standard bear the test mark on the seat: the letter E in a circle with the test number below it.

#### WARNING

Ignoring any of the points on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and injuries.

- Follow the instructions on the checklist.

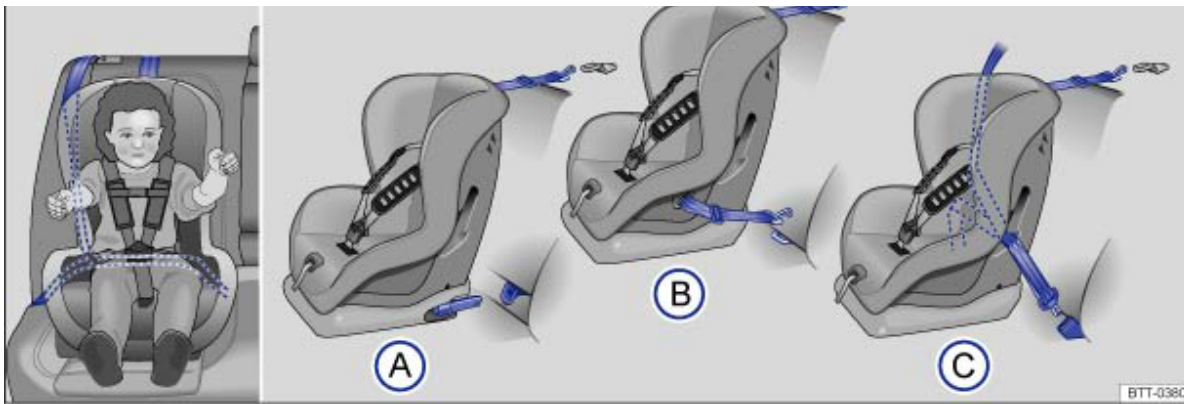
#### WARNING

In the case of an accident, the rear seat is the safest place for children with properly fastened seat belts.

- A suitable child seat which is correctly fitted and is used on one of the rear seats will, in most accident situations, provide the maximum level of protection for children up to 12 years old.

<sup>1)</sup> ECE R: Economic Commission for Europe Regulation.

## Various securing systems



**Fig. 77** On the rear seats: figures (A) and (B) illustrate the main securing points for the child restraint system on the lower retaining rings and top tether. Figure (C) shows how to secure the child restraint system using the vehicle seat belt

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → *Introduction*

Always secure child seats properly, safely and in accordance with the instructions from the child seat manufacturer.

The fitted child seat must sit close to the vehicle seat and must not be able to move or tip more than 2.5 cm.

Child seats that are intended to be secured using the top tether must be secured using the top tether in the vehicle → *Securing child seats with the top tether* . Attach the top tether only to the retaining rings fitted for this purpose. Not all fastening rings can be used with the top tether. Always pull the top tether tightly so that the child seat is secure and fits closely to the seat.

## Country-specific securing systems

**Variants of the attachment system** → *Fig. 77* :

- (A) ISOFIX retaining rings and top tether, including in *Europe* → *Attaching child seats using lower anchoring points (ISOFIX, LATCH)* and → *Securing child seats with the top tether* .
- (B) LATCH/UCRA universal anchorage attachment points and top tether, including countries such as *North America* → *Attaching child seats using lower anchoring points (ISOFIX, LATCH)* .
- (C) Three-point automatic seat belt and top tether → *Securing a child seat with a seat belt* .

The systems are made up of attachments for child restraint systems with a top tether and lower anchoring points in the seat.

## Using a child seat on the front passenger seat

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → *Introduction*


Not all countries allow you to transport children on the front passenger seat. Not every child seat is suitable for use on the front passenger seat. Volkswagen dealerships keep an up-to-date list of all authorised child seats. Only use child seats which have been authorised for your vehicle.

The active front airbag on the front passenger side presents a major danger to a child. Transporting a child in a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat can pose a danger to the child's life.

If a rear-facing child seat is secured to the front passenger seat, an inflating front passenger front airbag can strike it with such force that critical or fatal injuries may occur → . Therefore, **never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat when the front passenger front airbag is activated.

Only use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat when you have ascertained that the front passenger front airbag has been switched off. This is confirmed when the yellow indicator lamp in the dash panel PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** lights up → *Airbag system* . **If the front passenger front airbag cannot be switched off and stays active, do not transport any children on the front passenger seat** → .

**What to be aware of when using a child seat on the front passenger seat:**

- The front passenger front airbag **must** be deactivated when a rear-facing child seat is being used  → *Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off manually using the key-operated switch* .
- The front passenger seat backrest must be in an upright position.
- The front passenger seat must be pushed as far back as it will go.
- In vehicles with height-adjustable seats, the front passenger seat must be as high as possible.
- The seat belt height adjuster must be at the highest setting.

### Suitable child seats

The child seat must be specially authorised by the manufacturer for use on the front passenger seat in vehicles with front and side airbags.

**Universal child seats** in groups 0, 0+, 1, 2, or 3, as specified in ECE-R 44, can be fitted to the front passenger seat.

### DANGER

If a child seat is secured to the front passenger seat, the risk to the child of sustaining critical or fatal injuries in the event of an accident increases. Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the front passenger front airbag is enabled. The child could suffer fatal injuries when the front airbag is activated as the child seat will be hit by the airbag with full force and thrown against the seat backrest.

### DANGER


The following points must be ensured when, in exceptional circumstances, a child is transported in a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat.

- The front passenger front airbag must be switched off and remain switched off.
- The child seat must be approved by the child seat manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with front or side airbags.
- Follow the fitting instructions from the child seat manufacturer and observe all warnings.
- Push the front passenger seat as far as possible to the rear and adjust also to the highest position in order to adopt the furthest possible position from the front airbag.
- Adjust the backrest to an upright position.
- Set the belt height adjuster to the highest position.
- Always secure children in the vehicle in an authorised restraint system which is suitable for their height and weight.

## Using a child seat on the rear seats



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  *Introduction*

When fitting rear seats with a child seat, the front seat must be adjusted so that the child has sufficient space. Adjust the front seat according to the size of the child seat and child. Be sure that the front passenger can still maintain a correct sitting position  → *Adjusting the seat position* .

### Suitable child seats

The child seat must have been approved by the manufacturer for use on the rear bench seat with side airbag.

**Universal child seats** in groups 0, 0+, 1, 2, or 3 as specified in ECE-R 44 can be fitted to the rear seats.

The outer seats are suitable for child seats with the **ISOFIX** system which are specially approved for this vehicle type by ECE-R 44.

## ISOFIX child seats approved for use on rear seats

There are different categories of ISOFIX child seats: universal, semi-universal and vehicle-specific.

- If the ISOFIX child seat has universal approval, the child seat must be fastened with the lower anchoring points and the top tether.
- If ISOFIX child seats have semi-universal or vehicle-specific approval, a check must be made prior to use in order to find out whether the child seat has been approved for the vehicle. For this purpose, the child-seat manufacturer supplies the ISOFIX child seat with a list of vehicles for which the respective ISOFIX child seat has been approved. If necessary, contact the child seat manufacturer for an up-to-date list of vehicles.

## Securing a child seat with a seat belt



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)


It is permissible to fasten child seats with **universal** written on the orange label to the seats using the seat belt, but only on the seats marked in the table with a **u**.

Weight class	Front passenger seat	Seats on the rear bench seat
<b>Group 0</b> up to 10 kg	u	u
<b>Group 0+</b> up to 13 kg	u	u
<b>Group 1</b> 9 to 18 kg	u	u
<b>Group 2</b> 15 to 25 kg	u	u
<b>Group 3</b> 22 to 36 kg	u	u

## Securing a child seat using the seat belt

- Read and follow the instructions by the manufacturer of the child seat.
- When placing the child seat on the front passenger seat, push the seat back as far as possible and adjust the backrest to an upright position → [Adjusting the seat position](#) .
- Position the child seat on the seat according to the instructions given by the child seat manufacturer.
- The seat belt height adjuster must be at the highest setting.
- Fasten the seat belt or guide it through the child seat as described in the instructions by the child seat manufacturer.
- Make sure that the seat belt is not twisted.
- Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked and you hear a click.
- The upper part of the belt must lie snugly and fully over the child seat.
- Pull the upper belt to check that it is now locked and can no longer be pulled out.

## Removing child seats

Unfasten seat belts only when the vehicle is stationary →  .

- Press the red button in the buckle. The latch plate is released and springs out.
- Guide the belt back by hand so that it rolls up easily, without twisting the seat belt and without damaging the trim.
- Remove the child seat from the vehicle.



**WARNING**

**Unfastening seat belts while the vehicle is in motion can lead to severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden braking or steering manoeuvre.**

- Unfasten seat belts only when the vehicle is stationary.

## Attaching child seats using lower anchoring points (ISOFIX, LATCH)

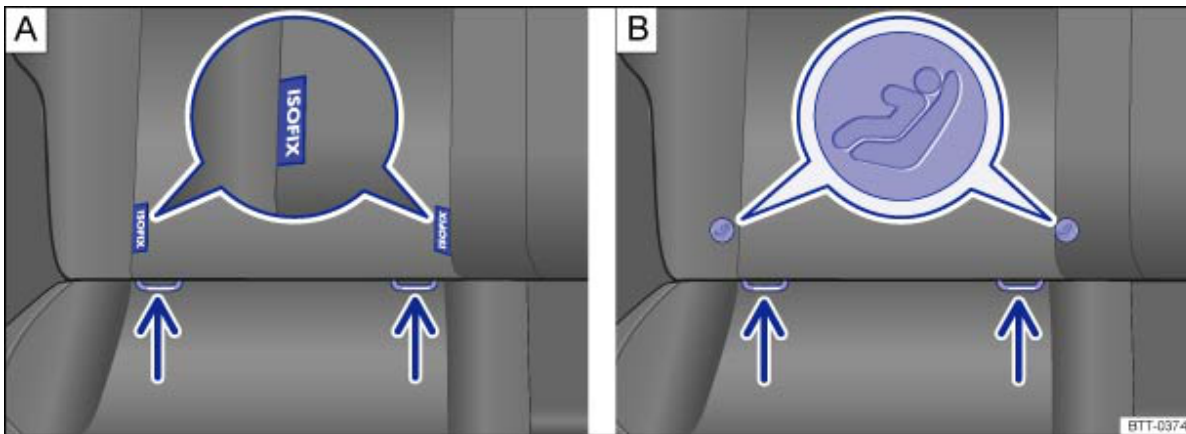


Fig. 78 On vehicle seat: different markings identifying the lower anchoring points for child seats

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → *Introduction*

2 retaining rings, also known as lower anchoring points, are fitted to each outside rear seat.

### Overview of installation with ISOFIX

The following table lists where and how ISOFIX child seats can be fastened at the lower anchoring points on the individual seats in the vehicle according to European Directive ECE 16.

The body weight permissible for the child seat and the size class **A** to **G** are indicated on the label attached to child seats with universal or semi-universal certification.


	Group (weight class)									
	Group 0: up to 10 kg		Group 0: up to 10 kg			Group 1: 9 to 18 kg				
			Group 0+: up to 13 kg							
<b>Direction of installation</b>	Rear-facing (opposite to driving direction)		Rear-facing (opposite to driving direction)			Rear-facing (opposite to driving direction)		Forward-facing (in driving direction)		
<b>Size class</b>	F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1
<b>Installation on front passenger seat</b>	Seat without anchoring points, not attached with ISOFIX/LATCH									
<b>Installation on outer seats on the rear bench seat</b>	IL-SU		IL-SU			IL-SU		IUF/IL-SU		
<b>Installation on middle seat on the rear bench seat</b>	Seat without anchoring points, not attached with ISOFIX/LATCH									


**IL-SU:** Suitable seat for installing an ISOFIX child seat with semi-universal approval, refer to vehicle list from child seat manufacturer.

**IUF:** Suitable seat for installation of an ISOFIX child seat with universal approval and securing with top tether.


### Child seats with fixed attachments

Insert guides can be used to install a child seat with rigid attachments. Insert guides facilitate installation and protect the seat covers. The insert guides in

some cases are part of the scope of supply for the child seat or can be obtained from your Volkswagen dealership. If necessary, the insert guides are latched onto the two anchoring points in the vehicle → .

- Observe the instructions by the child seat manufacturer when fitting or removing the child seat → .
- Insert the child seat into the retaining rings → Fig. 78 in the direction of the arrow. The child seat must audibly click securely into place.
- Pull on both sides of the child seat.

### Child seats with adjustable attachment belts

- Observe the instructions by the child seat manufacturer when fitting or removing the child seat → .
- Position the child seat on the seat cushion and attach the hooks from the attachment belts onto the retaining rings → Fig. 78.
- Pull the attachment belts to ensure that they are equally taut. The child seat must fit snugly to the vehicle seat.
- Pull on both sides of the child seat.

## WARNING

The lower anchoring points for the child seats are not fastening rings. Fit child seats to the lower anchoring points only.

## NOTICE

- In order to avoid permanent marks on the seats, the insert guides should be removed from the anchoring points when there is no child seat fitted to them.
- In order to avoid damage to the seat covers, the seats or the insert guides, the insert guides must always be removed from the anchoring points before folding the rear bench seat forwards.

## Securing child seats with the top tether




Fig. 79 Example of a fastened top tether





Fig. 80 Top tether straps fitted in the luggage compartment

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

- Observe the instructions provided by the child seat manufacturer when fitting or removing the child seat → .
- Release the seat backrest and fold the backrest forwards slightly → *Seat functions* .
- Remove the head restraint located behind the child seat and stow it securely in the vehicle → *Adjusting the seat position* .
- Guide the top tether of the child seat behind the backrest into the luggage compartment.
- Fold back the seat backrest and push it firmly to lock it in place. The red marking on the release button should no longer be visible.
- Attach the child seat to the lower anchoring points → *Attaching child seats using lower anchoring points (ISOFIX, LATCH)* .
- Fasten the top tether to the retaining rings in the luggage compartment → *Fig. 80* .
- Stretch the belt so that the child seat is positioned high on the backrest.
- Reinstall the head restraints after the child seat has been removed → *Adjusting the seat position* .

 **WARNING**

Child seats attached using the lower anchoring points and top tether must be fitted according to the instructions from the manufacturer. This could otherwise lead to severe injuries.

- Never attach more than *one* top tether from a child seat to one retaining ring in the luggage compartment.
- Never fasten the top tether to one of the fastening rings.

## Integrated child seat

 **Introduction**

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Folding out the integrated child seat*
- *Seat belt routing for an integrated child seat*
- *Stowing the child seat*

The integrated child seat is suitable only for children belonging to group 2 (15-25 kg) and group 3 (22-36 kg), as specified in the standard ECE-R 44.

**Additional information and warnings:**

- Seat belts → *Seat belts*

 **DANGER**

Children who are not belted in and children who are not secured using a suitable restraint system could sustain fatal injuries if the airbags are deployed.

- Always transport children up to the age of 12 on the rear seats

- Always transport children up to the age of 12 on the rear seats.
- If exceptional circumstances require you to transport a child in a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat, the front passenger front airbag must always be switched off.
- Always secure children in the vehicle in a restraint system which is suitable for their height and weight.
- Always make sure that children are properly belted in.

## **⚠ WARNING**

When travelling, children must be secured in the vehicle in a child seat appropriate for weight and size.

- Always secure children in the vehicle in a restraint system which is suitable for their height and weight.
- Always fasten children's seat belts correctly and ensure that they assume a correct sitting position.
- The shoulder part of the seat belt must lie approximately on the centre of the shoulder and never across the neck or upper arm.
- The shoulder belt must lie close to the chest.
- The lap part of the seat belt must lie across the pelvis, not across the stomach, and always fit closely.
- If necessary, tighten the belt so that it lies snugly over the body.
- Never travel when children or babies are being carried on somebody's lap.
- Always secure children under 1.5 m tall in a child seat. Using a *normal* seat belt could lead to injuries to the abdominal and neck areas.
- Only ever fasten one child into a child seat.
- Read and observe the information and warnings from the child seat manufacturer.
- Never leave a child in a child seat unsupervised or alone in the vehicle.
- Any modifications to the integrated child seat must be made only by a qualified workshop.
- Have a child seat or parts of a child seat replaced if the child seat or any part of it becomes damaged or if it withstands the force of a collision during an accident.

## **⚠ WARNING**

Loose items could be flung through the vehicle interior in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or accident. This could cause injuries.

- Do not leave any toys or hard objects loose in the child seat or on the seat.

## Folding out the integrated child seat





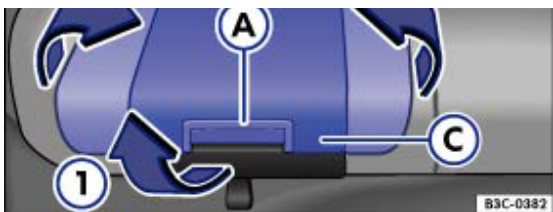


Fig. 81 Integrated child seat: folding out the seat cushion

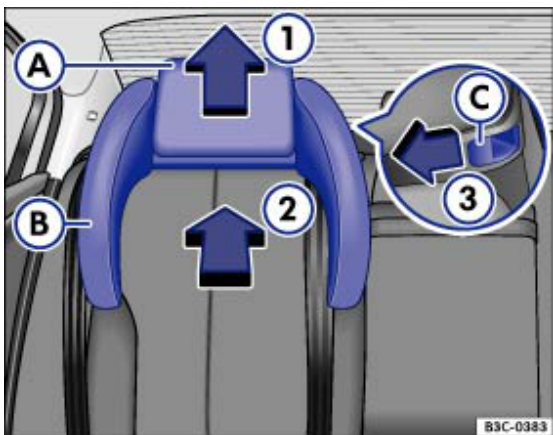








Fig. 82 Integrated child seat: inserting side head restraints








First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The integrated child seat may be equipped with side head restraints. Volkswagen recommends that you always use the integrated child seat with the removable side head restraints. It is suitable for children over the age of 3 only.

### Folding out the seat cushion

- Using the release lever → [Fig. 81](#) , pull the seat cushion forwards in the direction of the arrow → [Fig. 81](#) .
- Fold both sides → [Fig. 81](#)  up in the direction of the arrows → [Fig. 81](#) .
- Push the seat cushion → [Fig. 81](#)  to the rear in the direction of the arrows → [Fig. 81](#)  until it engages in place.

### Fitting the side head restraints

- Push the head restraint → [Fig. 82](#)  up → [Fig. 82](#) .
- Make sure that the belt guide on the window side is fitted to the side head restraint → [Seat belt routing for an integrated child seat](#) .
- Push the side head restraints → [Fig. 82](#)  from the front in the direction of the arrow → [Fig. 82](#)  into the guides on the head restraint.
- The side head restraints must click into place. The red marking should no longer be visible → [Fig. 82](#) .
- Push the button on the head restraint and push down the head restraint → [Adjusting the seat position](#) .

### Seat belt routing for an integrated child seat





Fig. 83 Integrated child seat: seat belt routing



Fig. 84 Integrated child seat: seat belt routing with belt guide



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Using the belt guide → [Fig. 84](#), position the seat belt so that, on smaller children, the shoulder part of the belt sits on the middle of the shoulder.

### Belt guide

- Attach the belt guide to the window side of the side head restraint. The belt guide is secured by a press stud.
- Unfasten the highest press stud on the belt guide and guide the belt under the side head restraint and through the belt guide.
- Re-fasten the press stud.

### Seat belt routing

- Guide the automatic three-point seat belt under the side head restraint.
- Take hold of the latch plate and pull it slowly across the chest and pelvis.
- Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click.
- Pull on the seat belt to ensure that the latch plate is securely locked in the buckle.



## WARNING

The seat belt will offer the optimum level of protection from severe and fatal injuries only when the seat belt routing is correct.

- Always fasten children's seat belts correctly and ensure that they assume a correct sitting position.
- Always position the shoulder part of the belt over the middle of the shoulder.
- The seat belt must always lie flat and snugly on the body.

- If necessary, tighten the belt so that it lies snugly over the body.
- Always wear the lap part of the seat belt over the pelvis and not across the abdomen.
- Only ever fasten one child into a child seat.

## Stowing the child seat

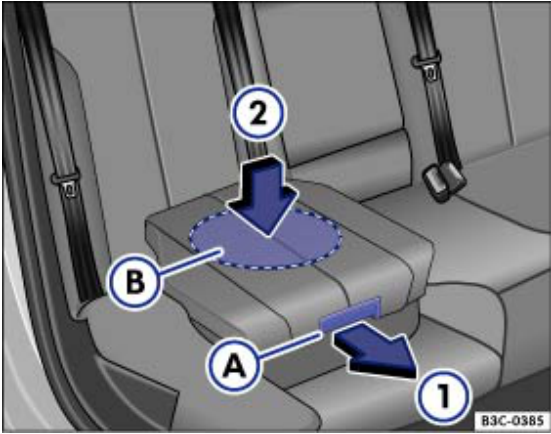


Fig. 85 Integrated child seat: folding back the seat cushion



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → ⚠ *Introduction*

### Folding the seat cushion back

- Using the release lever → Fig. 85 ⓐ, pull the seat cushion forwards in the direction of the arrow ⓐ.
- Press the *centre* of the seat cushion ⓑ down in the direction of the arrow ⓑ so that it engages securely → ⓑ. The side restraints fold in automatically.

### Removing the side head restraints

- Unfasten the belt guide.
- Guide the belt back by hand so that it rolls up easily and without damaging the trim.
- Push the head restraint → Fig. 82 ⓐ up ⓐ.
- Push the release mechanism → Fig. 82 ⓐ in the direction of the arrow ⓐ to remove the side head restraint.
- Push the button on the head restraint and push down the head restraint.

### ! NOTICE

When folding up the integrated child seat, press only in the centre of the seat cushion → Fig. 85 ⓑ. The seat cushion could otherwise become jammed and will not engage securely.

## Lights and vision

### Lights

#### 📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Indicator lamps*
- *Turn signal and main beam lever*
- *Switching lights on and off*
- *Lights and vision – functions*
- *Main beam control*

- *Masking or switching over headlights for driving abroad*
- *and functions (orientation lighting)*
- *Headlight range control, instrument and switch lighting*
- *Interior and reading lights*

Observe any country-specific regulations when using vehicle lighting.

The driver is responsible for the correct headlight position and the correct headlight setting.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views → *Exterior views*
- Volkswagen information system → *Volkswagen information system*
- Changing bulbs → *Changing bulbs*

## WARNING








Headlights which have been set too high and the incorrect use of the main beam could distract and dazzle other road users. This could lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Always ensure that the headlights are adjusted correctly.
- Never use the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users could be dazzled.

## Indicator lamps



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  *Introduction*

Lit up	Possible cause	Correction
	Vehicle lighting not working partially or completely.	Change the corresponding bulb → <i>Changing bulbs</i> or if all bulbs are functioning, go to a qualified workshop.
	Fault in the bend lighting system.	→ <i>Dynamic bend lighting (AFS)</i> .
	Rear fog light switched on.	→ <i>Fog lights:</i> .
	Fog lights switched on.	
	Turn signal for the right or left. The indicator lamp will flash twice as fast if one of the turn signals on the vehicle or trailer is not working.	If necessary, check the vehicle lights and lights on the trailer.
	Daytime running lights switched on.	→ <i>Daytime running lights</i> .
	Main beam is switched on or the headlight flasher is being operated.	→ <i>Turn signal and main beam lever</i> .
	Main beam assist (Light Assist) or automatic main beam assist (Dynamic Light Assist) is switched on.	→ <i>Main beam control</i> .

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.

## WARNING

Failure to observe the illuminated warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore warning lamps and text messages.

- **Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.**
- **Stop the vehicle at a safe distance away from moving traffic and so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass, fuel, oil etc.**
- **A broken down vehicle increases the risk of accidents – both for you and other road users. If necessary, switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle in order to warn other road users.**

## ! NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Turn signal and main beam lever

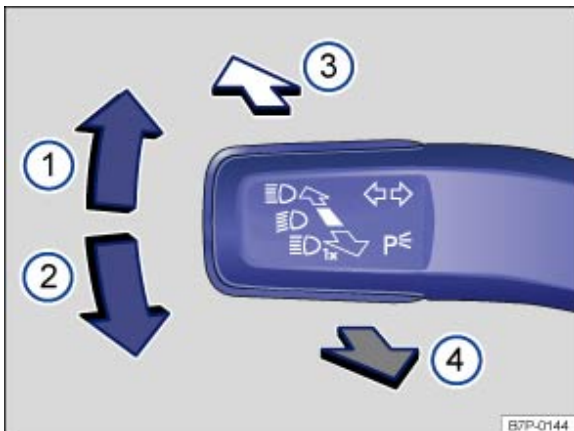


Fig. 86 Turn signal and main beam lever

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → [Introduction](#)

**Move the lever into the desired position:**

- 1 Right turn signal → . With ignition switched off move from central position for right parking light → [Lights and vision – functions](#) .
- 2 Left turn signal → . With ignition switched off move from central position for left parking light → [Lights and vision – functions](#) .
- 3 Switch on main beam → . When the main beam is switched on, an indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.
- 4 Operate the headlight flasher or switch off the main beam. The *headlight flasher* comes on for as long as you pull the lever. The indicator lamp lights up.

## Lane change flash

To operate the lane change flash, push the lever up or down to the point where you incur resistance and then release lever. The turn signal flashes three times.

The lane change function can be switched off via the **Light & vision** menu in the instrument cluster display → [Volkswagen information system](#) . In vehicles without the **Lights & vision** menu, the function can be disabled by a qualified workshop.

## ! WARNING

**Incorrect use of turn signals, a failure to use turn signals, or forgetting to switch off a turn signal can confuse other road users. This could lead to accidents and serious injuries.**

- **Always activate the turn signal in good time when changing lanes and performing overtaking or turning manoeuvres.**
- **Always switch off the turn signal once the lane change or overtaking or turning manoeuvre has been completed**

• Always switch on the turn signal once the lane change or overtaking or turning manoeuvre has been completed.

**WARNING**

Incorrect use of the main beam headlights can lead to accidents and serious injuries as the main beam headlights could distract and dazzle other road users.

**i** The turn signal will only work when the ignition is switched on. The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off → *In an emergency* .

**i** If one turn signal fails on the vehicle or on the trailer, the indicator lamp will start flashing twice as fast.

**i** The *main beam headlights* can only be switched on if the dipped beam headlights are already on.

**Switching lights on and off**



Fig. 87 Next to the steering wheel: examples of the various light switches

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → **Introduction**

Observe any country-specific regulations when using vehicle lighting.

In vehicles with a factory-fitted **towing bracket**: the vehicle's rear fog lights are switched off automatically if a trailer with rear fog lights is electrically connected to the vehicle.

**Turn the light switch to the desired position** → Fig. 87 :








Symbol	When the ignition is switched off	When the ignition is switched on
0	The fog lights, dipped beam headlights and side lights are switched off.	Lights switched off or daytime headlights or daytime running lights are switched on.
AUTO	The orientation lighting can be switched on.	The automatic headlight control and, if applicable, the daytime headlights or daytime running lights are switched on.

**Turn the light switch to the desired position** → Fig. 87 :

Symbol	When the ignition is switched off	When the ignition is switched on
☞☞	The side lights are switched on.	The side lights are switched on.
☞	The dipped beams are switched off. The side lights may still light up for a short time.	The dipped beam headlights are switched on.



**Fog lights:**

The indicator lamps ☞ or ☞ in the light switch indicate that the fog lights are switched on.

- To switch the fog light  on: pull the light switch out of the position  or  to the first stop.
- To switch the rear fog light  on: pull the light switch out of position  or  as far as it will go.
- To switch the fog lights off, press the light switch or move it to position .

### Acoustic warnings if lights are not switched off

If the key is removed from the ignition lock and the driver door is opened, an acoustic warning will sound in any of the following situations. That will remind you to switch off the lights as necessary.

- If the parking light is switched on → *Turn signal and main beam lever* .
- If the light switch is in position .
- If the light switch is in position  (in vehicles without orientation lighting) → *Coming Home and Leaving Home functions (orientation lighting)* .

## WARNING

The side lights or daytime running lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road ahead and to ensure that other road users are able to see you.

- Always switch the dipped headlights on if it is dark, raining or visibility is poor.

## Lights and vision – functions




First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  *Introduction*

### Parking light


When the parking lights (left and right turn signals) are switched on, the headlight and the tail light on the corresponding side of the vehicle light up. The parking light only lights up when the ignition is switched off and if the turn signal and main beam lever was in the central position before being operated.

### Permanent parking light on both sides

If the light switch is in position  with the ignition switched off and the vehicle is locked from the outside then the permanent parking light on both sides switches on. In this case, only both headlights light up along with side lights and the exterior rear lights.

### Daytime headlights

With daytime headlights, the dipped beam headlights or side lights and the number plate are lit up.

The daytime headlights are switched on when the ignition is switched on if the light switch is in position **0** or **AUTO**. In some model versions, indicator lamp  in the light switch indicates that the daytime headlights are switched on.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, a light-sensitive sensor will switch the dipped beam, and the lighting in the instruments and switches, on and off automatically.

The daytime headlights cannot be switched on or off manually.

### Daytime running lights

There are separate lights in the headlights or in the front bumper for the daytime headlights.

Only the separate lights light up when the daytime running lights are switched on → .

The daytime running lights are switched on when the ignition is switched on if the light switch is in position **0** or **AUTO**.


The daytime running lights are switched on when the ignition is switched on if the light switch is in position **U** or **AUTO**.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, a light-sensitive sensor will switch the dipped beam, and the lighting in the instruments and switches, on and off automatically.

The daytime headlights can be switched on or off via the **Light & vision** menu in the instrument cluster display → [Volkswagen information system](#) .

## Automatic headlight control **AUTO**

The automatic headlight control is merely an aid and will not always be able to detect all driving situations.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the vehicle lights and the lighting in instruments and switches will switch on and off automatically in the following situations →  :

Automatically switched on:	Automatically switched off:
When the light sensor detects <i>darkness</i> , e.g. when driving through tunnels.	When the sensors detect there is enough light.
Vehicles <i>without</i> daytime running lights: if you drive faster than 140 km/h (85 mph) for a few seconds.	Vehicles <i>without</i> daytime running lights: if you drive slower than 65 km/h (40 mph) for a few minutes.
When the rain sensor detects that it is raining and switches the windscreen wipers on.	When the windscreen wiper has not been used for a few minutes.

## Dynamic bend lighting (AFS)

The dynamic bend lighting works only at speeds above approximately 10 km/h (6 mph) and when the dipped beam headlights are switched on. When driving round bends, the road is automatically better lit by the swivelling bulbs.

The dynamic bend lighting can be switched on and off in the **Assist systems** menu or by using the button for driver assist systems → [Volkswagen information system](#) .

## Static bend lighting

When cornering slowly or in very tight bends, the static bend lighting integrated in the headlight will also be switched on automatically. The static bend lighting works only at speeds less than 40 km/h (25 mph).


The static bend lighting may, depending on the equipment option, be integrated in the fog light or in the front headlight.

## WARNING


Accidents could be caused if roads are not sufficiently lit and the vehicle cannot be seen or is very difficult to be seen by other road users.

- The automatic headlight control (**AUTO**) switches the dipped beam headlights on only when there is a change to the level of brightness and not, for example, if it is foggy.
- Never drive with daytime running lights if the street is not sufficiently lit due to weather and lighting conditions. The daytime running lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road ahead and to ensure that other road users are able to see you.
- The rear lights will not be switched on with the daytime running lights. If the rear lights are not switched on, the vehicle may not be visible to other road users if it is dark, raining or if visibility is poor.




 In cool or damp weather, the headlights, rear lights and turn signals may mist over briefly on the inside. This is normal and does not affect the service life of the lights on your vehicle.

## Main beam control


 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

### Main beam control (Light Assist)

Within the limits of the system, the main beam assist automatically switches the main beam on at speeds of over approximately 60 km/h (37 mph), depending on environmental and traffic conditions, and switches it off again at speeds under approximately 30 km/h (18 mph) → . The function is controlled by a camera located at the base of the interior mirror.

Main beam assist normally recognises illuminated areas such as towns and deactivates the main beam while driving through them.

### Automatic main beam control (Dynamic Light Assist)

The automatic main beam assist (Dynamic Light Assist) can, working within the limits of the system, minimise or even stop dazzling of other road users → .


The system identifies other road users as well as their distance from own vehicle and covers part of the headlights appropriately to prevent disturbing other road users. If dazzling other road users cannot be prevented, the light distribution is automatically set to dipped beam headlights. The function is controlled by a camera located on the inside of the windscreen above the interior mirror.

The automatic main beam assist automatically switches the main beam on at speeds of more than approximately 60 km/h (37 mph) and off again at speeds under approximately 30 km/h (18 mph) depending on whether there are vehicles ahead, whether there is oncoming traffic, and also on other general factors and traffic conditions.

If the dynamic bend lighting is deactivated → [Dynamic bend lighting \(AFS\)](#) or the headlight switch-over → [Masking or switching over headlights for driving abroad](#) is activated, the full beam lights are only switched on and off automatically. This occurs in accordance with the vehicles ahead, oncoming traffic and the road lighting.

Automatic main beam assist normally recognises illuminated areas such as towns and deactivates the main beam while driving through them.

### Switching main beam assist or automatic main beam assist on and off

Function	Action
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Switch on the ignition and turn light switch to position <b>AUTO</b>.</li> <li>– Push the turn signal and main beam lever forwards out of the off position → <a href="#">Turn signal and main beam lever</a> .</li> </ul>
Switching on:	Action
	When the main beam control or the automatic main beam control is activated, the indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster display lights up.
Switching off:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Switch off the ignition.</li> <li>– <b>OR:</b> turn the light switch to a position other than <b>AUTO</b> → <a href="#">Switching lights on and off</a> .</li> <li>– <b>OR:</b> when the main beam is switched on, pull back the turn signal and main beam lever.</li> <li>– <b>OR:</b> push the turn signal and main beam lever forwards in order to switch on manual main beam. The main beam assist is then switched off.</li> </ul>

### Fault

It may not be possible to switch off the main beam quickly enough or at all using the main beam control function due to the following:

- In poorly lit streets where there are highly-reflective signs.
- When encountering other road users with insufficient lighting, such as pedestrians or cyclists.
- In tight bends, brows of hills or depressions in the land or half-hidden oncoming traffic.
- With oncoming traffic on streets with a central barrier where the driver can see clearly over the central barrier e.g. lorry drivers.
- If the camera is broken or the power supply is interrupted.
- In fog, snow or heavy rain.
- In dust or sand that has been whirled up.
- Stone damage in the camera's field of view.
- If the viewing field of the camera is misted up, dirty, covered by a sticker, snow or ice.

## WARNING


Do not let the extra convenience afforded by main beam control or automatic main beam control tempt you into taking any risks when driving. The system cannot replace the full concentration of the driver.

- Always check the lights yourself and adjust them to the prevailing conditions for lights, vision and road traffic.
- The main beam control or automatic main beam control may not be able to recognise all driving situations correctly and may not work properly in certain situations.
- If the camera's field of view is dirty, covered or damaged, the function of the main beam assist and automatic main beam assist may be impaired. This also applies if changes are made to the vehicle's lighting system, for example if additional headlights are fitted.

## NOTICE

Please observe the following points in order to avoid impairing the proper function of the system:

- Regularly clean the camera's field of view, and keep it free from snow and ice.
- Do not cover the camera's field of view.
- Check the area of the windscreen that is in the camera's field of view for damage.

 The headlight flasher and the main beam can be switched on and off manually at any time with the turn signal and main beam lever → [Turn signal and main beam lever](#) .


## Masking or switching over headlights for driving abroad

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)



If you have to drive a right-hand drive vehicle in a left-hand drive country, or vice versa, the asymmetric dipped beam headlights may dazzle oncoming traffic. Therefore, the headlights must be masked or switched over if you are driving abroad.

The orientation of the headlights can be adjusted in the **Travel mode** submenu in the **Light & Vision** menu shown on the instrument cluster → [Volkswagen information system](#) .

In those vehicles where the headlights cannot be adjusted via the menu, you must apply stickers to certain parts of the headlight lenses or have the headlights adjusted by a qualified workshop. A qualified workshop can provide you with further information. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

 The use of the travel mode and of the stickers is only permissible if the period of use is limited. Please contact a qualified workshop for a permanent alteration. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## Coming Home and Leaving Home functions (orientation lighting)

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The Coming Home function is switched on manually. However, the Leaving Home function is controlled automatically by a light-sensitive sensor.


Coming Home	Action
Switching on:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Switch off the ignition.</li> <li>– Operate the headlight flasher for approximately one second → <i>Turn signal and main beam lever</i> .</li> </ul> <p>The Coming Home lights are switched on when the driver door is opened. The <i>switch-off delay</i> starts when the last vehicle door or the boot lid has been closed.</p>
Switching off:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Occurs automatically once the set switch-off delay has elapsed.</li> <li>– Occurs automatically if another vehicle door or the boot lid is opened within approximately 30 seconds of it being switched on.</li> <li>– Turn the light switch to position <b>0</b>.</li> <li>– Switch on the ignition.</li> </ul>

Leaving Home	Action
Switching on:	– Unlock the vehicle when the light switch is in position <b>AUTO</b> and the light sensor detects that <i>it is dark</i> .
Switching off:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Occurs automatically once the switch-off delay has elapsed.</li> <li>– Lock the vehicle.</li> <li>– Turn the light switch to position <b>0</b>.</li> <li>– Switch on the ignition.</li> </ul>

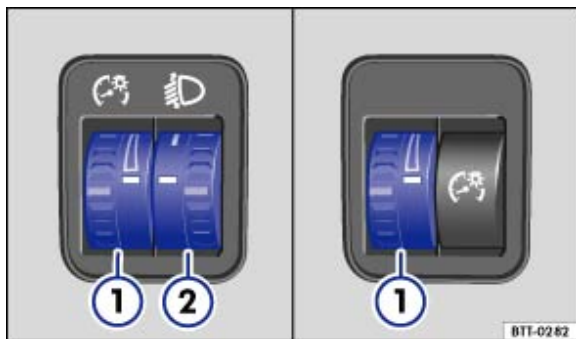
### Surround lighting in the exterior mirrors

The surround lighting in the exterior mirrors lights up the area directly around the doors while you are entering or exiting the vehicle. It is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, when opening the driver door or when the Coming Home or Leaving Home lighting function is active. If the vehicle is equipped with a light sensor, the surround lighting in the exterior mirrors will only be switched on when it is dark.

 Use the **Light & vision** menu to adjust the length of the switch-off delay and to switch the function on or off → [Volkswagen information system](#) .

 When the Coming Home function is switched on, no acoustic warning will sound when the driver door is opened to remind you that a light is still switched on.


## Headlight range control, instrument and switch lighting





**Fig. 88** Next to the steering wheel: control for instrument and switch lighting ① and headlight range control ②

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### ① Instrument and switch lighting

When the headlights are switched on, the brightness of the instruments and switch lighting can be regulated to suit your requirements by turning the control → [Fig. 88](#) .

## ② Headlight range control


Depending on what level it is set to, the headlight range control → [Fig. 88](#)  adjusts the position of the light cones in the headlights according to the load that the vehicle is carrying. This gives the driver the best visibility possible and means that oncoming traffic will not be dazzled → .

The headlights can only be adjusted when the dipped beam headlights are switched on.

To adjust, turn the control → [Fig. 88](#)  to:

Setting	Vehicle load <sup>a)</sup>
–	Front seats occupied and luggage compartment empty.
1	All seats occupied and luggage compartment empty.
2	All seats occupied and luggage compartment fully loaded. Towing a trailer with a low drawbar load.
3	Only the driver seat occupied and luggage compartment fully loaded. Towing a trailer with maximum drawbar load.

## Dynamic headlight range control

There is no control  for headlight range if the vehicle has dynamic headlight control. The headlight range is automatically adapted to suit the vehicle load as soon as the headlights are switched on.

## Fully-automatic ride height setting

In vehicles with ride height setting, set the control to 1 when the vehicle is carrying a full load.

### WARNING

Heavy objects in the vehicle can cause the headlights to dazzle and distract other road users. This could lead to accidents and serious injuries.




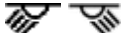
- The light cone should always be adjusted to the payload of the vehicle to ensure that other road users are not dazzled.

<sup>a)</sup> If you have different loads, you can select a position between the settings.

## Interior and reading lights



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Button / Position	Function
	Switches off the interior lights.
	Switches interior lights on.
	Switches door contact switch on (central position). The interior lights are switched on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked, a door is opened or the key is removed from the ignition lock. The light will go out a few seconds after all the doors are closed, the vehicle is locked or the ignition is switched on.
	Switches the reading lights on or off.


## Lights in the stowage compartments and luggage compartment

A light will be switched on or off automatically when the stowage compartment on the front passenger side or the boot lid is opened and closed.

## Background lighting

When the side or dipped headlights are switched on, background lighting in the front of the roof lights up the control elements in the centre console from above.

Additionally, the door release lever in the recesses and the decorative trims in the front and rear doors can also be lit.

 The reading lights switch off when the vehicle is locked or after a delay of a few minutes when the vehicle key is removed from the ignition lock. This prevents the battery from discharging.

## Protection from the sun

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Sun visors*
- *Sun blind for the rear window*
- *Sun blind for the rear side windows*
- *Insulating glass windscreen*

### WARNING

Driving with the sun visors folded down and the sun blinds pulled out can reduce your view of the road.

- Sun visors and sun blinds should always be replaced in their holder if they are not being used.

### Sun visors

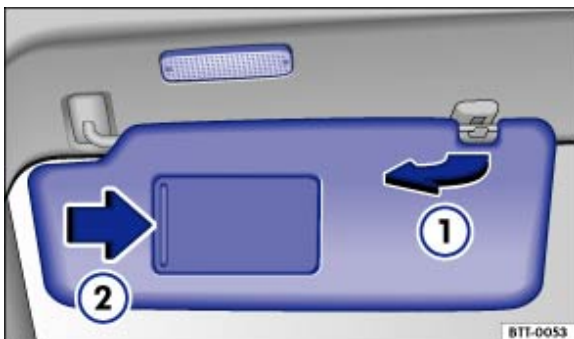


Fig. 89 Sun visor



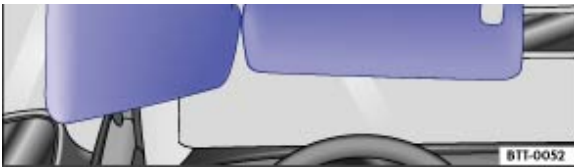



Fig. 90 Double sun blinds




First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Various positions for the driver and front passenger sun visors:

- Folded down over the windscreen.
- Pulled out of the bracket and swung over towards the door → [Fig. 89](#) .
- If the sun visor is positioned over the door, it can be pushed back towards the rear.

### Make-up mirror light

When the sun visor has been folded down, a make-up mirror can be found behind a cover. When you open the cover → [Fig. 89](#) , a lamp lights up.

The lamp will go out when the make-up mirror cover is pushed back or the sun visor is folded back up.



In certain circumstances, the lamp above the sun visor will go out automatically after a few minutes. This prevents the battery from discharging.

### Sun blind for the rear window



Fig. 91 In the centre console: switch for the electric sun blind for the rear window



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The sun blind for the rear window protects against intense sunshine.

### Electric sun blind

Press the  button → [Fig. 91](#) to open or close the sun blind. The sun blind will move to the corresponding end position.

### NOTICE

To prevent damage to the sun blind and interior trim, do not let a manual sun blind snap down.

### Sun blind for the rear side windows



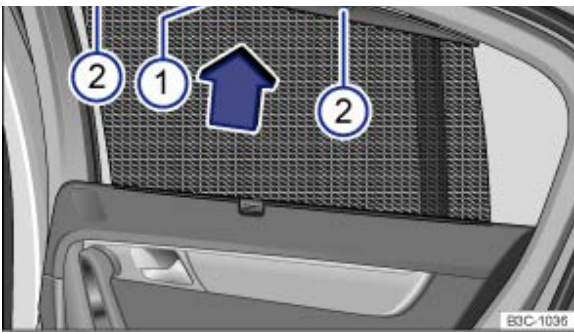






Fig. 92 In the rear right-hand window: sun blind

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

The sun blinds for the rear side windows are fitted in the side trim of the windows.

- Use the handle → *Fig. 92*  to fully pull up the sunblind.
- Hook both rings on the bar into the brackets → *Fig. 92* . Make sure that the sun blind is secured firmly in both brackets → *Fig. 92* .
- To close the sun blind, unhook it at the top and guide it down by hand → .

### NOTICE

To prevent damage to the sun blind and interior trim, do not let the sun blind snap down.

## Insulating glass windscreen

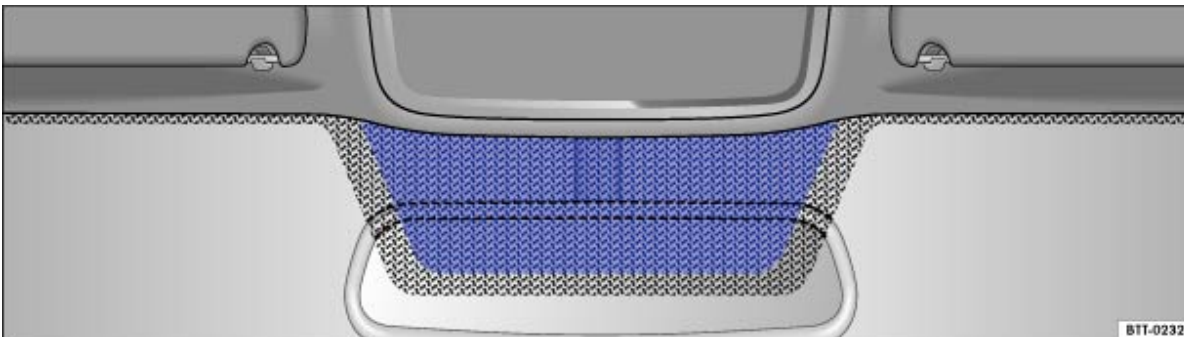


Fig. 93 Metal-coated windscreen for infrared reflection with communication window (blue area)

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

Insulating glass windscreens have a coating which reflects infrared radiation. There is a non-coated area above the interior mirror (communication window) → *Fig. 93* which ensures that electronic accessories, for example remote controls, can function properly.

The uncoated area may not be covered either from the outside or the inside nor may any stickers be applied to this area as the electronic components may otherwise malfunction.

## Windscreen wiper and washer

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Indicator lamp*
- *Windscreen wiper lever*
- *Windscreen wiper functions*
- *Service position for the front windscreen wipers*
- *Rain sensor*
- *Checking and refilling the windscreen washer fluid level*

**Additional information and warnings:**

- Exterior views → [Exterior views](#)
- Heating, ventilating, cooling → [Heating, ventilating, cooling](#)
- Preparation for working in the engine compartment → [Preparation for working in the engine compartment](#)
- Cleaning and caring for the vehicle exterior → [Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior](#)

**⚠ WARNING**

Without adequate frost protection, the washer fluid could freeze on the windscreen and obscure your view of the road.

- In winter temperatures, use the windscreen washer system only when it has adequate frost protection.
- Never use the windscreen washer system at winter temperatures before the windscreen has been heated by the ventilation system. The anti-freeze mixture may otherwise freeze on the windscreen and restrict vision.

**⚠ WARNING**

Worn or dirty windscreen wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.


- Therefore, always change windscreen wiper blades if they are damaged or worn and no longer clean the windscreen properly.

**ⓘ NOTICE**

In icy conditions, always check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before using the wipers. When parking the vehicle in cold weather, it may be helpful to leave the front windscreen wipers in the service position → [Service position for the front windscreen wipers](#) .

**Indicator lamp**

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Lit up	Possible cause	Correction
	Windscreen washer fluid level too low.	Fill up the washer fluid reservoir as soon as possible → <a href="#">Checking and refilling the windscreen washer fluid level</a> .

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.

**ⓘ NOTICE**

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

**Windscreen wiper lever**





Fig. 94 Operating the front windscreen wiper

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

Move the lever into the desired position → :

Ⓐ	<b>OFF</b>	Switches off the windscreen wiper.
Ⓑ		Interval wipe for the windscreen. Use switch → <a href="#">Fig. 94</a> to adjust the length of the intervals (vehicles without rain sensor) or the sensitivity level of the rain sensor.
Ⓒ	<b>LOW</b>	Slow wipe.
Ⓓ	<b>HIGH</b>	Fast wipe.
Ⓔ	<b>1x</b>	Flick wipe – wipes briefly. Push and hold the lever down for longer to wipe more quickly.
Ⓕ		Pulling the lever activates the wash and wipe system for cleaning the windscreen.

### NOTICE

If the ignition is switched off while the windscreen wiper is switched on, the windscreen wiper will continue to wipe on the same setting when the ignition is switched on again. If there is frost, snow or other obstructions on the windscreen, the windscreen wipers and wiper motor could become damaged.

- Remove any snow and ice from the wipers before setting off.
- Carefully detach wiper blades that have become frozen onto the windscreen. Volkswagen recommends using a de-icer spray for this.

The windscreen wipers will only function when the ignition is switched on and the bonnet and boot lid are closed.

The interval wipe for the windscreen depends on the speed of the vehicle. The wipers will wipe more often as the vehicle moves faster.

## Windscreen wiper functions

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

### Windscreen wiper response in various situations:

When the vehicle is stationary:	When switched on, the wipers will temporarily be switched to the next setting down.
While the wash and wipe system is running:	The Climatronic will switch to air recirculation mode for approximately 30 seconds to prevent the smell of the windscreen washer fluid from entering the vehicle interior.
When the interval wipe is switched on:	The wiper intervals are adjusted depending on the vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle is travelling, the shorter the interval.

### Heated windscreen washer jets


The heating only defrosts frozen windscreen washer jets. It does not heat the hoses that the water flows through. The heated windscreen washer jets control their heat output automatically when the ignition is switched on. The heating level depends on the ambient temperature.

## Headlight cleaning system

The headlight cleaning system cleans the lenses on the headlights.

Once the ignition has been switched on, the headlights will be washed the first time and then every fifth time the windscreen washer system is used. To do this, pull the windscreen wiper lever towards the steering wheel when the dipped headlights or main beam are switched on. Clean off stubborn dirt (insects, etc.) from the headlights at regular intervals, for instance when filling the tank.

In winter, you should remove any snow from the headlight washer nozzles in the bumper to keep the headlight washer system in working order. Remove any ice with a de-icer spray.

 The wiper will try to wipe away any obstacles that are on the windscreen. The wiper will stop moving if the obstacle blocks its path. Remove the obstacle and switch the wiper back on again.

## Service position for the front windscreen wipers

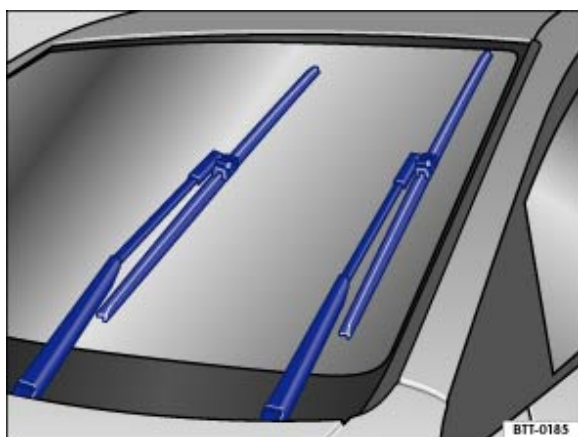



Fig. 95 Wiper blades in service position


 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

The windscreen wiper arms can be folded away from the windscreen when in the service position → Fig. 95. Carry out the following steps to move the windscreen wipers to the service position:

- The bonnet must be closed → *Preparation for working in the engine compartment* .
- Switch the ignition on and then off again.
- Briefly press down the windscreen wiper lever → Fig. 94 @ .

Fold the windscreen wiper arms back onto the windscreen before driving away. Briefly press the windscreen wiper lever down to bring the windscreen wiper arms back to the original position.

## Lifting and folding back the front windscreen wipers

- Move the windscreen wiper arms into the service position →  .
- Only hold the windscreen wiper arms in the area around the wiper blade mounting.

### NOTICE

- **In order to prevent damage to the bonnet and the windscreen wiper arm, the windscreen wiper arms should only be moved forwards when in the service position.**
- **Always fold the windscreen wiper arms back onto the windscreen before starting your journey.**

## Rain sensor



Fig. 96 Windscreen wiper lever: setting rain sensor ①

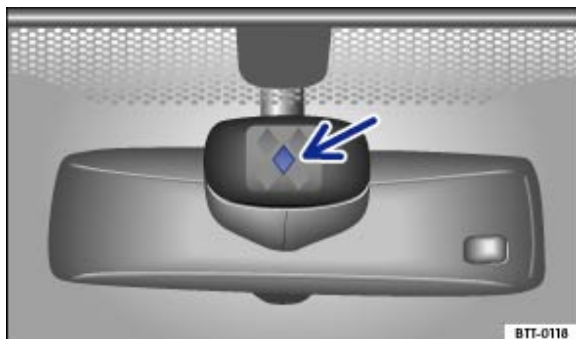


Fig. 97 Sensitive surface of the rain sensor

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → *Introduction*

When the rain sensor is activated, it automatically controls the frequency of the wiper intervals, depending on the amount of rain → . The sensitivity of the rain sensor can be adjusted manually. Manual wipe → *Windscreen wiper lever*.

**Push the lever to the desired position** → *Fig. 96*:

- A** Deactivates the rain sensor.
- B** Rain sensor is active – automatic wipe when necessary.
- 1** Adjusting the sensitivity of the rain sensor:
  - Switch to the right – high sensitivity.
  - Switch to the left – low sensitivity.

The rain sensor will remain active after the ignition is switched off and back on again and will function again if the windscreen wiper lever is in position ① and if the vehicle is travelling at speeds higher than 16 km/h (10 mph).

### Changes to the functioning of the rain sensor

Possible causes for faults and misinterpretations *concerning the sensitive surface* → *Fig. 97* for the rain sensor could be:

- Damaged wiper blades: a film of water or smears caused by damaged wiper blades can increase the time the wipers are switched on, can shorten the length of the intervals between wipes or cause the wipers to run continuously.
- Insects: insects hitting the surface can cause the wipers to be activated.
- Salt deposits: in winter, salt deposits can cause the wiper to continue to wipe the windscreen when it is almost dry.
- Soiling: dry dust, wax, windscreen coatings (lotus effect) or detergent deposits (automatic car wash) can cause the rain sensor to become less sensitive and react too slowly or even not at all.

- Crack in the windscreen: when the windscreen is impacted by a stone, a wash cycle is triggered if the rain sensor is on. The rain sensor will then register the reduction in sensitivity of the surface and adjust accordingly. The size of the crack could affect the way the sensor activates the wipers.

## ⚠ WARNING

The rain sensor will not always detect every rain shower and activate the windscreen wipers.

- If necessary, switch on the windscreen wiper manually if the water on the windscreen restricts the field of vision.

**i** At regular intervals, clean the sensitive surface of the rain sensor → Fig. 97 (arrow) and check the wiper blades for damage.

**i** We recommend that you use an alcohol-based glass cleaner to remove wax and polish.


## Checking and refilling the windscreen washer fluid level



Fig. 98 In the engine compartment: cap of washer fluid reservoir

**📖** First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → ⚠ Introduction

The windscreen washer fluid level should be checked regularly and topped up as necessary.

- Open the bonnet ⚠ → Preparation for working in the engine compartment .
- The washer fluid reservoir is identified by the  symbol on the cap → Fig. 98 .
- Check whether there is enough windscreen washer fluid in the reservoir.
- To top up, mix clean water with a washer fluid recommended by Volkswagen → ⚠. Observe the dilution instructions on the packaging.
- At low temperatures, add a special anti-freeze agent so that the fluid cannot freeze → ⚠ .

## Capacities

The capacity of the washer fluid reservoir is approximately 2.5 litres or approximately 4.5 litres in vehicles with a headlight cleaning system.

## ⚠ WARNING

Never mix anti-freeze or other unsuitable additives into the windscreen washer fluid. An oily film may otherwise be left on the windscreen which will restrict the field of vision.

- Use clean, clear water with a washer fluid recommended by Volkswagen.
- A suitable anti-freeze agent should be added to the windscreen washer fluid if necessary.

## ⚠ NOTICE

- Never mix other cleaning agents with the cleaning agents recommended by Volkswagen. This could cause the ingredients to separate and block the windscreen washer jets.
- Never mix up service fluids when refilling. Failure to observe this warning can result in serious malfunctions and engine damage.

## Mirrors

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Interior mirror*
- *Exterior mirrors*

#### Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views → *Exterior views*
- Personal convenience settings in the Volkswagen information system → *Volkswagen information system*
- Memory seats → *Seat functions*
- Changing gear → *Changing gear*
- Braking, stopping and parking → *Braking, stopping and parking*

### WARNING

Automatic anti-dazzle mirrors contain an electrolyte fluid which could leak if the mirror is broken. This fluid could cause irritation to the skin, eyes and respiratory organs.

- The leaking electrolyte fluid could cause irritation to the skin, eyes and respiratory organs, especially in people who suffer from asthma or similar illnesses. Make sure there is a sufficient supply of fresh air and get out of the vehicle. If this is not possible, open all of the windows and doors.
- If this electrolyte fluid gets into the eyes or onto the skin, immediately wash the area with lots of water for at least 15 minutes and consult a doctor.
- If the electrolyte fluid gets onto shoes or clothing, wash immediately with lots of water for at least 15 minutes. Clean shoes and clothes thoroughly before wearing them again.
- If the electrolyte fluid is swallowed, immediately rinse the mouth out with lots of water for at least 15 minutes. Do not force any vomiting unless instructed to do so by a doctor. Seek medical assistance immediately.

### NOTICE

If the glass of an automatic anti-dazzle mirror is broken, electrolyte fluid could leak from the mirror. These fluids will corrode plastic surfaces. Remove the fluid as soon as possible by using a wet sponge, for example.

## Interior mirror

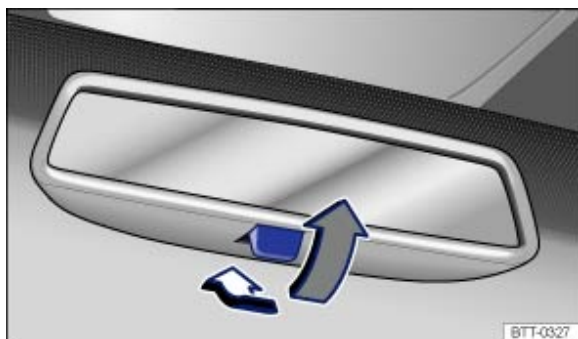


Fig. 99 Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror

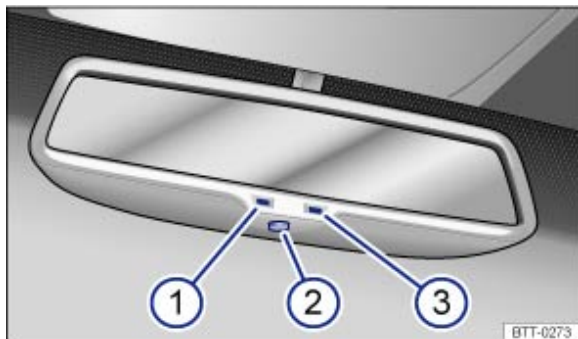


Fig. 100 Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*




The driver must adjust the interior mirror so that the driver can see clearly the rear area through the rear window.



### Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror


- Basic position: the lever on the lower part of the mirror is at the front towards the windscreen.
- Pull the lever to the back to select the anti-dazzle function → *Fig. 99*.

### Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror


Key for → *Fig. 100*:

-  1 Indicator lamp
-  2 Switch
-  3 Sensor for determining light incidence

The automatic anti-dazzle function is switched on and off using the switch in the interior mirror → *Fig. 99* . The indicator lamp → *Fig. 99*  will light up when the automatic anti-dazzle function is switched on.


When the ignition is switched on, the sensor → *Fig. 99*  will, depending on the surrounding light levels and the intensity of the headlights *automatically* darken the interior mirror when a vehicle approaches from the rear with headlights on.

The automatic anti-dazzle function is deactivated when the reverse gear is engaged or if an interior or reading light is switched on.

Do not attach external navigation devices to the windscreen or near interior automatic anti-dazzle mirrors → .



- The illuminated display from an external navigation device can lead to functional impairment of the interior automatic anti-dazzle mirror and cause accidents or serious injuries.
- Impairments of the automatic anti-dazzle function may mean that the interior mirror cannot be used to exactly determine the distance to vehicles travelling behind or to other objects.

 If the light on the sensor is hindered or interrupted, e.g. by a sun blind, the automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror will not function or will not function correctly.

## Exterior mirrors

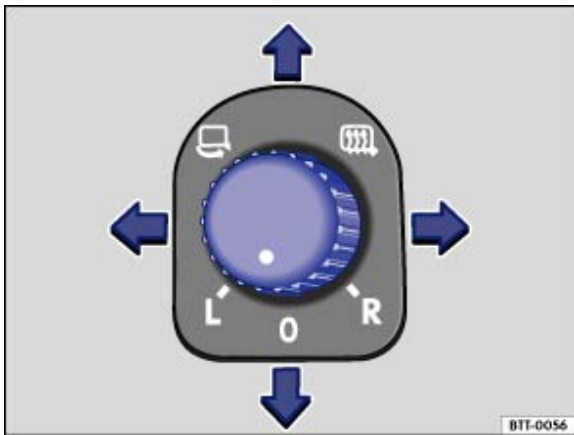





Fig. 101 In the driver door: rotary knob for the exterior mirrors

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Turn the rotary knob to the desired position:

 Fold exterior mirrors into the body electrically → .

### Turn the rotary knob to the desired position:

 Switch on exterior mirror heating. Heats only at ambient temperatures below +20°C (+68°F).

**L** Set the left exterior mirror to the front, rear, right or left by moving the rotary knob.

**R** Set the right exterior mirror to the front, rear, right or left by moving the rotary knob.

**0** Neutral position. Exterior mirrors are folded out, exterior window heating is switched off, it is not possible to adjust the exterior mirrors.

### Synchronised mirror adjustment

- In the **Settings - Convenience** menu, select the option for synchronising the adjustment of the exterior mirrors → [Volkswagen information system](#) .
- Turn the rotary knob to the **driver** position.
- Adjust the exterior mirror on the driver side. The front passenger exterior mirror will be adjusted at the same time (synchronised).
- If necessary, correct the settings for the right-hand mirror by moving the rotary knob when it is in the **R** position.

### Automatic anti-dazzle exterior mirror on the driver side

The automatic anti-dazzle exterior mirror is controlled together with the automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror → [Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror](#) .

### Storing front passenger exterior mirror settings for reversing

- Select a valid vehicle key for saving the settings.
- Unlock the vehicle using this key.

• Switch the vehicle using the key.

- Switch on the electronic parking brake.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Put the gear into neutral.
- Activate the **Mirror down** function via the **Settings - Convenience** menu.
- Select the reverse gear.
- Adjust the exterior mirror on the front passenger side so that you have a good view of the kerb area.
- The settings for the mirror position will be saved automatically and assigned to the vehicle key that is used to unlock the vehicle. For vehicles with memory seats, see → [Seat functions](#) .

### Selecting the settings for the front passenger exterior mirror

- Turn the rotary knob for the exterior mirrors to position **R**.
- With the ignition switched on, select the reverse gear.
- The front passenger exterior mirror will move out of the position saved for reversing when the vehicle is driven forwards faster than approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) or when the rotary knob is moved out of position **R** for the front passenger exterior mirror and into another position.

#### **WARNING**

Injuries could be sustained if you do not take care when folding the exterior mirrors in and out.

- Only fold the exterior mirrors in or out when there is no-one in the path of the mirror.
- Always ensure that no fingers are caught between the exterior mirror and the foot of the mirror when the exterior mirror is moved.

#### **WARNING**

An incorrect assessment of the distance to vehicles travelling behind your vehicle can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Curved mirrors (convex or aspheric) enlarge the field of vision and could make objects in the mirror seem smaller and further away than they actually are.
- Using curved mirrors to estimate the distance of other vehicles when changing lanes is inaccurate and could cause accidents and severe injuries.
- Whenever possible, use the interior mirror to check the exact distance away from vehicles behind or other objects.
- Make sure that you have a good view to the rear of the vehicle.

#### **NOTICE**

- Always fold in exterior mirrors before using an automatic car wash.



- **Never fold electrically folding exterior mirrors in or out mechanically by hand as this could cause damage to the electric motor.**



The exterior mirror heating should be switched off when it is no longer needed. Fuel is wasted otherwise.



Initially, the exterior mirror heating will heat at maximum temperature. After approximately 2 minutes, the temperature will be adjusted according to the ambient temperature.



If there is a fault, the electric exterior mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the outside of the mirror.

## Transporting

### Driving notes

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Stowing items of luggage*
- *Driving with an open boot lid*
- *Driving a loaded vehicle*
- *Vehicle-specific weight ratings*

Heavy items must always be stowed securely in the luggage compartment and you must ensure that the rear seat backrests are securely engaged. Always use suitable securing straps with the fastening rings to secure heavy items. Never exceed the vehicle's maximum payload. Both the payload and the distribution of the load in the vehicle will have an effect on the driving response and braking distance of the vehicle → .

#### Additional information and warnings:

- Boot lid → *Boot lid*
- Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards → *Seat functions*
- Lights → *Lights*
- Luggage compartment → *Luggage compartment*
- Roof carrier → *Roof carrier*
- Towing a trailer → *Towing a trailer*
- Wheels and tyres → *Wheels and tyres*



### WARNING

Objects which are not secured or which are secured incorrectly could cause serious injuries in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident. This will apply in particular if objects are struck by the airbag when activated and are then flung through the vehicle interior. Please observe the following points to reduce the risk of accidents:

- Always stow all items in the vehicle securely. Always store luggage and heavy objects in the luggage compartment.
- Always use suitable straps to prevent luggage from entering the deployment zones of the side airbag or the front airbag in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or an accident.
- Objects should be stowed in the vehicle interior in such a way that they can never enter the airbag deployment zones while the vehicle is in motion.
- Always keep stowage compartments closed while the vehicle is in motion.
- All objects must be removed from the seat cushion of the front passenger seat if the front passenger backrest is folded forward. Even light and small items could be pressed into the weight detection mat underneath the seat cushion by the backrest when it is folded forwards and thus send incorrect information to the airbag control units.
- The front airbag must be switched off and the indicator lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** must light up for as long as the front passenger seat backrest is folded forwards.

- Any stowed items must not cause passengers to assume an incorrect sitting position.
- If an item is being stowed on a seat, this seat is blocked and must not be used by any passengers.

## WARNING

The vehicle handling and braking effect may alter significantly if large or heavy objects are being transported.

- Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Accelerate carefully and gently.
- Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.
- Brake earlier than in normal driving.

## Stowing items of luggage



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Always stow all items of luggage in the vehicle securely.

- Distribute items in the vehicle, on the roof and on the trailer as evenly as possible.
- Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible. Position the rear seat backrests securely.
- Secure luggage in the luggage compartment on the fastening rings with suitable straps → [Luggage compartment](#) .
- Adjust the headlight range → [Lights](#) .
- Adjust the tyre pressure according to the vehicle load. Please read the tyre pressure sticker → [Wheels and tyres](#) .
- In vehicles with a tyre monitoring system, set the new vehicle load level as necessary → [Tyre monitoring systems](#) .

## NOTICE

Hard objects on the shelf could chafe against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and cause damage.



Observe any information concerning loading a trailer → [Towing a trailer](#) and roof carrier → [Roof carrier](#) .

## Driving with an open boot lid



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Driving with an open boot lid is particularly dangerous. All objects and the open boot lid must be secured properly. Take the appropriate measures to reduce the amount of poisonous exhaust fumes that could enter into the vehicle.

## WARNING

Driving with an unlocked or open boot lid can cause serious injuries.

- Always drive with the boot lid closed.
- Always stow all items in the luggage compartment securely. Loose items could fall out of the luggage compartment and injure other road users.
- Always drive especially carefully and think ahead.
- Avoid any abrupt or sudden driving and braking manoeuvres as this could cause the open boot lid to move unpredictably.

- If objects protrude from your luggage compartment, draw the attention of other road users to them. Observe legal requirements.
- If items protrude out of the luggage compartment, never use the boot lid to clamp them in place or hold them in position.
- If you drive with the boot lid open, you must remove any racks and luggage from the boot lid.

## WARNING

Poisonous exhaust fumes could enter the vehicle interior if the boot lid is open. This could result in loss of consciousness, carbon monoxide poisoning, serious injury and accidents.

- You should always drive with the boot lid closed in order to prevent poisonous gases from entering the vehicle.
- If exceptional circumstances require you to drive with an open boot lid, you must do the following to reduce the amount of poisonous exhaust fumes that could enter into the vehicle:
  - Close all windows and the sliding/tilting roof.
  - Switch off the air recirculation mode in the air conditioning system.
  - Open all vents in the dash panel.
  - Switch the blowers for the air conditioning system to the highest setting.

## NOTICE

The vehicle height is different when the boot lid is open.

## Driving a loaded vehicle



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

For good vehicle handling when driving a loaded vehicle, please observe the following:

- Stow all items of luggage securely → [Stowing items of luggage](#) .
- Accelerate carefully and gently.
- Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.
- Brake earlier than in normal driving.
- If applicable, observe the information concerning driving with a trailer → [Towing a trailer](#) .
- If applicable, observe the information concerning driving with a roof carrier → [Roof carrier](#) .

## WARNING

Moving loads can severely impair the vehicle's stability and driving safety which could cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Secure items properly so they cannot slide about.
- Use suitable straps when securing heavy objects.
- Securely engage rear backrest.


## Vehicle-specific weight ratings



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

All data in the official vehicle documents take precedence over these data. All data in this manual are valid for the basic model. The vehicle data sticker in the service schedule and the official vehicle documents show which engine is installed in your vehicle.

The values quoted here may differ if additional equipment is fitted, for different models or for special vehicles.

The values for the kerb weight in the following tables apply for the road-ready vehicle with driver (75 kg), service fluids including fuel tank carrying 90% of its capacity and, if applicable, tools and spare tyre → . Additional equipment and retrofitted accessories increase the kerb weight stated and reduce the maximum permitted load accordingly.

The load comprises the weights of the following:

- Passengers
- All luggage
- Roof load including roof carrier system
- Drawbar load when towing a trailer

### Petrol engines

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	Kerb weight	Gross vehicle weight rating	Gross axle weight rating, front	Gross axle weight rating, rear
90 kW	CAXA	MG6	1,440 kg <sup>a)</sup>	1,990 kg <sup>a)</sup>	1,040 kg <sup>a)</sup>	1,000 kg <sup>a)</sup>
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 7	1,463 kg <sup>b)</sup>	2,020 kg <sup>b)</sup>	1,070 kg <sup>b)</sup>	1,000 kg <sup>b)</sup>
118 kW	CDAA	MG6	1,502 kg	2,030 kg	1,090 kg	990 kg
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 7	1,517 kg	2,050 kg	1,110 kg	990 kg
Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	Kerb weight	Gross vehicle weight rating	Gross axle weight rating, front	Gross axle weight rating, rear
155 kW	CCZB	MG6	1,537 kg	2,060 kg	1,100 kg	1,010 kg
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 6	1,544 kg	2,080 kg	1,120 kg	1,010 kg
220 kW	BWS	DSG <sup>®</sup> 6 4MOTION	1,722 kg	2,240 kg	1,180 kg	1,110 kg

### Diesel engines

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	Kerb weight	Gross vehicle weight rating	Gross axle weight rating, front	Gross axle weight rating, rear
77 kW <b>with</b> DPF	CAYC	MG6	1,499 kg	2,040 kg	1,090 kg	1,000 kg
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 7	1,530 kg	2,070 kg	1,110 kg	1,010 kg
77 kW BlueMotion <b>with</b> DPF		MG6	1,505 kg	2,010 kg	1,060 kg	1,000 kg
100 kW <b>with</b> DPF	CFFA	MG6	1,545 kg	2,100 kg	1,120 kg	1,030 kg
103 kW <b>with</b> DPF	CFFB	MG6	1,532 kg <sup>c)</sup>	2,100 kg <sup>c)</sup>	1,120 kg <sup>c)</sup>	1,030 kg <sup>c)</sup>
		MG6 4MOTION	1,637 kg	2,190 kg	1,150 kg	1,090 kg
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 6	1,560 kg <sup>d)</sup>	2,130 kg <sup>d)</sup>	1,150 kg <sup>d)</sup>	1,030 kg <sup>d)</sup>
125 kW <b>with</b> DPF	CFGB	MG6	1,560 kg	2,100 kg	1,130 kg	1,020 kg
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 6	1,591 kg	2,130 kg	1,160 kg	1,020 kg
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 6 4MOTION	1,646 kg	2,200 kg	1,170 kg	1,080 kg

125 kW with PRS	CLLA	– kg <sup>e)</sup>	– kg <sup>e)</sup>	– kg <sup>e)</sup>	– kg <sup>e)</sup>	– kg <sup>e)</sup>
-----------------	------	--------------------	--------------------	--------------------	--------------------	--------------------

### Natural gas engine

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	Kerb weight	Gross vehicle weight rating	Gross axle weight rating, front	Gross axle weight rating, rear
110 kW	CDGA	MG6	1,598 kg	2,120 kg	1,060 kg	1,110 kg
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 7	1,619 kg	2,140 kg	1,080 kg	1,110 kg

### E85 MultiFuel engine

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	Kerb weight	Gross vehicle weight rating	Gross axle weight rating, front	Gross axle weight rating, rear
118 kW	CKMA	MG6	1,498 kg	2,030 kg	1,090 kg	990 kg
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 7	1,516 kg	2,050 kg	1,110 kg	

## WARNING

Exceeding the maximum permissible weights and axle loads could cause damage to the vehicle, accidents and serious injuries.

- The actual axle loads may never exceed the maximum permissible axle loads.
- The payload and the distribution of the load in the vehicle will have an effect on the driving response and braking distance of the vehicle. Change your speed accordingly.

## NOTICE

The payload should be distributed as evenly as possible in the vehicle. When transporting heavy objects in the luggage compartment they should be placed either in front of or over the rear axle in order to affect the driving response as little as possible.

<sup>a)</sup> For vehicles with start/stop system: 1,451 kg, 2,000 kg, 1,040 kg, 1,010 kg.

<sup>b)</sup> For vehicles with start/stop system: 1,473 kg, 2,030 kg, 1,070 kg, 1,010 kg.

<sup>c)</sup> In vehicles with the exhaust emission norm EU6: 1,580 kg, 2,130 kg, 1,120 kg, 1,060 kg.

<sup>d)</sup> In vehicles with the exhaust emission norm EU6: 1,601 kg, 2,160 kg, 1,150 kg, 1,060 kg.


<sup>e)</sup> Figures were not available at time of publication.

## Luggage compartment

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Folding the backrests on the rear bench seat forwards and backwards*
- *Through-loading aperture*
- *Ski and snowboard bag*
- *Fastening rings*
- *Bag hook*
- *Luggage net*
- *Protective covering for the rear bumper*

Heavy items must always be stowed securely in the luggage compartment and you must ensure that the rear seat backrests are securely engaged. Always use suitable securing straps with the fastening rings. Never exceed the vehicle's maximum payload. Both the payload and the distribution of the load in the vehicle will have an effect on the driving response and braking distance of the vehicle → .

### Additional information and warnings:

- Airbag system → *Airbag system*
- Lights → *Lights*
- Transporting → *Driving notes*
- Towing a trailer → *Towing a trailer*
- Wheels and tyres → *Wheels and tyres*

### WARNING

When the vehicle is not in use or is not being supervised, always lock the doors and boot lid to reduce the risk of severe or fatal injuries.

- Never leave children unattended, especially when the boot lid is open. Children could make their way into the luggage compartment, close the boot lid and be unable to get out. This can cause severe or fatal injuries.
- Never let children play in or around the vehicle.
- Do not travel with people in the luggage compartment.

### WARNING

Objects which are not secured or which are secured incorrectly could cause serious injuries in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident. This will apply in particular if objects are struck by the airbag when activated and are then flung through the vehicle interior. Please observe the following points to reduce the risk of accidents:

- Always stow all items in the vehicle securely. Always store luggage and heavy objects in the luggage compartment.
- Always use suitable straps to prevent luggage from being thrown through the vehicle interior and entering the deployment zone of the side airbags or the front airbag in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or an accident.
- Always keep stowage compartments closed while the vehicle is in motion.
- Do not stow any hard, heavy or sharp objects loose in any of the vehicle's open stowage areas, on the surface behind the rear seat backrest or on the dash panel.
- Remove any hard, heavy or sharp objects from items of clothing and bags inside the vehicle and stow them securely.

### WARNING

Transporting heavy objects changes the vehicle driving characteristics and increase the braking distance. Heavy loads which are not properly stowed or secured in the vehicle can lead to a loss of vehicle control and can cause serious injury.

- Transporting heavy objects changes the vehicle driving characteristics and the centre of gravity.
- The payload should be distributed as evenly as possible in the vehicle.
- Always secure heavy items in the luggage compartment as far as possible in front of the rear axle.

### ! NOTICE

Hard objects could rub against the wires of the heating element or the aerials in the rear window and cause damage.

**i** The ventilation openings between the rear window and the shelf must not be covered as this would prevent stale air escaping from the vehicle.

## Folding the backrests on the rear bench seat forwards and backwards

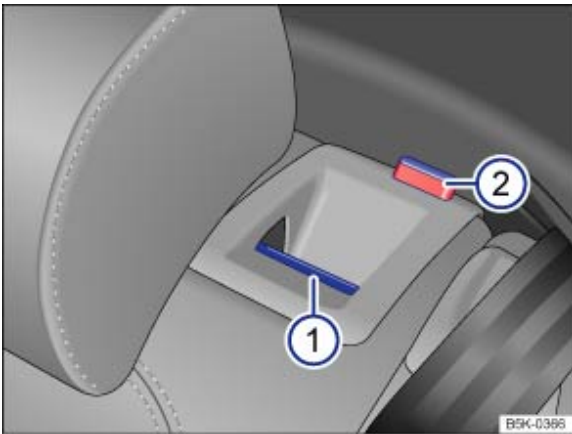


Fig. 102 Rear bench seat: release button ①; red marking ②

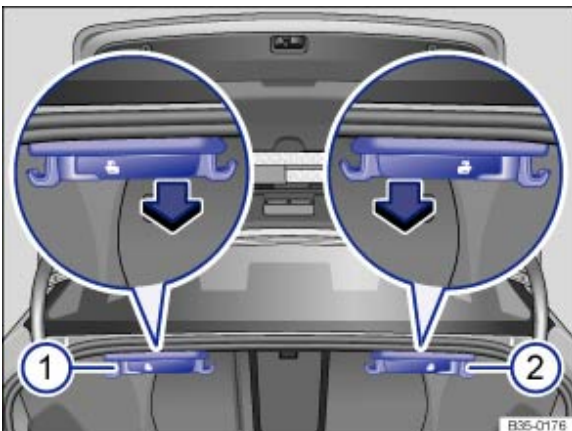


Fig. 103 In the luggage compartment: remote release lever for the left ① and the right ② parts of the rear backrest



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  Introduction

The rear seat is split for folding. Each part of the rear seat backrest can be folded down to increase the size of the luggage compartment.

### Folding rear backrest forwards with the release button


- Push the head restraint all the way down → [Adjusting the seat position](#) .
- Pull the release button forwards → [Fig. 102](#) Ⓞ and fold the backrest forwards at the same time.
- The rear seat backrest is unlocked when you can see a red marking → [Fig. 102](#) Ⓞ in the button.

### Folding rear backrest forwards with the remote release button

- Push the head restraint all the way down → [Adjusting the seat position](#) .
- Open the boot lid → [Boot lid](#) .
- Push the remote release button for the left → [Fig. 103](#) Ⓞ or the right → [Fig. 103](#) Ⓞ parts of the rear backrest in the direction of the arrow. The unlocked part of the rear backrest folds down automatically.
- Close the boot lid, if required → [Boot lid](#) .

The rear seat backrest is unlocked when you can see the red marking on button → [Fig. 102](#) Ⓞ .

### Folding the rear seat backrest back

- Fold back the rear backrest and push it firmly into the lock until it clicks securely into place →  .
- The red marking on release button → [Fig. 102](#) Ⓞ should no longer be visible.
- Make sure that the rear seat backrest engages securely, otherwise the seat belts for the rear seats will not work properly.

## WARNING

Injuries could be caused if the rear backrests are folded forwards and backwards carelessly.

- While folding the rear backrest, always make sure that no people, animals or items are in the path.
- Never fold the rear seat backrest forwards or backwards while the vehicle is in motion.
- Please ensure that the seat belt is not trapped or damaged when folding back the rear seat backrest.
- Always keep hands, fingers, feet or other body parts away from the seat area when folding the rear seat backrest forwards and backwards.
- Make sure that the rear seat backrest engages securely, otherwise the seat belts for the rear seats will not work properly. This applies to the centre seat of the rear bench seat in particular. If a seat is occupied and the rear seat backrest has not clicked securely into place, the seat occupant and rear seat backrest may move forwards in the event of a sudden braking or driving manoeuvre or during accidents.
- The backrest has not been secured properly if you can see a red mark on the button → [Fig. 102](#) Ⓞ . Please always ensure that the red marking is never visible when the rear seat backrest is in the upright position.
- Passengers (adults and children) must not use seats if the backrest is folded forward or is not clicked securely into place.

## NOTICE

Before folding the rear seat backrests forwards, adjust the front seats so that the rear head restraints or rear seat cushions do not rub against the front seats.

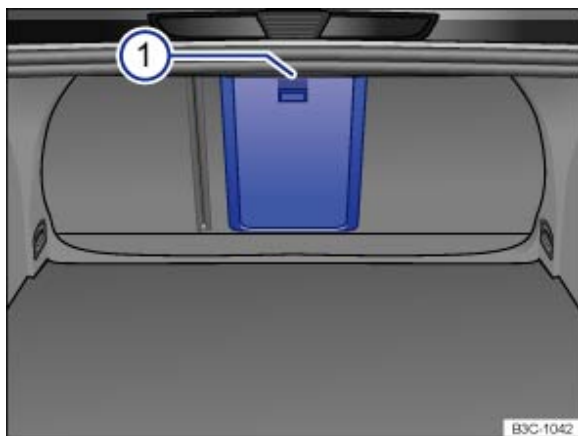
## Through-loading aperture








**Fig. 104** In the rear seat backrest: opening the through-loading aperture



**Fig. 105** In the luggage compartment: release lever with marking ①

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

A through-loading aperture is located on the rear bench seat behind the centre armrest. It can be used to transport long objects, such as skis, inside the vehicle.

To prevent soiling the vehicle interior, use a blanket, or similar, to wrap up any dirty objects before pushing them through the through-loading aperture.


Do not use the middle seat on the rear bench seat to transport passengers when the centre armrest is folded down.

### Opening the through-loading aperture

- Fold the centre armrest forwards.
- Pull the release lever → *Fig. 104* and fold the cover to the through-loading aperture all the way down.
- Open the boot lid.
- Push the long objects through the through-loading aperture from the luggage compartment.
- Secure the objects with the seat belt.
- Close the boot lid.

## Closing the through-loading aperture

- Fold back the cover to the through-loading aperture until it clicks into place. The red marking on the luggage compartment side → [Fig. 105](#) Ⓞ should no longer be visible.
- Close the boot lid.
- If necessary, fold back the centre armrest.

 The through-loading aperture can also be opened from the luggage compartment. Push down the release lever → [Fig. 105](#) Ⓞ and push the cover forwards.


 The through-loading aperture can be locked and unlocked using the spare key, if required.

## Ski and snowboard bag

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The ski and snowboard bag enables you to transport skis or other long objects inside the vehicle without soiling the interior.

### Loading and securing the ski and snowboard bag

- Open the boot lid.
- Open the through-loading aperture → [Through-loading aperture](#) or fold one part of the backrest on the rear bench seat forwards → [Seat functions](#).
- Unfold the ski and snowboard bag
- Push items from the luggage compartment into the bag.
- Insert the securing belt on the ski and snowboard bag into the centre belt buckle.
- Tighten the securing belt at the free end → .

### WARNING

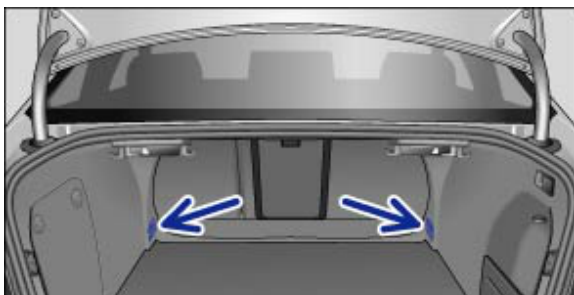
In the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident, loose objects could be flung through the vehicle and cause severe injuries.

- Always tighten the securing belt on the ski and snowboard bag after loading.
- The ski and snowboard bag is intended for carrying light objects only.

### NOTICE

If the ski and snowboard bag is damp before you fold it up, clean it with a dry cloth to prevent mildew and mould.

## Fastening rings





**Fig. 106** In the luggage compartment: fastening rings

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*


You will find fastening rings at the front and rear of the luggage compartment which can be used to secure luggage → *Fig. 106* (arrow).


Some fastening rings have to be folded out before they can be used.

## **WARNING**

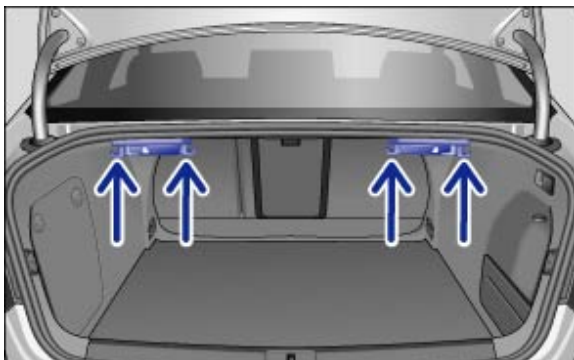
Unsuitable or damaged securing straps could rip in the event of a braking manoeuvre or accident. This could cause objects to be flung through the interior and lead to severe or fatal injuries.

- Always use suitable and undamaged securing straps.
- Attach securing straps securely to the fastening rings.
- Loose objects in the luggage compartment can suddenly slide and change the way the vehicle handles.
- Small and light objects should also be secured.
- Never exceed the maximum load rating of the fastening rings when securing objects.
- Never secure a child seat to the fastening rings.

 The maximum load rating of the fastening rings is approximately 3.5 kN.

 Suitable fastening belts and luggage stowage systems are available from a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## Bag hook





**Fig. 107** In the luggage compartment: bag hook (arrow)

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → *Introduction*

Bag hooks can be found to the left and right at the top in the luggage compartment. Light shopping bags can be secured here.

- A bag can be secured to one of the bag hooks → *Fig. 107* (arrow).

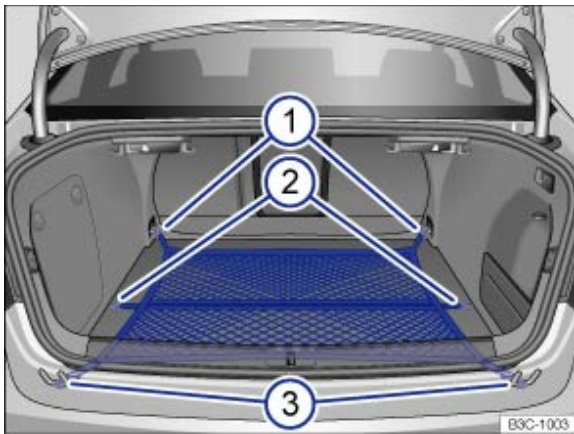
## **WARNING**

**Never use the bag hooks as fastening rings for straps. The bag hook could break off during a sudden braking manoeuvre or accident.**

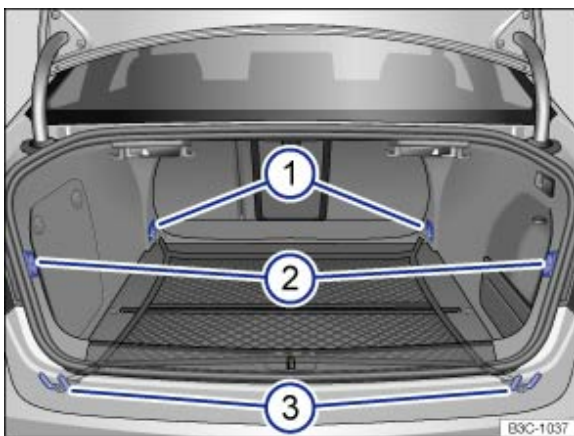
## **NOTICE**

Do not load the bag hook with more than 2.5 kg.

## Luggage net



**Fig. 108** In the luggage compartment: luggage net fitted flat



**Fig. 109** In the luggage compartment: fastening rings ① and ③ and hooks ② for hooking the luggage net

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → *Introduction*

The luggage net stops light items of luggage from sliding around the luggage compartment. The luggage net also has a built-in pocket with a zip that can hold smaller items.

The luggage net can be attached in several different positions.

### Example 1: hooking the luggage net flat on the luggage compartment floor

- Hook the hooks → Fig. 108 Ⓞ on the luggage net into the fastening rings on the rear seat backrest → Fig. 109 Ⓞ → ⚠. The luggage net zip must face upwards.
- Hook the hooks → Fig. 108 Ⓞ into the fastening rings on the loading edge of the boot → Fig. 109 Ⓞ .

### Example 2: hooking the luggage net onto the loading edge

- Attach the short hooks → Fig. 108 Ⓞ of the luggage net to the holders → Fig. 109 Ⓞ → ⚠. The luggage net zip must face upwards.
- Attach the hooks → Fig. 108 Ⓞ and → Fig. 108 Ⓞ to the fastening rings → Fig. 109 Ⓞ .

### Removing the luggage net

The fitted luggage net is tensioned → ⚠.

- Remove the hooks and loops of the luggage compartment net from the fastening rings.
- Store the luggage net in the luggage compartment.

## ⚠ WARNING

The elastic luggage net must be stretched when it is secured at the fastening rings in the luggage compartment. A fitted luggage net is tensioned. The luggage net hooks could cause injuries if the luggage net is installed or removed incorrectly.

- Always hold the hooks of the luggage net tightly so they do not fall out when fitting or removing.
- Protect your eyes and face to avoid injuries from any hooks that may jump out when installing or removing.
- Always attach the luggage net hooks in the order described. There is a risk of injury if one of the hooks on the luggage net snaps back.

### Protective covering for the rear bumper

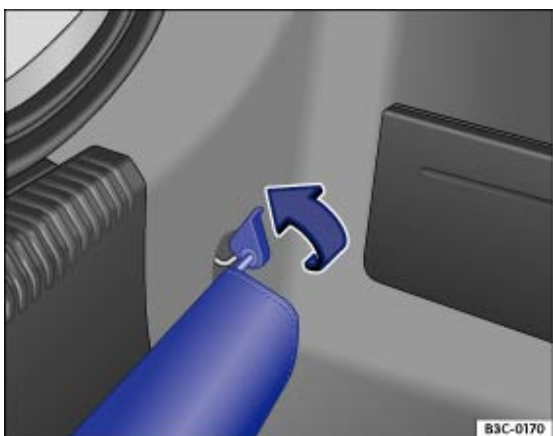


Fig. 110 In the luggage compartment: securing point for the rear bumper protective covering





Fig. 111 Folding and unfolding the protective covering


 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

The protective covering for the rear bumper can prevent the rear bumper from being scratched when loading and unloading the luggage compartment.


### Attaching the protective covering case


- Place the protective covering case parallel in the loading edge in the luggage compartment. The case opening must open to the front.
- Push the protective covering holder from below onto the rear right and left fastening rings → [Fig. 110](#) (arrow). You may need to push with some force to do this.
- The holder must engage firmly with the fastening ring.


### Unfolding the protective covering

- Open the protective covering case.
- Pull the protective covering tab → [Fig. 111](#)  in the direction of the arrow over the rear bumper.

### Packing the protective covering away

- Pull the cord → [Fig. 111](#)  in the direction of the arrow.
- If necessary, push the protective covering back into the case slightly.

 Fold the protective covering back into the luggage compartment before closing the boot lid.

 Never drive with the protective covering hanging out as it could cover the number plate and the sensors for the parking distance warning system.

## Roof carrier

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Attaching the mounts and load carrier system](#)
- [Loading the load carrier system](#)

The roof of the vehicle is designed to optimise the aerodynamics. Therefore, conventional mounts or other load carrier systems can no longer be attached to a rain channel.

As the rain channels have been integrated in the roof for better aerodynamics, only those mounts or load carrier systems approved by Volkswagen can be used.

### When should the mounts and load carrier system be removed?

- When they are no longer being used.
- When the vehicle is driving through a car wash.
- When the vehicle height exceeds the required clearance height, e.g. in a garage.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Lights → [Lights](#)
- Transporting → [Driving notes](#)
- Driving with respect for the environment → [Driving with respect for the environment](#)
- Wheels and tyres → [Wheels and tyres](#)
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → [Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)

## WARNING

When transporting heavy or bulky objects in the load carrier system, the way the vehicle handles will change due to a shift in the centre of gravity and increased susceptibility to crosswinds.

- Always secure loads properly using suitable and undamaged securing straps.
- Cargo that is large, heavy, bulky, long or flat will have a negative effect on the vehicle aerodynamics, centre of gravity and overall handling.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving and braking manoeuvres.
- Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

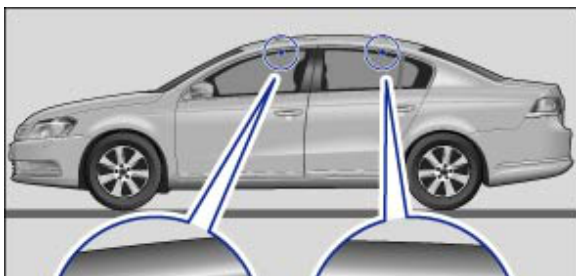
## NOTICE

- Always remove the mounts and load carrier system before driving through an automatic car wash.
- The height of the vehicle is changed by the installation of mounts and load carrier system and the load secured to it. Check and compare the height of the vehicle with clearance heights, for example for underpasses and garage doors.
- The mounts and load carrier system and the load must not obstruct you from opening and closing the sliding/tilting roof and boot lid. The roof aerial must also remain unaffected.
- When opening the boot lid, take care not to let it hit the roof load.



Driving with fitted mounts and load carriers will increase air resistance and thus increase fuel consumption.

## Attaching the mounts and load carrier system



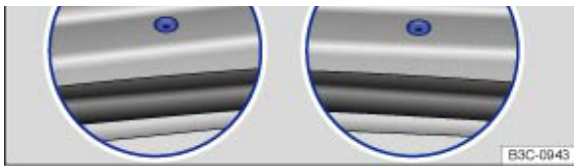


Fig. 112 Attachment points for the mounts

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → [Introduction](#)

Mounts serve as basis for special load carrier systems. Special load carriers must then be added to transport luggage, bicycles, skis, surfboards or boats safely. Suitable accessories are available from your Volkswagen dealership.

## Attaching the mounts and load carrier system

Mounts and load carriers must always be attached correctly.

Please read the fitting instructions provided.

The attaching holes are on the underside of the roof bracing. They are visible only when the door is open → [Fig. 112](#).

After fitting the mounts properly as per the instructions provided, attach the load carrier to the mounts.

### **WARNING**

**Incorrectly attaching and using the mounts and load carrier could cause the whole system to fall off the roof. This could cause accidents and injuries.**

- **Always observe the manufacturer's instructions.**
- **Use mounts and load carriers only when they are undamaged and fitted correctly.**
- **The mounts may only be attached at the markings shown in the illustration** → [Fig. 112](#).
- **Fit mounts and load carriers correctly.**
- **Check the bolts and anchorage points before starting your journey and adjust as necessary after driving a short distance. During a long trip, check all bolts and fasteners at each stop.**
- **Special load carriers for items such as bicycles, skis, surfboards, etc should always be properly installed.**
- **Do not carry out any changes or repairs to the mounts or the load carrier system.**



Read and note the fitting instructions for the mounts and the load carrier system provided and always carry the instructions in the vehicle.

## Loading the load carrier system

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → [Introduction](#)

Loads can be attached securely only when the mounts and load carrier system are fitted correctly → .

### Maximum permissible roof load

The maximum permitted roof load is **100 kg**. The roof load limit refers to the combined weight of the load carrier, the mounts and the load carried on the roof → .


Be sure you know the weight of the load carrier, the mounts and the items you want to transport on the roof. Weigh them if necessary. Never carry a total of more than the maximum permissible roof load.

However, if you are using load carrier systems and mounts with a lower weight rating, you will not be able to carry the maximum roof load. In this case, do not exceed the maximum weight limit for the load carrier system which is listed in the fitting instructions.



not exceed the maximum weight limit for the load carrier system which is listed in the fitting instructions.

## Distributing the load

Distribute the load evenly and secure it correctly → .

## Checking the fittings

After the mounts and load carrier have been attached, check the bolted connections and fastenings once you have travelled a short distance and then at regular intervals.

### WARNING

Accidents and vehicle damage could occur if the maximum permitted roof load is exceeded.

- Never exceed the quoted roof load, the maximum permissible axle loads, and the permissible gross vehicle weight for the vehicle.
- Do not exceed the maximum load of the mounts and load carrier, even if the maximum roof load is not reached.
- Secure heavy objects as far forwards as possible and distribute the load evenly.

### WARNING

Loose and incorrectly secured loads could fall off the load carrier and cause accidents and injuries.

- Always use suitable and undamaged securing straps.
- Secure loads properly.

## Towing a trailer

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Technical requirements*
- *Electrically folding ball coupling*
- *Swivelling out the ball coupling (R-Line)*
- *Fitting a bicycle carrier on the mechanically positioned ball coupling*
- *Hitching and connecting the trailer*
- *Loading the trailer*
- *Towing a trailer*
- *Trailer stabilisation*
- *Retrofitting a towing bracket*
- *Maximum permitted trailer weights*
- *Maximum permitted gross combination weight*

Observe any country-specific regulations when towing a trailer and using a towing bracket.

Your car is intended mainly for transporting passengers and luggage; however it can also be used to tow a trailer or caravan, provided that it is fitted with the necessary equipment. This additional load will affect the durability, fuel consumption and performance of the vehicle and, in certain circumstances, could shorten the service intervals.


Driving with a trailer places an extra load on the vehicle. It also means that the driver has to concentrate even harder on driving.

In low temperatures, fit winter tyres to both the vehicle **and** the trailer.

## Drawbar load

The *maximum* permitted weight exerted by the trailer drawbar on the ball coupling of the towing bracket must not exceed **90 kg**.

## Vehicles with start/stop system

When using towing brackets that were not retrofitted by Volkswagen, the start/stop system must be switched off manually using the button in the dash panel → *Pull-away assist systems* before towing a trailer, and it must remain switched off for as long as a trailer is being towed → .

## Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views → *Exterior views*
- Central locking system → *Central locking system*
- Lights → *Lights*
- Driving with respect for the environment → *Driving with respect for the environment*
- Pull-away assist systems → *Pull-away assist systems*
- Wheels and tyres → *Wheels and tyres*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*



### WARNING

It is dangerous to transport people in a trailer. It may also be illegal.



### WARNING

Improper use of the towing bracket can cause injury and accidents.

- Only use the towing bracket if it is fitted properly and is not damaged.
- Do not carry out any alterations or repairs to the towing bracket.
- To reduce the risk of injury in rear-end collisions, and to pedestrians and cyclists when the vehicle is parked, always remove the ball coupling when a trailer is not being used.
- Never install a weight-distributing or load-balancing towing bracket to the vehicle. The vehicle is not constructed for these kinds of towing brackets. The towing bracket can fail, causing the trailer to tear loose from the vehicle.



### WARNING

Towing a trailer and transporting heavy or bulky items can change the way the vehicle handles. This could lead to accidents.


- Always secure loads properly using suitable and undamaged securing straps.
- Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Trailers with a high centre of gravity are more likely to tip over than trailers with a low centre of gravity.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving and braking manoeuvres.
- Take special care when overtaking.
- Reduce your speed immediately if the trailer shows even the slightest sign of snaking.


- **Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) when towing a trailer (100 km/h (60 mph) in exceptional cases). This also applies to countries where higher speeds are permitted. Always obey speed limits. In some areas speed limits for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for vehicles without trailers.**
- **Never try to stop this snaking by increasing your speed.**


## WARNING


The start/stop system must always be switched off manually when towing a trailer using towing brackets that have not been retrofitted by Volkswagen. Otherwise faults can occur in the brake system, possibly resulting in accidents and serious injuries.

- **Always switch off the start/stop system manually if a trailer is attached to a towing bracket that has not been retrofitted by Volkswagen.**

 Always switch off the anti-theft alarm when a trailer is being hitched or unhitched → *Anti-theft alarm* . The tilt sensor could otherwise trigger an alarm unnecessarily.

 In new vehicles, do not tow a trailer during the first 1,000 km → *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts* .

 Volkswagen recommends removing or swivelling in the ball coupling before driving without a trailer. In the event of a rear-end collision, the level of vehicle damage sustained could be greater if the ball coupling is fitted than if it is not.

 In some models, the towing bracket is required for towing vehicles. For this reason, the towing bracket ball coupling should be stored in the vehicle at all times.

## Technical requirements

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

If the vehicle is supplied with a **factory-fitted** towing bracket it will already have the necessary technical modifications and meet the statutory requirements for towing a trailer.

Only use a towing bracket which is approved for the gross weight of the trailer you want to tow. The towing bracket must be suitable for your vehicle and trailer and be securely bolted to the vehicle's chassis. Only a towing bracket with a removable ball coupling should be used. Always check and follow the data provided by the towing bracket manufacturer. Never install a weight-distributing or load-balancing towing bracket to the vehicle.

### Towing brackets fitted to the rear bumper

Never fit a towing bracket to the rear bumper or to its fastenings. A towing bracket must not prevent the rear bumper from functioning correctly. Do not carry out any alterations to the exhaust or brake systems. Check regularly to see if the towing bracket is fitted securely.

### Engine cooling system

There is an increased load on the engine and the cooling system when towing a trailer. The cooling system must contain sufficient coolant and be able to cope with the extra load added by the trailer.

### Trailer brake

If the trailer is equipped with its own brake system, observe any legal requirements. The trailer's brake system must never be connected to the vehicle brake system.

### Emergency breakaway cable

Always use safety chains between your vehicle and the trailer → [Hitching and connecting the trailer](#) .

## Trailer rear lights

The rear lights on the trailer must meet legal requirements → [Hitching and connecting the trailer](#) .

Never connect the trailer lights directly to the electrical system of your vehicle. If you are uncertain whether the trailer has been connected correctly, please contact a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## Exterior mirrors

If you are unable to see the traffic behind the trailer in the vehicle's standard exterior mirrors, additional exterior mirrors should be fitted in accordance with any country-specific regulations. Before setting off, adjust the mirrors so that you have a sufficient view of the rear.

## Maximum power consumption of the trailer

Never exceed the specified values:


Electrical consumers	Maximum output
Side lights and tail lights	100 watts
Turn signal per side	54 watts
Brake lights, total	84 watts
All reversing lights	42 watts


### **WARNING**

If the towing bracket is unsuitable or badly fitted, the trailer could become detached from the vehicle and cause serious injury.

### **NOTICE**

- The vehicle electronics may be damaged if the trailer lights are not connected properly.
- The vehicle electronics may be damaged if the trailer uses too much electricity.
- Never connect the trailer's electrical system directly with the electrical connections of the tail lights or to other electricity supplies. Use only a suitable connector to provide power to the trailer.

 Towing a trailer places additional demands on the vehicle. Volkswagen recommends additional services between the normal inspection intervals if the vehicle is used frequently for towing a trailer.

 In certain countries, an additional fire extinguisher must be carried if the gross weight of the trailer exceeds 2,500 kg.

## Electrically folding ball coupling






**Fig. 113** On the right of the luggage compartment: button for folding ball coupling



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

There may be no other persons, objects or pets in the path of the ball coupling → .

The towing bracket coupling ball is located in the bumper. The ball coupling with electric release cannot be removed.


## Releasing and swivelling out ball coupling

- Bring the vehicle to a standstill and apply the electronic parking brake → *Braking, stopping and parking* .
- Switch off the engine.
- Open the boot lid.
- In vehicles with R-Line equipment, pay attention to the things to note → *Swivelling out the ball coupling (R-Line)* .
- Pull on the button → *Fig. 113* briefly. The ball coupling is released electrically and swivels out automatically. The indicator lamp in the button → *Fig. 113* flashes.
- Continue rotating the ball coupling with your hand until you hear and feel it click into place and the indicator lamp in the button lights up.
- Close the boot lid.
- Before attaching a trailer, remove the dust cap and keep it safely.
- The indicator lamp in the button lights up when the boot lid is open.

## Swivelling in the ball coupling

- Bring the vehicle to a standstill and close the electronic parking brake.
- Switch off the engine.
- Uncouple the trailer and disconnect the electrical connection between the vehicle and the trailer. If fitted, remove the adapter from the trailer socket.
- Put the dust cap on the ball coupling.
- Open the boot lid.
- Pull on the button → *Fig. 113* briefly. The ball coupling is electrically unlocked.
- Rotate the ball coupling under the bumper with your hand until you hear and feel it click into place and the indicator lamp in the button → *Fig. 113* lights up.
- Close the boot lid.

## Meaning of indicator lamps

- If the indicator lamp in the button → *Fig. 113* is *flashing*, the ball coupling is still not in the end position and is not engaged or it is damaged → .
- If the indicator lamp is *lit permanently* when the boot lid is open, the ball coupling is correctly engaged in the extended or retracted position.
- When the boot lid is closed, the indicator lamp goes out.

## WARNING


**Improper use of the towing bracket can cause injury and accidents.**

- **Make sure that no people, animals or items are in the path of the ball coupling.**
- **Never interrupt the ball coupling, for example with tools, when it is swivelling.**
- **Never press the button → *Fig. 113* if a trailer is attached or if a luggage rack or other accessories are fitted to the ball coupling.**

- Never drive with a trailer if the indicator lamp in the button → *Fig. 113* is not lit up.
- If the ball coupling will not engage properly, do not use the towing bracket. Have it checked by a qualified workshop.
- If there are faults in the electrical system or in the towing bracket itself, have the towing bracket checked by a qualified workshop.
- If the smallest diameter on the ball coupling is smaller than 49 mm, do not use the towing bracket.

## NOTICE

Do not aim a high-pressure hose or steam cleaner directly at the mechanically positioned ball coupling or the fitted trailer socket. Seals could be damaged or the grease required for lubrication could be washed off.

 At extremely low outside temperatures, the electric ball coupling might not rotate. If this happens, it is sufficient to place the vehicle in a warmer room, e.g. a garage.

## Swivelling out the ball coupling (R-Line)



**Fig. 114** Rear bumper: removing the cover

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

On the R-Line bumper, the ball coupling with electric release is located under a cover → *Fig. 114*.

Open and remove the cover in the bumper before swivelling out the ball coupling → [Electrically folding ball coupling](#) .

### Removing the cover

- To open, turn both of the screw plugs 90° anti-clockwise.
- Open the cover and pull the cover's upper mounting tabs out of the bumper.


### Fitting the cover back in place


The ball coupling must be returned to its original position before fitting the cover → [Electrically folding ball coupling](#) .

- Insert the cover's upper mounting tabs into the brackets.
- Lift the cover up and lock it with the screwing plugs.

### Using an adapter for the trailer socket

When using an adapter for the trailer socket, e.g. a 13-pin into a 7-pin, a special adapter must be used for the R-Line bumper due to space restrictions.

Fit the adapter carefully, making sure there is sufficient space between the trailer socket cover and the R-Line bumper. 

Fit the adapter carefully making sure there is sufficient space between the trailer socket cover and the K-Line bumper → .

## NOTICE

Using a trailer socket adapter which is too large can damage the bumper during fitting or when the trailer is in use. You can get a suitable adapter from a Volkswagen dealership.

## Fitting a bicycle carrier on the mechanically positioned ball coupling



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The maximum permitted load on a bicycle carrier mounted on the ball coupling is **75 kg** at a distance of 300 mm. This distance refers to the gap between the centre of gravity of the bicycle carrier and the middle of the ball coupling.

## WARNING

Incorrect use of the towing bracket with a bicycle carrier fitted to the ball coupling could cause injuries and accidents.

- Never exceed the listed payload and distance.
- Do not attach a bicycle carrier underneath the ball coupling on the neck of the ball coupling. The shape of the ball coupling neck and the design of the bicycle carrier could result in the bicycle carrier becoming misaligned with the vehicle.
- Read and follow the assembly instructions provided by the bicycle carrier manufacturer.

## NOTICE

Considerable vehicle damage could occur if the maximum permitted payload or distance is exceeded.

- Never exceed the specified values.

## Hitching and connecting the trailer



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Emergency breakaway cable

Always fasten the trailer's emergency breakaway cable properly to the towing vehicle. Leave enough slack in the emergency breakaway cable so that the vehicle can still drive around corners. However the emergency breakaway cable should not drag along the ground while you are driving.

### Trailer socket

A 13-pin trailer socket makes the electrical connection between the towing vehicle and the trailer. If the trailer has a **7-pin plug** you will need to use an adapter cable.

### Trailer rear lights

Make sure that the trailer lights work properly and meet legal requirements. Do not exceed the maximum power consumption for the trailer → [Maximum power consumption of the trailer](#) .

### The trailer is connected to the anti-theft alarm:

- When the vehicle has a factory-fitted anti-theft alarm and a factory-fitted towing bracket.

- When the trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
- When the vehicle and trailer electric systems are functional, fault-free and undamaged.
- When the vehicle is locked with the vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm is active.

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm will be triggered as soon as the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm when a trailer is being hitched or unhitched. The tilt sensor could otherwise trigger an alarm unnecessarily.


## WARNING


**Any electrical accessories which are not connected properly could cause a power surge to the trailer. This could lead to faults in the entire vehicle electronics system and could also cause accidents and serious injuries.**


- All work on the electric system should be carried out by a qualified workshop.
- Never connect the trailer's electrical system directly with the electrical connections of the tail lights or to other electricity supplies.


## NOTICE

**If you park the trailer using the support wheel or other trailer supports, disconnect the trailer from the vehicle. The vehicle could rock up and down if the load changes or if there is damage to the tyres. If this happens, a great deal of force will be exerted on the towing bracket and trailer which could lead to damage to the vehicle and trailer.**

 If there is a fault in the vehicle or trailer electrical systems or if there are problems with the anti-theft alarm, the systems should be checked by a qualified workshop.

 If the engine is not running and electrical equipment is switched on in the trailer via the trailer socket, the vehicle battery will discharge.


 Trailers with LED tail lights cannot, for technical reasons, be integrated in the anti-theft alarm system.

 If the vehicle battery charge level is low, the electrical connection to the trailer will be interrupted automatically.

## Loading the trailer

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Trailer weight and drawbar load

The trailer weight is the weight that the vehicle can pull →  . The drawbar load is the weight that the towing bracket exerts on the ball coupling vertically from above → [Maximum permitted trailer weights](#) .

The figures for trailer weights and draw bar weights that are given on the data plate of the towing bracket are for certification purposes only. The correct values for your specific model, which may be *lower* than these figures, are given in the vehicle registration documents. All data in the official vehicle documents take precedence over these data.

In the interest of road safety, Volkswagen recommends that you always transport the maximum **drawbar load**. The response of the trailer on the road will be poor if the drawbar load is too small.

The drawbar load increases the weight on the rear axle and reduces the maximum load level as a result.



## Gross combination weight rating

The combination weight is made up of the actual weight of the loaded vehicle and of the loaded trailer.

## Loading the trailer

The weight of the load should be distributed evenly. The maximum permitted drawbar load should be utilised. Do not place the load only at the front or the rear of the trailer:

- Distribute the load in the trailer so that heavy objects are either over or as near to the axle as possible.
- Secure all loads on the trailer properly.

## Tyre pressure

Follow the trailer manufacturer's recommendations concerning the tyre pressure for the trailer tyres.

When towing a trailer, inflate the wheels on the towing vehicle with the maximum permitted tyre pressure → [Wheels and tyres](#) .

### WARNING

Accidents and serious injuries could occur if you exceed the vehicle's maximum permitted gross axle weight rating, drawbar load, gross vehicle weight rating or gross combination weight rating.

- Never exceed the specified values.
- Never let the actual weights at the front and rear axles exceed the gross axle weight ratings. Never exceed the permissible gross vehicle weight for the vehicle with weight at the front and rear of the vehicle.

### WARNING

Moving loads can severely impair stability and driving safety which could cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Always load trailers correctly.
- Always secure loads using suitable and undamaged securing straps.

## Towing a trailer



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#) .

## Headlight adjustment

Towing a trailer can raise the front end of the vehicle enough for the dipped beam to blind other road users. Use the headlight range control to lower the light cone as required. If you do not have headlight range control, the headlights should be adjusted by a qualified workshop. Vehicles with gas discharge lamps are adjusted automatically.

## Things to note when driving with a trailer

- If the trailer has an **overrun brake**, apply the brakes *gently at first* and then firmly. This will prevent the jerking that can be caused by the trailer wheels locking.
- The combination weight causes the braking distance to increase.
- Select a low gear before driving down a hill. This enables you to use the engine braking effect to slow down the vehicle. The brake system could otherwise overheat and fail.
- The vehicle's centre of gravity and, in turn, the vehicle's handling, will change because of the trailer load and the increased combined towing weight of




the vehicle and trailer.

- The weight distribution of a loaded trailer with an unladen towing vehicle is very unfavourable. When driving in this situation, drive particularly carefully and slowly.

### Pulling off on hills when towing a trailer

Depending on the steepness of the slope and the total weight of the trailer and vehicle, a vehicle towing a trailer could roll back a short distance when moving off on a hill.

When towing a trailer, pull off on hills as follows:

- Depress and hold the brake pedal.
- Press button  once to switch off the electronic parking brake → [Braking, stopping and parking](#) .
- Pull on the  button and hold it in this position to hold the vehicle and trailer with the electronic parking brake.
- Manual gearbox: depress the clutch fully.
- Select first gear or **D** → [Changing gear](#) .
- Release the brake pedal.
- Pull away slowly. To do this, slowly release the clutch pedal for a manual gearbox.
- Only let go of the  button when the engine has sufficient power to move off.

## WARNING

**Incorrect trailer towing can cause loss of vehicle control and serious personal injury.**


- **Towing a trailer and transporting heavy or bulky items can change the way the vehicle handles and increase the braking distance.**
- **Always drive carefully and think ahead. Brake earlier than in normal driving.**
- **Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. Reduce your speed, particularly when going downhill.**
- **Accelerate carefully and gently. Avoid abrupt and sudden driving and braking manoeuvres.**
- **Take special care when overtaking. Reduce your speed immediately if the trailer shows even the slightest sign of snaking.**
- **Never try to stop this snaking by increasing your speed.**
- **Always obey speed limits. In some areas speed limits for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for vehicles without trailers.**

## Trailer stabilisation





**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

The trailer stabilisation function is an extension to the electronic stabilisation programme (ESP). It helps, in conjunction with the driver steering recommendation function, to reduce the risk of rocking when towing a trailer.

An active trailer stabilisation function can be recognised when the ESP indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster lights up for approximately 2 seconds longer than the ABS indicator lamp.

### Requirements for trailer stabilisation

- The vehicle is a factory-fitted towing bracket or a compatible towing bracket is fitted.
- The ESP is active. The indicator lamp  or  in the instrument cluster is not lit up.
- The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
- The vehicle speed is higher than approximately 60 km/h (38 mph).

- The maximum drawbar load is being carried.
- The trailer must have a rigid drawbar.
- Trailers with brakes must have a mechanical overrun system.

## WARNING

Do not let the extra safety afforded by the trailer stabilisation function tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.

- Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Accelerate carefully on slippery surfaces.
- Take your foot off the accelerator if one of the systems is active.

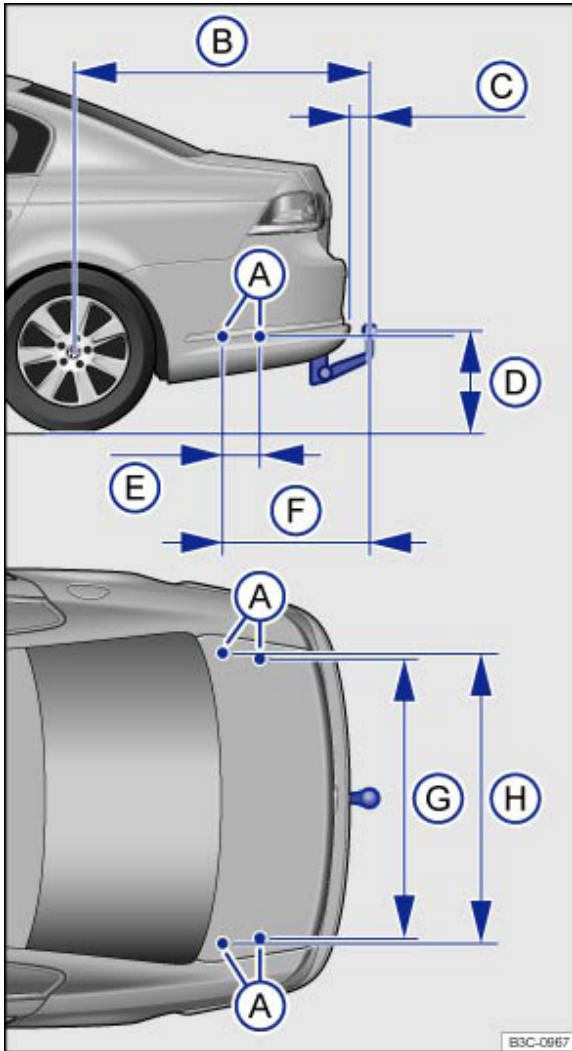
## WARNING

The trailer stabilisation function may not be able to recognise all driving situations correctly.

- Light trailers that are snaking will not be recognised by the trailer stabilisation function and stabilised accordingly in all cases.
- A trailer might still *jack-knife* on a slippery surface with little grip.
- Trailers with a high centre of gravity might tip over before snaking starts.
- Sudden braking procedures could occur automatically in extreme driving situations if the trailer socket is being used without a trailer (e.g. for a bicycle carrier with lighting).

## Retrofitting a towing bracket

---



**Fig. 115** Dimensions and attachment points for retrofitting a towing bracket



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

Volkswagen recommends having the towing bracket retrofitted by a qualified workshop. The cooling system may need to be modified or heat shields may need to be fitted. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

The dimensions must be adhered to for the retro-fitting of a towing bracket. Always observe the minimum distance given from the middle of the ball coupling → *Fig. 115* to the surface of the road. This also applies when the vehicle is fully laden, including maximum drawbar load.

**Dimensions** → *Fig. 115*:

**A** Attachment points

**B** 1,170 mm

**C** at least 79 mm

**D** 350 – 420 mm

**E** 251 mm

**F** 546 mm

**G** 1,031 mm

**H** 1,036 mm

## WARNING

Any electrical accessories which are not connected properly could cause faults in the entire vehicle electronics system and also cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never connect the trailer's electrical system directly with the electrical connections of the tail lights or to other unsuitable electricity supplies. Only a suitable connector may be used to connect the trailer.
- A towing bracket should be retrofitted to the vehicle by a qualified workshop.

## WARNING

If the towing bracket is unsuitable or badly fitted, the trailer could become detached from the towing vehicle. This could cause accidents and fatal injuries.



Only use towing brackets which have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type.

## Maximum permitted trailer weights




First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)


All data in the official vehicle documents take precedence over these data. All data in this manual are valid for the basic model. The vehicle data sticker in the service schedule and the official vehicle documents show which engine is installed in your vehicle.


The values quoted here may differ if additional equipment is fitted, for different models or for special vehicles.

### Petrol engines


Engine power → 	EC	With brakes, gradients up to 12%	With brakes, gradients up to 8%	Without brakes
90 kW	CAXA	1,400 kg	1,600 kg	MG: 720 kg DSG®: 730 kg
118 kW	CDAA	1,500 kg	1,700 kg	750 kg
155 kW	CCZB	1,600 kg	1,800 kg	750 kg
220 kW	BWS	2,200 kg	– kg <sup>a)</sup>	750 kg

### Diesel engines


Engine power → 	EC	With brakes, gradients up to 12%	With brakes, gradients up to 8%	Without brakes
--	----	----------------------------------	---------------------------------	----------------

77 kW <b>with</b> DPF	CAYC	1,400 kg	1,600 kg	740 kg
77 kW BlueMotion <b>with</b> DPF		1,200 kg		
100 kW <b>with</b> DPF	CFFA	1,800 kg	2,000 kg	750 kg
103 kW <b>with</b> DPF	CFFB	1,800 kg	2,000 kg	750 kg
103 kW 4MOTION <b>with</b> DPF		2,000 kg	2,200 kg	750 kg
<b>Engine power</b> → 	<b>EC</b>	<b>With brakes, gradients up to 12%</b>	<b>With brakes, gradients up to 8%</b>	<b>Without brakes</b>
125 kW <b>with</b> DPF	CFGB	1,800 kg	2,000 kg	750 kg
125 kW 4MOTION <b>with</b> DPF		2,000 kg	2,200 kg	750 kg
125 kW <b>with</b> PRS	CLLA	– kg <sup>b)</sup>	– kg <sup>b)</sup>	– kg <sup>b)</sup>

### Natural gas engine

<b>Engine power</b> → 	<b>EC</b>	<b>With brakes, gradients up to 12%</b>	<b>With brakes, gradients up to 8%</b>	<b>Without brakes</b>
110 kW	CDGA	1,500 kg	1,700 kg	750 kg

### E85 MultiFuel engine

<b>Engine power</b> → 	<b>EC</b>	<b>With brakes, gradients up to 12%</b>	<b>With brakes, gradients up to 8%</b>	<b>Without brakes</b>
118 kW	CKMA	1,500 kg	1,700 kg	MG: 740 kg DSG®: 750 kg

## WARNING

Accidents or severe injuries could occur if the maximum permitted trailer weight is exceeded.

- Never exceed the permitted trailer weight.

## NOTICE

Considerable vehicle damage could occur if the maximum permitted trailer weight is exceeded.

- Never exceed the permitted trailer weight.

<sup>a)</sup> Figures were not available at time of publication.

<sup>b)</sup> Figures were not available at time of publication.

## Maximum permitted gross combination weight




First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

All data in the official vehicle documents take precedence over these data. All data in this manual are valid for the basic model. The vehicle data sticker in the service schedule and the official vehicle documents show which engine is installed in your vehicle.


The values quoted here may differ if additional equipment is fitted, for different models or for special vehicles.

The gross combination weight ratings listed are only applicable for altitudes up to 1,000 m above sea level. The maximum weight of the car and trailer must be reduced by 10% for every further 1,000 m - or part thereof.


### Petrol engines

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	Maximum permitted gross combination weight → 
90 kW	CAXA	MG6	3,405 kg
		DSG®7	3,430 kg
118 kW	CDAA	MG6	3,575 kg
		DSG®7	3,590 kg
155 kW	CCZB	MG6	3,685 kg
		DSG®6	3,695 kg
220 kW	BWS	DSG®6 4MOTION	4,475 kg


### Diesel engines

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	Maximum permitted gross combination weight → 
77 kW <b>with</b> DPF	CAYC	MG6	3,490 kg
		DSG®7	3,520 kg
77 kW BlueMotion <b>with</b> DPF		MG6	3,210 kg
100 kW <b>with</b> DPF	CFFA	MG6	3,925 kg
103 kW <b>with</b> DPF	CFFB	MG6	3,925 kg <sup>a)</sup>
		MG6 4MOTION	4,230 kg
		DSG®6	3,955 kg <sup>b)</sup>
125 kW <b>with</b> DPF	CFGB	MG6	3,925 kg
		DSG®6	3,960 kg
		DSG®6 4MOTION	4,235 kg
125 kW <b>with</b> PRS	CLLA	– <sup>c)</sup>	– kg <sup>c)</sup>

### Natural gas engine

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	Maximum permitted gross combination weight → 
110 kW	CDGA	MG6	3,625 kg
		DSG®7	3,650 kg

### E85 MultiFuel engine

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	Maximum permitted gross combination weight → 
		MG6	3,565 kg

## WARNING

Accidents or severe injuries could occur if the maximum permitted gross combination weight is exceeded.

- Never exceed the specified gross combination weight rating.

## NOTICE

Considerable vehicle damage could occur if the maximum specified gross combination weight rating is exceeded.

- Never exceed the specified gross combination weight rating.

a) In vehicles with exhaust emissions norm EU6: 3,975 kg.

b) In vehicles with exhaust emissions norm EU6: 3,995 kg.

c) Figures were not available at time of publication.

## Practical equipment

### Stowing

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Stowage compartment on the driver side*
- *Stowage area in the roof console (glasses compartment)*
- *Front stowage compartment*
- *Stowage compartment in the front centre console*
- *Stowage compartment in the front centre armrest*
- *Stowage compartment on the front passenger side*
- *Stowage compartment in the rear centre armrests*
- *Other stowage compartments*

Only use stowage compartments to stow light or smaller objects.

A factory-fitted **AUX-IN socket** may be located in the stowage compartment in the front centre armrest.

A factory-fitted **CD changer** or the **multi-media socket (MEDIA-IN)** may be located in the stowage compartment on the front passenger side.

#### Additional information and warnings:

- Cleaning and caring for the interior → *Cleaning and caring for the interior*
- ⇒ Booklet*Radio* , or ⇒ Booklet*Navigation system*,



## **!** WARNING

Loose objects may be flung through the vehicle interior in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre. This can cause serious injury and can also lead to loss of control of the vehicle.

- Do not stow any pets or any hard, heavy or sharp objects in the vehicle's open stowage compartments, on the dash panel, on the shelf behind the rear seats, or in items of clothing and bags in the vehicle interior.
- Always keep stowage compartments closed while the vehicle is in motion.

## **!** WARNING

Items in the driver footwell could hinder pedal operation. This could lead to loss of control over the vehicle and increase the risk of serious injury.

- Please ensure that all pedals can always be used without any hindrance.
- The foot mats must always be properly secured in the footwell.
- Additional foot mats or other floor coverings should never be placed over the fitted foot mat.
- Ensure that no objects can enter the driver footwell while the vehicle is in motion.

## **!** NOTICE

- Hard objects on the shelf could chafe against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and cause damage.
- Do not store any heat-sensitive objects, food or medicines inside the vehicle. Hot and cold temperatures could damage or destroy them.
- Items stored in the vehicle made from transparent materials, e.g. glasses, magnifying glasses or transparent suction cups on the windows, can concentrate the sun's rays and thus cause damage to the vehicle.

**i** The ventilation openings between the rear window and the shelf must not be covered as this would prevent stale air escaping from the vehicle.

## Stowage compartment on the driver side

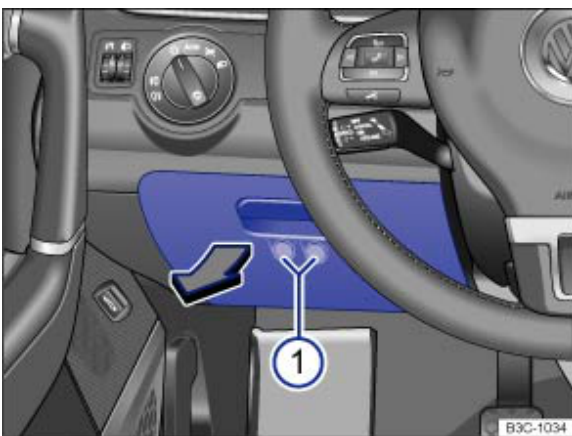



Fig. 116 On the driver side: stowage compartment with coin holder

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

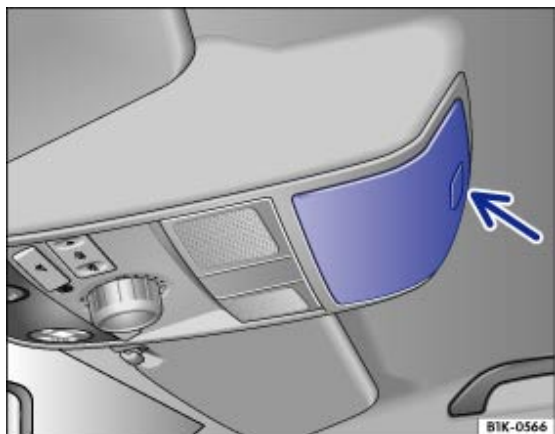
To *open*, pull the handle in the direction of the arrow → [Fig. 116](#).

There are coin holders in the stowage compartment → [Fig. 116](#) .

To *close*, press up the cover until it engages.

## Stowage area in the roof console (glasses compartment)

---




**Fig. 117** In the roof console: stowage compartment

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

The stowage compartment can be used for storing glasses or other objects.

To *open*, press and release the button → [Fig. 117](#) (arrow).

To *close*, press the cover up until it engages.

 The stowage compartment must be closed when you lock the car to guarantee that the interior monitor will work properly.

## Front stowage compartment

---




**Fig. 118** Stowage compartment in the front centre console

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

To *open*, press on the cover in the direction of the arrow → [Fig. 118](#).

To *close*, push the cover down as far as it will go.

 A 12-volt socket → [Electrical sockets](#) or a cigarette lighter → [Ashtray and cigarette lighter](#) may be in the stowage compartment.

## Stowage compartment in the front centre console

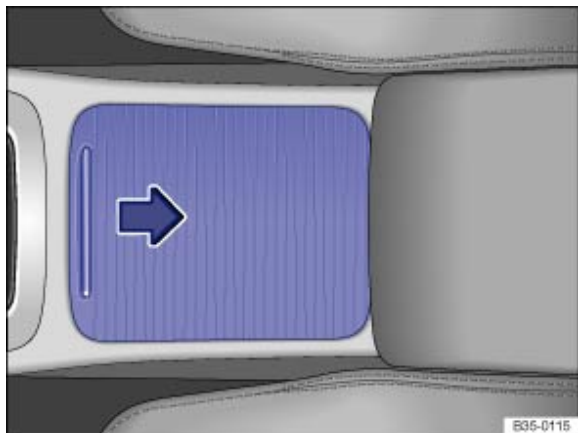


Fig. 119 Stowage compartment in front centre console: pushing open the cover

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

To *open*, slide the cover in the direction of the arrow → [Fig. 119](#).

To *close*, slide the cover against the direction of the arrow.

## Stowage compartment in the front centre armrest



Fig. 120 Stowage compartment in the front centre armrest

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

To *open*, pull the centre armrest all the way up in the direction of the arrow → [Fig. 120](#).

To *close*, guide the armrest down.

### WARNING

The centre armrest could obstruct the driver's arm movements which could cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Always keep the stowage compartment in the centre armrest closed while the vehicle is in motion.

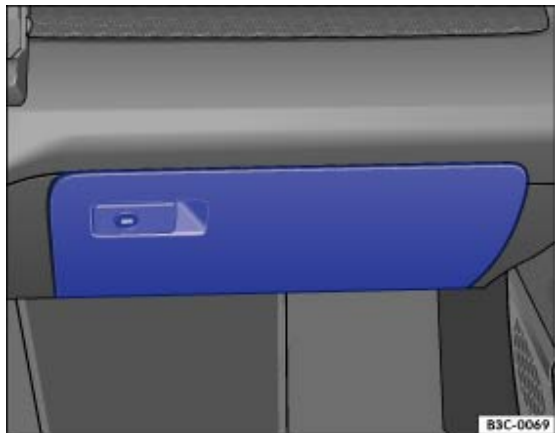
### WARNING

Never transport an adult or child on the centre armrest

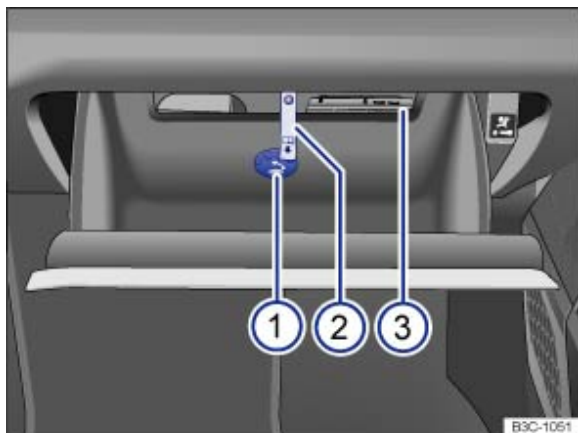
**never transport an adult or child on the centre armrest.**

**i** A telephone holder for the provision for a mobile telephone may be located in the upper part of the stowage compartment ⇒ Booklet *Provision for a mobile telephone*.

## Stowage compartment on the front passenger side



**Fig. 121** Stowage compartment on front passenger side



**Fig. 122** Open stowage compartment on front passenger side

**📖** First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → **⚠️ Introduction**

### Opening and closing the stowage compartment

Unlock the vehicle using the spare key → *Vehicle key set* if necessary. The stowage compartment is locked when the key slot is vertical.

To *open*, pull up the opening lever → *Fig. 121*.

To *close*, push the cover up.

### Vehicle wallet storage

A special vehicle wallet storage compartment may be located in the stowage area on the front passenger side.

The vehicle wallet storage compartment is located in the upper stowage compartment area → *Fig. 122* .

A tab → *Fig. 122* shows the location of the handle used for opening the vehicle wallet storage compartment. The vehicle wallet should always be kept in the vehicle wallet storage compartment. To stow the vehicle wallet, insert it into the vehicle wallet storage compartment with the spine facing out.

## Holders

A pen holder and note holder may be located in the stowage compartment on the front passenger side.

## Cooling the stowage compartment

There is a vent in the rear panel → [Fig. 122](#) . If the air conditioning is switched on, cooled air can be fed into the compartment. Open and close the vents by turning.

### WARNING

An open stowage compartment on the front passenger side can increase the risk of serious injury in the case of an accident or during sudden braking or driving manoeuvres.

- Always keep the stowage compartment closed while the vehicle is in motion.

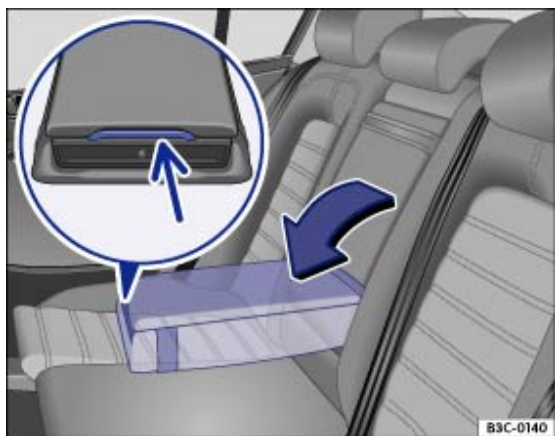
### NOTICE

Keep the stowage compartment with the CD changer → [Fig. 122](#) closed while the vehicle is in motion as the CD changer could otherwise be damaged by vibrations.

### NOTICE

In some model versions, the glove compartment contains apertures, for example behind the compartment for the vehicle wallet. Small items could fall through the apertures and become trapped behind the trim. This could cause unusual noises and damage to the vehicle. For this reason do not store small items in the stowage compartment.

## Stowage compartment in the rear centre armrests



**Fig. 123** Stowage compartment in the rear centre armrest


 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

There may be a stowage compartment in the rear centre armrest or in the rear bench seat behind the centre armrest.

Do not use the middle seat on the rear bench seat to transport passengers when the centre armrest is folded down.

## Opening and closing the stowage compartment in the centre armrest

When the centre armrest is folded down, press the button → *Fig. 123* (small arrow) and fold the cover up to *open*.

To *close*, fold the cover down → .

## WARNING

In order to reduce the risk of injury while the vehicle is in motion, the centre armrest must always be folded up and the stowage area and drink holders must be closed.

- The middle seat on the rear bench seat must never be used when the centre armrest is folded down – neither by adults nor children. An incorrect sitting position can cause severe injuries.
- Close the stowage compartment only when there is nobody in its closing path.

## NOTICE

Never press on the drink holder cover when lifting the centre armrest. The drink holder could open and become damaged.



A first-aid kit may be located in the stowage compartment in the centre armrest.

## Other storage compartments



**Fig. 124** In the luggage compartment: side compartment



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Stowage areas in the luggage compartment

Additional stowage compartments are located in the sides of the luggage compartment. The side walls can be removed by pulling them up and out in the direction of the arrow → *Fig. 124*. This enables you to stow larger items in the luggage compartment.

#### Other storage areas:

- In the front and rear centre consoles.
- In the door trims (front and rear).
- Stowage areas for light items of clothing behind the rear seat backrests.
- **Coat hooks** on the centre door pillar and on the rear roof grab handles.
- **Bag hooks** in the luggage compartment → [Luggage compartment](#) .

## WARNING

Items of clothing that are hung up can restrict the driver's field of vision and cause accidents and serious injuries as a result.

- Items of clothing should always be hung up so that they do not restrict the driver's field of vision.
- The clothes hook in the vehicle should only be used for transporting light items of clothing. Do not leave any heavy, hard or sharp objects in the pockets.

## Drink holder

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Drink holders in front centre console*
- *Drink holders in the rear centre armrest*

### Bottle holder

Bottle holders are located in the open stowage compartments of the driver and front passenger doors.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Cleaning and caring for the interior → *Cleaning and caring for the interior*

## WARNING

Incorrect use of the drink holders can cause injury.

- Do not place any hot drinks in a drink holder. In the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or accident, hot drinks in a drink holder could be spilled. This could cause scalding.
- Make sure that drink bottles or any other objects do not fall into the driver footwell and obstruct the pedals while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never place heavy cups, food or any other heavy items in the drink holders. These heavy objects could be flung through the vehicle interior during an accident and cause serious injuries.

## WARNING

Closed drink bottles could explode in the vehicle in extreme heat or crack in extremely cold temperatures.

- Never leave closed drink bottles in an extremely hot or extremely cold vehicle for extended periods.

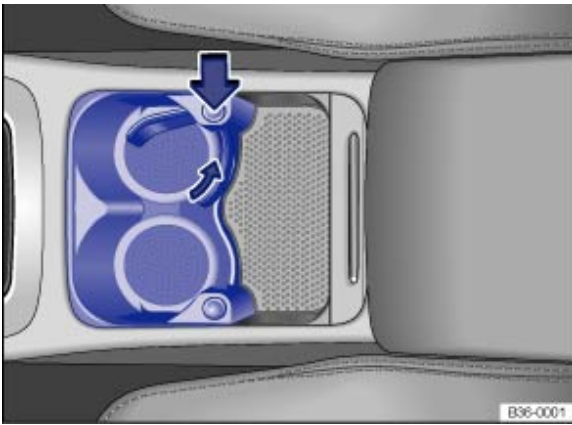
## NOTICE

Do not leave any open drinks in the drink holder while the vehicle is in motion. Drinks that are spilled, for example during braking, can damage the vehicle and the vehicle electric system.

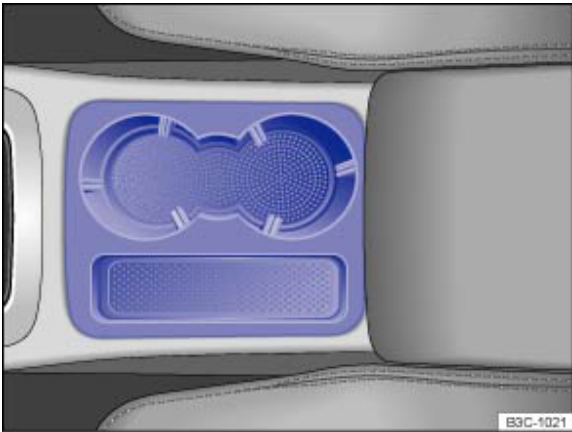


The inserts for the drink holders can be removed for cleaning purposes.

### Drink holders in front centre console



**Fig. 125** In the front centre console: drink holders (type 1) Fold out holder in drink holder



**Fig. 126** In the front centre console: drink holders (type 2)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  *Introduction*

There are various versions of the drink holder in the front centre console.

### Opening the drink holder

- Push the cover back.
- Press the button → *Fig. 125* (thick arrow) to release the holder.

### Closing the drink holder

- Turn the holder back into the console → *Fig. 125* (small arrow). The holder must engage.
- Push the cover forwards.

## Drink holders in the rear centre armrest

---





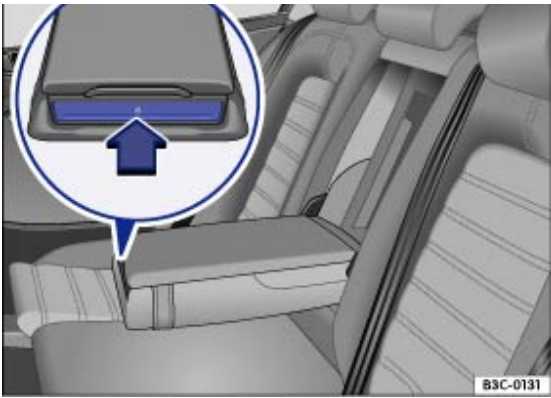


Fig. 127 In the rear centre armrest: opening the drink holder



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Opening the drink holder

- Fold the centre armrest down.
- Press on the front of the centre armrest in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 127. The drink holder opens.

### Closing the drink holder

Push the drink holder into the centre armrest until it engages.

## WARNING

The middle armrest in the rear bench seat must always remain closed while the vehicle is in motion in order to reduce the risk of injury.

- The middle seat on the rear bench seat must never be used when the centre armrest is folded down – neither by adults nor children. An incorrect sitting position can cause severe injuries.

## NOTICE

Never press on the drink holder cover when lifting the centre armrest. The drink holder could open and become damaged.

## Ashtray and cigarette lighter

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Front ashtray](#)
- [Cigarette lighter](#)

A removable ashtray may be located in the vehicle.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Electrical sockets → [Electrical sockets](#)
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → [Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)

## WARNING

**WARNING**

Improper use of the ashtray and cigarette lighter could cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.

- Never place paper or any other items in the ashtray that could start a fire.

## Front ashtray



Fig. 128 In the front centre console: opening the ashtray



Fig. 129 In the front centre console: removing the ashtray



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Opening and closing the ashtray

To *open*, press the ashtray cover briefly in the direction of the arrow → [Fig. 128](#). The cover will then open.

To *close*, push the cover down as far as it will go.

### Emptying the ashtray

- Take hold of the sides of the ashtray insert → [Fig. 129](#) (arrow) and pull it up and out.
- Place the insert back into the ashtray from above once it has been emptied.


## Cigarette lighter



Fig. 130 In the front centre console: cigarette lighter in the ashtray



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

- With the ignition switched on, press in the knob on the cigarette lighter → [Fig. 130](#).
- Wait for the lighter to pop out.
- Pull out the cigarette lighter and light the cigarette, cigar, etc, on the glowing spiral → .

- Insert the cigarette lighter back into the retainer.

## WARNING

Improper use of the cigarette lighter could cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.

- Always use the cigarette lighter properly. Use it only to light cigarettes, cigars or similar.
- Never leave children in the vehicle unattended. The cigarette lighter can be used when the ignition is switched on.



The cigarette lighter can also be used as a 12-volt socket → [Additional information and warnings:](#) .

## Electrical sockets

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Sockets in the vehicle](#)
- [Socket in the rear centre console](#)

Electrical equipment can be connected to the sockets in the vehicle.

The connected devices must be in good condition. Do not use faulty devices.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Cigarette lighter → [Ashtray and cigarette lighter](#)
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → [Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)

## WARNING

Improper use of the sockets and electrical accessories can cause fires and severe injuries.

- Never leave children in the vehicle unattended. Sockets and the devices connected to them can be used when the ignition is switched on.
- If the electrical device gets too hot, switch the device off immediately and disconnect it from the socket.

## NOTICE

- In order to prevent damage to the electrical system, never connect equipment which generates electricity, such as solar panels or battery charging units for charging the vehicle battery, to the 12-volt socket.
- Only use accessories that have been approved in accordance with current guidelines concerning electromagnetic compatibility.
- In order to avoid damage due to voltage fluctuation, always switch off any electrical consumers connected to the 12-volt sockets before switching the ignition or engine on or off.
- Never connect electrical devices requiring more electrical power to a 12-volt socket. The electrical system of the vehicle could be damaged if the maximum power output is exceeded.




Do not leave the engine running when the vehicle is stationary.



Using electrical appliances with the engine switched off and the ignition switched on will drain the battery.



Unshielded devices can cause interference with radio reception and vehicle electronics.

 Unshielded devices can cause interference with radio reception and vehicle electronics.

 Interference of AM radio reception could occur if electric devices are used in the vicinity of the rear window aerial.

## Sockets in the vehicle



Fig. 131 In the luggage compartment: 12-volt socket

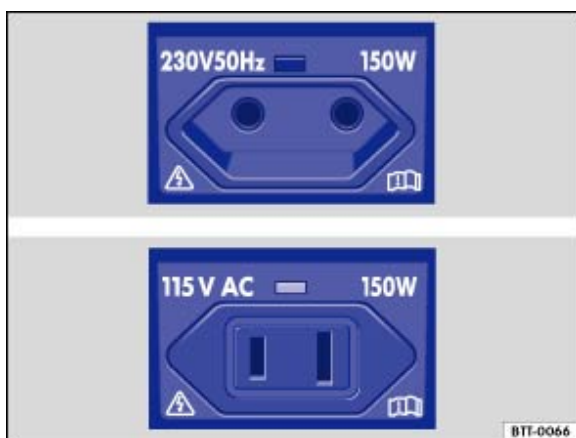



Fig. 132 230-volt Euro socket / 115-volt socket

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Maximum power rating

Electrical socket	Maximum power rating
12-volt	120 watts
230- or 115-volt	150 watts (300 watts peak power)

The maximum power rating of the individual sockets should never be exceeded. The power rating of each device is stated on its type plate.

If 2 or more devices are connected at the same time, make sure that the overall power consumption of all connected electrical devices never exceeds 190 watts → .

### 12-volt socket

The 12-volt socket will work only when the ignition is switched on.


Using electrical appliances with the engine switched off and the ignition switched on will drain the battery. Therefore only plug electrical consumers into the sockets when the engine is running.

To prevent damage due to voltage fluctuation, switch off any connected devices before switching the ignition or engine on or off.

12-volt sockets can be found in the following locations in the vehicle:

- In the front stowage area or in the front ashtray → [Fig. 128](#).
- In the rear centre console → [Socket in the rear centre console](#).
- In the luggage compartment → [Fig. 131](#).

### 230-volt Euro socket / 115-volt socket

The socket can only be used when the engine is running → .

*Connecting an electrical device:* insert the plug all the way into the socket to unlock the integrated childproof lock. Electricity will not flow until the childproof lock has been unlocked.

#### LEDs on the socket → [Fig. 132](#)

Constant green light:	The child safety function is disengaged. The socket is ready for use.
Flashing red light:	A fault has occurred, for example cut-off due to excess current or temperature.

230-volt sockets or 115-volt sockets can be found in the following locations in the vehicle:

- Rear centre console → [Socket in the rear centre console](#)

### Temperature switch-off

The inverter in the 230-volt Euro socket or 115-volt socket will switch off automatically if the temperature exceeds a specific value. The switch-off function prevents the connected device from overheating when the power consumption is too high or if the ambient temperature is too high. The inverter will switch on again automatically after a cool-down phase. Any devices which are connected to the socket and switched on will then be reactivated. Any electrical devices connected to the socket will therefore switch off when the inverter switches itself off due to overheating.




**High voltage in the electrical system!**


- Never pour any liquid over the socket.

- Do not plug any adapters or extensions into the 230-volt Euro socket or 115-volt socket. Otherwise the built-in child safety function will disengage and power will be supplied to the socket.
- Do not insert any items which will conduct electricity, such as knitting needles, into the contacts of the 230-volt Euro socket or 115-volt socket.

### NOTICE

- Observe the operating instructions for any device that you plug into the socket.
- Never exceed the maximum power consumption as this could damage the whole vehicle electrical system.
- 12-volt socket:
  - Only use accessories that have been approved in accordance with valid guidelines concerning electromagnetic compatibility.
  - Never feed electricity into the socket.
- 230-volt Euro socket / 115-volt socket:
  - Do not plug any heavy devices or connections, such as mains adapters, directly into the socket.
  - Do not connect any lights which use neon tubes.
  - Only connect devices to the socket with a voltage that matches the voltage of the socket.
  - With electrical devices that require a high level of current in the start phase, the built-in excess current switch will prevent the device from being switched on. If this happens, disconnect the device from the power supply and reconnect after waiting approximately 10 seconds.

 Functional problems may occur with some devices when they are connected to the 230-volt Euro socket or 115-volt socket due to the lower power output (wattage).

 The 230-volt Euro socket can be converted for use with 115-volt devices and vice versa. For more information about retrofit sets, contact a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## Socket in the rear centre console



Fig. 133 Rear centre console: open cover with a button





**Fig. 134** Rear centre console: opening the hinged cover



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

There is a 12-volt electrical socket, a 115-volt electrical socket or a 230-volt Euro socket with a cover in the rear centre console → [Sockets in the vehicle](#) .

### In vehicles with a button under the cover:

Press the button on the socket cover → [Fig. 133](#) (arrow).

### In vehicles with a hinged cover:

Grip the recess → [Fig. 134](#) (arrow) from below and fold the cover up.

## Toll card reader (ETC)

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

→ [Function](#)

When the toll card system is switched on and functioning, tolls will be charged automatically when driving through a toll booth. The charge will be confirmed by an acoustic signal. The charges will be given via a spoken announcement and also shown on the navigation system screen together with the location data.

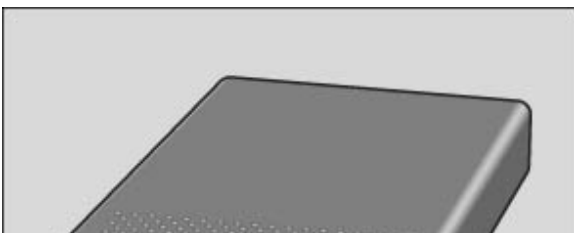
### Additional information and warnings:

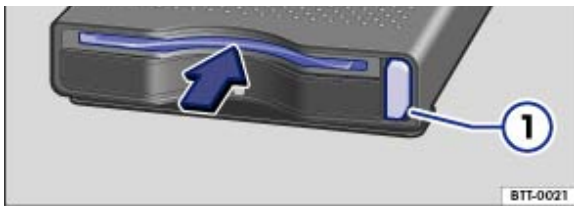
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → [Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)

## WARNING

Operating the toll card reader while the vehicle is in motion can distract you from the road and lead to accidents.

### Function





**Fig. 135** In the stowage compartment on front passenger side: toll card reader



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Using the toll card system

Switch on the navigation system and insert a suitable ETC card in the toll card reader → [Fig. 135](#) (arrow).

The device readiness will be confirmed with a long signal tone and displayed with the symbol **ETC** in the status bar of the navigation system.

### Ejecting the toll card

To eject, press the toll card button → [Fig. 135](#) ① .

### Error message

If a short series of tones is heard when switching on the device, there is a fault, e.g. no ETC card, or the card is faulty. The toll card system cannot be used.



# While driving

## Starting the engine, changing gear and parking the vehicle

### Starting and stopping the engine

#### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Indicator lamp*
- *Ignition lock*
- *Starter button*
- *Starting the engine*
- *Stopping the engine*
- *Electronic immobilizer*

**Notes in this chapter concerning the automatic gearbox are applicable both for the 6-speed dual clutch gearbox DSG<sup>®</sup> and the 7-speed dual clutch gearbox DSG<sup>®</sup>.**

#### Immobilizer display

If the vehicle key is not valid or there is a fault in the system then **SAFE** or **Immobilizer active!** will be displayed in the instrument cluster. The engine cannot be started.

#### Push starting or tow starting

For technical reasons, your vehicle **must not** be push started or tow started. Use jump leads to start the engine instead.

#### Additional information and warnings:

- Vehicle key set → *Vehicle key set*
- Changing gear → *Changing gear*
- Braking, stopping and parking → *Braking, stopping and parking*
- Steering → *Steering*
- Pull-away assist systems → *Pull-away assist systems*
- Filling the tank → *Filling the tank*
- Fuel → *Fuel*
- Manually closing or opening → *Manual opening or closing*
- Starting engine with jump leads → *Starting the engine with jump leads*
- Tow starting and towing → *Tow starting and towing* .

**⚠ WARNING**

Switching the engine off while the vehicle is moving makes it more difficult to stop the vehicle. This could lead to a loss of control over the vehicle as well as to accidents and serious injuries.

- Braking and steering support systems, the airbag system, the belt tensioners as well as various items of safety equipment in the vehicle will only be active when the engine is running.
- The engine should only be switched off when the vehicle is stationary.

**⚠ WARNING**

The risk of serious injury can be reduced with the engine running or when starting the engine.

- Never start or run the engine in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, an odourless and colourless poisonous gas. Carbon monoxide can cause loss of consciousness and death.
- Never leave the engine running if you leave the vehicle unattended. The vehicle could move suddenly or something unexpected may happen that may cause damage and serious injuries.
- Never use a start booster. Start boosters could explode and cause the engine to suddenly rev.


**⚠ WARNING**

The components of the exhaust system become very hot. This could lead to fires and serious injuries.

- Never park the vehicle so that parts of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. leaves, dry grass, spilt fuel.
- Never apply underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter, diesel particulate filter or the heat shields on the exhaust system.

**Indicator lamp**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Lit up	Possible cause	Correction
	For vehicles with a diesel engine: engine starting.	–

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.

**! WARNING**

Failure to observe the illuminated warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore warning lamps and text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

**! NOTICE**

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

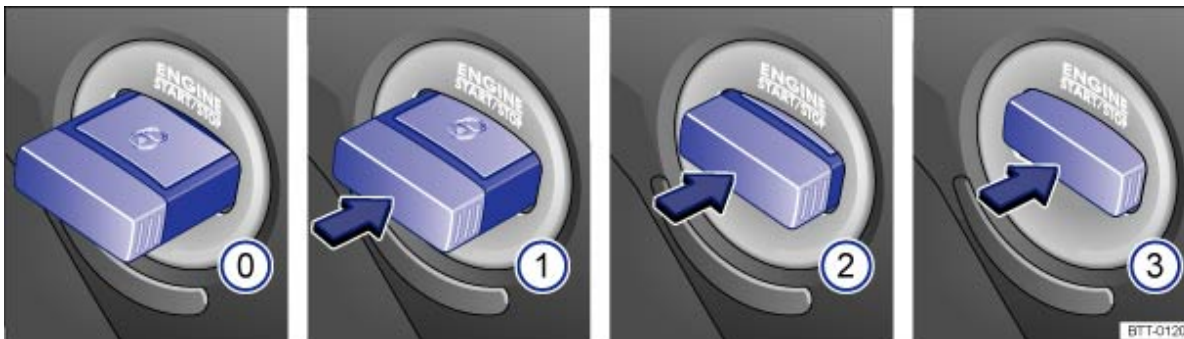
**Ignition lock**

Fig. 136 Positions of vehicle key in the ignition lock

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

When there is no vehicle key in the ignition lock, the steering column lock can be activated.

Vehicle key positions → [Fig. 136](#)

- ① Ignition switched off, all electrical consumers switched off and steering column lock is active.
- ① Ignition switched off, steering column lock deactivated. Vehicle key can be removed from the ignition lock.
- ② Ignition switched on. Preglow for diesel engine. Vehicle key can be removed from the ignition lock.
- ③ Start engine. The vehicle key remains in this position when the engine has started. To remove, push the vehicle key fully into the ignition lock. When you release the vehicle key, the engine is switched off and the key moves to position ①.

**Non-authorized vehicle key**

If a non-authorized vehicle key has been inserted in the ignition lock it can be removed as follows:

- *Automatic gearbox:* press the lock button in the selector lever and release. Pull the vehicle key out of the ignition lock.
- *Manual gearbox:* remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock.

**! WARNING**

**Always take care when using the vehicle key otherwise you could cause accidents or injuries.**

- **Always take all vehicle keys with you each time you leave the vehicle. The engine can be started and electrical equipment such as the window controls can be used which could cause serious injury.**
- **Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the car in an emergency and will not be able to get themselves to safety. Depending on the time of year, for example, a locked vehicle can be subjected to very high or very low temperatures. This could cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially for small children.**
- **Never remove the vehicle key from the ignition if the vehicle is in motion. The steering column lock may be activated and you will no longer be able to steer the vehicle.**



If the vehicle key is left in the ignition for a long period with the engine switched off, the vehicle battery could discharge.



In **vehicles with an automatic gearbox**, the vehicle key can only be removed from the ignition lock if the selector lever is in position **P**. If necessary, press the lock button in the selector lever and then release it.

## Starter button



**Fig. 137** In the lower part of the centre console: starter button for the Keyless Access locking and starting system



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → [Introduction](#)

The vehicle can be started with the starter button (Easy-Go) *or* with the vehicle key in the ignition lock → [Ignition lock](#) .

The starter button can only be used if there is a valid vehicle key in the vehicle.

**When leaving the vehicle** the electronic steering column lock will be activated when the ignition is switched off and the driver door is opened → [Steering](#)

## Switching ignition on and off

- Press the starter button once briefly without depressing the brake or clutch pedals → .

## Emergency start

If there is no valid vehicle key in the vehicle interior, use the ignition lock instead → [Ignition lock](#) . A corresponding display will appear in the instrument cluster. This could be the case, for example, if the battery in the vehicle key is discharged or too weak.

## Emergency switch-off function

If the engine cannot be switched off by pressing the starter button briefly, you will have to carry out an emergency switch-off procedure:

- Press the starter button twice within one second or once for longer than one second as described → .
- The engine will switch off automatically.

## Engine restart function

If no valid vehicle key is recognised in the vehicle interior after the engine has been switched off, it is possible to restart the engine within five seconds. A message is shown on the instrument cluster display.

After this time, the engine cannot be re-started without a valid vehicle key in the vehicle interior.

### WARNING

Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injury.

- Do *not* depress the brake or clutch pedal when the ignition is switched on as the engine could otherwise start immediately.

### WARNING

Always take care when using the vehicle key otherwise you could cause accidents or injuries.

- Always take all vehicle keys with you each time you leave the vehicle. Children or unauthorised persons could lock the vehicle, start the start the engine, switch on the ignition or operate electrical equipment, such as the electric windows.




In vehicles with diesel engines and Keyless Access, the engine start may be delayed if the engine has to be pre-glowed.

## Starting the engine



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The actions should be carried out in the given order only.

Step	Start the vehicle using the vehicle key → <i>Ignition lock</i>	Start the vehicle with the starter button → <i>Starter button (Keyless Access)</i> .
1.	Press the brake pedal. Keep it held down until stage 5 has been completed.	
1 a.	<b>Vehicles with a manual gearbox:</b> fully depress the clutch pedal until the engine has been started.	
2.	Select the neutral position or move the selector lever to <b>P</b> or <b>N</b> .	
3.	<b>Only vehicles with diesel engines:</b> to preglow, turn the vehicle key to position → <i>Fig. 136 ②</i> . The indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster lights up.	–
4.	Push the vehicle key in the ignition lock to position → <i>Fig. 136 ③</i> – do not depress the accelerator.	Press the starter button → <i>Fig. 137</i> without stepping on the accelerator. An authorised vehicle key must be in the vehicle in order to start the engine.
5.	Release the vehicle key once the engine has started.	Release the starter button once the engine has started.
6.	If the engine does not start, stop the procedure and repeat it after approximately one minute.	
7.	Switch off the electronic parking brake if you wish to pull away → <i>Braking, stopping and parking</i> .	

### WARNING

Never leave the vehicle with the engine running. The vehicle could move suddenly, particularly if a gear is selected, and cause accidents

and serious injuries.


## WARNING


Start boosters could explode or cause the engine to suddenly rev.


- Never use a start booster.


## NOTICE


- The starter and the engine could be damaged if you attempt to start the engine while the vehicle is in motion or if the engine is started again immediately after it has been switched off.
- When the engine is cold, avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and over-loading the engine.
- Do not push start or tow start the vehicle. Unburnt fuel could damage the catalytic converter.


 Do not warm up the engine by running it with the vehicle stationary, but rather pull off as soon as you can see properly through the windows. This helps the engine to reach operating temperature more quickly and reduces emissions.


 The engine cannot, for example, be started with the starter button if the battery in the vehicle key is weak or flat. In this case, start the vehicle using the vehicle key.

 Components with a high power consumption are switched off temporarily when the engine is started.

 When starting from cold, the engine may be a little noisy for the first few seconds. This is quite normal, and no cause for concern.

 At outside temperatures of less than +5°C (+41°F), fumes may be detected under a vehicle with a diesel engine if the fuel pre-heater is switched on.


 A natural gas engine will always start using petrol as a set operating temperature is required for operation with natural gas. The engine will automatically select natural gas operation once the set operating temperature is reached.

 A set operating temperature is required to start a multi-fuel engine with bioethanol E85. Refer to the information on bioethanol → [Fuel](#) .

## Stopping the engine

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The actions should be carried out in the given order only.

Step	Switch off the engine using the vehicle key → <i>Ignition lock</i> .	Switch off the vehicle engine with the starter button → <i>Starter button</i> (Keyless Access).
1.	The vehicle must be completely stationary →  .	
2.	Press the brake pedal. Keep it held down until step 4 has been completed.	
3.	In an automatic gearbox, move the selector lever to P.	

The actions should be carried out in the given order only.

Step	Switch off the engine using the vehicle key → <i>Ignition lock</i> .	Switch off the vehicle engine with the starter button → <i>Starter button</i> (Keyless Access).
4.	Switch on the electronic parking brake → <a href="#">Braking, stopping and parking</a>	

5.	Push the vehicle key fully into the ignition lock and release it. The vehicle key moves back to position → <a href="#">Fig. 136</a> ① .	Briefly press the starter button → <a href="#">Fig. 137</a> . If the engine cannot be switched off, carry out emergency switch-off procedure → <a href="#">Emergency switch-off function</a> .
6.	On a manual gearbox select the first or reverse gear.	


## WARNING


Never switch off the engine while the vehicle is in motion. This could lead to a loss of vehicle control, accidents and serious injuries.

- The airbags and belt tensioners will not work if the ignition is switched off.
- The brake servo will not work when the engine is not running. More pressure on the brake pedal is needed to stop the vehicle when the engine is switched off.
- The power assisted steering will not work when the engine is not running. More power is needed to steer the vehicle when the engine is switched off.
- If the vehicle key is removed from the ignition, the steering column lock may activate and it will no longer be possible to steer the vehicle.

## NOTICE

If the engine has been driven hard for a long period, the engine could overheat when it is switched off. In order to avoid damage to the engine, allow the engine to run in neutral for approximately 2 minutes before switching it off.

 In vehicles with an automatic gearbox, the vehicle key can only be removed from the ignition lock if the selector lever is in position **P**.

 After the engine is switched off, the radiator fan in the engine compartment may run on for some minutes, even if the ignition is switched off or the vehicle key has been removed. The radiator fan will switch itself off automatically.

## Electronic immobilizer

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)


The immobilizer helps to prevent the engine from being started and driven with an unauthorised vehicle key.

There is a chip in the key. It automatically deactivates the immobilizer when the vehicle key is inserted into the ignition lock.

The electronic immobilizer is automatically activated when the vehicle key is removed from the ignition lock. In vehicles with Keyless Access, the vehicle key must be outside the vehicle → [Locking and unlocking a vehicle with Keyless Access](#) .

The engine can only be started using a genuine Volkswagen vehicle key with the correct code. Coded vehicle keys are available from a Volkswagen dealership → [Vehicle key set](#) .

If a non-authorized vehicle key has been used, the display in the instrument cluster will show **SAFE** or **Immobilizer active!**. The vehicle cannot be used if this occurs.

 The vehicle cannot be operated properly if you do not have a genuine Volkswagen key.

## Changing gear

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

→ [Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)

- [Pedals](#)
- [Manual gearbox: selecting a gear](#)
- [Automatic gearbox: selecting a gear](#)
- [Changing gear using Tiptronic](#)
- [Driving with an automatic gearbox](#)
- [Fault in the function of the automatic gearbox](#)
- [Gear-change indicator](#)

Notes in this chapter concerning the automatic gearbox are applicable both for the automatic gearbox and the dual clutch gearbox DSG®.

### The following will occur if the reverse gear is selected and the ignition is switched on:

- The reverse light comes on.
- The Climatronic switches automatically to air recirculation mode when the vehicle is reversing
- The parking distance warning system, the optical parking system and the Rear Assist rear-view camera are switched on if necessary.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Overview of the centre console → [Overview of the centre console](#)
- Instruments → [Instruments](#)
- Braking, stopping and parking → [Braking, stopping and parking](#)
- Parking distance warning → [Parking distance warning system](#)
- Park Assist system → [Park Assist system](#)
- Rear Assist → [Rear Assist system](#)
- ACC (adaptive cruise control) → [ACC \(adaptive cruise control\)](#)
- Heating, ventilating, cooling → [Heating, ventilating, cooling](#)
- Engine management system and exhaust purification system → [Engine management system and exhaust purification system](#)
- Manually closing or opening → [Manual opening or closing](#)

## WARNING

Rapid acceleration can cause loss of traction and skidding, particularly on slippery roads. This could cause you to lose control of the vehicle, which could lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- The kick-down function or fast acceleration should only be attempted if the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit.

## WARNING

Never ride the brake pedal. Do not over-use the brake pedal. Constant braking will cause the brakes to overheat. This will considerably reduce the brake effect, increase the braking distance and could cause the brake system to fail completely.


## NOTICE








- Never let the brakes rub by applying light pressure when it is not necessary. This will increase levels of wear.
- Before driving down a long, steep gradient, reduce speed and change to a lower gear or move the selector lever to a lower gear position. This will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes. The brakes could otherwise overheat and



possibly fail. The brakes should only be used to slow the vehicle down or to stop it.

## Warning lamps and indicator lamps

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Lit up	Possible cause	Correction
	7-speed dual clutch gearbox DSG® overheating.	 <b>Do not drive on!</b> Move the selector lever to position <b>P</b> and leave the gearbox to cool down. If the warning lamp does not go out, do not continue to drive. Seek expert assistance. Considerable damage to the gearbox could be caused otherwise → <i>Fault in the function of the automatic gearbox</i> .
	Brake pedal not depressed!	Fully depress the brake pedal. See also ACC (adaptive cruise control) → <i>ACC (adaptive cruise control)</i> .
	Brake pedal not depressed.	To move the selector lever, depress the brake pedal. Please also refer to electronic parking brake → <i>Braking, stopping and parking</i> .
Flashes	Possible cause	Correction
	The lock button in the selector lever is not engaged. The vehicle cannot drive off.	Engage the selector lever lock → <i>Selector lever lock</i> .
	Fault in automatic gearbox.  flashes alternately with selector lever display e.g. <b>D</b> .	Drive to the nearest qualified workshop immediately at a low engine speed to have the system checked.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.

### WARNING

Failure to observe the illuminated warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore warning lamps and text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.
- If the vehicle is stationary or has to be parked for repairs, always park the vehicle at a safe distance from the road, switch on the hazard warning lights, switch off the engine and take other precautionary measures in order to warn traffic behind you.

### NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Pedals





Fig. 138 Pedals in vehicles with a manual gearbox: ① accelerator, ② brake pedal, ③ clutch pedal

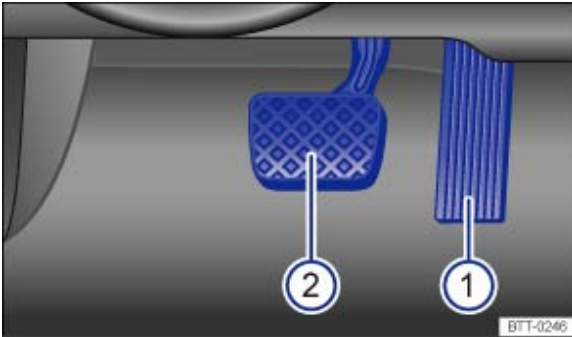


Fig. 139 Pedals in vehicles with an automatic gearbox: ① accelerator, ② brake pedal



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  *Introduction*

The operation and freedom of movement of all pedals must never be impaired by objects or floor mats.

Use only those floor mats which leave the pedal area free and can be securely fastened in the footwell.

If a brake circuit fails, you will have to depress the brake pedal further than normal in order to bring the vehicle to a stop.

## WARNING

Items in the driver footwell could hinder pedal operation. This could lead to loss of control over the vehicle and increase the risk of serious injury.

- Please ensure that all pedals can always be used without any hindrance.
- The foot mats must always be properly secured in the footwell.
- Additional foot mats or other floor coverings should never be placed over the fitted foot mat.
- Ensure that no objects can enter the driver footwell while the vehicle is in motion.

## NOTICE

Free access to the pedals must be ensured at all times. For example, the braking distance to fully stop the vehicle will be longer if a braking circuit is faulty. The brake pedal will have to be depressed further and harder than normal.

## Manual gearbox: selecting a gear

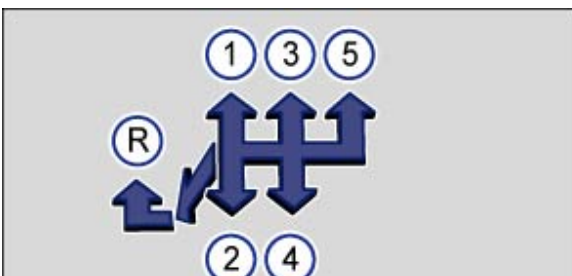




Fig. 140 Gear shift pattern of a 5-speed manual gearbox

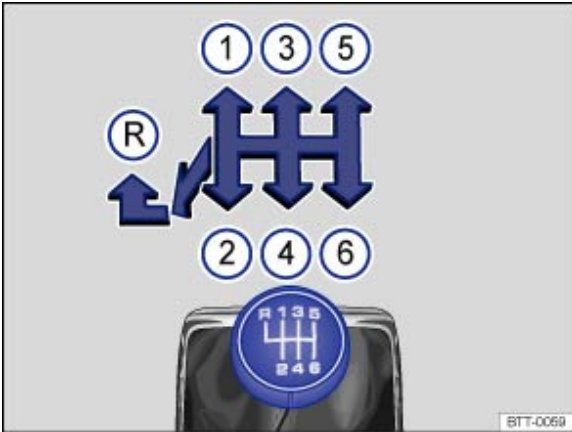



Fig. 141 Gear shift pattern of a 6-speed manual gearbox




First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  Introduction

The positions of the individual driving gears are shown on the gearshift lever → Fig. 140 or → Fig. 141.



- Fully depress and hold the clutch pedal.
- Move the gearshift lever to the required position → .
- Release the clutch to engage.

In some countries, the clutch pedal will have to be depressed fully in order to start the engine.

### Selecting reverse gear

- Reverse gear should only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.
- Fully depress and hold the clutch pedal → .
- Shift the gear stick to the neutral position and push down.
- Push the gearshift lever fully to the left and then to the front in the reverse gear position → Fig. 140 <sup>®</sup> or → Fig. 141 <sup>®</sup>.
- Release the clutch to engage.

### Shifting down

You should always select the next immediate gear when shifting down a gear whilst the vehicle is in motion. The engine revs should not be too high when doing this → . Damage to the clutch and the gearbox could occur if at high speeds or high engine revs one or more gears are skipped when shifting down gear, even if the clutch is not released when doing this → .

## WARNING

When the engine is running, the vehicle will start to move as soon as a gear is engaged and the clutch released. This also applies when the electronic park brake has been switched on.

- Never engage reverse gear while the vehicle is in motion.

**! WARNING**

Shifting gears incorrectly to a lower gear can lead to a loss of control over the vehicle, with accidents and/or serious injuries as a consequence.

**! NOTICE**

Serious damage to the clutch and gearbox could occur if the gear stick of the manual gearbox is shifted to a gear which is too low when travelling at high speeds or at high revs. This also applies if the clutch remains depressed and the gears do not engage.

**! NOTICE**

Please note the following points in order to avoid damage and premature wear:

- Do not rest your hand on the gear lever when driving. The pressure from your hand is passed onto the selector forks in the gearbox.
- Ensure that the vehicle has come to a full stop before engaging reverse gear.
- Always fully depress the clutch pedal when changing gear.
- Do not hold the vehicle by riding the clutch on a hill with the engine running.

### Automatic gearbox: selecting a gear

---

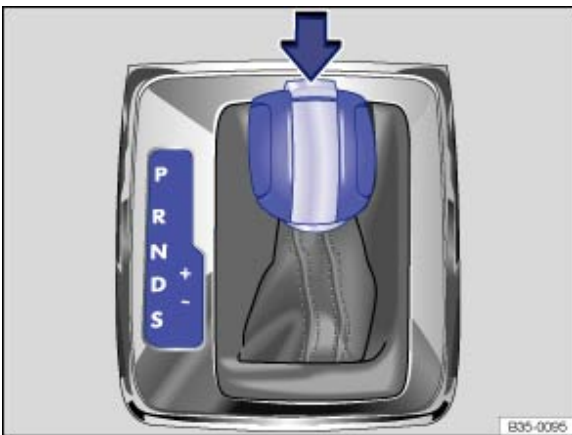


Fig. 142 Left-hand drive vehicles: selector lever for automatic gearbox with lock button (arrow)

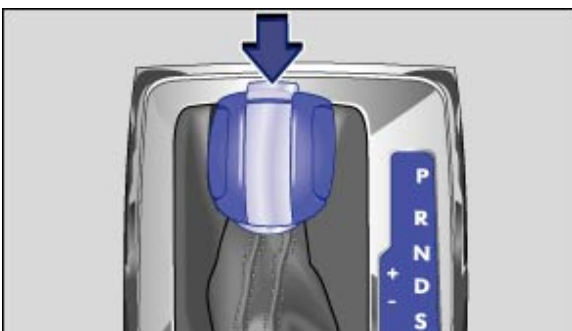





Fig. 143 Right-hand drive vehicles: selector lever for automatic gearbox with lock button (arrow)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  Introduction

The selector lever is equipped with a selector lever lock. When changing the selector lever position from **P** to a driving gear, depress the brake pedal and push the lock button in the selector lever in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 142 or → Fig. 143. To move the selector lever out of position **N** to position **D** or **R**, first depress and hold the brake pedal.

The current selector lever position or the selected gear will be shown in the instrument cluster display if the ignition is switched on.


Selector lever position	Designation	Meaning → 
<b>P</b>	<b>Parking lock</b>	The drive wheels are locked mechanically. May only be selected when the vehicle is <i>stationary</i> . To disengage this selector lever position, depress the brake pedal and also switch on the ignition.
<b>R</b>	<b>Reverse gear</b>	The reverse gear is selected. May only be selected when the vehicle is <i>stationary</i> .
<b>N</b>	<b>Neutral</b>	The gearbox is in the neutral position. No power is being transmitted to the wheels and the braking power of the engine cannot be used.
<b>D</b>	<b>Standard driving position</b> (normal programme)	All forward gears are shifted up and down automatically. The timing of the gear shift is determined by the engine load, your individual driving style and the speed of the vehicle.
<b>S</b>	<b>Standard driving position</b> (sport programme)	All forward gears are automatically changed <i>up and down at higher engine speeds</i> than in selector lever position <b>D</b> . This uses the full power available from the engine. The timing of the gear shift is determined by the engine load, your individual driving style and the speed of the vehicle.

## Selector lever lock

The selector lever lock in position **P** or **N** prevents gears from being engaged inadvertently, which would cause the vehicle to move.

To release the selector lever lock with the ignition switched on, depress and hold the brake pedal. Press the lock button in the selector lever at the same time.

The selector lever lock is not engaged if the selector lever is moved quickly through position **N** (e.g. when shifting from **R** to **D**). This makes it possible, for instance, to rock the vehicle backwards and forwards if it is stuck in snow or mud. The selector lever lock engages automatically if the brake pedal is not depressed and the lever is in position **N** for more than about 1 second and the vehicle is travelling no faster than approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).

In rare cases, the selector lever lock may not engage in vehicles with a dual clutch gearbox DSG®. The drive is then deactivated to prevent the vehicle accidentally pulling away. The green indicator lamp  flashes and an information message is also displayed. Use the following procedure to engage the selector lever lock:

- 6-speed gearbox: depress the foot brake and then release it again.
- 7-speed gearbox: move selector lever to position **P** or **N** and then select a driving gear.

## WARNING

Selecting an incorrect selector lever position could cause you to lose control of the vehicle, potentially leading to an accident and serious injuries.

- Never depress the accelerator pedal when selecting a gear.
- When the engine is running, the vehicle starts moving as soon as a gear is engaged and the clutch pedal is released.

Never select the reverse gear or the parking lock while the vehicle is in motion.

- never select the reverse gear or the parking lock while the vehicle is in motion.

## **!** WARNING

Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injury.

- The driver must never leave the driver seat if the engine is running and a gear has been selected. If you have to leave the vehicle while the engine is running, always switch on the electronic parking brake and move the selector lever to position P.
- If the engine is running and the selector lever is in position D, S or R, the vehicle must be held on the foot brake. The vehicle will creep forward as the power transmission is not fully interrupted even when the engine is idling.
- Never select positions R or P when the vehicle is in motion.
- Never leave the vehicle in driving mode N. The vehicle will roll downhill irrespective of whether the engine is running or not.

## **!** NOTICE

If the electronic parking brake is not switched on when the vehicle is stationary and the brake pedal is released when the selector lever is in position P, the vehicle may move a few centimetres forwards or backwards.

- i** If the lever is moved accidentally to N when driving, take your foot off the accelerator. Wait for the engine revs in the neutral position before selecting a driving gear again.

## Changing gear using Tiptronic

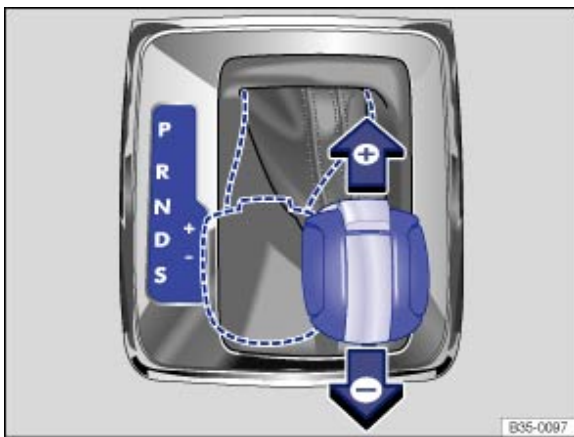


Fig. 144 Selector lever in Tiptronic position (left-hand drive). The controls are mirrored for right-hand drive vehicles





**Fig. 145** Steering wheel with 2 paddles for Tiptronic

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → [Introduction](#)

Using Tiptronic, the gears can be shifted up and down manually in an automatic gearbox. The gear that is currently selected will be maintained when the Tiptronic programme is selected. This is the case if the system is not carrying out a change of gear due to the current driving situation.

### Operating Tiptronic with the selector lever

- Push the selector lever from position **D** to the right into the Tiptronic gate → .
- Gently push the selector lever forwards ⊕ or to the rear ⊖ to shift gear up or down → [Fig. 144](#).

### Operating Tiptronic with the paddles

- With driving programme **D**, **S** selected or in the Tiptronic gate, use the paddles on the steering wheel → [Fig. 145](#).
- Pull the right paddle **+ OFF** towards the steering wheel to change up a gear.
- Pull the left paddle **-** towards the steering wheel to change down a gear.
- To close Tiptronic, pull the right-hand paddle **+ OFF** for approximately one second towards the steering wheel.

Tiptronic is automatically deactivated if the selector paddles are not operated for some time and the selector lever is not in the Tiptronic gate.

### NOTICE

- **When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up to the next gear shortly before the maximum permitted engine speed is reached.**
- **When shifting down a gear manually, the gearbox will not change gear until the engine can no longer be overrevved.**

## Driving with an automatic gearbox

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → [Introduction](#)

The gearbox changes the forward gears up and down automatically.

### Driving down hills

The steeper the gradient, the lower the gear you will need. Lower gears increase the braking effect of the engine. Never allow the vehicle to roll down mountains or hills in the neutral position **N**.

- Reduce your speed.
- Push the selector lever from position **D** to the right into the Tiptronic gate → [Changing gear using Tiptronic](#).
- Gently push the selector lever to the rear to change down gear.
- **OR:** shift gear down with paddles on the steering wheel → [Operating Tiptronic with the paddles](#).

### Stopping the vehicle and pulling away when driving uphill

The steeper the incline, the lower the gear you will need.

If you wish to stop the vehicle or pull away when driving uphill you should use the Auto-Hold function → [Pull-away assist systems](#).

When you stop the vehicle on an incline and the vehicle remains in gear, the vehicle must always be prevented from rolling by depressing the brake pedal or by applying the parking brake. The brake pedal or the electronic parking brake should not be released until you pull away → .

## Freewheel driving with dual clutch gearbox DSG®


In freewheel mode, the momentum of the vehicle is used to save fuel with a foresighted driving style. The engine is declutched and no longer brakes the vehicle – the vehicle can roll out over a longer distance.

Switch-on condition: the selector lever must be in position **D**.

### Triggering freewheel driving

- Remove foot from accelerator pedal. The engine will be disengaged and run in freewheel mode. The vehicle rolls without the braking effect of the engine.


### Cancelling freewheel mode

- Press the brake pedal briefly or pull the left-hand paddle  towards the steering wheel.

Freewheel can be switched on and off in Menu **settings** of the Volkswagen Information system → [Volkswagen information system](#) .

## Kick-down


The kick-down mechanism enables maximum acceleration in the selector lever position **D**, **S** or in the Tiptronic position.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed fully, the gearbox will automatically shift to a lower gear, depending on the speed and engine revs. This will make use of the full vehicle acceleration → .

The gearbox does not shift up to the next gear until the engine reaches the maximum engine speed for the gear.

## Launch Control Programme

The Launch Control Programme enables maximum acceleration from zero.

- Switch off TCS → [Braking, stopping and parking](#) .
- With the left foot, depress and hold the brake pedal.
- Move the selector lever to position **S** or to the Tiptronic position.
- With your right foot, depress the accelerator until the engines speed reaches approximately 3,200 rpm.
- Take your left foot off the brake →  . The vehicle will start with maximum acceleration.
- Switch the TCS back on after acceleration.

## WARNING

**Rapid acceleration can cause loss of traction and skidding, particularly on slippery roads. This could cause you to lose control of the vehicle, which could lead to accidents and serious injuries.**

- **Always adjust your driving style in accordance with the flow of traffic.**
- **Only use kick-down or fast acceleration, if visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions allow for it and other road users are not put at risk due to the acceleration and the driving style.**
- **Please note that the driven wheels could start to spin and the vehicle could skid if the TCS is switched off and especially if the road is slippery.**
- **Switch the TCS back on after acceleration.**



## NOTICE

- If you stop the vehicle on an incline, do not attempt to stop it from rolling back by depressing the accelerator when a gear has been selected. The automatic gearbox could overheat and be damaged.
- Never allow the vehicle to roll in position N, particularly if the ignition is switched off. The automatic gearbox will not be lubricated and could be damaged.

## Fault in the function of the automatic gearbox



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)



### Emergency programme

There is a fault in the system if all the displays on the instrument cluster for the selector lever positions have a light background. The automatic gearbox is running in an emergency programme. The vehicle can still be driven in the emergency programme, but only at reduced speed and not in all gears.

With the dual clutch gearbox DSG® you will then, in some cases, **no longer be able to select the reverse gear**.

The automatic gearbox should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible in any case.

### Overheating of the dual clutch gearbox DSG®

The dual clutch gearbox can, for example, become too hot when the vehicle pulls off regularly, long periods of crawling speed or stop and go traffic. The overheating of the gearbox is indicated by the warning lamp  and possibly also by a text in the instrument cluster display. An acoustic warning tone may also be heard. Stop the vehicle and allow the gearbox to cool down → .

### The vehicle will not move forwards or backwards even though a gear has been selected

If the vehicle will not move in the desired direction, the system may have selected the gear incorrectly. Depress the brake pedal and reselect the gear.

If the vehicle still does not move in the desired direction, there is a system fault. Seek expert assistance and have the system checked.

## NOTICE

- If the display indicates that the gearbox is overheating for the first time, the vehicle will have to be parked safely or driven faster than 20 km/h (12 mph).
- If the text message and acoustic warning are repeated every 10 seconds the vehicle must be parked safely immediately and the engine switched off. Allow the gearbox to cool down.
- In order to prevent damage to the gearbox, you should not drive on until the acoustic warnings are no longer given. You should not pull away with the vehicle or drive at very low speeds for the period in which the gearbox is overheated.

## Gear-change indicator



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → [Introduction](#)

In some vehicles, the instrument cluster will show which gear should be selected while the vehicle is in motion to reduce fuel consumption.

Display	Meaning
	Current gear is optimal.
	A higher gear is recommended.
	A lower gear is recommended.

### Information on cleaning the diesel particulate filter

The exhaust system management recognises a diesel particulate filter which is filling up and aids the self-cleaning process of the diesel particulate filter by recommending the most suitable gear when driving. This may mean driving with increased engine speed in exceptional cases → [Engine management system and exhaust purification system](#) .

## CAUTION

The gear-change indicator is only designed to assist the driver and cannot replace the driver's own judgement.

- The driver has full responsibility for selecting the correct gear in all situations (e.g. when overtaking, driving up and down hills and when towing a trailer).



Driving in the correct gear can reduce fuel consumption.



The display on the gear-change indicator will disappear when the clutch pedal is depressed.

## Braking, stopping and parking

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)
- [Electronic parking brake](#)
- [Parking](#)
- [Information on the brakes](#)
- [Brake assist systems](#)
- [Switching the TCS on and off](#)
- [Brake fluid](#)

The **brake assist systems** are the anti-lock brake system (ABS), the brake assist system (BAS), the electronic differential lock (EDS), the traction control system (TCS) and the electronic stabilisation programme (ESP).


### Additional information and warnings:

- Towing a trailer → [Towing a trailer](#)
- Pull-away assist systems → [Pull-away assist systems](#)
- Wheels and tyres → [Wheels and tyres](#)
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → [Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)

## WARNING

Driving with worn brake pads or with a faulty brake system can cause accidents and serious injuries.

Driving with worn brake pads or with a faulty brake system can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- If  lights up either alone or together with a text message in the display of the instrument cluster, go to a qualified workshop immediately and have the brake pads checked and have worn brake pads replaced.

## WARNING

Incorrect parking can cause serious injuries.

- Never remove the vehicle key from the ignition if the vehicle is in motion. The steering column lock may be activated and it may no longer be possible to steer or control the vehicle.
- Never park the vehicle so that parts of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. leaves, dry grass, spilt fuel.
- Always switch on the electronic parking brake when the vehicle is parked.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could release the electronic parking brake, move the selector lever or gearshift lever and thus set the vehicle in motion. This could lead to accidents and serious injuries.
- Always take all vehicle keys with you each time you leave the vehicle. The engine can be started and electrical equipment such as the window controls can be used which could cause serious injury.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the car in an emergency and will not be able to get themselves to safety. Depending on the time of year, for example, a locked vehicle can be subjected to very high or very low temperatures. This could cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially for small children.










## NOTICE















- Always take care when driving in car parks with protruding pavement elements or bollards, for example. These objects which protrude from the ground surface can damage the bumper and other vehicle components when you are parking your vehicle. In order to avoid any damage, stop the vehicle before the wheels can touch the bollard or pavement.
- Drive carefully over driveways, ramps, kerbstones and other objects. Low-lying vehicle components such as the bumper, spoiler and parts of the running gear, engine or exhaust system could be damaged.

## Warning lamps and indicator lamps



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Lit up	Possible cause → 	Correction
	Switch on the electronic parking brake.	–
Lit up	Possible cause → 	Correction
	Brake system fault.	 <b>Do not drive on!</b> Seek expert assistance immediately → <a href="#">Fault in the brake system</a> .
	Brake fluid level is too low.	 <b>Do not drive on!</b> Check brake fluid level → <a href="#">Brake fluid level</a> .
	Together with ABS indicator lamp  : ABS not functioning.	Go to a qualified workshop. The vehicle can be braked without ABS.
	Brake pedal not depressed!	Fully depress the brake pedal.
	Brake pads worn.	Go to a qualified workshop immediately. <b>All</b> brake pads should be checked and renewed as necessary.
	Lit up: ESP fault or switched off for system-related reasons.	Switch the ignition on and off. If necessary, drive a short distance.
	<b>OR:</b> flashing quickly: ESP or ASR is taking corrective action.	Go to a qualified workshop.

	Together with ABS indicator lamp  : ABS fault.	Go to a qualified workshop. The vehicle can be braked without ABS.
	Vehicle battery has been reconnected.	Drive a short distance at a speed of 15 – 20 km/h (10 – 12 mph). If the indicator lamp remains lit up, the vehicle should be checked by a qualified workshop → <i>Vehicle battery</i> .
	TCS switched off manually.	Switch on TCS → <i>Switching the TCS on and off</i> . Switch on TCS automatically by switching the ignition off and on.
	In conjunction with ESP indicator lamp  : ABS faulty.	Go to a qualified workshop. The vehicle can be braked without ABS.
	Together with warning lamp  or  : ABS not functioning.	
	Together with flashing warning lamp  : electronic parking brake faulty.	Go to a qualified workshop.
	Brake pedal not depressed.	To select a gear, press the brake pedal.
		Depress the brake pedal to release the electronic parking brake → <i>Electronic parking brake</i> .
<b>Flashes</b>	<b>Possible cause</b> → 	<b>Correction</b>
	Fault in electronic parking brake. At the same time, the indicator lamp  may light up.	Go to a qualified workshop as it may not be possible to park the vehicle safely.
	Quickly: ESP/TCS is taking corrective action.	Remove foot from accelerator pedal. Adapt driving style to suit road conditions.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.


## WARNING

Failure to observe the illuminated warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore warning lamps and text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

## WARNING

Driving with poor brakes can result in accidents and serious injuries.

- If the brake warning lamp  does not go out, or if it lights up when driving, the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low or there is a fault in the brake system. Stop the vehicle immediately and seek expert assistance → *Brake fluid* .

- If the brake warning lamp (ⓘ) lights up together with the ABS indicator lamp (ABS), the control function of the ABS may have failed. This could cause the rear wheels to lock quickly when you brake. Locked rear wheels can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle. If possible, reduce your speed and drive carefully at low speed to the next qualified workshop in order to have the brake system tested. Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres on the way.
- The ABS is not functioning correctly if the ABS indicator lamp (ABS) does not go out or comes on while the vehicle is in motion. The vehicle can be stopped using the normal brakes only (without ABS). The protection provided by ABS is no longer available. Go to a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
- If ⓘ lights up either individually or together with a text message in the display of the instrument cluster, go to a qualified workshop immediately and have the brake pads checked or have worn brake pads replaced.

## ! NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Electronic parking brake



Fig. 146 In lower part of centre console: button for the electronic parking brake

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

### Switching on the electronic parking brake

The electronic parking brake can be switched on at any time when the vehicle is stationary, even when the ignition is switched off. You should always switch on the parking brake when leaving or parking the vehicle.

- Pull and hold button → [Fig. 146](#).
- The parking brake is switched on when indicator lamps (P) in the button and in the instrument cluster light up → [Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#).
- Release the button.

### Switching off the electronic parking brake


- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the → [Fig. 146](#) button. At the same time depress the brake pedal with some force or depress the accelerator pedal slightly when the engine is running.
- The parking brake is switched off when indicator lamps (P) in the button and in the instrument cluster disappear → [Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#).

### Automatic switch-off for the electronic parking brake when driving off

When the vehicle is driven off the electronic parking brake is automatically released, providing the driver door is closed **and** the driver is wearing a seat

belt. If you have a **manual gearbox**, you must also depress the clutch fully before pulling off so that the system realises that you wish to switch off the parking brake.

## Emergency braking function


The emergency braking function should only be used in those situations where the vehicle cannot be stopped using the foot brake →  !


- Pull and hold the button → *Fig. 146* to brake the vehicle **heavily**. An acoustic signal can be heard at the same time.
- To stop the braking procedure, release the button or depress the accelerator pedal.


### **WARNING**


The incorrect use of the electronic parking brake can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- The electronic parking brake should never be used to brake the vehicle, except in emergencies. The braking distance is considerably longer as only the rear wheels are braked. Always use the foot brake.
- Never activate the accelerator from the engine compartment if a gear has been selected and the engine is running. The vehicle could move, even if the electronic parking brake is applied.



 In vehicles with a manual gearbox: when the clutch pedal is released and the accelerator pedal depressed at the same time, the electronic parking brake will be released automatically.

 If the vehicle battery is flat it will not be possible to release the electronic parking brake. Use jump leads → *Starting the engine with jump leads* .

 Some noises may be heard when the electronic parking brake is switched on or off.

 If the electronic parking brake has not been used for a long period, the system will carry out occasional automatic and audible checks when the vehicle is parked.


## Parking

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

Please adhere to relevant legislation when stopping and parking your vehicle.

## Stopping the vehicle

The actions should be carried out in the given order only.

- Park the vehicle on a suitable surface →  .
- Depress and hold the brake pedal until the engine has stopped.
- Switch on the electronic parking brake → *Electronic parking brake* .
- With an automatic gearbox, move the selector lever to position **P**.
- Switch the engine off and take your foot off the brake pedal.
- Remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock.
- Turn the steering wheel slightly if necessary to engage the steering column lock mechanism.
- With a manual gearbox, select 1st gear for flat ground and uphill inclines, or reverse gear for downhill inclines, and then release the clutch.
- Please ensure that all occupants, children in particular, leave the vehicle.
- Take all vehicle keys with you when you leave the vehicle.
- Lock the vehicle.

## Additional points for inclines and gradients

Before switching the engine off, turn the steering wheel so that the parked vehicle would roll against the kerb with its front wheels if it did start to roll.

- When facing downhill, turn the wheels so that they face the kerb.
- When facing uphill, turn the wheels so that they face the centre of the road.

### WARNING

The components of the exhaust system become very hot. This could lead to fires and serious injuries.

- **Never park the vehicle so that parts of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. leaves, dry grass, spilt fuel.**


### NOTICE

- **Always take care when driving in car parks with protruding pavement elements or bollards, for example. These objects which protrude from the ground surface can damage the bumper and other vehicle components when you are parking your vehicle. In order to avoid any damage, stop the vehicle before the wheels can touch the bollard or pavement.**
- **Drive carefully over driveways, ramps, kerbstones and other objects. Low-lying vehicle components such as the bumper, spoiler and parts of the running gear, engine or exhaust system could be damaged.**


## Information on the brakes





First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

**New brake pads** cannot generate the full braking effect during the first 200 to 300 km and must first be run in → . The slightly reduced brake pressure can however be compensated for by increasing pressure on the brake pedal. **During the run-in period, the braking distance is longer when the brakes are depressed fully or during emergency braking** than with used brakes. In the run-in period, the brakes should not be depressed fully and situations should be avoided that create a heavy load on the brakes. For example, when driving up close to the vehicle ahead.


The **rate of wear** of the brake pads depends to a great extent on the conditions under which the vehicle is operated and the way the vehicle is driven. With regular town and short journeys as well as a sporty driving style, the brake pads must be checked by a qualified workshop more regularly than is stated in the service schedule.

If you drive with **wet brakes**, for example after driving through water, after heavy rainfall or after washing the vehicle, the braking effect may be reduced as the brake discs will be wet, or possibly frozen (in winter). The brakes must be dried as quickly as possible by careful braking at higher speed. Please ensure that no following vehicle and no other road user is put at risk as a result of this action → .

A **layer of salt that accumulates on the discs and pads** will reduce the braking effect and increase the braking distance. If the vehicle has not been braked for a long time on roads which have been gritted with salt, the layer of salt must be reduced through careful braking → .


**Corrosion** on the brake discs and **dirt** in the brake pads are facilitated through long periods of inactivity, low mileage and low load levels. With inactivity or low use levels for the brake pads as well as corrosion, Volkswagen recommends that the brake discs and brake pads be cleaned by braking strongly several times from high speed. Please ensure that no following vehicle and no other road user is put at risk as a result of this action → .

## Fault in the brake system

A brake circuit may have failed if you have to reduce speed and the vehicle does not brake as normal (sudden increase in braking distance). This will be indicated by the warning lamp  and a text message as required. Go to a qualified workshop immediately to have the fault corrected. Drive at low speed when doing this and anticipate longer braking distances and an increase in the required pressure for the pedal.

**BRAKE SERVO**

The brake servo will only function when the engine is running and reinforces the pressure applied by the driver on the brake pedal.

If the brake servo does not function or the vehicle is being towed, the brake pedal will have to be depressed more forcefully as the braking distance will be increased due to the lack of assistance for the brake system → .

** WARNING**

New brake pads will not have the optimal braking effect when first fitted.

- New brake pads cannot generate the full braking effect during the first 320 km and must first be run in. A reduced braking effect can be increased by applying more pressure to the brake pedal.
- In order to reduce the risk of accidents, serious injuries and the loss of control over the vehicle, you must drive particularly carefully when driving with new brake pads.
- Never drive too close to other vehicles during the run-in time for the new brake pads and never create a driving situation that will place a heavy load on the brakes.

** WARNING**

Overheated brakes reduce the braking effect and considerably increase the braking distance.

- When driving downhill the brakes are placed under particular strain and become hot very quickly.
- Before driving down a long, steep gradient, reduce speed and change to a lower gear or move the selector lever to a lower gear position. This will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes.
- Non-standard or damaged front spoilers could restrict the airflow to the brakes and cause them to overheat.

** WARNING**

Wet brakes or brakes coated with ice or road salt react slower and need longer braking distances.

- Carefully apply the brakes to test them.
- Always dry brakes and clean off any coating of ice and salt with a few cautious applications of the brake when visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit.

** WARNING**


Driving without the brake servo can considerably increase the braking distance and thus cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never allow the vehicle to roll if the engine is switched off.
- If the brake servo does not function or the vehicle is being towed, the brake pedal will have to be depressed more forcefully as the braking distance will be increased due to the lack of assistance for the brake system.

** NOTICE**

- Never let the brakes rub by applying light pressure when it is not necessary. Continual pressure on the brake pedal will cause the brakes to overheat. This will considerably reduce the brake effect, increase the braking distance and could cause the brake system to fail completely.
- Before driving down a long, steep gradient, reduce speed and change to a lower gear or move the selector lever to a lower gear position. This will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes. The brakes could otherwise overheat and possibly fail. The brakes should only be used to slow the vehicle down or to stop it.



 If the front brake pads are tested, the rear brake pads should be tested at the same time. A visual check of the thickness of all brake pads should be carried out regularly by checking the brake pads through the openings in the rim or from the underside of the vehicle. If necessary, remove the wheels to carry out a comprehensive check. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## Brake assist systems



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

The brake assist systems ESP, ABS, BAS, TCS and EDL will only function when the engine is running. They make a considerable contribution to active driving safety.

### Electronic stabilisation programme (ESP)

The ESP helps to reduce the risk of skidding and to improve driving stability by braking individual wheels in certain driving situations. Critical driving situations, such as over or understeering of the vehicle or wheel spin, are recognised by the ESP. Through targeted braking or by a reduction of the engine torque, the system supports the stabilisation process for the vehicle.

ESP has its limitations. It is important to realise that ESP cannot overcome the laws of physics. ESP will not be able to assist in every situation that the driver is confronted with. For example, ESP will not be able to assist every time that there is a sudden change in the road surface quality. If a section of the dry road is suddenly covered with water, mud or snow, ESP will not be able to assist in the same manner as on a dry road. If the vehicle aquaplanes (drives on a film of water rather than on the road surface), ESP will not be able to assist in steering the vehicle as the contact to the road surface has been interrupted and the vehicle can consequently no longer be steered or braked. When driving at speed through bends, particularly on stretches of road with many bends, the ESP will not always be able to process complicated driving situations as effectively as at lower speeds.

Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. ESP cannot defy the laws of motion, improve the power output available, or keep the vehicle on the road if undue care and attention on the part of the driver causes the vehicle to leave the road. Instead, ESP improves the possibility of regaining control of the vehicle and, in extreme driving situations on the road, it helps make the vehicle continue in the desired direction by utilising the driver's steering. If the vehicle is driving at a speed that takes the vehicle off the road before the ESP can provide any kind of support, the ESP will not be able to assist in any way.

The systems ABS, BAS, TCS and EDL are integrated in the ESP. The ESP is always switched on. In certain situations when the traction achieved is not sufficient, TCS can be switched off by pressing the ASR (TCS) button → [Fig. 147](#). Always ensure that ASR (TCS) is switched back on again once traction is sufficient.

### Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

The ABS prevents the wheels from locking when the brakes are applied up until the point where the vehicle is nearly stationary and assists the driver in steering the vehicle and keeping it under control. This means that the vehicle is less likely to spin, even when the brakes are depressed fully:

- Depress and hold the brake pedal with force. Do not take your foot off the brake pedal or reduce the force on the brake pedal!
- Do not pump the brake pedal or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal!
- Steer the vehicle while the brake pedal is fully depressed.
- The ABS will switch off when the brake pedal is released or if the pressure on the brake pedal is reduced.

If the ABS is taking corrective action, you will be aware of a **pulsing movement in the brake pedal** and some noise. However, ABS will not necessarily guarantee shorter braking distances in *all* conditions. The braking distance could even be longer if you brake on gravel or on fresh snow covering an icy or slippery surface.

### Brake assist system (BAS)

The brake assist system can help to reduce the braking distance. The brake assist system reinforces brake pressure when the driver depresses the brake pedal quickly in an emergency situation. As a result, full braking power is made accessible very quickly, brake pressure is increased and the braking distance reduced. In this way, the ABS is activated more quickly and more effectively.

**Do not** reduce the pressure on the brake pedal! The brake assist system will switch off the brake servo automatically when the brake pedal is released or if the pressure on the brake pedal is reduced.

If the pressure on the brake pedal is reduced.

## Traction Control System (TCS)

The TCS reduces the engine output if wheel spin occurs and adapts the output to suit road surface conditions. TCS helps the car to start moving, accelerate and climb gradients in unfavourable road conditions.

The TCS can be switched on and off manually → *Switching the TCS on and off* .

## Electronic differential lock (EDL and XDL)

The EDL is available for normal driving on straight roads. EDL brakes the wheel which has lost traction and distributes the driving force to the other drive wheels. To prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating, the EDL cuts out automatically if subjected to excessive loads. The EDL will switch on again automatically when the brake has cooled down.

The XDL function is an extension of the electronic differential lock. The XDL does not respond to traction control, but rather to the reduction of load on the inside front wheel when driving through a bend at high speed. XDL will apply the brake on the inside front wheel to prevent it from losing traction. This will improve traction, helping the vehicle to remain in the required lane longer.

### WARNING


**Driving fast on icy, slippery or wet roads can lead to a loss of control over the vehicle and could cause serious injury to the driver and passengers.**


- **Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety afforded by the brake assist systems ABS, BAS, EDL, ASR and ESP tempt you into taking any risks when driving.**
- **The brake assist systems cannot defy the laws of motion. Slippery and wet roads will remain dangerous even with ESP and the other systems.**
- **Driving too fast on wet roads can cause the wheels to lose contact with the road surface and aquaplane. A vehicle cannot be braked, steered or controlled once it has lost contact with the road surface.**
- **Brake assist systems cannot prevent an accident if, for example, you are driving too close to the vehicle in front or are driving too fast for the individual situation.**
- **Although the brake assist systems are very effective and can help to control the vehicle in difficult driving situations, please always remember that the driving stability of the vehicle depends on the tyre grip.**
- **When accelerating on a slippery surface, for example on ice and snow, press the accelerator carefully. The wheels can spin even with active brake assist systems and this can lead to a loss of control over the vehicle.**


## WARNING

The effectiveness of ESP can be reduced considerably if other components and systems which affect driving dynamics are not serviced properly or are not functioning properly. This also applies, but not exclusively, to the brakes, tyres and other systems that have already been named.

- Please always note that modifications and changes to the vehicle can affect the function of the ABS, BAS, TCS, EDL and ESP.
- Alterations to the suspension system or the use of non-approved wheel and tyre combinations can affect the function of ABS, BAS, TCS, EDL and ESP and reduce their effectiveness.
- The proper effectiveness of ESP is also based on suitable tyres → *Wheels and tyres* .

 The ESP or the TCS can only function properly if all 4 wheels have the same tyres. Any differences in the rolling radius of the tyres can cause the system to reduce engine power unexpectedly.

 If the ABS fails, the ESP, TCS and EDL will also cease to function.

 Operating noises may be heard during the regulatory procedures of the systems named above.

## Switching the TCS on and off

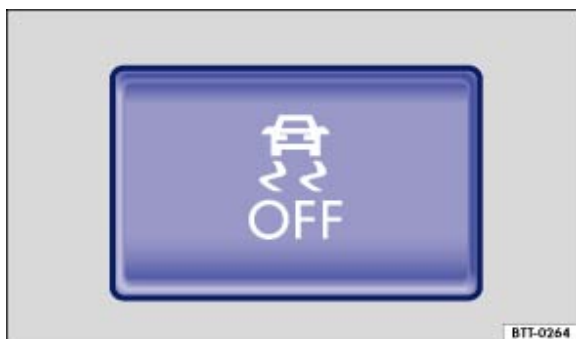




Fig. 147 In the centre console: button for switching the TCS on and off manually

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  *Introduction*

The electronic stabilisation programme (ESP) will function only if the engine is running. It consists of ABS, EDL and TCS.

When the engine is running, the TCS can be switched off by pressing the button  → Fig. 147 . The TCS should only be switched off in certain situations when the traction achieved is not sufficient. For example:

- When driving in deep snow or on loose surfaces.
- When rocking the car backwards and forwards to free it from mud.

Then press the  button to switch the TCS back on.

## Brake fluid






Fig. 148 In the engine compartment: cap of the brake fluid container (variant 1)




Fig. 149 In the engine compartment: cap of the brake fluid container (variant 2)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Brake fluid will gradually absorb water from the surrounding air. The brake system will be damaged if there is too much water in the brake fluid. The boiling point of the brake fluid is also considerably reduced by the water content. Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock in the brake system if the brake fluid or if the water content is too high. Vapour locks reduce levels of braking power, considerably increase braking distance and can even cause the brake system to fail completely. Your own safety and that of other road users is determined by a brake system that functions properly at all times → 


## Brake fluid specification

Volkswagen has developed brake fluid that is optimal for the brake system in your vehicle. To ensure the brake system works optimally, Volkswagen recommends the use of brake fluid compliant with **VW standard 501 14**. If this brake fluid is not available or another brake fluid is used for different reasons, a brake fluid may be used that is compliant with the US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4 or DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 → .

Brake fluid that is compliant with VW standard 501 14 fulfils the requirements of the US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4 and DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4. This does not mean however that a brake fluid that is compliant with US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4 or DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 will automatically conform to the requirements of the VW standard 501 14. Compare the information with the data on the packaging of the brake fluid and ensure that the correct brake fluid is always used for your vehicle.

Suitable brake fluid is available from a Volkswagen dealership.

## Brake fluid level

The brake fluid level must always be between the MIN and MAX marking of the brake fluid container or above the MIN marking → .

The brake fluid level cannot be checked accurately in all models as engine components conceal the brake fluid container. If the brake fluid level cannot be read exactly, please go to a qualified workshop.

The brake fluid level drops slightly when the vehicle is being used as the brake pads wear and the brakes are automatically adjusted.

## Changing brake fluid

The brake fluid must be changed as described in the service schedule. The brake fluid should be changed by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose. Only brake fluid that conforms with the required specification should be refilled.

## WARNING

Brake failure or reduced braking effect can be caused by the brake fluid level being too low or by brake fluid that is too old or unsuitable.

- The brake system and brake fluid level must be checked regularly.
- The brake fluid change should be carried out regularly according to the service schedule.
- Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if the brake fluid is left in the system for too long. Vapour locks reduce levels of braking power, considerably increase braking distance and can cause the brake system to fail completely.
- Please ensure that the correct brake fluid is used. Only brake fluids that are compliant with VW standard 501 14 or FMVSS 116 DOT 4 or DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 should be used. Any other brake fluid can affect the brake function and reduce brake effectiveness. The brake fluid should not be used if the specification VW standard 501 14, FMVSS 116 DOT 4 or DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 is not on the brake fluid container.
- The refilled brake fluid must be new.

## WARNING

Brake fluid is toxic.

- In order to reduce the risk of poisoning, never use bottles or other containers to store brake fluid. These containers could encourage other people to drink out of them, even if they are labelled otherwise.
- Brake fluid must be stored in the original containers out of the reach of children.

## NOTICE

Brake fluid will damage the vehicle paint. Brake fluid must be wiped off the vehicle paint immediately.



Brake fluid can pollute the environment. Any spilt service fluids must be cleaned up and disposed of properly.

## Driving with respect for the environment

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *An economic driving style*
- *Driving in a fuel-efficient manner*

Fuel consumption, environmental impact and wear on the engine, brakes and tyres depend largely on 3 factors:

- Personal driving style.
- Conditions of use (weather, road surface).
- Technical conditions.

Depending on your personal driving style, a few simple measures can help save fuel by up to 25%.

## WARNING

Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

### An economic driving style



## Changing gear earlier

In principle, the highest gear is always the most economical gear. A rule of thumb for most vehicles: at a speed of 30 km/h (18 mph) drive in 3rd gear, at 40 km/h (25 mph) in 4th gear and at 50 km/h (30 mph) in 5th gear.

If the traffic and driving situation allows it, skipping gears when changing up a gear will also save fuel.

Do not drive gears to their upper limit. Use 1st gear only for pulling away then quickly change up to 2nd gear. Avoid using the kick-down function in vehicles with an automatic gearbox.

Vehicles with a gear display help to improve fuel economy by indicating the optimum time to change gear.

## Rolling to a stop

Taking your foot off the accelerator will interrupt the supply of fuel to the engine and decrease fuel consumption.

Therefore, in situations such as approaching a red traffic light, let the vehicle roll without applying the accelerator. Only press on the clutch pedal to disengage if the vehicle becomes too slow or if the stopping distance is longer. The engine will then run at idling speed.

In situations where the vehicle might be stationary for a long time, at a level crossing for example, switch off the engine. In vehicles with an active start/stop system, the engine will be switched off automatically when the vehicle is stationary.

## Thinking ahead when driving and driving with the flow of traffic

Applying the brake and accelerator too often will significantly increase fuel consumption. By thinking ahead when driving and by keeping a sufficient distance away from the vehicle in front, simply keeping your foot off the accelerator will stop the speed from fluctuating so much. This means that active braking and accelerating is not always necessary.

## Driving smoothly and evenly

Even more important than speed is smoothness: the more evenly you drive, the lower your fuel consumption will be.

When driving on a motorway, it is much more effective to drive at a constant moderate speed than to drive with constant acceleration and braking. As a rule, driving with a constant style will get you to your destination just as quickly.

The cruise control system will help you to maintain a constant driving style.

## Using additional equipment in moderation

It is always important to be comfortable in your vehicle, but it is also important to consider the environment.

Some equipment will increase fuel consumption when switched on (examples):

- The cooling function of the air conditioning system: if the air conditioning system is set to a very high or low temperature it will require a lot of energy, which is generated by the engine. Therefore the temperature setting in the vehicle should not vary too much from the outside temperature. It may be a good idea to air the vehicle before setting off and then to travel a short distance with the windows open. The air conditioning system should then be switched on once the windows have been closed. Keep the windows closed when driving at high speeds. Open windows increase fuel consumption.
- Switch the seat heating off as soon as it has served its purpose.
- Switch the windscreen and rear window heating off as soon as the windows have defogged and are clear of ice.
- Do not leave the auxiliary heater on when the vehicle is moving → [Auxiliary heater \(supplementary heating system\)](#) .

## Other factors which increase fuel consumption (examples):

- Fault in engine management.
- Driving in hilly regions

- Driving in hilly regions.
- Driving with a trailer.

## Driving in a fuel-efficient manner



Fig. 150 Fuel consumption in litres per 100 km at 2 different outside temperatures



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

By adopting an economical driving style and anticipating the traffic situation ahead, you can easily reduce fuel consumption by 10 to 15%.

A car uses most fuel when accelerating. If you think ahead when driving, you will need to brake less and thus accelerate less. Wherever possible, let the car roll slowly to a stop, for instance when you can see that the next traffic lights are red.

### Avoid short journeys

Directly after a cold start, the engine has a very high fuel consumption. The engine reaches its working temperature after a few kilometres, when fuel consumption will return to a normal level.

The engine and catalytic converter need to reach their proper **working temperature** in order to minimise fuel consumption and emissions. The **outside temperature** has a decisive influence.

The different rates of fuel consumption for the same distance at both +20°C (+68°F) and at -10°C (+14°F) are shown in → [Fig. 150](#).

Therefore, avoid making too many short journeys and car share whenever possible.

Under the same conditions, the vehicle will use more fuel in winter than in summer.

Not only is it illegal in some countries to warm up the cold engine by running it while the vehicle is stationary, it is also technically unnecessary and a waste of fuel.

### Adjust the tyre pressure

The correct tyre pressure reduces rolling resistance and therefore fuel consumption as well. Raising the tyre pressure only slightly (+ 0.2 bar / + 3 psi / 21 kPa) can also save fuel.

When purchasing new tyres, always make sure that the tyres have optimum rolling resistance.

### Use low viscosity engine oils

Fully synthetic low viscosity engine oils reduce fuel consumption. Low viscosity engine oils decrease frictional resistance in the engine and spread better and more quickly, especially for cold starts. They are especially effective in vehicles which make a lot of short journeys.

Always make sure that the engine oil level is correct and that you keep to the service intervals (oil change intervals).

When buying engine oil, always make sure it complies with engine oil norms and has been approved by Volkswagen.

## Avoid unnecessary loads

The lighter the vehicle, the more economical and environmentally-friendly it is. An extra weight of 100 kg can increase fuel consumption by up to 0.3 l/100km.

Remove all unnecessary items and loads from the vehicle.

## Remove any unnecessary body parts and accessories

The more aerodynamic a vehicle, the lower its fuel consumption. Fittings and accessories, such as roof carriers or bicycle carriers, make the vehicle less aerodynamic.

Therefore, remove any fittings and luggage carriers which are not being used, especially if you are going to be driving at high speeds.

# Steering

## Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)
- [Information on steering](#)

The power steering is not hydraulic. It is an electromechanical system. The advantage of this steering system is that no hydraulic hoses, hydraulic oil, pumps, filter or other parts are required. The electromechanical system reduces fuel consumption. A hydraulic system requires constant oil pressure in the system; an electromechanical steering system, however, needs energy only while steering.

The steering assistance provided by the electromechanical steering system automatically adjusts to the vehicle speed, steering wheel torque and steering wheel angle. The electromechanical steering functions only when the engine is running.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Starting and stopping the engine → [Starting and stopping the engine](#)
- Battery → [Vehicle battery](#)
- Tow starting and towing → [Tow starting and towing](#)

## WARNING






**If the power steering is not working, the steering wheel is difficult to turn, which makes it difficult to steer the vehicle.**

- **The power steering functions only when the engine is running.**
- **Never allow the vehicle to roll if the engine is switched off.**
- **Never remove the vehicle key from the ignition if the vehicle is in motion. The steering column lock may be activated and it will no longer be possible to steer the vehicle.**

## Warning lamps and indicator lamps

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)



Lit up	Possible cause	Correction
	Electromechanical steering not functioning.	The steering should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
	Electromechanical steering function reduced.	The steering should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible. If the yellow warning lamp remains off after the ignition has been restarted and you have driven a short distance, you <b>do not</b> need to consult a qualified workshop.
	The vehicle battery has been disconnected and re-connected.	Drive a short distance at a speed of 15 – 20 km/h (9 – 12 mph).
Flashes	Possible cause	Correction
	Fault in the steering column lock.	 <b>Do not drive on!</b> Seek expert assistance.
	Steering column is wound-up.	Turn steering wheel back and forth.
	Steering column is not unlocked/locked.	Take the vehicle key out of the ignition and switch the ignition back on again. Follow any messages on the instrument cluster display. <b>Do not continue your journey if</b> the steering column remains locked when the ignition is switched on. Seek expert assistance.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.

## WARNING

Failure to observe the illuminated warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore warning lamps and text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

## NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Information on steering



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The steering should be locked every time you leave the vehicle to make it more difficult for the vehicle to be stolen.

### Electronic steering column lock in vehicles without Keyless Access

The steering column is locked if the vehicle key is removed from the ignition lock when the vehicle is stationary. The electronic steering column lock does not engage if the vehicle remains in motion for more than approximately 10 seconds after the vehicle key is removed from the ignition lock.

## Electronic steering column lock in vehicles with Keyless Access

The steering column will be locked if the driver door is opened and the ignition is switched off. For this, the vehicle should be stationary and if necessary, the gear selector lever should be in position **P**.


If the ignition is not switched off until after the driver door is opened, the electronic steering column lock will be activated only when the vehicle is locked using the sensor in the door handle or the vehicle key.

## Electromechanical steering

The steering assistance provided by the electromechanical steering system automatically adjusts to the vehicle speed, steering wheel torque and steering wheel angle. The electromechanical steering functions only when the engine is running.

You will need considerably more strength than normal to steer the vehicle if the power steering is reduced or has failed completely.

## Counter power steering

The counter power steering function provides the driver with power steering in critical driving situations. Additional steering power helps the driver when counter steering → .

### WARNING

The counter power steering function, along with the ESP, provides the driver with assistance when steering in critical driving situations. The driver must steer the vehicle in any case. The vehicle is not steered with the counter power steering.

## Driver assist systems

### Pull-away assist systems

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Indicator lamps*
- *Auto Hold function*
- *Start/stop system*
- *Downhill driving assistant*

#### Additional information and warnings:

- Volkswagen information system → *Volkswagen information system*
- Braking, stopping and parking → *Braking, stopping and parking*
- Battery → *Vehicle battery*
- Wheels and tyres → *Wheels and tyres*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*
- Starting engine with jump leads → *Starting the engine with jump leads*

### WARNING

The intelligent technology of the pull-away assist systems cannot change the laws of physics. Never let the extra convenience afforded by pull-away assist systems tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.



- Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injury.
- The pull-away assist systems cannot replace the full concentration of the driver.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

- A pull-away assist system cannot hold the vehicle in all hill start situations or brake it sufficiently on all slopes going downhill (e.g. if the ground is slippery or icy).

## Indicator lamps



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Lit up	Possible cause	Correction
	The start/stop system switched the engine off.	→ <a href="#">Start/stop system</a>
	The start/stop system is not available.	Check whether all technical requirements have been fulfilled. Carry out all technical requirements as necessary → <a href="#">Start/stop system</a> .

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.

## WARNING

Failure to observe the illuminated warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore warning lamps and text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

## NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Auto Hold function



Fig. 151 In the centre console: button for Auto Hold



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → [Introduction](#)

The indicator lamp in the button lights up when the Auto Hold function is switched on.

When switched on, the Auto Hold function assists the driver in situations when the vehicle has to be held stationary frequently or for long periods while the engine is running - for example on slopes, when waiting at traffic lights and in stop-and-go traffic.

When switched on, the Auto Hold function automatically prevents the vehicle from rolling away without having to depress the foot brake.

The Auto Hold function holds the vehicle automatically as soon as the system detects that the vehicle is not moving. The brake pedal can be released.

The Auto Hold function will release the brake if the driver presses the accelerator pedal to pull away. The vehicle will start to move in accordance with the incline of the road.

If any of the conditions for the Auto Hold function change while the vehicle is stationary, the Auto Hold function will switch off automatically and the indicator lamp in the button will go out → [Fig. 151](#) . The electronic parking brake may switch on automatically to park the vehicle securely → .

### Requirements for holding the vehicle using the Auto Hold function:

- The driver door is closed.
- The driver is wearing a seat belt.
- The engine is running.

### Switching Auto Hold on and off manually

Press the **AUTO HOLD** button → . The indicator lamp in the button goes out when the Auto Hold function is switched off.

### Switching Auto Hold on and off automatically

If the Auto Hold function has been switched on using the **AUTO HOLD** button before switching the ignition off, the Auto Hold function switches on automatically when the ignition is switched on the next time. If the Auto Hold function had not been switched on, it does not get automatically switched on when the ignition is switched on.

### Auto Hold will switch on automatically if the following conditions are met:

**All points must be fulfilled simultaneously** → :

	Manual gearbox	Automatic gearbox
1.	The <b>stationary</b> vehicle is held in position on flat ground or on an incline with the footbrake.	
2.	The engine is running smoothly.	
	<b>The brake will be released when the clutch is engaged and the accelerator is simultaneously depressed.</b>	<b>The brake will be released when the accelerator is depressed.</b>

### Auto Hold will automatically deactivate if the following conditions are met:

	Manual gearbox	Automatic gearbox
1.	As soon as one of the conditions indicated on is no longer fulfilled.	
2.	If the engine is not running smoothly or there is an engine fault.	
3.	If the engine is switched off or stalls.	If the engine is switched off.
4.	If the accelerator is depressed when the clutch is simultaneously engaged.	If the accelerator is depressed.
		If just one of the tyres does not have solid contact to the ground, e.g. if

5.

If just one of the tyres does not have solid contact to the ground, e.g. if the vehicle is standing at an angle to the fall line.

## WARNING

The intelligent technology in the Auto Hold cannot change the laws of physics. Never let the extra convenience afforded by the Auto Hold function tempt you into taking risks when driving.

- Never leave the vehicle if the engine is running and the Auto Hold function is switched on.
- Auto Hold cannot hold the vehicle in all hill start situations or brake it sufficiently on all slopes going downhill, e.g. if the ground is slippery or icy.

## NOTICE

Before driving into a car wash, you should always switch off the Auto Hold function as damage could be caused if the electronic parking brake is switched on automatically.

## Start/stop system

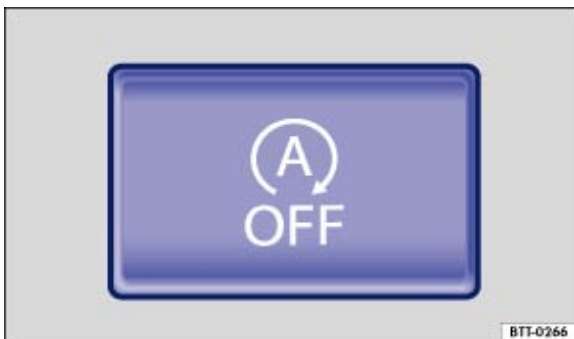


Fig. 152 In the centre console: button for start/stop system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The start/stop system automatically switches the engine off when the vehicle is stationary. When required, the engine restarts automatically.

The function is automatically activated every time the ignition is switched on. The instrument cluster display will show information about the current status.

When driving through water, always switch the start/stop system off manually.

### Vehicles with a manual gearbox

- When the vehicle is stationary, disengage the gear and release the clutch pedal. The engine is stopped.
- Depress the clutch pedal to restart the engine.

### Vehicles with an automatic gearbox

- When the vehicle is stationary, press and hold the brake pedal. The engine is stopped.
- To restart the engine, remove your foot from the brake pedal or depress the accelerator in selector lever position **P**.

### Important conditions for the engine to be switched off automatically

- The driver is wearing the seat belt.
- The driver door is closed.
- The bonnet is closed.
- The factory-fitted towing bracket is not attached electrically to a trailer.
- Engine minimum temperature has been reached.
- The vehicle has been moved since the last time the engine was switched off.
- *On vehicles with Climatronic:* the temperature inside the vehicle is within the pre-set temperature range.
- The windscreen heating is not switched on.
- *On vehicles with Climatronic:* Neither a very high nor a very low temperature has been set.
- The defrost function of the air conditioning system is not switched on.
- *On vehicles with Climatronic:* a high blower level has not been selected manually.
- The charging state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.
- The temperature of the vehicle battery is not too low or too high.
- The vehicle is not on a steep incline.
- The front wheels are not turned greatly.
- The reverse gear is not engaged.
- The Park Assist system is not active.

### Conditions for an automatic restart

The engine can start automatically under the following conditions:


- If the temperature inside the vehicle substantially increases or decreases.
- If the vehicle rolls on.
- If the voltage of the vehicle battery falls.


### Conditions that make a key start necessary

The engine has to be started manually with the vehicle key in the following conditions:

- If the driver unfastens the seat belt.
- If the driver door is opened.
- If the bonnet is opened.

### Switching the start/stop system on and off manually

- Press the  button in the centre console → *Fig. 152*.
- If start/stop system has been deactivated, the indicator lamp in the button lights up.

If the start/stop system has switched the engine off, the engine will start again as soon as the system has been switched off manually with the  button.



## WARNING


The brake servo and the electromechanical steering will not function if the engine is switched off.

- Never allow the vehicle to roll if the engine is switched off.


- If work is to be done in the engine compartment, the start/stop system must be switched off.


## NOTICE

Operation of the vehicle for a very long time at very high outside temperatures can lead to vehicle battery damage.

 In some cases, it will be necessary to restart the engine manually with the vehicle key. Follow any corresponding messages on the instrument cluster display.

## Downhill driving assistant

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The downhill driving assistant in vehicles with an automatic gearbox helps when braking and travelling downhill → . The downhill driving assistant uses the braking power of the engine.

The automatic gearbox selects the best gear for the circumstances by taking the steepness of the hill and the current speed into consideration. To do this the selector lever must be in position **D** or **S**. The downhill driving assistant is **not** active in Tiptronic mode.

As the downhill driving assistant can only shift down as far as the 3rd gear, it may be necessary to activate the Tiptronic mode when driving down particularly steep inclines. When in Tiptronic mode, select the 2nd or 1st gear manually in order to make use of the braking effect of the engine and to relieve the brakes.

### Activating the downhill driving assistant automatically:

- If the incline is greater than approximately 6%.
- **AND:** If the selector lever is in position **D** or **S**.
- **In addition, if the CCS or ACC is switched off:** if the vehicle speed is less than approximately 80 km/h (50 mph) or the brake pedal is depressed.
- **In addition if the CCS or ACC is active:** if the stored speed is exceeded.

### Deactivating the downhill driving assistant automatically:

- If the incline becomes less steep.
- **OR:** if the gearbox shifts up a gear because the engine speed is higher than approximately 4,500 rpm.
- **Or in addition if the CCS or ACC is active:** if the stored speed can be maintained.

## WARNING

Always be prepared to brake the vehicle. Accidents and injuries could occur if this is not the case.

- The downhill driving assistant is only a support function and may not be able to brake the vehicle sufficiently in all situations when driving downhill.
- The vehicle may become faster despite the downhill driving assistant.

## Parking distance warning system

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Parking distance warning system*
- *Optical parking system (OPS)*
- *Optical parking system (OPS) with all-round display*

The parking distance warning system assists the driver when manoeuvring and parking. An intermittent acoustic warning is given if the vehicle is approaching an obstacle to the front or rear. The shorter the distance, the shorter the intervals. The acoustic warning will sound continuously if the obstacle is very near.

If you continue to drive the vehicle closer to the obstacle despite the continuous acoustic warning, the system will no longer be able to measure the distance.

The sensors in the bumpers transmit and receive ultrasound waves. The electronic system uses the ultrasound waves (i.e. transmission, reflection from the obstacle and reception) to calculate the distance between the bumper and the obstacle.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views → [Exterior views](#)
- Braking, stopping and parking → [Braking, stopping and parking](#)
- Park Assist system → [Park Assist system](#)
- Cleaning and caring for the vehicle exterior → [Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior](#)
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → [Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)
- Radio or navigation system ⇒ Booklet [Radio](#), or ⇒ Booklet [Navigation system](#),

## WARNING

The parking distance warning system and the optical parking system are not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver.

- Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injury.
- Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Sensors have blind spots in which obstacles and people are not registered.
- Always monitor the area around the vehicle as small children, animals and objects will not always be detected by the sensors.
- Certain surfaces of objects and clothes cannot reflect the signals of the parking distance warning system sensors. These objects and persons wearing this type of clothing cannot be detected or only detected incorrectly by the parking distance warning system.
- External sound sources may affect the signals of the parking distance warning system. In certain circumstances, persons and objects may not be recognised by the system.


## NOTICE


- The sensors may not always be able to detect objects such as trailer drawbars, thin rails, fences, posts, trees and open or opening boot lids. This could result in damage to your vehicle.
- If the parking distance warning system detects an obstacle and you drive closer to the object, the object could move out of the detection range of the sensors. This applies mainly to very tall and very low objects. These objects are no longer registered. If you ignore the warning given by the parking distance warning system, your vehicle could suffer considerable damage.
- The sensors in the bumper can be shifted or damaged through impacts, e.g. when parking.
- The system sensors in the bumpers must be kept clean and free of ice and snow and not be covered up by stickers or other items as otherwise the system will not work properly.
- The sensors should only be sprayed briefly when cleaning with pressure hoses and steam cleaners. A distance of more than 10 cm between the sensors and the steam/hose nozzle must be observed.

Sources of noise could lead to errors in the parking distance warning system, e.g. rough road, cobblestones as well as interference



- Sources of noise could lead to errors in the parking distance warning system, e.g. rough asphalt, cobblestones as well as interference from other vehicles.

 Please contact a qualified workshop if there is a fault in the system. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

 Volkswagen recommends that drivers practise using the parking distance warning system in a traffic calmed area or car park to allow them to become familiar with the system and the functions in a safer environment.

## Parking distance warning system



Fig. 153 In the centre console: button for switching the parking distance warning system on and off





Fig. 154 Parking distance warning system sensors in the front bumper

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The sensors of the parking distance warning system are located in the front and also in the rear bumper → [Exterior views](#) . There are 4 sensors in each of the bumpers.

### Switching the parking distance warning system on and off manually

- With the ignition switched on, press the  button *once* → [Fig. 153](#) to switch on the parking distance warning system.
- With the ignition switched on, press the  button *again* to switch off the parking distance warning system.

The indicator lamp in the button is lit up while the function is active.


### Switching the parking distance warning system on and off automatically

- *Switch on:* select reverse gear.
- *Switching off:* drive faster than approximately 15 km/h (9 mph).

### Special features of the parking distance warning system

### Special features of the parking distance warning system

- The rear sensors of the parking distance warning system cannot be switched on if the factory-fitted towing bracket is electrically connected to the trailer.
- In certain circumstances, the parking distance warning system registers water on the sensors as an obstacle.
- The acoustic warning will become quieter after a few seconds if the distance remains the same. The volume will remain constant if the acoustic warning is continuous.
- As soon as the vehicle moves away from the obstacle again, the intermittent acoustic warning is switched off automatically. If the vehicle approaches the obstacle again, the acoustic warning is switched on automatically.
- No acoustic warning is given in vehicles with an automatic gearbox if the selector lever is in position **P**.
- A Volkswagen dealership can adjust the volume of the acoustic warnings.

 A fault in the parking distance warning system will be indicated via a short continuous tone when activated for the first time and by the indicator lamp flashing in the button. Switch the parking distance warning system off by pressing the button and have it checked as soon as possible by a qualified workshop.

### Optical parking system (OPS)

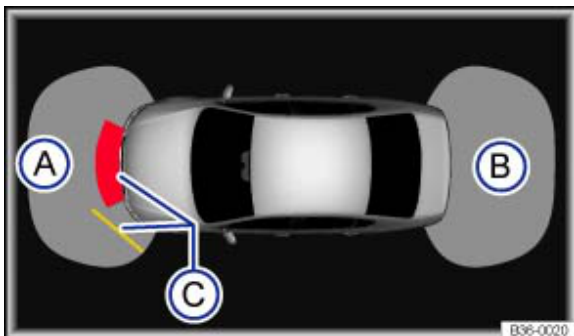


Fig. 155 OPS on-screen display (colour display)

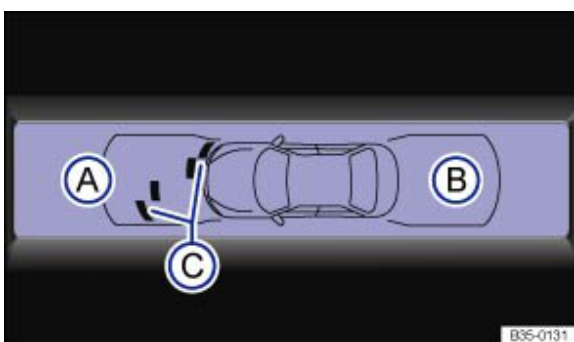




Fig. 156 OPS on-screen display (monochrome display)

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

- A** Scanned area in front of the vehicle.
- B** Monitored area behind the vehicle
- C** Obstacles detected in the scanned area in front of the vehicle.

The optical parking system is a supplement to the parking distance warning system → [Parking distance warning system](#) and the Park Assist system → [Park Assist system](#) .

The areas to the front and rear of the vehicle scanned by the sensors are shown in the display of the factory-fitted radio or navigation system. Potential obstacles are displayed in relation to the vehicle → .

Function	Action
Switching on the display:	Switch on parking distance warning system → <i>Parking distance warning system</i> or Park Assist system → <i>Park Assist system</i> . OPS is activated automatically.
Switching off the display manually:	Press a function selection button on the factory-fitted radio or radio-navigation system <b>OR:</b> press the function button  or <b>RVC</b> on the screen.
Switching the display off automatically:	Drive forwards faster than approx. 10 – 15 km/h (6 – 9 mph). Select the reverse gear in vehicles with Rear Assist → <i>Rear Assist system</i> . The display will select the camera picture.

## Scanned areas

The area in which obstacles can be detected is approx. 120 cm to the front of the vehicle → *Fig. 155 A* or → *Fig. 156 A* and approx. 60 cm to the side. The area directly behind the vehicle is scanned up to a distance of approximately 160 cm (152.40 cm) and 60 cm (60.96 cm) to the side → *Fig. 155 B* or → *Fig. 156 B*.

## Display


The graphic on the screen displays the scanned areas in several segments. The closer the vehicle drives towards an obstacle, the closer the segment will move to the vehicle in the display → *Fig. 155 C* or → *Fig. 156 C*. The collision area has been reached at the latest when the penultimate segment is displayed. **Do not drive on!**

Distance of vehicle from an obstacle	Acoustic signal	Segment colour if an obstacle has been detected (colour display only → <i>Fig. 155</i> )
Front: approx. <b>31 – 120 cm</b> Rear: approx. <b>31 – 160 cm</b>	Intermittent tone	yellow
Approx. <b>0 – 30 cm</b> front or rear <sup>a)</sup>	Constant tone	red

## Trailer towing

A status display is shown in vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket and a trailer connected via the vehicle electrics. The distance behind the vehicle will then no longer be shown.

## Muting the parking distance warning system


You can mute the acoustic warnings for the parking distance warning system by pressing the  function button on the screen (only in colour display → *Fig. 155*). Press the function button again to switch the acoustic warning back on.

The muting will be cancelled once the parking distance warning system is switched off and on again. Error warnings cannot be switched off.

If the OPS display has been switched off manually and the parking distance warning system remains active, the muting is also cancelled.

## WARNING

**Do not allow the images shown on the screen to distract you from the traffic around you.**

 It takes up to 5 seconds before the area being scanned by the sensors is displayed on the screen of the factory-fitted radio or navigation system.

<sup>a)</sup> The distance range for the constant tone is larger for vehicles with factory-fitted towing bracket

The distance range for the constant tone is larger for vehicles with factory-fitted towing bracket.

## Optical parking system (OPS) with all-round display

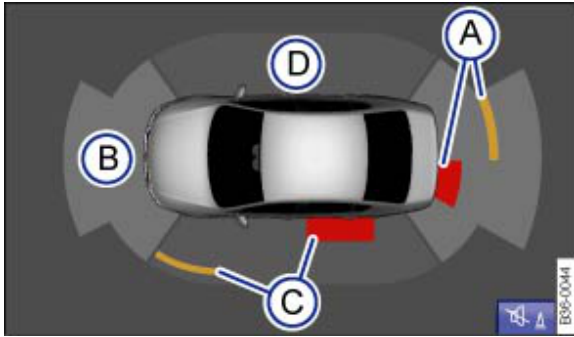


Fig. 157 OPS on-screen display (all-round display)

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → [Introduction](#)

- A** Obstacles detected in the scanned or calculated area behind the vehicle.
- B** Scanned or calculated area in front of the vehicle.
- C** Obstacles detected in the scanned or calculated area to the left of the vehicle.
- D** Scanned or calculated area to the right of the vehicle.

The optical parking system is an extension of the Park Assist system → [Park Assist system](#) .

In the factory-fitted radio or navigation system screen the area surrounding the vehicle is displayed.

The areas in front of and behind the vehicle are completely scanned by the vehicle.

The areas on the side of the vehicle will only be scanned partly by the sensors, the areas not scanned directly will be calculated by the system. For this reason, areas to the side of the vehicle will not appear until the vehicle has travelled a few metres.

Potential obstacles are displayed in relation to the vehicle → .



Function	Action
Switching on the display:	Select reverse gear <sup>a)</sup> <b>OR:</b> turn on Parking distance warning system → <a href="#">Parking distance warning system</a> or Park Assist system → <a href="#">Park Assist system</a> .
Switching off the display manually:	Press a function selection button on the factory-fitted radio or navigation system <b>OR:</b> press function button  .
Switching to rear assist camera picture:	Select reverse gear → <a href="#">Rear Assist system</a> <b>OR:</b> press function button <b>Options</b> or  .
Switching the display off automatically:	Drive forwards faster than approximately 10 to 15 km/h (6 to 9 mph).

### Scanned or calculated areas

The area in which obstacles are scanned or calculated is approx. 120 cm to the front of the vehicle and approx. 60cm to the side → [Fig. 157](#) .

### Screen display and acoustic signal

The graphic on the screen displays the scanned areas in several segments. The closer the vehicle drives towards an obstacle, the closer the segment will move to the vehicle in the display. [Fig. 157](#) or . The collision area has been reached at the latest when the penultimate segment is displayed. **Pa**

move to the vehicle in the display → [Fig. 157](#)  or . The collision area has been reached at the latest when the penultimate segment is displayed. **Do not drive on!**

Distance of vehicle from an obstacle	Acoustic signal	Segment colour when obstacle is detected → <a href="#">Fig. 157</a>
Front: approx. <b>31 – 120 cm</b> on the side: approx. <b>31 – 60 cm</b> rear: approx. <b>31 – 160 cm</b>	Intermittent tone	yellow
approx. <b>0 – 30 cm</b> around the vehicle	without risk of collision	red
	with risk of collision	


If there is an obstacle at a distance of approx. **0 – 30 cm** from the vehicle and the obstacle can be passed without any collisions, an intermittent acoustic warning is given. An acoustic warning will sound continuously if the vehicle is steered in the direction of the obstacle.

When there is a risk of collision in the front area of the vehicle (in front of the B pillars), the acoustic signals will be given by the front speaker. When there is a risk of collision in the rear area of the vehicle (behind the B pillars), the acoustic signals will be given by the rear speaker.

## Trailer towing

A status display is shown in vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket and a trailer connected via the vehicle electrics. The distance behind the vehicle will then no longer be shown.

## Muting the parking distance warning system


You can mute the acoustic signals from the parking distance warning system by pressing the  function button on the screen → [Fig. 157](#). Press the function button again to switch the acoustic signals back on.

The muting will be cancelled once the parking distance warning system is switched off and on again. Error warnings cannot be switched off.

If the OPS display has been switched off manually and the parking distance warning system remains active, the muting is also cancelled.

## WARNING

**Do not allow the images shown on the screen to distract you from the traffic around you.**

 It takes up to 5 seconds before the area being scanned by the sensors is displayed on the screen of the factory-fitted radio or navigation system.

<sup>a)</sup> When the reversing assistant system screen display is shown after reverse gear is selected, you can switch to optical reversing assistant system with function buttons **options** and **OPS**.


## Park Assist system

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Parking using the Park Assist system](#)
- [Driving out of a parking space with the Park Assist system \(only parking spaces parallel to side of road\)](#)
- [Brake assistance](#)

The Park Assist system helps the driver in finding suitable parking spaces, when parking in suitable parallel or perpendicular parking spaces and when getting out of parallel parking spaces.

The Park Assist system has certain system-related limitations and the driver should be particularly carefully when using the Park Assist system → .

One element of the Park Assist system is the parking distance warning system, which will help you in the parking process.

In vehicles with an optical parking system (OPS) the scanned area to the front, rear and to the sides of the vehicle will be shown on the screen of the radio or the navigation system. Within the scope permitted by the system, the position of obstacles will be shown in relation to the vehicle.

The Park Assist system cannot be switched on if the factory-fitted towing bracket is electrically connected to the trailer.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views → [Exterior views](#)
- Braking, stopping and parking → [Braking, stopping and parking](#)
- Parking distance warning → [Parking distance warning system](#)
- Cleaning and caring for the vehicle exterior → [Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior](#)
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → [Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)


## WARNING

Do not let the extra convenience afforded by the Park Assist system tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents. The system cannot replace the full concentration of the driver.

- Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injury.
- Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The surface of certain objects, including clothing, as well as external noise sources do not reflect the signals from the Park Assist system or the parking distance warning sensors or can cause the system to fail to detect objects or persons.
- Sensors have blind spots in which obstacles and people are not registered.
- Always monitor the area around the vehicle as small children, animals and objects will not always be detected by the sensors.

## NOTICE

- The Park Assist system orientates itself exclusively to parked vehicles and not to the kerb or other factors. Please ensure that the wheels and tyres are not damaged when parking the vehicle. If necessary, stop the parking procedure in good time to prevent damage to the vehicle.
- The sensors may not always be able to detect objects such as trailer drawbars, thin rails, fences, posts, trees and open or opening boot lids. This could result in damage to your vehicle.
- If the parking distance warning system detects an obstacle and you drive closer to the object, the object could move out of the detection range of the sensors. This applies mainly to very tall and very low objects. These objects are no longer registered. If you ignore the warning given by the parking distance warning system, your vehicle could suffer considerable damage. The same applies for the Park Assist system, for example when parking behind a lorry or a motorbike. Therefore, always check the space in front of and behind the vehicle and stop the vehicle in good time if necessary.
- The system sensors in the bumpers must be kept clean and free of ice and snow and not be covered up by stickers or other items as otherwise the system will not work properly.
- The sensors in the bumper can be shifted or damaged through impacts, e.g. when parking.
- The sensors should only be sprayed briefly when cleaning with pressure hoses and steam cleaners. A distance of more than 10 cm between the sensors and the steam/hose nozzle must be observed.

 Please contact a qualified workshop if there is a fault in the system. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## Parking using the Park Assist system



Fig. 158 In the centre console: button for switching on the Park Assist system manually

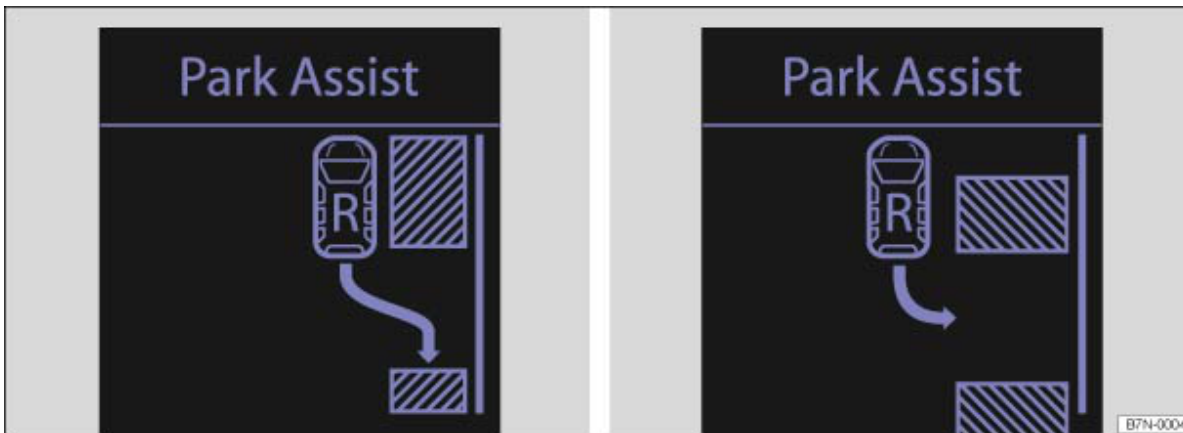





Fig. 159 Parking space detected: select the reverse gear for parking (perpendicular or parallel parking)


 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Preparations for parking

- The traction control system (TCS) must be switched on → [Braking, stopping and parking](#) .
- **For parking spaces parallel to the road:** push the  button **once** while travelling at a speed of less than approximately 50 km/h (30 mph). When the function is switched on, an indicator lamp lights up in the button → [Fig. 158](#) .
- **For parking spaces perpendicular to the road:** push the  button **twice** while travelling at a speed of less than approximately 50 km/h (30 mph). When the function is switched on, an indicator lamp lights up in the button → [Fig. 158](#) .
- Press the  button again to switch between the parking modes, if necessary.
- If the parking space is on the driver side, activate the turn signal. The corresponding side of the street is shown on the instrument cluster display.
- A parking space is regarded as suitable if it is at least 0.8 m longer than the vehicle.

### Parking

- **When parking parallel to the road:** drive past the parking space at a speed of no more than 40km/h (25 mph) **and** at a distance between approximately 0.5 m and 2 m from the parking space.
- **When parking perpendicular to the road:** drive past the parking space at a speed of no more than 20 km/h (12 mph) **and** at a distance between approximately 0.5 m and 2 m from the parking space.
- You will achieve the best parking results if you stop your vehicle as parallel as possible to the parked vehicles or the edge of the road.
- If a suitable parking space is indicated in the instrument cluster display, stop the vehicle and after a brief pause, select the reverse gear.

- If a suitable parking space is indicated in the instrument cluster display, stop the vehicle and after a brief pause, select the reverse gear.
- Follow the instructions in the instrument cluster display.
- Release the steering wheel when the following message is shown →  : **Steering intervent. active! Monitor the area around vehicle.**
- Check the area around the vehicle and carefully depress the accelerator pedal – do not exceed 7 km/h (4 mph).
- The Park Assist system will **only** operate the steering wheel during the parking procedure. **The driver operates the accelerator, clutch, gear shift and brake.**
- Follow the visual instructions and the acoustic warnings of the Park Assist system until the parking procedure has been completed.
- The Park Assist system will guide the vehicle when driving forwards and reversing until the vehicle is parked straight in the parking space.
- Wait until the steering has completed the steering procedure at the end of every parking movement in order to achieve an optimal parking result.
- A message is displayed on the instrument cluster once the parking procedure is completed and an acoustic signal tone may be heard.







### Automatic cancellation of the parking procedure

The Park Assist system will stop the parking procedure if the following happens:

- The vehicle speed when parking is higher than approx. 7 km/h (4 mph) → *Brake assistance* .
- The driver operates the steering wheel.
- The parking procedure was not completed within approximately 6 minutes of activating the automatic steering intervention.
- There is a system fault (system is temporarily unavailable).
- The TCS is switched off or the TCS or ESP starts to regulate.

### **WARNING**


**When parking using the Park Assist system the steering wheel will turn quickly automatically. You could be injured if you attempt to touch the steering wheel spokes.**

-  The Park Assist system has system-related limitations. The Park Assist system cannot, for example, help you park the vehicle in tight bends.
-  When parking parallel to the road, a warning signal can be heard to tell the driver to switch between driving forwards and reversing because the change of direction should not take place in the permanent tone area of the parking distance warning system.
-  The progress bar in the instrument cluster display will symbolically indicate the relative distance remaining.
-  If the Park Assist system turns the steering wheel when the vehicle is stationary, the  symbol appears as well. Depress the brake pedal so that the steering movement takes place with the vehicle stationary, keeping the required number of parking movements to a minimum.
-  If the parking result worsens after a wheel is changed, the system will first have to synchronise itself with the new wheel scope. The synchronisation procedure is carried out automatically while the vehicle is in motion. You can support this process by driving slowly (less than 20 km/h (12 mph)) through a bend, e.g. in an empty car park.


### Driving out of a parking space with the Park Assist system (only parking spaces parallel to side of road)

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

### Getting out of a parking space

- Start the engine.
- Press the  button. When the function is switched on, an indicator lamp lights up in the button → *Fig. 158* .
- Press the turn signal lever for the side of the street where the parking space is that you want to get out of.



- Select the reverse gear.
- Follow the instructions of the Park Assist system.
- Release the steering wheel when the following message is shown →  : **Steering intervent. active! Monitor the area around vehicle.**
- Check the area around the vehicle and carefully depress the accelerator pedal – do not exceed 7 km/h (4 mph).
- The Park Assist system will operate **only** the steering wheel while getting out of the parking space. **The driver operates the accelerator, clutch, gear shift and brake.**
- If it is possible to pull out of the parking space, the Park Assist system is ended automatically. Take over steering and, if the traffic situation allows it, pull out of the parking space.

### Automatic cancellation for getting out of a parking space

The Park Assist system will cancel the procedure of getting out of the parking space if one of the following happens:

- The vehicle speed when getting out of the parking space is higher than approx. 7 km/h (4 mph).
- The driver operates the steering wheel.
- There is a system fault (system is temporarily unavailable).
- The TCS is switched off or the TCS or ESP starts to regulate.


## WARNING

When getting out of a parking space using the Park Assist system, the steering wheel will turn quickly automatically. You could be injured if you attempt to touch the steering wheel spokes.

## Brake assistance



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)


The Park Assist system helps the driver by braking automatically. Automatic braking does not replace the driver's responsibility for the accelerator, brake and clutch → .

### Restricting speed to prevent cancellation due to excess speed

In order to prevent excess speed, braking intervention may occur. The parking procedure can be resumed. Braking intervention to restrict speed occurs once for each parking manoeuvre.

### Braking to minimise damage

Automatic braking intervention may occur when the vehicle is approaching an obstacle. The Park Assist system may bring the vehicle to a standstill before the obstacle under certain conditions, e.g. weather, ultrasound detection, conditions of the car, load or incline.

- Depress the brake pedal →  !

The Park Assist system is ended following braking intervention.

## WARNING

Do not let the extra convenience afforded by the Park Assist system tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents. The system cannot replace the full concentration of the driver.

- You should always be prepared to brake the vehicle yourself.
- Automatic braking assistance is ended after approximately 1.5 seconds. Brake the vehicle yourself following the automatic braking intervention.

## Rear Assist system

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [General information](#)
- [Parking at a right angle to the road \(mode 1\)](#)
- [Parking parallel to the road \(mode 2\)](#)

A camera in the boot lid helps the driver when reversing or manoeuvring the vehicle. The camera picture and the orientation lines projected by the system are displayed on the screen of the factory-fitted radio or navigation system.

There is a choice between 2 different orientation modes:

- **Mode 1:** reverse parking at a right angle to the road, e.g. in a car park.
- **Mode 2:** reverse parking parallel to the kerb.

The mode can be changed by pressing the function button on the screen of the radio or navigation system. Only the mode that you can switch to is displayed.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views → [Exterior views](#)
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → [Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)
- ⇒ BookletRadio , or ⇒ BookletNavigation system,



### WARNING

Using cameras to estimate the distance from obstacles (persons, vehicle etc.) is inaccurate and could cause accidents and severe injuries.

- The camera lens enlarges and distorts the field of vision and make objects appear different and inaccurate on the screen.
- Certain objects, for example narrow posts or grids, may be difficult or impossible to see on the screen because of its low resolution or poor light conditions.
- The camera has blind spots within which obstacles and people cannot be detected.
- Keep the camera lens clean, free of snow and ice and do not cover it.



### WARNING

The Rear Assist technology cannot overcome the laws of physics or system-related vehicle limitations. Always take care when using the Rear Assist system otherwise you could cause accidents or injuries. The system cannot replace the full concentration of the driver.

- Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Keep looking to check the direction in which you are parking and the relevant area around the vehicle. The screen shows the projected path of the rear of the vehicle as determined by the position of the steering wheel. The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle.
- Do not allow the images shown on the screen to distract you from the traffic around you.
- Always monitor the area around the vehicle as small children, animals and objects will not always be detected by the cameras.
- The system may not be able to display all areas clearly.
- The Rear Assist system should only be used when the boot lid is fully closed.

## ! NOTICE

- The camera will only show two-dimensional pictures on the screen. Recesses and protruding objects on the ground can be recognised only with difficulty or not at all due to the missing depth of field.
- The camera may not always be able to detect objects such as thin rails, fences, posts, trees etc. This could result in damage to your vehicle.

## General information

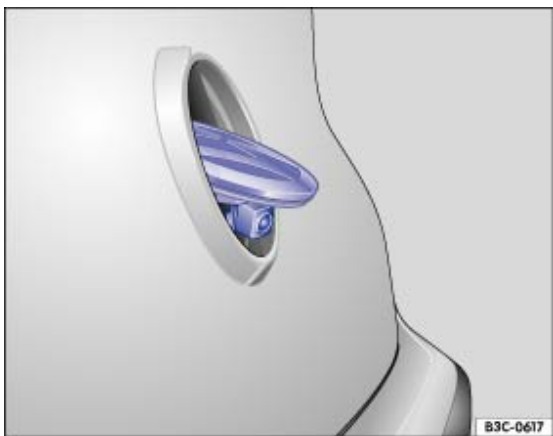


Fig. 160 In the boot lid: location of the reversing assistant camera

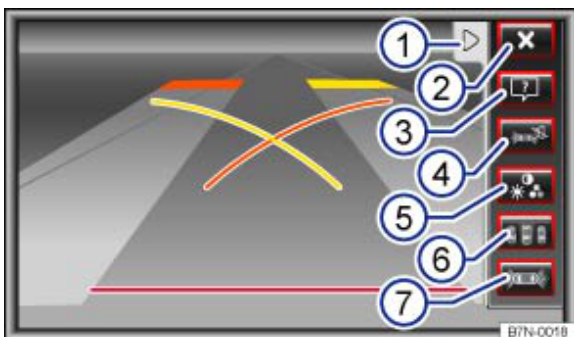





Fig. 161 Display for the Rear Assist system: mode 2 selected

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

Function buttons on the screen:

- 1 ◀ Show menu, ▶ Hide menu.
- 2 ✖ Switch off the reversing camera image.
- 3 Display help menu. The help overview provides an explanation of the areas and lines in the camera picture. Press  to leave help overview.
- 4 Switch off sound.
- 5 Setting display: brightness, contrast, colour.
- 6 Switch on orientation aid for reverse parking at a right angle to kerb (mode 1).

## 7 Display optical parking system.

Function	For vehicles without optical parking system (OPS)	or vehicles with optical parking system (OPS)
Switching on the display automatically:	Select the reverse gear with the ignition switched on or engine running. Mode 1 will be displayed.	
Switching off the display manually:	Press a function selection button on the radio or navigation system ⇒ Booklet <i>Radio</i> , or ⇒ Booklet <i>Navigation system</i> , .  OR: press the  function button on the screen.  OR: after switching off the ignition, the Rear Assist system picture is hidden after a brief time.	
Switching off the display by deselecting reverse gear:	The picture is switched off after approximately 10 seconds.	Press the  button.  The system immediately switches to OPS display.

Function	For vehicles without optical parking system (OPS)	or vehicles with optical parking system (OPS)
Switching off the display by driving forwards:	Drive forward faster than about 15 km/h (9 mph).	Drive forward faster than about 10 km/h (6 mph).

### Things to note

#### 1) The Rear Assist system should not be used in the following situations:

- If the self-levelling suspension or adaptive chassis control (DCC) is malfunctioning.
- If the reversing camera is not providing a clear image, e.g. if visibility is poor because the lens is dirty.
- If the space behind the vehicle cannot be seen clearly or completely.
- If the rear of the vehicle is heavily loaded.
- If the driver is not familiar with the system.
- When the boot lid is open.
- If the position or angle of the camera has changed, e.g. following a rear-end collision. The system should be checked by a qualified workshop.

#### 2) Optical deception by the camera (examples)



The Rear Assist rear-view camera supplies two-dimensional images only. Due to the lack of depth of field on the screen, potholes and dips in the ground, protruding parts on another vehicle or protruding objects on the ground may be difficult or impossible to see on the image.

Objects or other vehicles may appear closer or further away on the screen than they really are.

- If you drive from a level surface onto an upward or downward slope.
- If you drive from an upward or downward slope onto a level surface.
- If the rear of the vehicle is heavily loaded.
- When approaching protruding objects. Such objects can leave the camera's field of vision while you are reversing.

### Cleaning the camera lens

Keep the camera lens clean and free of ice and snow:

- Switch on ignition and select reverse gear.
- Moisten the lens with a commercially available alcohol-based glass cleaner and clean the lens with a dry cloth → .
- Remove snow with a brush.
- Remove any ice with a de-icer spray → .

## ! NOTICE

- Never use an abrasive cleaning product to clean the lens.
- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from the lens of the camera. The lens could otherwise be damaged.

**i** Volkswagen recommends that you practise parking with the rear assist system in a traffic calmed area or car park with good vision and weather conditions. In this way you can become familiar with the system and the orientation lines in a safer environment.

**i** No orientation lines are displayed on the screen when the boot lid is open or an electrically connected trailer is hitched to the factory-fitted towing bracket.

## Parking at a right angle to the road (mode 1)

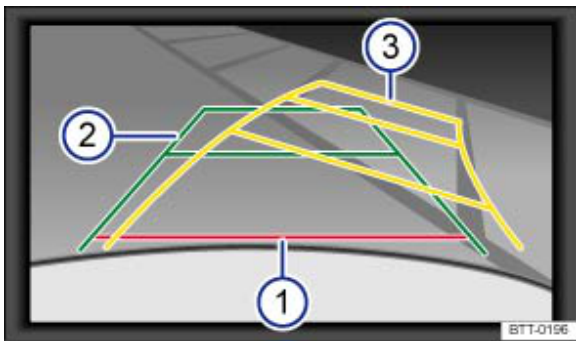


Fig. 162 On the screen: orientation lines for the parking space behind the vehicle

**📖** First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → **⚠️ Introduction**

### Overview of the orientation aid

Meaning of the orientation lines on the screen → Fig. 162. All distances of the orientation lines refer to a vehicle on a horizontal surface.

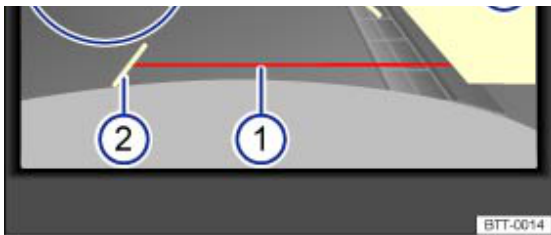
- 1** Red: safety distance: area up to about 40 cm on the pavement behind the vehicle.
- 2** Green: projection of the vehicle (widened somewhat) toward the rear. The displayed green area ends on the road around 2 metres behind the vehicle.
- 3** Yellow: rearward extension of the vehicle depending on steering wheel angle. The displayed yellow area ends on the road surface approximately 3 metres behind the vehicle.

### Parking

- Position the vehicle in front of a parking space and engage the reverse gear.
- Reverse slowly and steer the vehicle so that the yellow orientation lines lead into the parking space → Fig. 162 **③**.
- Position the vehicle so it is straight in the parking space using the green orientation lines as an aid.

## Parking parallel to the road (mode 2)





**Fig. 163** On the screen: orientation lines and surfaces for the parking space behind the vehicle

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

When the turn signal is switched on, the non-relevant lines and surfaces are switched off.

## Overview of the orientation aid

**Meaning of the orientation lines and surfaces on the screen** → [Fig. 163](#). All distances of the orientation lines refer to a vehicle on a horizontal surface.

- ① Safety distance: area up to about 40 cm on the road behind the vehicle.
- ② Vehicle's width limits.
- ③ Steering wheel turning point when parking. If the yellow line touches the kerb or any other parking limitation, the steering wheel must be turned in the opposite direction (close-up).
- ④ The free parking area required parallel to the vehicle for the parking procedure. The surface area displayed must therefore fit completely into the parking space.
- ⑤ Possibly a vehicle parked at the road side.

## Parking

- Position the vehicle approx. 1 m parallel to the parking space and select the reverse gear.
- Switch on mode 2 for parallel parking on the screen of the navigation system.
- Reverse slowly and guide the vehicle so that the yellow surface area shown on the screen stops before a potential obstacle → [Fig. 163 ⑤](#), e.g. another vehicle.
- Turn the steering wheel fully in the direction of the parking space and reverse slowly.
- Once the yellow line → [Fig. 163 ③](#) touches the side limit of the parking space, e.g. marking or kerb (close-up), turn the steering wheel fully in the opposite direction.
- Keep reversing the vehicle until the vehicle is positioned parallel to the road in the parking space. Correct your parking position as necessary.


## Cruise control system (CCS)

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Display and indicator lamp](#)
- [Operating cruise control system \(CCS\)](#)

The cruise control system (CCS) helps to maintain an individual set speed at forward speeds of approx. 20 km/h (12 mph) and above.

The CCS only slows the vehicle by easing off the accelerator, not by actively braking →  .

### Additional information and warnings:

- Changing gear → [Changing gear](#)
- ACC (adaptive cruise control) → [ACC \(adaptive cruise control\)](#)

- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → [Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)

## WARNING

Use of the cruise control system can lead to accidents and serious injuries if traffic does not allow you to drive at a safe distance at a constant speed.

- Never use the CCS in heavy traffic, on steep or winding roads, or on slippery road surfaces e.g. on snow, ice, wet roads on gravel or on flooded roads.
- Never use the CCS when driving off-road or on non-surfaced roads.
- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Always switch cruise control off after using it in order to avoid unintentional cruise control.
- It is dangerous to use a set speed which is too high for the prevailing road, traffic or weather conditions.
- When travelling down hills, the CCS cannot maintain a constant speed. The vehicle can accelerate under its own weight. Shift down gear or brake the vehicle using the foot brake.

## Display and indicator lamp



Fig. 164 Instrument cluster display: cruise control (CCS) status display

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Display


The stored speed is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Status → [Fig. 164](#):

- A** CCS switched off temporarily. Stored speed in small figures.
- B** System fault. Go to a qualified workshop.
- C** CCS switched on. Speed memory is empty.
- D** CCS is active. Stored speed in large figures.

CCS is active. Stored speed in large figures.

## Indicator lamp

Lit up	Possible cause
	Cruise control system (CCS) is controlling the speed.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.

## WARNING

Failure to observe the illuminated warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore warning lamps and text messages.

## NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Operating cruise control system (CCS)

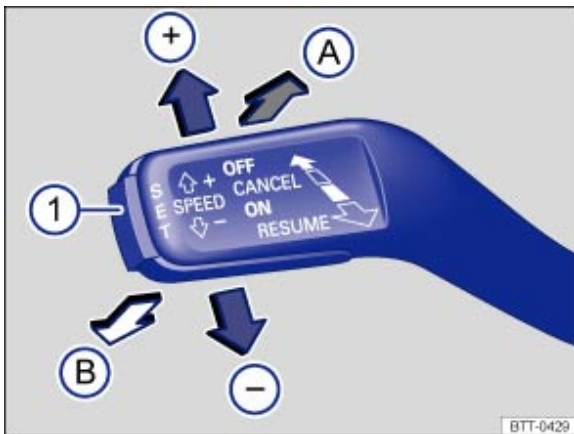






Fig. 165 On the left of the steering column: control lever for the CCS

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

## Operating cruise control system (CCS)

Function	Switch position, switch control → Fig. 165	Action
Switching on the CCS.	Position <b>ON</b> (A).	The system is switched on. No speed limit is saved yet, after it is switched on; the speed is not controlled.
Activating CCS.	<b>SET</b> button (1).	Current speed is saved and controlled. If CCS is already activated, the target speed reduces by 1 km/h (1 mph) each time the button is pressed.
Switching off the CCS control temporarily.	Pressure point <b>CANCEL</b> (B). <b>OR:</b> depress brake or clutch pedal.	Control is switched off temporarily. The speed is stored in the memory.



Resuming CCS control.	Pressure point <b>RESUME</b> 	The saved speed is considered and controlled. If no speed is saved, the CCS records and controls the current speed. If CCS is already activated, the target speed increases by 1 km/h (1 mph) each time the button is pressed.
Acceleration (during CCS control).	Pressure point <b>SPEED +</b> 	<i>Press briefly:</i> increases speed in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) and store. <i>Press longer:</i> the vehicle will accelerate for as long as you press. The current speed will be stored as soon as you release.
Reducing speed (during CCS control).	Pressure point <b>SPEED -</b> 	<i>Press briefly:</i> reduces speed by 10 km/h (5 mph) each time and store. <i>Press longer:</i> the vehicle will reduce speed for as long as you press. The current speed will be stored as soon as you release.
<b>Function</b>	<b>Switch position, switch control</b> → <a href="#">Fig. 165</a>	<b>Action</b>
Switching off CCS.	Position <b>OFF</b> 	The system is switched off. The stored speed will be deleted.

The mph figures given in brackets in the table relate exclusively to instrument clusters with mile readings.

## Driving downhill with CCS

If the CCS cannot maintain the vehicle speed when driving downhill, brake the vehicle with the foot brake and shift down gear if necessary.

## Automatic switch-off

CCS control will be switched off automatically or interrupted temporarily:

- If the system detects a fault that could impair the function of the CCS.
- If the vehicle speed is higher than the stored speed for an extended period with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- If the brake pedal or clutch pedal is depressed.
- If you change gear on a manual gearbox.
- If the airbag is triggered.

## ACC (adaptive cruise control)

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Display, warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)
- [Radar sensor](#)
- [Operating ACC](#)
- [Area monitoring system \(Front Assist\)](#)
- [City emergency brake function](#)
- [Switch off the ACC temporarily in the following situations](#)
- [Driving situations](#)

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) **combines cruise control and distance control** → .

Using the **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)**, a speed between 30 km/h (18 mph) and 210 km/h (130 mph) can be set and maintained. Furthermore, the adaptive cruise control (ACC) maintains a set time interval to vehicles travelling ahead.

Vehicles with an automatic gearbox can be brought to a **complete stop** using the **active braking intervention**, if the situation demands it.

## The system tells the driver to take control

There are system-specific limits on the ACC when driving. This means the driver may have to control the speed and distance between the vehicle and other vehicles in certain circumstances.

There is a visual and acoustic warning for the *driver to take control of the vehicle*.

### Collision warning from area monitoring system (Front Assist)

The area monitoring system will warn of a potential collision with vehicles ahead even when the ACC is switched off → *Area monitoring system (Front Assist)* .


#### Additional information and warnings:


- Exterior views → *Exterior views*
- Volkswagen information system → *Volkswagen information system*
- Cruise control system (CCS) → *Cruise control system (CCS)*
- Lane Assist → *Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist)*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*


### WARNING

The intelligent technology of the adaptive cruise control (ACC) cannot overcome the laws of physics or system-related vehicle limitations. Careless or unintentional use of the adaptive cruise control (ACC) can cause accidents and lead to serious injury. The system cannot replace the full concentration of the driver.

- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Do not use the ACC in heavy traffic, with poor visibility, with insufficient distance to the vehicle ahead, on steep or winding roads, or on slippery road surfaces e.g. on snow, ice, wet roads on gravel or on flooded roads.
- Never use the ACC off-road or on non-surfaced roads. The ACC is designed for use on surfaced roads only.
- The ACC does not react to stationary obstacles, e.g. the tail end of a traffic jam, a vehicle that has broken down, or vehicles waiting at traffic lights.
- The ACC and the area monitoring system do not react to persons, animals and vehicles crossing or approaching in the same lane.
- If the braking function of the ACC is insufficient you should brake the vehicle by depressing the foot brake.
- Brake the vehicle by depressing the brake if the vehicle rolls on after the driver has been requested to take control of the vehicle.
- If the instrument cluster display indicates that the driver should take control of the vehicle, you have to regulate the distance yourself.
- Depending on the traffic situation, apply the foot brake to slow the vehicle down or avoid the obstacle if the area monitoring system warns you to do so.
- The driver must be prepared to take full control of the vehicle at any time.

 If the ACC or the area monitoring system do not function as described in this chapter, do not use the ACC or area monitoring system and have a qualified workshop check the system immediately. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

 The ACC restricts the speed to 210 km/h (130 mph).

 If the adaptive cruise control is active, unfamiliar noises may be heard during the automatic braking procedure. This is normal and the noises are caused by the braking system.

### Display, warning lamps and indicator lamps

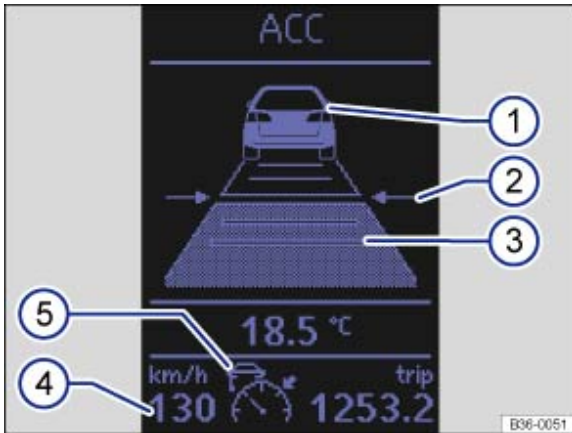


Fig. 166 Instrument cluster display: ACC active: vehicle detected ahead, distance controlled




Fig. 167 Instrument cluster display: ACC switched off temporarily; vehicle detected ahead



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)








## Display

Display fields → [Fig. 166](#):

- ① Vehicle detected ahead. ACC active.
- ② Setting the time interval to the vehicle in front while travelling at stored speed.
- ③ Time interval to the vehicle in front while travelling at stored speed has been set.
- ④ Stored speed.
- ⑤ Symbol : the ACC is ready or is controlling the distance. A vehicle has been detected ahead. The stored speed will be controlled.

System fault → [Fig. 164](#) . Go to a qualified workshop.

## Warning lamps and indicator lamps

Lights up or flashes	Possible cause → 	Correction
	The braking procedure of the ACC to the vehicle ahead is insufficient.	Depending on the traffic situation, reduce vehicle speed with foot brake immediately.
	Possible collision detected.	Depending on the traffic situation, reduce vehicle speed with foot brake immediately.
Lights up or flashes	Possible cause → 	Correction
	Area monitoring system currently not available.	Wait till the system is available again; conduct a visual check of the radar sensor, if required (for dirt, ice etc). Go to a qualified workshop immediately and have the system checked if it is constantly unavailable.
	Area monitoring system switched on, active.	–
	ACC is switched on <sup>a)</sup> .	–

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.


### WARNING

Failure to observe the illuminated warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore warning lamps and text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

### NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

 When the ACC is switched on, the display in the instrument cluster can be overwritten by other functions, incoming telephone calls for example.

<sup>a)</sup> Lights up when switching on and regardless whether the system is controlling or not.

## Radar sensor

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

A radar sensor is fitted to the front of the vehicle behind the Volkswagen badge in the radiator grille to monitor the traffic. Vehicles travelling ahead can thus be recognised up to a distance of approximately 150 m.

If the cover of the radar sensor is impaired due to factors such as heavy rain, spray, or snow, the ACC's distance control will not function. It will only regulate the speed. The instrument cluster display shows the message **ACC not available**.

### NOTICE

The radar sensor could be moved if it is hit, for example in parking manoeuvres. Readjusting the sensor could impair the performance of the system or cause it to be switched off.

**i** If the Volkswagen badge in the radiator grille is dirty or covered due to heavy rain, spray, snow, mud etc., the radar sensor and thus the ACC and the area monitoring system cannot function.

## Operating ACC

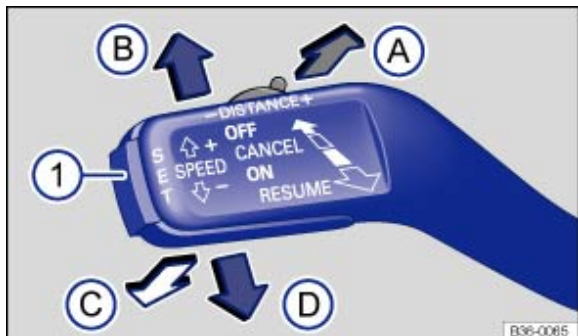



Fig. 168 ACC control lever on the left side of the steering column: controlling speed



Fig. 169 ACC control lever on the left side of the steering column: setting the distance level

**📖** First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → **⚠️** [Introduction](#)

If the ACC is switched on, the green indicator lamp  lights up in the instrument cluster and the speed memory and the status of the adaptive cruise control are shown in the display → [Fig. 166](#).

### Requirements for activating the ACC

- The TCS must be switched on → **⚠️**.
- The selector lever must be in position **D** or **S** or be in the Tiptronic gate. A forward gear, but not 1st gear, must be selected in the manual gearbox.
- In vehicles with a manual gearbox, the actual speed should be minimum 30 km/h (18 mph) if no speed is stored.

### Controlling speed

When switched on, the speed can be stored and set. The stored speed can vary from the speed actually being driven if the distance is being actively controlled.

Function	Switch position, switch control → <a href="#">Fig. 168</a>	Action
Switching on ACC.	Position <b>ON</b> <b>(A)</b> .	The system is switched on. No speed limit is saved yet, after it is switched on; the speed is not controlled.
Activating ACC.	<b>SET</b> button <b>(1)</b> .	Current speed is stored and controlled. <b>If ACC is already active:</b> <i>Press briefly:</i> reduce speed by 1 km/h (1 mph) and store. <i>Press longer:</i> the stored speed is reduced continuously in steps of 1 km/h (1 mph) for as long as the button is pressed. Speed is reduced

		1 km/h (1 mph) for as long as the button is pressed. Speed is reduced to the reduction of acceleration.
Switching off ACC temporarily.	Pressure point <b>CANCEL</b> ③. <b>OR:</b> depress the brake pedal. <b>OR:</b> depress the clutch pedal for longer than 10 seconds.	Control is switched off temporarily. The speed is stored in the memory.

Function	Switch position, switch control → Fig. 168	Action
Resuming ACC control.	Pressure point <b>RESUME</b> ④	The stored speed is reactivated and controlled. If no speed has been stored yet, the ACC records and controls the actual speed. <b>If ACC is already active:</b> <i>Press briefly:</i> increase speed by 1 km/h (1 mph) and store. <i>Press longer:</i> the stored speed is increased continuously in steps of 1 km/h (1 mph) for as long as the button is pressed.
Accelerating (during ACC control).	Pressure point <b>SPEED +</b> ⑤.	<i>Press briefly:</i> increase speed in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) and store. <i>Press longer:</i> the stored speed will be increased in steps of 10 km/h (5 mph) for as long as you press.
Decelerating (during ACC control).	Pressure point <b>SPEED -</b> ⑥.	<i>Press briefly:</i> reduce speed in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) and store. <i>Press longer:</i> the stored speed will be reduced in steps of 10 km/h (5 mph) for as long as you press. Speed is reduced to the reduction of acceleration.
Switching off ACC.	Position <b>OFF</b> ⑦.	The system is switched off. The stored speed will be deleted.

The mph figures given in brackets in the table relate exclusively to instrument clusters with mile readings.

## Distance levels

The speed-dependent distance to the vehicle travelling ahead can be set to one of 5 levels. Furthermore, the levels determine the vehicle's response when accelerating.

Function	Selectable levels
Set desired distance to vehicle ahead.	Very short distance (level 1) – very long distance (level 5)
Set desired acceleration (irrespective of the initial setting when the ACC is switched on).	Dynamic (level 1) – more gentle (level 5)

Using the **Settings Assistant** menu on the Volkswagen information system in the instrument cluster, you can set the **Basic setting** to determine whether the acceleration should be sporty, normal or more comfort-oriented → [Volkswagen information system](#) .

In wet road conditions, you should always set a larger distance than when driving in dry conditions.

## Setting the distance level

The distance level to the vehicle ahead is set using the switch on the control lever → [Fig. 169](#) . The ACC display appears when the button is pressed → [Display, warning lamps and indicator lamps](#) . Press the switch to the left or right to set the distance level:



Increases the distance by one level. *Press and hold:* Increase distance level quickly.



Decreases the distance by one level. *Press and hold:* Decrease distance level quickly.

In the **Settings** menu of the Volkswagen information system, under the **ACC, Distance** submenu in the **Assistants** menu, you can set the distance level that is to be selected when the ACC is switched on → [Volkswagen information system](#) .

that is to be selected when the ACC is switched on → [Volkswagen Information System](#) .

### The following conditions could prevent the ACC from reacting:

- In tight bends.
- If the accelerator is fully depressed.
- If area monitoring system has been switched off or is damaged.
- If no gear is selected.
- If TCS is manually switched off.
- If the driver has not fastened seat belt.
- If all brake lights are defective.
- If the radar sensor is dirty or covered.
- In snow or heavy rain.
- In case of narrow vehicles, e.g. motorbikes.
- If vehicles are travelling slightly to the left or right of your vehicle.
- In case of strong reflected radiation of the radar signal, e.g. in multi-storey car parks.
- If vehicles are crossing in front of your vehicle.
- In case of a stationary obstacle, e.g. broken-down vehicles.
- In case of oncoming traffic.

### WARNING

If you close the gap to a vehicle in front and the difference in speed between the two vehicles is so great that the braking action of the ACC is insufficient, you are in danger of colliding with the vehicle in front. You should reduce the vehicle speed immediately with the foot brake.

- The ACC may not be able to recognise all driving situations correctly.
- Leaving your foot on the accelerator will mean that the ACC will not brake automatically. This is because manual acceleration overrides the system.
- You should always be prepared to brake the vehicle yourself.

### Area monitoring system (Front Assist)

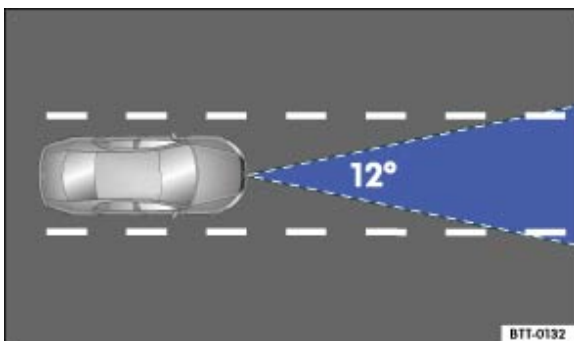


Fig. 170 Detection range of the radar sensor




First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The area monitoring system is part of the ACC; however, it functions independently and remains active even when the distance control or the cruise control is switched off.

The area monitoring system, when switched on, gathers information on the traffic situation up to a distance of about 150 m in front of the vehicle within a speed range of about 30 km/h (18 mph) to 210 km/h (130 mph).

## Advance warning

The system will warn the driver with visual and acoustic signals if it detects a possible collision with a vehicle ahead. At the same time it prepares the vehicle for possible emergency braking →  .

## Urgent warning

If the driver does not react to the advance warning, the system generates a short brake jolt through active braking intervention in order to call the driver's attention to a possible collision.

The brake jolt will not occur in all situations, in order not to unnecessarily distract the driver, e.g. when driving through a tight bend.

## Automatic braking

If the driver does not react to the urgent warning, the system can automatically stop the vehicle with brake pressure with gradually increasing intensity so as to reduce the speed in a possible collision. Hence the system can help minimise the consequences of an accident.

## Brake assistance

If the area monitoring system detects that the driver is applying the brakes with insufficient pressure in case of a possible serious collision, the system can increase the brake pressure so as to reduce the speed in the collision. Hence the system can help minimise the consequences of an accident.

The brake assistance works only for as long as the brake pedal is fully depressed.

The area monitoring system considers the driver's response time in order to give warnings in time. This response time reduces automatically when the system, for example, detects movement of the accelerator or steering wheel. The system thus prevents unnecessary brake interventions, e.g. when the driver overtakes another vehicle.

## Switching the area monitoring system on and off

- Using the button for driver assist systems, select the corresponding menu option → [Volkswagen information system](#) .
- **OR:** in the menu **Settings**, submenu **Assistants**, activate or deactivate the system using **Front Assist** → [Volkswagen information system](#) . A tick indicates when a driver assist system is switched on.

## Setting the acoustic warning

The acoustic warning can be activated or deactivated in the Volkswagen information system in the instrument cluster → [Volkswagen information system](#) . The system also retains the programmed setting when the ignition is next switched on.

- In the menu **Settings** submenu **Assistants**, select the menu **Front Assist**.

Volkswagen recommends that you always leave the acoustic warning on so that you will always be warned of a possible collision.

## Special driving situations

As the area monitoring system monitors the traffic situation using the radar sensor at the front of the vehicle in the same way as the ACC, this system is also subject to physical and system-related limitations. As such, the same conditions basically apply for the area monitoring system as for the ACC:

→ [Switch off the ACC temporarily in the following situations](#) und → [Driving situations](#) .

## The following conditions could prevent the area monitoring system from reacting:

In tight bends



- in ught dens.
- If the accelerator is fully depressed.
- If area monitoring system has been switched off or is damaged.
- If no gear is selected.
- If TCS is manually switched off.
- If the driver has not fastened seat belt.
- If all brake lights are defective.
- If the radar sensor is dirty or covered.
- In snow or heavy rain.
- In case of narrow vehicles, e.g. motorbikes.
- If vehicles are travelling slightly to the left or right of your vehicle.
- In case of strong reflected radiation of the radar signal, e.g. in multi-storey car parks.
- If vehicles are crossing in front of your vehicle.
- In case of a stationary obstacle, e.g. broken-down vehicles.
- In case of oncoming traffic.

#### Switch off the area monitoring system in the following situations:

- If the vehicle is being towed.
- If the vehicle is on a rolling road test bed.
- If the radar sensor is faulty.
- On external force on the radar sensor, e.g. after a rear-end collision.

### WARNING

The intelligent technology in the area monitoring system cannot change the laws of physics. Never let the extra convenience afforded by the area monitoring system tempt you into taking risks when driving. The driver is always responsible for braking in time. Depending on the traffic situation, apply the foot brake to slow the vehicle down or avoid the obstacle if the area monitoring system warns you to do so.

- The area monitoring system cannot independently prevent accidents and serious injuries.
- The area monitoring system does not independently bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
- The area monitoring system can give unnecessary warnings and carry out unwanted brake interventions in certain complex situations, e.g. at roundabouts.

### NOTICE

Switch off the area monitoring system if you suspect that the radar sensor has been damaged. This could avoid further damage. Set the radar sensor properly again.

- Repair work on the radar sensor will require special knowledge and tools. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.



If the area monitoring system triggers braking, the brake pedal travel reduces. This may make the brake pedal feel harder.



Automatic brake intervention by the area monitoring system can be stopped by using the clutch, the accelerator or steering intervention.


## City emergency brake function



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

The city emergency brake function is part of the area monitoring system and is active when the area monitoring system is switched on.

The city emergency brake function gathers information on the traffic situation up to a distance of about 10 m in front of the vehicle within a speed range of about 5 km/h (3 mph) to 30 km/h (18 mph).

The system prepares the vehicle for emergency braking if it detects a possible collision with a vehicle ahead → .

If the driver does not react to a possible serious collision, the system can automatically stop the vehicle with brake pressure with increasing intensity so as to reduce the speed in a possible collision. Hence the system can help minimise the consequences of an accident.

If the city emergency brake function detects that the driver is applying the brakes with insufficient pressure in the case of a possible collision, the system can increase the brake pressure in order to reduce the speed ahead of the collision. Hence the system can help minimise the consequences of an accident.

The brake assistance works only for as long as the brake pedal is fully depressed.

### **The following conditions could prevent the city emergency brake function from reacting:**

- In tight bends.
- If the accelerator is fully depressed.
- If area monitoring system has been switched off or is damaged.
- If no gear is selected.
- If TCS is manually switched off.
- If the driver has not fastened seat belt.
- If all brake lights are defective.
- If the radar sensor is dirty or covered.
- In snow or heavy rain.
- In case of narrow vehicles, e.g. motorbikes.
- If vehicles are travelling slightly to the left or right of your vehicle.
- In case of strong reflected radiation of the radar signal, e.g. in multi-storey car parks.
- If vehicles are crossing in front of your vehicle.
- In case of oncoming traffic.

### **Switch off the city emergency brake function in the following situations:**

- If the vehicle is being towed.
- If the vehicle is on a rolling road test bed.
- If the radar sensor is faulty.
- On external force on the radar sensor, e.g. after a rear-end collision.

## WARNING


The intelligent technology of the city emergency brake function cannot change the laws of physics. Never let the extra convenience afforded by the city emergency brake function tempt you into taking any risks when driving. The driver is always responsible for braking in time.


- The city emergency brake function cannot prevent accidents and serious injuries by itself.
- The City emergency brake function can carry out unwanted brake interventions in certain complex situations, e.g. at roundabouts.

## NOTICE

Switch off the area monitoring system if you suspect that the radar sensor has been damaged. This could avoid further damage. Set the radar sensor properly again.


- Repair work on the radar sensor will require special knowledge and tools. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

 The brake pedal travel decreases when the city emergency brake function is triggered. This may make the brake pedal feel harder.

 Automatic brake intervention by the city emergency brake function can be stopped by using the clutch, the accelerator or steering intervention.

## Switch off the ACC temporarily in the following situations

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  *Introduction*


Switch off the ACC in the following situations →  :

- When turning off roads, exiting from motorways or driving through road works, to prevent the vehicle from accelerating to the set speed in these situations
- When driving through a tunnel as this situation could impair the system function.
- On roads with more than one lane, if other vehicles are driving more slowly in the fast lane. Vehicles in other lanes will normally not be detected and will, in this case, be overtaken in the slow lane.
- In heavy rain, snow or spray as vehicles travelling ahead cannot be monitored sufficiently or maybe cannot be monitored at all.

## WARNING

If the ACC is not switched off in the named situations, accidents and serious injuries could be caused as a result.

- Switch off the ACC in critical driving situations.

 If the ACC is not switched off in the certain situations, it could result in violation of legal requirements.

## Driving situations

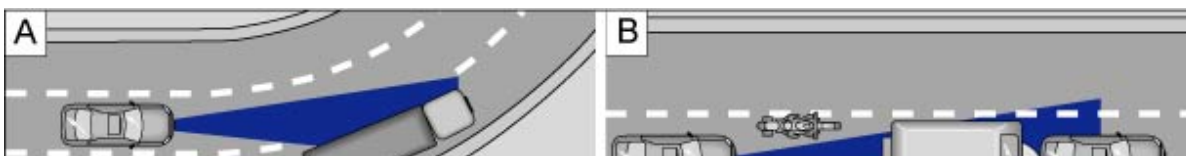




Fig. 171 A: vehicle in a bend B: motorbike in front is outside the range of the radar sensor

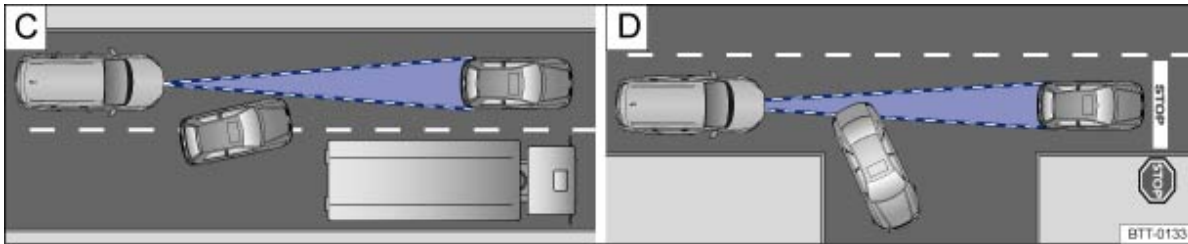


Fig. 172 C: vehicle is changing lanes. D: turning vehicle, stationary vehicle



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

The ACC has physical and system-related limitations. As such, certain ACC system reactions may occur, from the driver's perspective, unexpectedly or with some delay. You should therefore always be prepared to take full control of the vehicle if necessary.

The following driving situations, for example, demand particular vigilance:

### Deceleration to standstill (only vehicles with automatic gearbox)

If a vehicle travelling ahead brakes to a standstill, the ACC will also brake your vehicle to a standstill. The vehicle is then held stationary by the brakes.

### Stationary phase (only vehicles with automatic gearbox)

If the ACC has decelerated the vehicle to a standstill, the ACC will not be switched off by depressing the brake pedal.

The electronic parking brake will be activated automatically and the ACC switches off if one of the following situations occurs during while the vehicle is stationary:

- The safety belt is unfastened.
- The driver's door is opened.
- The ignition is switched off.
- The stationary phase lasts longer than approximately 3 minutes.

### Driving off after a stationary phase (only vehicles with automatic gearbox)

ACC does not cause the vehicle to be driven off automatically after being stationary. As soon as the vehicle travelling ahead moves again, the driver must accelerate the vehicle up to 2 km/h (1 mph). From this speed onwards, the ACC controls the speed and distance again with the stored settings.

### When overtaking

If the turn signal is used while overtaking, the ACC accelerates the vehicle automatically and thus reduces the distance to the vehicle travelling ahead. If you move your vehicle into the overtaking lane and there is no vehicle ahead of you, the ACC will automatically increase the speed to your set level and maintain it. Acceleration can be stopped at any point of time by depressing the brake pedal or using the pressure point **CANCEL** on the control lever → *Cruise control system (CCS)* .

### When driving through bends

While driving through bends, the radar sensor may sometimes lose the vehicle travelling ahead or may react to a vehicle in the next lane → Fig. 171 A. In such situations, it may be possible that the vehicle decelerates unnecessarily or does not react to the vehicle travelling ahead. Automatic braking can be stopped at any point of time by depressing the accelerator, brake pedal or using the pressure point **CANCEL** on the control lever → *Cruise control system (CCS)* .

## Driving in tunnels

The distance radar may not work properly in tunnels. Avoid using this function in tunnels.

## Narrow vehicles and a zig-zag traffic situation

Narrow vehicles and vehicles travelling slightly to the left or right of your vehicle will only be recognised by the radar sensor once they have entered the radar range → [Fig. 171 B](#). This particularly applies to narrow vehicles such as motorcycles.

## When other vehicles change lanes

Vehicles which are very close to you when they move into your lane cannot be detected by the radar sensor until they move into the sensor range. This will result in a late reaction of the ACC → [Fig. 172 C](#).

## Stationary vehicles

The ACC will not detect stationary obstacles, such as the end of a traffic jam or a broken down vehicle, or a vehicle approaching you in the same lane.

If a stationary vehicle is hidden behind a vehicle that has been detected by the adaptive cruise control and this vehicle turns off the road or changes lane, the adaptive cruise control will not be able to react to the stationary vehicle → [Fig. 172 D](#).

## Possible radar sensor function impairments

The ACC will switch off temporarily if the function of the radar sensor is impaired due to, e.g. heavy rain, spray, snow or mud. The instrument cluster display shows the message **ACC not available**.

The distance control function of the AAC starts again as soon as the radar sensor is working properly again. The **ACC not available** message disappears.

## Overheated brakes

If the brakes overheat, e.g. following heavy braking or when you drive down steep slopes, the ACC may be deactivated temporarily. The instrument cluster display shows the message **ACC not available**. It is then not possible to activate the ACC.

As soon as the temperature of the brakes has decreased sufficiently, the ACC can be activated again. The message **ACC not available** disappears from the instrument cluster. If the message **ACC not available** does not disappear, there is a fault. Go to a qualified workshop.

# Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist)

## Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Display and indicator lamps](#)
- [Function](#)
- [Switch of the lane departure warning system in the following situations](#)

### Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views → [Exterior views](#)
- Volkswagen information system → [Volkswagen information system](#)
- ACC (adaptive cruise control) → [ACC \(adaptive cruise control\)](#)
- Lane change assist system (Side Assist) → [Lane change assist system \(Side Assist\)](#)
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → [Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)

## ⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology of the Lane Assist system cannot overcome the laws of physics or system-related vehicle limitations. Always take care when using the lane departure warning system otherwise you could cause accidents or injuries. The system cannot replace the full concentration of the driver.

- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Your hands should always be on the steering wheel so that you can steer at any time.
- The lane departure warning system cannot recognise all road markings. Poor road surfaces, road structures or objects could be recognised incorrectly as road markings by the lane departure warning system. The lane departure warning system should be switched off immediately in these situations.
- Follow the information in the instrument cluster display and respond according to the commands.
- Always pay close attention to what is happening around the vehicle.
- If the camera's field of view is dirty, covered or damaged, the function of the lane departure warning system may be impaired.

## ! NOTICE

Please observe the following points in order to avoid impairing the proper function of the system:

- Regularly clean the camera's field of view, and keep it free from snow and ice.
- Do not cover the camera's field of view.
- Check the area of the windscreen that is in the camera's field of view for damage.

**i** The lane departure warning system has been designed for use on surfaced roads only.

**i** If the lane departure warning system does not function as described in this chapter, do not use the lane departure warning system and go to a qualified workshop.

**i** If there is a fault in the system, go to a qualified workshop and have the system checked.

## Display and indicator lamps

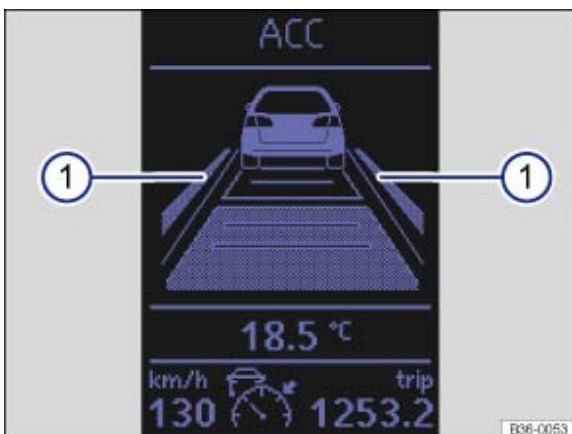


Fig. 173 In the instrument cluster display: Lane Assist system display (example 1)

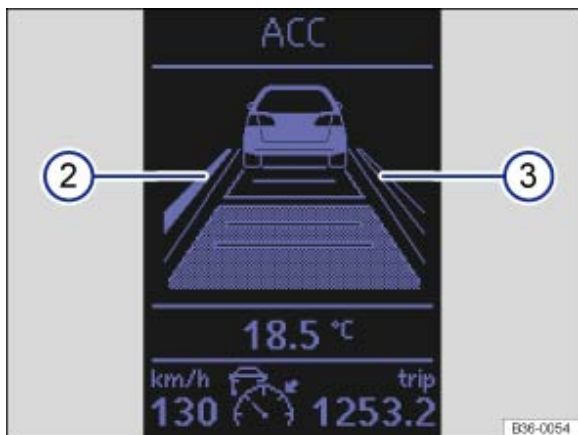


Fig. 174 In the instrument cluster display: Lane Assist system display (example 2)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

**Display**

Display fields → [Fig. 173](#) or → [Fig. 174](#):

- ① Lane marking detected. System not regulating.
- ② Lane marking detected. System is regulating.
- ③ No lane marking detected. System not regulating.

The illustrations also show ACC displays → [ACC \(adaptive cruise control\)](#) .

**Indicator lamps**

Lights up or flashes	Possible cause	Correction
	Lane departure warning system switched on but not active.	The system cannot clearly detect the lane. Refer to → <a href="#">Lane departure warning system is not active (the indicator lamp lights up yellow)</a> .
	Lane departure warning system switched on and active.	–

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.

**WARNING**

Failure to observe the illuminated warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore warning lamps and text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

**NOTICE**

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Function

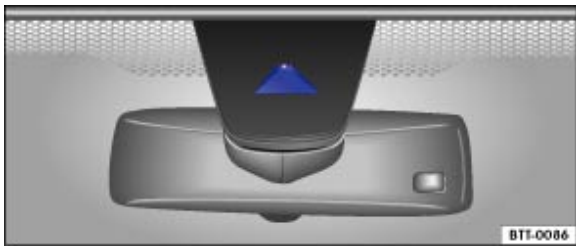



Fig. 175 Windscreen: Lane Assist camera window

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

Using a camera in the windscreen, the lane departure warning system detects possible marking lines on the road lane. If your vehicle approaches a recognised marking line unintentionally, the system will warn the driver with a *corrected steering intervention*. The corrective steering intervention can be overridden by the driver at any time.

No warning will be given if the turn signal is switched on as the lane departure warning system will presume the lane change is deliberate.

For vehicles that are also equipped with a lane change assist system → [Lane change assist system \(Side Assist\)](#) , a warning is also given when the turn signal is switched on when leaving the lane. The warning is always sounded when the system detects a potentially critical situation when changing lane (Lane Assist *PLUS*).

### Steering wheel vibration

The following situations will cause the steering wheel to vibrate and demand active steering intervention by the driver:

- If the system-related limitations are reached.
- If the maximum steering moment in corrective steering intervention is not sufficient to keep the vehicle in the lane.
- If a lane is no longer detected by the system during the corrective steering intervention.


### Switching the lane departure warning system on and off manually

- Using the button for driver assist systems, select the corresponding menu option → [Volkswagen information system](#) .
- **OR:** in the menu **Settings** submenu **Assistants**, activate or deactivate the system using **Lane Assist** → [Volkswagen information system](#) . A tick indicates when a driver assist system is switched on.

**Automatic switch-off:** the lane departure warning system can switch itself off automatically if there is a system fault. The indicator lamp goes out.

### Lane departure warning system is not active (the indicator lamp lights up yellow)

- If the vehicle speed is less than approx. 65 km/h (38 mph).
- If the lane departure warning system cannot detect the markings on the lane the vehicle is in. For example due to road works or in snow, dirt, wet weather or oncoming lights.
- The radius of a bend is too small.
- If there is no lane marking.
- If the distance to the nearest lane marking is too great.
- If the TCS is switched off.
- If the system does not detect any clear steering activity by the driver over an extended period.
- Temporarily if the driving style is very dynamic.
- If the turn signal is switched on.

 Before starting a journey, check that the camera window is not covered → [Fig. 175](#) .







The camera window must be kept clean at all times.

## Switch of the lane departure warning system in the following situations

---



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

The lane departure warning system should be switched off due to system limitations in the following situations:

- When a high level of concentration is required by the driver.
- Very sporty driving.
- Poor weather conditions.
- Poor road conditions.
- Driving through road works.

## Lane change assist system (Side Assist)



### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:


→ *Indicator lamps*

→ *Function*

→ *Information level and warning levels*

The lane change assist system monitors the blind spot and traffic activity behind the vehicle and provides the driver with assistance when changing lane.

### Towing a trailer

The lane change assist system cannot be switched on if the factory-fitted towing bracket is electrically connected to the trailer. The lane change assist system must be switched off manually when towing with non-factory-fitted towing brackets → .

### Additional information and warnings:

- Volkswagen information system → *Volkswagen information system*
- Lane Assist → *Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist)*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

**! WARNING**

The intelligent technology of the the lane change assist system cannot overcome the laws of physics or system-related vehicle limitations. Always take care when using the lane change assist system as you could otherwise cause accidents or injuries. The system cannot replace the full concentration of the driver.

- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Your hands should always be on the steering wheel so that you can steer at any time.
- Follow the information in the instrument cluster display and respond according to the commands.
- Always pay close attention to what is happening around the vehicle.

**! NOTICE**

- The sensors in the rear bumper can be shifted or damaged through impacts, e.g. when parking. As a result the system may switch itself off or at least be impaired.
- The system sensors in the bumper must be kept clean and free of ice and snow and not be covered up otherwise the system will not work properly.

**i** The lane change assist system has been designed for use on surfaced roads only.

**i** Tinted side windows or retrofitted tinting foils could negatively affect or distort the view of the displays in the exterior mirror.


**i** If the lane change assist system does not function as described in this chapter, do not use the lane change assist system. Go to a qualified workshop.

**i** Go to a qualified workshop and have the system checked if there is a fault in the system or after an accident.

**Indicator lamps**

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  *Introduction*

**Lit up | Possible cause**

 Lane change assist system active.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.

**! WARNING**

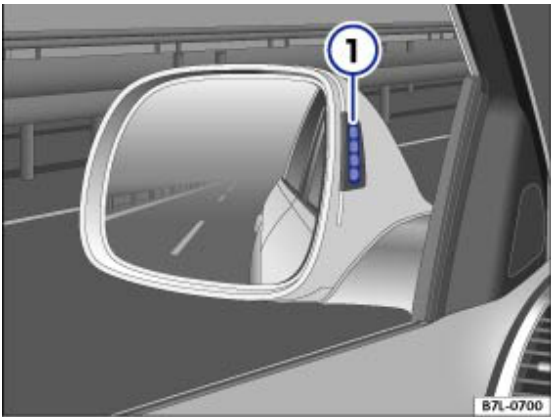
Failure to observe the illuminated warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore warning lamps and text messages.


**! NOTICE**

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

**Function**



**Fig. 176** Display in the exterior mirror

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

The lane change assist system uses radar sensors in the right and left-hand side of the rear bumper to monitor the area behind and to the side of the vehicle as of a speed of approximately 30 km/h (18 mph). The system then measures the distance and the difference in speed to other vehicles.

### Display in the exterior mirror

When changing lanes, the system will, if it calculates that the situation is critical, warn the driver of a collision using the displays in the external mirrors on each side of the vehicle → [Fig. 176](#).

A display will be shown in the exterior mirror in the following situations:

- When another vehicle is overtaking your vehicle.
- When you are overtaking another vehicle.
- When overtaking another vehicle where the difference in speed is approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) and the vehicle being overtaken is in the blind spot. No display will be shown if the takeover manoeuvre is much faster.

### Switching on and off

Activate and deactivate the lane change assist system in the **Settings** menu of the Volkswagen information system or via the the button for the driver assist system in main beam lever → [Volkswagen information system](#) . If the lane change assist is active it switches itself on automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Once the lane change assist system is ready for use, the display in the exterior mirror → [Fig. 176](#) ① briefly lights up to confirm.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster displays the status of the system → [Indicator lamps](#) .

### Automatic switch-off

The sensors of the lane change assist system will switch off automatically if, for example, the system detects that a sensor is permanently covered.

A corresponding display will appear in the instrument cluster.

### Sensor detection range


The sensors in the rear bumper monitor a area of up to approximately 50 m behind the vehicle as well as the blind spot on the left and right-hand side of the vehicles. The monitored area to the side of the vehicle is approximately one lane wide. The width of the lane is not recognised in individual cases, but is predefined in the system. For this reason, incorrect displays could be shown when driving in narrow lanes or when driving in the middle of 2 lanes. In the

same way, vehicles travelling in the lane next to the one you wish to change to could be detected, as could solid objects such as safety barriers, and trigger an incorrect warning.

## Special driving situations

The lane change assist systems has physical and system-related limitations. The system might, for example, interpret the traffic situation incorrectly in certain driving situations. In the following situations, for example:

- In tight bends.
- When road lanes are of varying width.
- At the brow of a hill.
- In poor weather conditions.


 Only Volkswagen-approved vehicle paints may be used on the rear bumper. Other vehicle paints could limit or even distort the function of the lane change assist system.

## Information level and warning levels



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The display in the exterior mirror will be shown earlier the faster you are nearing another vehicle as the lane change assist system calculates the speed difference to other vehicles. For this reason, the display could be activated at different times despite your vehicle being at the same distance to other vehicles.

Display in the exterior mirror	Situation
None	No other vehicle at a critical distance to your vehicle as detected by the lane change assist system.
Lights up once briefly.	The lane change assist system is switched on and ready for use.
Low level lighting (information level)	The lane change assist system has detected a potentially critical situation.
Flashes brightly (warning level)	The turn signal is active and the lane change assist system has detected a potentially critical situation on the corresponding side of the vehicle →  . For vehicles that are also equipped with a lane change assist system → <a href="#">Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist)</a> , a warning is also given when the turn signal is switched on when leaving the lane (Lane Assist PLUS).

## Setting the brightness of the display in the exterior mirror

The basic brightness level can be set in the Volkswagen Information system → [Volkswagen information system](#) .

The brightness of the display will alter automatically depending on the light levels. Therefore, it is best to set the *middle* surrounding brightness setting so that any changes in the display are visible.

Volkswagen recommends setting the brightness so that the display can be seen well in normal surroundings, but does not distract when looking through the windscreen.

- In the menu **Settings** submenu **Assistant**, select the menu **Side Assist**.
- Set the basic brightness setting. The new setting for the brightness of the information level will be shown briefly in the exterior mirror during the setting procedure.
- The settings are stored automatically and assigned to the current vehicle key.

The lane change assist system is not active during the setting procedure.

## WARNING

Failure to observe the warning and information levels could lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- **Never ignore the information and warning levels when lit up.**
- **Take any necessary action.**



The displays in the exterior mirror must be kept clean and free of ice and snow and not be covered up by stickers or similar items.

## Road sign recognition (Sign Assist)

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Display*
- *Function*

The road sign recognition system can help the driver check the speed limits or overtaking restrictions that currently apply for him. The road signs and additional information recognised by the system are shown in the instrument cluster display and in the map display of the navigation system.

#### Availability:

At the time that this Owner's Manual went to print, the road sign recognition system was available in the following countries:

Andorra, Austria, Belgium, Czech Republic, Denmark, Germany, Finland, France, Ireland, Italy, Liechtenstein, Luxembourg, Monaco, Netherlands, Norway, Poland, Portugal, San Marino, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, United Kingdom, Vatican City.

#### Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views → *Exterior views*
- Volkswagen information system → *Volkswagen information system*
- Navigation system ⇒ *BookletNavigation system*,

### WARNING

Do not let the extra convenience afforded by the road sign recognition system tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents. The system cannot replace the full concentration of the driver.

- **Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Poor visibility, darkness, snow, rain and fog can cause road signs to be not displayed or be incorrectly displayed by the system.**
- **If the camera's field of view is dirty, covered or damaged, the function of the road sign recognition system may be impaired.**

### WARNING

Driving recommendations and traffic symbols displayed by the road sign recognition system may differ from the current traffic situation.

- **Not all road signs can be recognised by the system and displayed correctly.**
- **Road signs and traffic regulations have priority over the recommendations and displays provided by the road sign recognition system.**

### NOTICE

Please observe the following points in order to avoid impairing the proper function of the system:

- **Regularly clean the camera's field of view, and keep it free from snow and ice.**

- Do not cover the camera's field of view.
- Check the area of the windscreen that is in the camera's field of view for damage.

**!** NOTICE

- The use of old map data in the navigation system can lead to incorrect display of the road signs.
- The road sign recognition system has only limited availability in waypoint navigation mode (waypoint navigation) of the navigation system.

Display

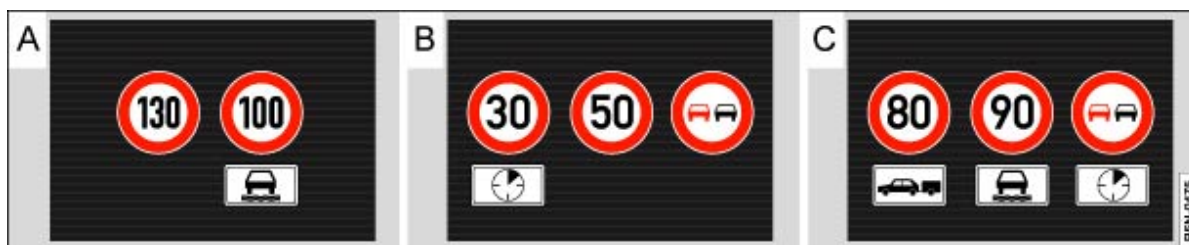


Fig. 177 In the instrument cluster display: examples of recognised speed limits or overtaking restrictions with accompanying additional signs

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → Introduction

Display texts for road sign recognition in instrument cluster	Cause and solution
Fault: Sign Assist	System fault. Go to a qualified workshop and have the system checked.
Sign Assist: clean windscreen!	The windscreen is dirty around the camera. Clean the windscreen.
Sign Assist: currently with only limited availability.	No data transfer from navigation system. Switch on navigation system and insert navigation data medium. <b>OR</b> Road sign recognition is not supported in the country you are currently travelling in.

**!** WARNING

Failure to observe the text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any text messages.

- **Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.**

## NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Function



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

The road sign recognition system is supported in various countries → [Availability](#): . Please remember this when travelling abroad.

## Display of road signs

The speed limits and overtaking instructions with an accompanying additional sign are displayed in the instrument cluster → [Fig. 177](#) . Depending on the navigation system integrated into the vehicle, the road signs may be also be displayed in the navigation system map display.

When road sign recognition is switched on, road signs in front of the vehicle are registered by a camera in the base of the interior mirror. After inspection and evaluation of the information from the camera, the navigation system and the current vehicle data, up to three valid road signs → [Fig. 177](#) will be displayed with the accompanying additional signs:

1st position: the road sign that currently applies for the driver is shown on the left-hand side of the display. For example, a speed limit of **130 km/h** → [Fig. 177 A](#). 2. position: road signs that do not always apply (e.g. **100 km/h**) are shown in second position. Additional sign: if the vehicle rain sensor detects rain while you are driving, the road sign with the additional in wet sign that now applies will be moved to the first position.

The permanent display in the instrument cluster occurs when you drive past the road sign.

Town or village boundary signs trigger the display of the standard speed limit for urban or country roads in the relevant country. If the town or village boundary signs have an additional sign showing a speed limit, this sign will appear in the display.

Signs indicating the end of a speed limit or overtaking restriction will not be displayed.

There is no warning when you exceed the displayed speed limits. Traffic-calmed areas are not recognised by the system. The legal regulations apply.

## Switching on and off

- Switch the assist system on or off in the menu **Settings** in the Volkswagen information system → [Volkswagen information system](#) .
- **OR:** use the button for driver assist systems on the main beam lever → [Volkswagen information system](#) .

## Trailer mode

The display for applicable speed limits and overtaking restrictions that apply to vehicles with trailers can be switched on or off in the **Settings** menu of the Volkswagen information system → [Volkswagen information system](#) .

## Driver Alert system (recommendation of rest breaks)

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

→ [Function and operation by the user](#)

The driver alert system warns the driver if his or her driving shows signs of tiredness.

## Additional information and warnings:

- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts (information stored in the control units) → [Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of](#)

## WARNING

Do not let the extra convenience afforded by the Driver Alert system tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents. During a long trip, plan regular and sufficient breaks.

- The driver is responsible at all times for his fitness to drive.
- Never drive a vehicle when you are tired.
- The system cannot always detect the driver's level of alertness. Observe the information in the section [Function limitations](#) → [Function limitations](#) .
- In certain situations, the system may wrongly interpret intentional driving manoeuvres as a lack of alertness from the driver.
- No urgent warning will be given in the event of the phenomenon known as microsleep.
- Follow the information in the instrument cluster display and respond according to the commands.



The Driver Alert system has been developed for use only while driving on highways and good roads.



Go to a qualified workshop immediately and have the system checked if it is faulty.

## Function and operation by the user



**Fig. 178** In the instrument cluster display: Driver Alert system



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

The Driver Alert system determines the driving behaviour at the beginning of a journey and uses it to evaluate the tiredness of the driver. This is compared to the behaviour of the driver while actually driving. If the system detects that the driver may be tired, it warns the driver with an acoustic warning signal and a message in the instrument cluster display → [Fig. 178](#) . The message in the instrument cluster display appears for about five seconds and may be repeated once. The last displayed message is saved by the system.

The message in the instrument cluster display can be switched off using the **OK** button on the multifunction steering wheel or on the windscreen wiper lever → [Volkswagen information system](#) . The message can be displayed again in the instrument cluster display using the multifunction display → [Volkswagen information system](#) .

## Functional limitations

The driving behaviour can be evaluated only when the speed is above 65 km/h (40 mph).

## Switching on and off

The system can be activated or deactivated in the menu **Settings** Submenu **Assistant Menu Driver Alert system** → [Volkswagen information system](#) . A tick indicates when a driver assist system is switched on.

## Function limitations

The Driver Alert system has system-related limitations. The system might, for example, interpret the driving behaviour incorrectly in certain driving



situations. In the following situations, for example:

- With speeds less than 65 km/h (40 mph).
- On roads with bends.
- On bad roads.
- With poor weather conditions.
- With sporty driving.
- When the driver is distracted.

The Driver Alert system is reset when the ignition is switched off or the driver unfastens the seat belt or the door is open.

The Driver Alert system is automatically reset in case of long slow drives (speed less than 65 km/h (40 mph)). If the speed is increased, the system evaluates the driving behaviour again.

## Adaptive chassis control (DCC)

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

→ [Function and operation](#)

Vehicle handling can be customised using adaptive chassis control.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → [Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)

### WARNING

Setting the adaptive chassis control while the vehicle is in motion can distract you from the road and lead to accidents.



If the adaptive chassis control system does not function as described in this chapter, have the system checked at a qualified workshop.

### Function and operation



Fig. 179 In centre console: button for setting the adaptive chassis control



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The adaptive chassis control constantly adjusts the suspension characteristics while driving to the road surface and the current driving situation according to a preset programme.

The steering response is also adjusted in the Sport programme.

Programme	Chassis Setup
COMFORT <b>C</b>	Comfort-oriented chassis setup, e.g. when driving for extended trips on poor quality roads.
NORMAL	Balanced chassis setup, e.g. for everyday use.
SPORTS <b>S</b>	Sporty chassis setup, e.g. for a sporty driving response.

## Selecting a programme


- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the **CPS** button until the required programme is displayed.

The NORMAL programme is active if neither **C** nor **S** light up in the button. The programme selected will remain set even after the ignition has been switched off.

## WARNING

Adjusting the damping setting could alter the vehicle handling. The adaptive chassis control must never tempt you into taking any risks when driving.

- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

 If there is a fault in the adaptive chassis control, the displays **C** and **S** will flash in the button. The driving comfort in the vehicle could be affected until the fault is fixed. Go to a qualified workshop and have the system checked.

## Tyre monitoring systems

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Types of tyre monitoring systems*
- *Tyre monitor indicator lamp*
- *Tyre pressure monitoring system*
- *Tyre monitor display*
- *Tyre pressure monitoring system*

Tyre monitoring systems warn the driver about tyre pressures that are too low.

### Additional information and warnings:


- Volkswagen information system → *Volkswagen information system*
- Transporting → *Transporting*
- Braking, stopping and parking → *Braking, stopping and parking*
- Cleaning and caring for the vehicle exterior → *Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior*
- Wheels and tyres → *Wheels and tyres*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*
- Consumer information → *Consumer information*


## WARNING


Incorrect handling of the wheels and tyres can lead to a sudden loss of pressure in the tyres, tread separation and even tyre blow-out.


- Check tyre pressures regularly and always keep to the specified tyre pressure value. If the tyre pressure is too low, the tyre could warm up to such an extent that the tread may separate and the tyre could burst.
- Always maintain correct cold tyre inflation pressure as listed on the tyre pressure label → *Wheels and tyres*

- Always maintain correct cold tyre inflation pressure as listed on the tyre pressure label → [wheels and tyres](#) .
- Check tyre inflation pressure regularly when the tyres are cold. Adjust tyre pressure in the cold tyre to the recommended tyre pressure for the tyres installed on your vehicle as necessary.
- Check your tyres regularly for signs of wear or damage.
- Never exceed the top speed and load permitted for the tyres that are fitted.

 Under-inflated tyres will increase fuel consumption and tyre wear.

 When new tyres are driven at high speeds for the first time, they can expand slightly and trigger a one-off pressure warning.

 Old tyres should only be replaced by tyres that have been approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle type.


 Do not rely solely on the tyre pressure monitoring system. Check your tyres regularly to make sure they are properly inflated and have no signs of damage, such as punctures, cuts, cracks, and blisters. Remove any objects that become embedded in the tyre tread but have not penetrated into the body of tyre itself.

## Types of tyre monitoring systems


 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

There are various different Volkswagen tyre monitoring systems:

### Tyre monitor display






- Monitoring of the rolling circumference and the vibration of all wheels using ABS sensors (indirect measurement).
- Indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster.
- Operating the menu to update the system if the tyre pressure has been altered.

### Tyre pressure monitoring system

- Monitoring tyre pressure by means of pressure sensors in each tyre valve (direct measurement).
- Indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster, graphical display shown on the instrument cluster.
- Setting the system via menus in the instrument cluster.
- Part load and full load pressures can be set.
- Automatic reprogramming if the tyre pressure has been altered.

## Tyre monitor indicator lamp

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Lit up	Possible cause → 	Correction
	The tyre pressure of one tyre or several tyres has decreased considerably in comparison to the tyre pressure set by the driver or the structure of the tyre is damaged. In addition, a corresponding text message may be displayed on the instrument cluster.	 <b>Do not drive on!</b> Reduce speed immediately. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so. Avoid swerving manoeuvres and heavy braking! Check all tyres and the tyre pressures. The damaged tyre should be replaced.
Flashes	Possible cause → 	Correction
	System faulty. Indicator lamp flashes for around a minute and then shows	If the tyre pressure is correct, but the indicator lamp fails to go out after the ignition is switched off and back on again and if it is not




indicator lamp flashes for around a minute and then shows continuous light.

possible to calibrate the tyre monitoring system, please go to a qualified workshop. The system should be checked.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.

## WARNING

Differing tyre pressures or tyre pressures that are too low can cause tyre failure, the loss of vehicle control, accidents, serious injury and death.

- If the indicator lamp  lights up, stop the vehicle as soon as possible and check all the tyres.
- Different tyre pressures or tyre pressures that are too low can increase wear on the tyres, reduce vehicle stability and increase the braking distance.
- Differing tyre pressures or tyre pressures that are too low can cause sudden tyre failure and lead to a tyre burst and the loss of control over the vehicle.
- The driver is responsible for the correct tyre pressure on all tyres on the vehicle. The recommended tyre pressure can be found on the sticker → [Wheels and tyres](#) .
- The tyre monitoring system cannot function correctly until all cold wheels have the correct tyre pressure.
- The use of incorrect tyre pressures can cause accidents and tyre damage. All tyres must always have the correct tyre pressure to suit the vehicle load.
- Always inflate all tyres to the correct tyre pressure before every journey.
- If driven with insufficient pressure, the tyre flexes more. This could warm up the tyre to such an extent that the tread may separate and the tyre could burst.
- High speeds and overloading of the vehicle may cause the tyres to heat up to such an extent that the tyre bursts and lead to a loss of control over the vehicle.
- If the tyre pressure is too low or too high, the tyres will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.
- If the tyre is not flat and it is not necessary to change the wheel immediately, drive at low speed to the nearest qualified workshop and check and correct the tyre pressure.


## WARNING

Failure to observe the illuminated warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore warning lamps and text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

## NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

 Driving on unpaved roads for a long time or a sporty driving style could temporarily deactivate the tyre monitor display. The indicator lamp shows the functional fault, but disappears if the road conditions or driving style change.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

Lit up	Text message	Possible cause →	Correction
	<b>FLAT TYRE</b>	The warning indicates that a tyre is losing pressure rapidly. At least one tyre has pressure of less than 1.4 bar (20 psi / 140 kPa) or loss of pressure of more than 0.2 bar/min (2.9 psi/min / 20 kPa/min).	<b>Do not drive on!</b> Reduce speed immediately. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so. Avoid swerving manoeuvres and heavy braking. Check all tyres for external damage and foreign bodies. Check the pressure of all tyres. If you do not need to change a tyre immediately, you may drive slowly to the nearest qualified workshop.
	<b>TYRE PRESSURE TOO LOW</b>	This warning indicates that at least one tyre has a critical tyre pressure which is more than 0.5 bar (7.25 psi / 50 kPa) lower than the target pressure.	Check the tyre pressure of all tyres immediately. If you do not need to change a tyre immediately, you may drive at reduced speed to the nearest qualified workshop.
---	<b>CHECK TYRE PRESSURES</b>	When the ignition is switched on, the warning shows that there is a loss of pressure of more than 0.3 bar (4.35 psi / 30 kPa) from at least one tyre.	Check the tyre pressures on all tyres at the next opportunity and correct them → <a href="#">Wheels and tyres</a> . Until you are able to make the correction, avoid long distances and maximum speeds.
Flashes	Text message	Possible cause →	Correction
	---	Symbol flashes intermittently while the vehicle is in motion. There is a transmission fault between the sensor and the system. The function can be affected temporarily if there is more than one transmitter in the direct vicinity working on the same frequency (e.g. two-way radio, remote control or toys).	Switch off the device causing the problem.
	---	System faulty if the indicator lamp flashes for approx. 1 minute and is <i>constantly</i> lit.	If the indicator lamp still flashes and then lights up permanently after the ignition is switched off and back on again, please go to a qualified workshop. The system should be checked.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.

## WARNING

Differing tyre pressures or tyre pressures that are too low can cause tyre failure, the loss of vehicle control, accidents, serious injury and death.

- If the indicator lamp lights up, stop the vehicle as soon as possible and check all the tyres.
- Different tyre pressures or tyre pressures that are too low can increase wear on the tyres, reduce vehicle stability and increase the braking distance.
- Differing tyre pressures or tyre pressures that are too low can cause sudden tyre failure and lead to a tyre burst and the loss of control over the vehicle.

- The driver is responsible for the correct tyre pressure on all tyres on the vehicle. The recommended tyre pressure can be found on the sticker → [Wheels and tyres](#) .
- The tyre monitoring system cannot function correctly until all cold wheels have the correct tyre pressure.
- The use of incorrect tyre pressures can cause accidents and tyre damage. All tyres must always have the correct tyre pressure to suit the vehicle load.
- Always inflate all tyres to the correct tyre pressure before every journey.
- If driven with insufficient pressure, the tyre flexes more. This could warm up the tyre to such an extent that the tread may separate and the tyre could burst.
- High speeds and overloading of the vehicle may cause the tyres to heat up to such an extent that the tyre bursts and lead to a loss of control over the vehicle.
- If the tyre pressure is too low or too high, the tyres will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.
- If the tyre is not flat and it is not necessary to change the wheel immediately, drive at low speed to the nearest qualified workshop and check and correct the tyre pressure.

## WARNING

Failure to observe the illuminated warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore warning lamps and text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

## NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Tyre monitor display




First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The tyre monitor display uses data from the ABS sensors and other functions to check the speed of rotation and the rolling circumference of the individual wheels. Any change in the rolling circumference of one or more wheels is shown by the tyre monitor display in the instrument cluster.

### Changes in the rolling circumference

The rolling circumference of a tyre can change:

- If the tyre pressure has been changed manually.
- If the tyre pressure is too low.
- If the tyre has structural damage.
- If the vehicle is loaded more heavily on one side.
- If the wheels on one axle are loaded more heavily, e.g. high payload.
- If snow chains have been fitted.
- If a temporary spare wheel has been fitted.
- If one wheel per axle has been changed.

The tyre monitor display  may, in certain circumstances, become slow or may not display anything, e.g. with a sporty driving style, winter driving conditions or on unpaved roads or when driving with snow chains.

## Calibrating tyre monitor display

The tyre monitor display will have to be re-calibrated after changing the tyre pressure and after changing one or several wheels. This also applies for changing the wheels, e.g. from the front to the rear.

- Switch on the ignition.
- call up the menu option **Tyre pressure** in the instrument cluster and save the new tyre pressures → [Volkswagen information system](#) .

The system calibrates itself independently in normal vehicle operation for the tyre pressures filled by the driver and the tyres that are fitted. The recorded values are adopted and monitored after a long journey at various speeds.

If the wheels are loaded more heavily than normal, e.g. heavy payload, the tyre pressure must be raised to the recommended full-load tyre pressure before calibration → [Wheels and tyres](#) .



The tyre pressure monitoring system stops working if there is an ESP/ABS malfunction → [Braking, stopping and parking](#) .



When using snow chains, an incorrect display may be shown as the snow chains increase the tyre circumference.

## Tyre pressure monitoring system

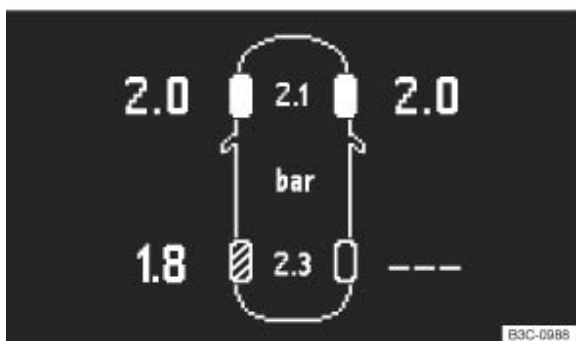


Fig. 180 Display in instrument cluster: current tyre pressures



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → [Introduction](#)

The tyre pressure monitoring system (TPM) monitors the tyre pressure of the 4 wheels while the vehicle is in motion using wheel electronics on the tyres. Following a loss in pressure, the system will warn the driver using a visual or acoustic warning.

## Display of tyre pressures on the instrument cluster

Open the menu **Vehicle status** in the instrument cluster display → [Volkswagen information system](#) . The vehicle is displayed with the target and actual pressures in all the wheels → [Fig. 180](#) .

### Key

→ <a href="#">Fig. 180</a>	Meaning
2.0	Actual pressure for front left tyre in bar.
2.0	Actual pressure for front right tyre in bar.
2.1	Target pressure for both front tyres in bar.
1.8	Actual pressure for rear left tyre in bar.
---	System fault for rear right tyre.
2.3	Target pressure for both rear tyres in bar.

When the ignition is switched on, the last stored tyre pressures will be displayed first; these values are updated to the actual pressures and displayed when

the journey is started. In case the tyre pressure is too low, the relevant tyre is indicated and displayed along with the actual pressures → [Fig. 180](#).

## Switching tyre pressure monitoring system on or off

The system is switched on and off automatically. If the vehicle is fitted with a set of tyres that do not have wheel sensors (e.g. winter tyres), the system is switched off automatically once the vehicle starts moving. The tyre pressure is no longer monitored. As soon as the tyre pressure monitoring system receives at least one signal, it is switched on automatically.

## Adjusting the tyre pressure

Following any relevant change in the load level, the tyre pressure **must** be checked and altered as necessary. The tyre pressures recommended for the vehicle are on a sticker on the inside of the tank flap or on the driver's door column → [Wheels and tyres](#).

If the tyre pressure has to be altered on a warm tyre, you should inflate the tyre with 0.2 – 0.3 bar (2.9 – 4.4 PSI / 20 – 30 kPa) more than the value given on the tyre pressure sticker.

The readings on the manometer when filling the tyres and the reading on the tyre pressure sensors may be different. The electronic tyre pressure control system provides more accurate results.

## Selecting target pressures for partial or full vehicle loading

The driver has to select the appropriate target tyre pressure for the partially or fully loaded vehicle depending on the load vehicle level.

- Open the main menu **Settings** in the instrument cluster display → [Volkswagen information system](#).
- Select the **Tyre pressure** submenu.
- After selecting the menu option **Load**, you can select between *Partial load* or *Full load*.

## Selecting type of tyre

While changing the dimensions of the tyres, it may be necessary to adjust the target pressure for the new tyres. In this case, the correct type of tyre should be selected from the main menu **Settings**. If no adjustment is necessary, the selection menu will not be available.

- Open the main menu **Settings** in the instrument cluster display → [Volkswagen information system](#).
- Select the **Tyre type** submenu.
- Select the appropriate tyre type and use the **OK** button to confirm the selection.

If the dimensions of the new tyres are different from those of the factory-fitted tyres, the corresponding target tyre pressures can be entered by a Volkswagen dealer using the menu option **Individual**.

## Synchronising wheel electronics

Manual synchronisation is not necessary after wheel electronics have been replaced or tyres have been changed. The tyre pressure monitoring system automatically recognises new wheel electronics and synchronises them immediately while driving.

## Spare wheel

The tyre pressure of the spare wheel in the luggage compartment is **not** monitored.

## Storing tyres

If the tyres are not being used, the sensors will not transmit the tyre pressure. This stops the sensor batteries discharging.



- The tyre pressure sensors are mounted on special aluminium valves on the wheels. These valves are securely screwed in. When inflating the tyres and checking the tyre pressure, do not bend the valves into position.
- If valve caps are missing, the valve and tyre pressure monitor sensors could be damaged. Always use valve caps that comply with the factory-fitted valve cap specifications. Always screw on valve caps fully. Do not use metal valve caps.
- Do not use convenience valve caps as they do not form a proper seal. This can cause damage to the sensors.
- Do not damage the valves and sensors when fitting different tyres.
- Due to ageing effects on the rubber seals, the fitted aluminium valves should be replaced after approximately six years during a tyre change. Once they have been removed, the aluminium valves cannot be used again and must be replaced. However, the tyre pressure sensors can be used again.

## Air conditioning system

### Heating, ventilating, cooling

#### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Controls](#)
- [Information on the air conditioning system](#)
- [Vents](#)
- [Air recirculation mode](#)

#### Displays for the Climatronic information

Information on the Climatronic is displayed briefly on the screen of the factory-fitted radio or navigation system.

The units of the temperature display can be shown in the factory-fitted radio or navigation system and, depending on the vehicle equipment, can be altered in the **Settings** menu in the instrument cluster.

#### The dust and pollen filter

The dust and pollen filter with activated charcoal reduces the level of impurities in the outside air entering the vehicle.

For the air conditioning system to work with maximum efficiency, the dust and pollen filter must be replaced at the intervals specified in the Service Schedule.

If the efficiency of the filter declines prematurely due to use in areas with very high levels of air pollution, the dust and pollen filter must be changed more frequently than stated in the Service Schedule.

#### Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views → [Exterior views](#)
- Volkswagen information system → [Volkswagen information system](#)
- Windscreen wiper/washer → [Windscreen wiper and washer](#)
- Auxiliary heater (supplementary heating system) → [Auxiliary heater \(supplementary heating system\)](#)
- Cleaning and caring for the vehicle exterior → [Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior](#)

#### WARNING

Poor visibility through all windows will increase the risk of collisions and accidents which can cause serious injuries.

- Always ensure that all windows are free of ice, snow and mist in order to have good visibility.
- Maximum heat output, which is needed to defrost the windows as quickly as possible, is only available when the engine has reached

- Maximum heat output, which is needed to defrost the windows as quickly as possible, is only available when the engine has reached its operating temperature. Do not start your journey until you have good visibility.
- Always ensure that the air conditioning system and the heated rear window are used correctly in order to have good visibility.
- Never use the air recirculation mode for an extended period. If the cooling system is switched off, the windows could mist up very quickly in air recirculation mode and reduce visibility considerably.
- Always switch off the air recirculation mode if it is not required.

## ⚠ WARNING

Stale air can quickly cause tiredness and lack of concentration in the driver which in turn can cause collisions, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never switch the blowers off or the air recirculation mode on for an extended period as otherwise no fresh air can enter the vehicle interior.

## ! NOTICE

- Switch off the air conditioning system if you suspect that it has been damaged. This could avoid further damage. The air conditioning system should be checked by a qualified workshop.
- Repairs to the air conditioning system require specialist knowledge and special tools. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

**i** If the cooling system is switched off, the outside air that is drawn into the vehicle is not dehumidified. To prevent the windows misting over, Volkswagen recommends that you leave the air conditioning (compressor) switched on. To do this press the **AC** button. The indicator lamp in the button must light up.

**i** Maximum heat output, which is needed to defrost the windows as quickly as possible, is only available when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

**i** Keep the air intake slots in front of the windscreen free of snow, ice and leaves to ensure heating and cooling is not impaired, and to prevent the windows misting over.

## Controls



Fig. 181 In the centre console: air conditioning controls (manual)

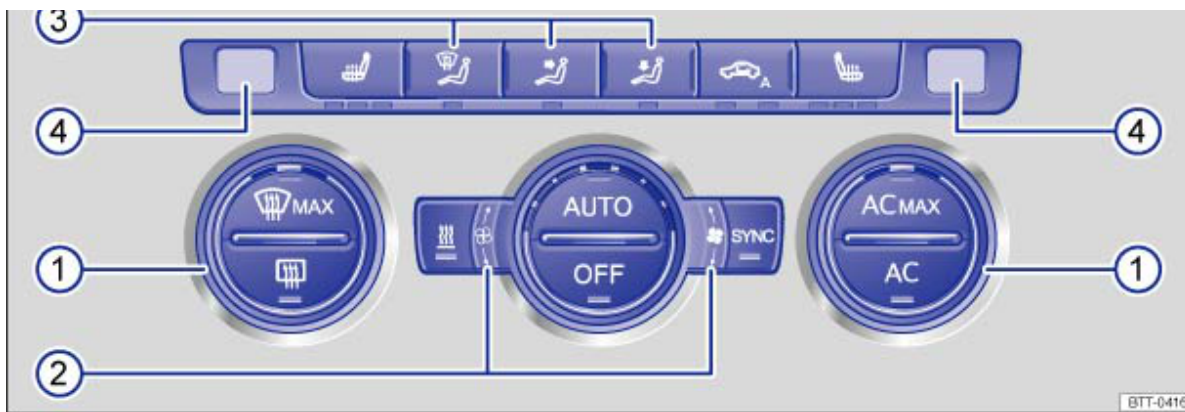


Fig. 182 In the centre console: Climatronic controls







First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → Introduction

Press the corresponding button to switch a function on or off. Press the button again to switch the function off.

Lit LEDs in the controls indicate whether the respective function is active.

Button, Control	Additional information in air conditioning system (manual) → Fig. 182 and Climatronic → Fig. 181 .
	<p>Temperature</p> <p><b>Air conditioning system (manual):</b> turn the regulator to set the temperature as required. Maximum cooling is achieved in Position <b>AC MAX</b>. The air recirculation mode and the cooling system are switched on automatically.</p> <p><b>Climatronic:</b> the left and right-hand side can be set independently of each other. Turn the regulator to set the temperature as required.</p>
	<p>Blower.</p> <p><b>Air conditioning system (manual):</b> position 0: blower and air conditioning system (manual) switched off, Position 4: maximum blower output</p> <p><b>Climatronic:</b> the strength of the blower is regulated automatically. The blower can also be set manually.</p>
	<p>Air distribution.</p> <p><b>Air conditioning system (manual):</b> turn the control infinitely to direct the flow of air as required.</p> <p><b>Climatronic:</b> flow of air is set automatically. It can also be switched on manually with the buttons → Fig. 182 ③ .</p>
	<p><b>Climatronic:</b> displays the temperature set for the left and right sides.</p>
	<p><b>Air conditioning system (manual):</b> defroster function. Air distribution to the windscreen. The air recirculation mode will be switched off automatically, or not switched on at all, in this position. Increase the power of the blower in order to remove condensation, frost etc. from the windscreen as quickly as possible. The cooling system is switched on automatically to dehumidify the air.</p>

Button, Control	Additional information in air conditioning system (manual) → Fig. 182 and Climatronic → Fig. 181 .
	<p><b>Climatronic:</b> defrost function. The air drawn in from outside the vehicle is directed at the windscreen and the air recirculation mode is switched off automatically. In order to demist the windscreen as quickly as possible, the air will be dehumidified at temperatures higher than approximately +3°C (+38°F) and the blower will be set to a high speed.</p>
	<p>Air distribution to the upper body via the air vents in the dash panel.</p>
	<p>Air distribution to footwell.</p>
	<p><b>Air conditioning system (manual):</b> air distribution to the windscreen and the footwell.</p>
	<p><b>Climatronic:</b> air distributed upwards.</p>
	<p>Press the button to switch the cooling system on or off.</p>
	<p>Rear window heating: only functions when the engine is running and will switch off automatically after approximately 10 minutes.</p>

	<b>Air conditioning system (manual):</b> air recirculation mode → <a href="#">Air recirculation mode</a> .
	<b>Climatronic:</b> manual automatic air recirculation mode → <a href="#">Air recirculation mode</a> .
	<b>Climatronic:</b> depending on the vehicle equipment level, a button for the windscreen heating may be located in the air conditioning control unit. The windscreen heater only functions when the engine is running and will switch itself off automatically after a few minutes.
	Immediate heat button for the auxiliary heater → <a href="#">Auxiliary heater (supplementary heating system)</a> .
<b>OFF</b>	Switch off. <b>Air conditioning (manual):</b> turn the blower to level 0. <b>Climatronic:</b> press the button <b>OFF</b> or turn the blower manually to 0. An indicator lamp in the <b>OFF</b> button lights up when the system is switched off.
<b>SYNC</b>	<b>Climatronic:</b> apply driver side temperature settings to the passenger side: if the indicator lamp in the <b>SYNC</b> button is lit up, the temperature settings for the driver side will also apply to the passenger side. Press the button or activate the temperature selector for the passenger side to set different temperature settings for the passenger side. The indicator lamp in the button is not lit up.
<b>AUTO</b>	<b>Climatronic:</b> automatic temperature, blower and air distribution control. <b>Press button:</b> the AUTO High function is switched on. The indicator lamp in the button lights up.

## WARNING

Never switch the blowers off for an extended period as no fresh air will enter the vehicle interior.

- Stale air can quickly cause tiredness and lack of concentration in the driver and the passengers which in turn can cause accidents and serious injuries.

## Information on the air conditioning system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The cooling system for the vehicle interior only works when the engine is running and the blower is switched on.

The air conditioning system operates most effectively with the windows and the sliding/tilting roof closed. However, if the vehicle has heated up after standing in the sun for some time, the air inside can be cooled more quickly by opening the windows and the sliding/tilting roof for a short time.

### Settings for optimal road visibility

When the cooling system is switched on, not only the temperature, but also the air humidity in the vehicle interior is reduced. This improves comfort for the vehicle occupants and prevents misting of the windows when the outside air humidity is high.

#### Air conditioning system (manual)

- Switch off air recirculation mode → [Air recirculation mode](#) .
- Set the blowers to the desired level.
- Set temperature selector to the middle position.
- Open and position all vents on the dash panel → [Vents](#) .
- Turn the air distribution controller to the desired position.
- Press the **AC** button to switch the cooling system on. The indicator lamp in the button lights up.

#### Climatronic

- Press the **AUTO** button.
- Set temperature to +22°C (+72°F).
- Open and position all vents on the dash panel → [Vents](#) .

## Climatronic: selecting the temperature unit in the display of the factory-fitted radio or navigation system

It is possible to choose between Celsius and Fahrenheit for the temperature display in the factory-fitted radio or navigation system via the menu in the instrument cluster → [Volkswagen information system](#) .


## The cooling system cannot be switched on

If the cooling system cannot be switched on, it may be for the following reasons:

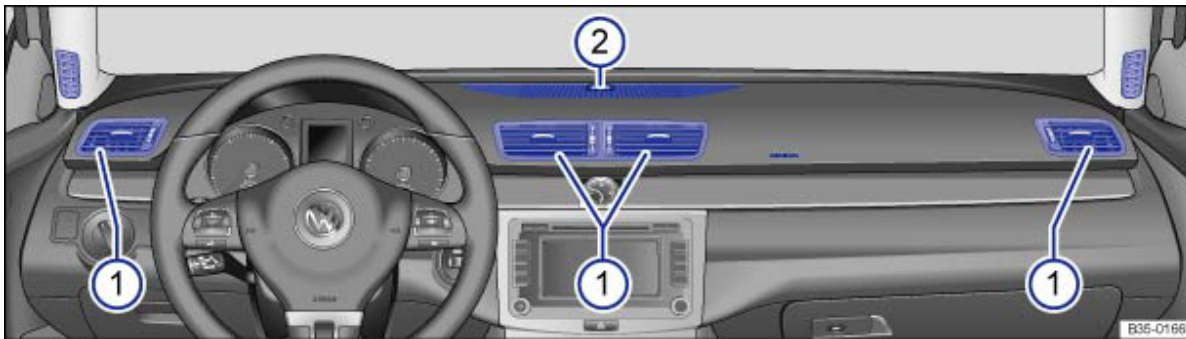
- The engine is not running.
- The blower is switched off.
- The air conditioner fuse has blown.
- The ambient temperature is lower than approximately +3°C (+38°F).
- The compressor has been temporarily switched off because the coolant temperature is too high.
- There is a different fault in the vehicle. The air conditioning system should be checked by a qualified workshop.

## Things to note

If the humidity and temperature outside the vehicle are high, **condensation** can drip off the evaporator in the cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak!

 The windscreen may mist up after starting the engine due to residual humidity in the air conditioning system. Switch the defrost function on in order to clear the windscreen of condensation or mist as quickly as possible.

## Vents



**Fig. 183** In the dash panel: vents

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

## Vents

To ensure that the vehicle interior is sufficiently heated, ventilated and cooled, never fully close the vents → [Fig. 183](#) ① .

- Turn the thumb wheel in the required direction to open and close the vents.
- Adjust the direction of the air flow by moving the grille.


Further vents can be found in the footwell and in the rear area of the vehicle interior.

## Climatronic: indirect ventilation

Having the Climatronic on automatic mode also means that indirect ventilation is controlled, which ensures draught-free ventilation. The air will then flow over the non-closable outlet surface → [Fig. 183](#) ② .

 **NOTICE**

**Do not place any food, medicine or any other heat-sensitive items in front of the vents. Heat-sensitive food, medicine and other items could be either damaged or rendered useless.**



 The air from the outlets flows through the passenger compartment and out of the vehicle through the slots below the rear window. The slots must not be covered by items of clothing or other items.

## Air recirculation mode

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)


### General notes

**There are different types of air recirculation mode:**

	Manual air recirculation mode (Air conditioning system (manual)).
	Left indicator lamp lit up in the button: manual air recirculation mode (Climatronic).
	Right indicator lamp lit up in the button: automatic air recirculation mode (Climatronic).


The air recirculation mode prevents air from outside from entering the vehicle.

If the outside temperature is very high, the manual air recirculation mode should be selected for a short time in order to cool the vehicle interior more quickly.


For safety reasons, the air recirculation mode will switch off if the button  or  is pressed, or if the air distribution regulator is turned to  → .


### Switching the manual air recirculation mode on and off in the Climatronic

*Switching on:* press the  button repeatedly until the indicator lamp in the button lights up.


*Switching off:* press the  button repeatedly until the indicator lamp in the button is no longer lit up.

### Switching the manual air recirculation mode on and off in the Climatronic

*Switching on:* press the  button until the left indicator lamp in the button lights up.

*Switching off:* press the  button repeatedly until the indicator lamp in the button is no longer lit up.

### Function of the automatic air recirculation mode

In position  fresh air will enter the vehicle interior. The air recirculation mode will switch on automatically if the system detects an increase in the concentration of noxious substances in the outside air. The air recirculation mode will switch off as soon as this level has returned to normal.

The system cannot detect unpleasant smells.


The air recirculation mode will **not** be switched on automatically with the following outside temperatures and conditions:

- The cooling system is switched on (indicator lamp in the  button is lit up) and the ambient temperature is colder than +3°C (+38°F).



- The cooling system and the windscreen wipers are switched off and the ambient temperature is colder than +10°C (+50°F).
- The cooling system is switched off, the ambient temperature is colder than +15°C (+59°F) and the windscreen wiper is switched on.

### Switching the automatic air recirculation mode on and off

*Switching on:* press the  button repeatedly until the right indicator lamp in the button lights up.

*Switching off:* press the  button repeatedly until the indicator lamp in the button is no longer lit up.

### Switching the automatic air recirculation mode off temporarily

- Press the  button once to select the manual mode if unpleasant odours are detected. The left indicator lamp lights up.
- Press the  button again after more than 2 seconds have elapsed in order to reactivate the automatic air recirculation mode. The right indicator lamp lights up.


## WARNING

Stale air can quickly cause tiredness and lack of concentration in the driver which in turn can cause collisions, accidents and serious injuries.

- **Never use the air recirculation mode for an extended period as no fresh air will enter the vehicle interior.**
- **If the cooling system is switched off, the windows could mist up very quickly in air recirculation mode and reduce visibility considerably.**
- **Always switch off the air recirculation mode if it is not required.**

## NOTICE

In vehicles with an air conditioning system, do not smoke when the air recirculation mode is switched on. The smoke drawn into the cooling system can leave a residue on the evaporator and the dust and pollen filter with active carbon insert, producing a permanent unpleasant odour.

 **Climatronic:** when reversing the vehicle or when the wash and wipe system is being used, the air recirculation mode will switch on temporarily to prevent exhaust emissions from entering the vehicle interior.

## Auxiliary heater (supplementary heating system)

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Switching the auxiliary heater on or off](#)
- [Remote control](#)
- [Programming the auxiliary heater](#)
- [Operation](#)

The auxiliary heater is supplied with fuel from the vehicle fuel tank and can be used when the vehicle is in motion or stationary.

In the instrument cluster, select the required mode **Heating** or **Ventilation** → [Programming the auxiliary heater](#) .

Using the mode **Heating** with the auxiliary heater switched on before starting your journey in winter will clear the windscreen of ice, condensation and a thin layer of snow.

In summer, you can ventilate a hot vehicle interior before starting your journey in the mode **Ventilation** and thus reduce the temperature inside the vehicle.

**Additional information and warnings:**

- Volkswagen information system → [Volkswagen information system](#)
- Heating, ventilating, cooling → [Heating, ventilating, cooling](#)
- Filling the tank → [Filling the tank](#)
- Consumer information → [Consumer information](#)

** DANGER**

Swallowing batteries with a diameter of 20 mm or other lithium batteries can result in severe or even fatal injuries within a very short period of time.

- Always keep the vehicle key, key ring with batteries, spare batteries, round cells and other batteries that are larger than 20 mm out of the reach of children.
- Obtain medical assistance immediately if you suspect that someone has swallowed a battery.

** WARNING**

The fumes from the auxiliary heater contain carbon monoxide which is an odourless and colourless poisonous gas. Carbon monoxide can cause loss of consciousness and death.

- Never start or run the auxiliary heater in unventilated or closed rooms.
- Never program the auxiliary heater so that it is switched on and run in unventilated or enclosed areas.

** WARNING**

Parts of the auxiliary heater exhaust system become very hot. This could cause a fire.

- Park the vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass.

** NOTICE**


Do not place any food, medicine or any other heat-sensitive items in front of the vents. Heat-sensitive food, medicine and other items could be either damaged or rendered useless.

**Switching the auxiliary heater on or off**



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

**Switching on the auxiliary heater:**



	Manually with the immediate heat button in the air conditioning system.	→ Heating, ventilating, cooling
<b>ON</b>	Manually with the remote control.	→ Remote control
–	Automatically with a programmed and activated switch-on time.	→ Programming the auxiliary heater

### Switching off the auxiliary heater:

	Manually with the immediate heat button in the air conditioning system.	→ Heating, ventilating, cooling
<b>OFF</b>	Manually with the remote control.	→ Remote control
–	Automatically after the set period has elapsed.	→ Programming the auxiliary heater
–	Automatically if the indicator lamp  lights up (fuel level).	→ Filling the tank
–	Automatically if the charge level of the vehicle battery is too low.	→ Vehicle battery

### Things to note

The auxiliary heater runs on for a short time after it is switched off so that the fuel remaining in the system can be burnt off. The exhaust gases in the system can also be emitted.

### Remote control

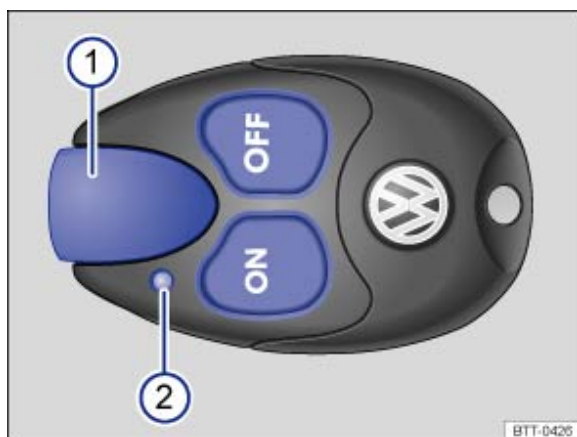


Fig. 184 Auxiliary heater: remote control





**Fig. 185** Auxiliary heater: battery cover for the remote control

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → [Introduction](#)

→ [Fig. 184](#) **Meaning**

<b>ON</b>	Switches on the auxiliary heater.
<b>OFF</b>	Switches off the auxiliary heater.
①	Aerial.
②	Indicator lamp.

Pressing the button on the remote control can switch on the auxiliary heater unintentionally. This also applies if you are outside the effective range of the control or the indicator lamp is flashing.

### Indicator lamp in the remote control

The indicator lamp in the remote control provides the user with a variety of information after each input:


Battery indicator lamp → <a href="#">Fig. 184</a> ②	Meaning
Lights up green for approximately 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heater has been switched on by pressing <b>ON</b> .
Lights up red for approximately 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heater has been switched off by pressing <b>OFF</b> .
Flashes green slowly for approximately 2 seconds (around four times per second)	The signal to switch on has not been received <sup>a)</sup> .

Battery indicator lamp → <a href="#">Fig. 184</a> ②	Meaning
Flashes green rapidly for approximately 2 seconds (around ten times per second)	The auxiliary heater is blocked. Possible reasons: the fuel tank is nearly empty, the vehicle battery is weak or there is a fault.
Flashes red for approximately 2 seconds (around four times per second)	The signal to switch off has not been received <sup>a)</sup> .
Lights up orange for approximately 2 seconds, then turns green/red.	The battery in the remote control is weak. However, the switch on/off signal has still been received.
Lights up orange for approximately 2 seconds, then turns green/red.	The battery in the remote control is weak. The switch on/off signal has not been received.
Flashes orange for approximately 5 seconds.	The battery in the remote control is discharged. The switch on/off signal has not been received.

### Replacing the battery for the remote control


If the indicator lamp in the remote control → [Fig. 184](#) ② does not light up when the button is pressed, the battery in the remote control should be changed soon.

The battery is located on the rear side of the remote control underneath a cover.

- To open the cover, use a flat object (e.g. a coin) to turn the slot against the direction of the arrow to the mark → [Fig. 185](#).
- Remove the batteries.
- Fit new battery. When changing the batteries, ensure that they are inserted correctly (poles) and that they are the same type → .
- Fit battery cover and turn in the direction of the arrow until it reaches the mark denoting its starting position.

## Range

The receiver is in the vehicle interior. The remote control key has a range of several hundred metres when the battery is fully charged. Obstacles between the remote control key and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and a flat battery in the remote control key can considerably reduce the range of the remote control.

An optimal range is achieved if the remote control is held vertically with the aerial → [Fig. 184](#)  at the top. Do not hold the aerial with your fingers or the palm of your hand.

The distance between the remote control and the vehicle must be *at least* 2 metres.

### NOTICE

- **The remote control contains electronic components. Protect the remote control from moisture, excessive vibration and direct sunlight.**
- **Unsuitable batteries can damage the remote control. Replace a discharged battery only with a new battery of the same voltage rating, size and specification.**



Discharged batteries must be disposed of in accordance with regulations governing the protection of the environment.



The battery in the remote control may contain perchlorate. Please comply with legislation regarding disposal.



Protect the remote control against inadvertent operation in order to prevent the auxiliary heater from being switched on unintentionally.

<sup>a)</sup> The remote control is out of range. Move closer to the vehicle and press the corresponding button again.

## Programming the auxiliary heater






First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The heating or the ventilation of the vehicle interior can be programmed to switch on for a set period.

**Before** programming check the setting for the day of the week in the menu **Auxiliary heating - Day of the week** → .


### Opening the Auxiliary heater menu in the instrument cluster

- In the main menu, select the submenu **Auxiliary heater** and press the **OK** button in the windscreen wiper lever.
- **OR:** press the arrow buttons  or  in the multifunction steering wheel until the menu **Auxiliary heater** is displayed.

Menu entries	Description
<b>Activate</b> <b>Deactivate</b>	<p>The setting whether and at what time the auxiliary heater switches itself on automatically. To do this, activate a preset time:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– The active preset time is marked with a .</li> <li>– <b>Only one</b> preset time can be active at one time. If a preset time is active, the display will show <b>Programming On</b>. If <i>no</i> preset time has been activated, the instrument cluster display will show <b>Programming Off</b>.</li> <li>– To change an active preset time you must either activate a different preset time or select <b>Deactivate</b>.</li> </ul>
<b>Preset time 1</b> <b>Preset time 2</b> <b>Preset time 3</b>	Set 3 different start times (hh.mm) which can then be selected in the menu option <b>Activate</b> . If the auxiliary heater is only

<b>Preset time 2</b> <b>Preset time 3</b>	to be switched on for a certain day of the week, you can select the day of the week in addition to the start time.
<b>Running time</b>	The running time is approximately 10 to 60 minutes and can be set in steps of 5 minutes.
<b>Mode</b>	Set whether the vehicle interior should be heated or ventilated when the auxiliary heater is switched on.
<b>Day of the week</b>	Set the current day of the week.
<b>Factory setting</b>	Resets the functions in this menu to the factory settings.
<b>Back</b>	Return to the main menu.

## Programming check

If a **preset time** has been activated, the indicator lamp in the immediate heat button  will light up for approximately 10 seconds after the ignition is switched off.

## WARNING

**Never program the auxiliary heating system so that is switched on and run in unventilated or enclosed areas. The fumes from the auxiliary heating system contain carbon monoxide, which is an odourless and colourless poisonous gas. Carbon monoxide can cause loss of consciousness and death.**

## Operation



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

The auxiliary heater exhaust system, located under the vehicle, must not be blocked by snow, mud or other items. The exhaust fumes must not be obstructed in any way. The emissions generated by the auxiliary heater are removed via an exhaust pipe fitted underneath the vehicle.

When the vehicle interior is being heated, the warm air is first directed towards the windscreen and then via the air vents to the vehicle interior. This is dependent on the ambient temperature. You can determine the flow of the air by adjusting the position of the vents, for example to face the side windows.

The temperature with which the auxiliary heater heats the vehicle interior could be higher if the temperature control of the air conditioner was set to the highest setting before the auxiliary heater was switched on. This depends also on the ambient temperature.

Depending on the engine fitted in the vehicle, a second vehicle battery may be fitted in the luggage compartment of vehicles equipped with an auxiliary heater and this battery supplies the auxiliary heater with electricity.

### When is the auxiliary heater not switched on?

- The auxiliary heater requires approximately the same amount of electricity as the dipped beam headlights. If the charge level of the vehicle battery is low, the auxiliary heater will switch off automatically or cannot be switched on. This will prevent problems with starting the engine.
- Activation is for one heating period only. The preset time has to be activated for every start.



Operating noises can be heard if the auxiliary heater is switched on.



At high levels of humidity in the outside air, but at low temperatures, condensation from the air conditioning system may evaporate through the active auxiliary heater. If this is the case, steam may appear underneath the vehicle. The vehicle is not damaged.



The vehicle battery will discharge if the auxiliary heater runs several times in an extended period. Drive the vehicle for an appropriate distance in order to recharge the vehicle battery. As a rule of thumb, drive the vehicle for the length of time you ran the system.

## At the filling station

## Filling the tank

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Indicator lamps and fuel gauge](#)
- [Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85](#)
- [Filling the tank with natural gas](#)
- [Capacities](#)
- [Checks when filling the tank](#)

The fuel cap is located at the rear right-hand side of the vehicle.

Vehicles with a **natural gas engine** have 2 fuel tanks: one for natural gas and one for petrol → [Indicator lamps and fuel gauge](#) .

### Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views → [Exterior views](#)
- Fuel → [Fuel](#)
- Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue) → [Selective catalytic reduction \(AdBlue\)](#)
- Preparation for working in the engine compartment → [Preparation for working in the engine compartment](#)

## WARNING

Filling the tank incorrectly and incorrect handling of fuel can cause explosions, fire, serious burns and other injuries.

- Always ensure that the tank cap is closed properly to prevent the evaporation and spillage of fuel.
- Fuel is highly explosive and inflammable and can cause serious burns and other injuries.
- Fuel could spill out if the engine is not switched off or the filler nozzle is not fully inserted into the fuel filler neck when filling the tank. This could cause fire, explosions, serious burns and other injuries.
- When refuelling, the engine, auxiliary heater ( → [Auxiliary heater \(supplementary heating system\)](#) ) and the ignition must be switched off for safety reasons.
- When filling the tank, always switch off your mobile telephone and two-way radio or any other radio equipment. Electromagnetic radiation could generate sparks which could in turn start a fire.
- When filling the tank, never get into the vehicle. If in exceptional cases you have to enter the vehicle, close the door and touch a metal object before touching the filler nozzle again. This will remove any electrostatic charge from you. Failure to do so could generate a spark. Sparks could cause a fire when filling the tank.
- Never fill the tank or fill up a spare canister near open flames, sparks or glowing items (e.g. cigarettes).
- Electrostatic discharge and electromagnetic radiation must be avoided when filling the tank.
- Follow all applicable safety information provided by the filling station when filling the tank.
- Never spill fuel in the vehicle or in the luggage compartment.

## WARNING

For safety reasons, Volkswagen does not recommend carrying a spare fuel canister in the vehicle. Fuel could spill out of the full or empty canister and set alight. This is especially relevant in the event of an accident. This could cause explosions, fire and injuries.

- If, in exceptional circumstances, you have to transport a spare fuel canister, please note the following:
  - When refilling never place the canister in or on top of the vehicle, for example in the luggage compartment or on the boot lid. There may be an electrostatic charge during refilling causing the fuel fumes to ignite.
  - Always place the spare fuel canister on the ground.
  - When filling a spare fuel canister, place the filler nozzle as far as possible into the filler opening.
  - If the spare fuel canister is made of metal, the filler nozzle must have constant contact with the canister in order to avoid static charging.
  - Please follow all legislation concerning the use, stowage and transport of a spare fuel canister.
  - Please ensure that the spare fuel canister corresponds with the industry standard for example ANSI or ASTM F852-86.

## NOTICE

- Remove spilt fuel from all vehicle components as quickly as possible in order to avoid damage to the wheel housing, tyres and vehicle paint.
- Filling the tank with petrol in a vehicle fitted with a diesel engine or with diesel in vehicle equipped with a petrol engine can cause serious and expensive engine damage and damage to the fuel system that is not covered by any Volkswagen guarantee. If you have refilled using the incorrect fuel, do not start the engine under any circumstances. This also applies even if only a small amount of the incorrect fuel has been refilled. Seek expert assistance. These fuels can cause serious damage to the fuel system and to the engine itself if the engine is switched on.
- Vehicles with a diesel engine should under no circumstances be filled and driven with petrol, kerosene, heating oil or any other fuels that have not been clearly approved for diesel engines. Other fuels could cause extensive and expensive engine damage and damage to the fuel system which will not be covered by any Volkswagen guarantee.



Fuels can pollute the environment. Any spilt service fluids must be cleaned up and disposed of properly.



The tank flap cannot be opened manually. Seek expert assistance if necessary.

## Indicator lamps and fuel gauge





Fig. 186 In the instrument cluster: fuel gauge for petrol and diesel



Fig. 187 In the instrument cluster: natural gas fuel gauge

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

Lit up	Pointer position → Fig. 186	Possible cause →	Correction
	Red marking (arrow)	Fuel tank nearly empty. Reserve quantity is being used → <a href="#">Capacities</a> .	Fill the tank as soon as possible →  .
	–	The tank cap is not closed properly.	Stop the vehicle and close the tank flap properly.
	–	Vehicle running on natural gas.	–

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.

When the indicator lamp lights up, the supplementary heating system and fuel-powered auxiliary heater switch off automatically.

## Natural gas engines

The indicator lamp lights up, if **both** fuel types (petrol and natural gas) have reached the reserve level.

The indicator lamp lights up if the vehicle is running on natural gas.

The indicator lamp will go out once the natural gas tank is empty. The engine switches to petrol mode.

**Things to note:** If the vehicle is parked for an extended period directly after refuelling, it may well occur that the pointer for the natural gas engine does not indicate the fuel level shown directly after refuelling. This does not mean that there is a leak in the system, but rather that for technical reasons the pressure has been decreased in the natural gas tank following a cooling phase directly after refilling.

## WARNING

Driving the vehicle when the fuel level is too low could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- When the fuel level is too low, the fuel supply to the engine could be irregular, especially when driving up or down hills and inclines.
- The steering, all driver assist systems and brake assist systems will not function if the engine sputters or stops completely due to a lack of fuel or irregular fuel supply.

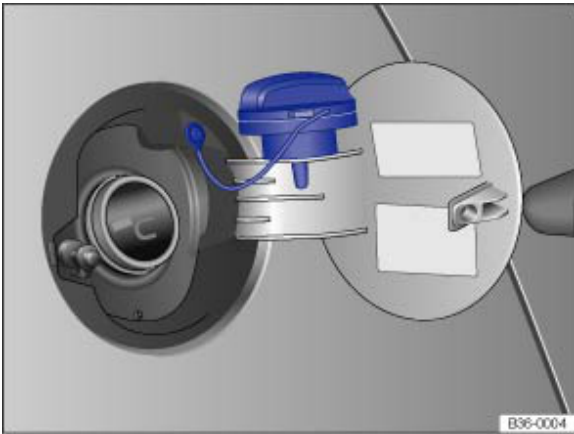
- **Always fill the tank when it is still 1/4 full. This reduces the risk of running out of fuel and breaking down.**

## ! NOTICE

- To avoid damage to your vehicle, always observe the indicator lamps and associated warning texts.
- Do not run the tank empty. Irregular filling periods could cause backfiring and allow unburnt fuel to enter the exhaust system. The catalytic converter or diesel particulate filter could be damaged as a result!

**i** The small arrow next to the petrol pump symbol → *Fig. 186* in the display instrument shows you the side of the vehicle on which the tank flap is located.

## Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85



**Fig. 188** Open tank flap with tank cap attached to the holder

**📖** First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → **⚠️ Introduction**

Switch off the engine, ignition, mobile telephone and auxiliary heater **before** filling the tank and leave them switched off during refilling.

### Opening the tank cap

The tank flap is at the rear of the vehicle on the right.

- Unlock the vehicle using the vehicle key or the **🔓** button in the driver door → *Central locking system* .
- The tank flap is at the rear of the vehicle on the right.
- Press at the rear of the tank flap and open.
- Turn the tank cap anti-clockwise to remove it and place it in the holder in the tank flap hinge → *Fig. 188* .

### Filling the tank

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is shown on a sticker on the inside of the tank flap → *Fuel* .


- The fuel tank is *full* when the properly operated automatic filler nozzle clicks off for the first time → **⚠️** .
- Do not continue filling the tank after it switches off. The expansion space in the fuel tank will otherwise fill up and the fuel could spill out. This could also happen when the fuel warms up and expands.

### Closing the tank cap

- Turn the tank cap clockwise into the fuel filler neck until you can hear it engage.
- Close the tank flap so that it engages audibly. The tank flap must be flush with the vehicle bodywork.



## After refuelling bioethanol vehicles

MultiFuel engines can be run either with petrol (RON 95) or with bioethanol E85 as well as with all mixtures of these two fuels → *Bioethanol (Ethylalcohol)*. The proportion of bioethanol contained in the fuel must not exceed 85% → . The procedure for refilling the vehicle is the same one used for refilling with petrol → *Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85*.

After refuelling with a bioethanol-petrol mixture, drive for at least five minutes so the engine can adapt optimally to the current mixture. During this period the idling engine speed can vary. During this period, do not drive at top speed, use high engine revs or depress the accelerator fully.

### WARNING

Do not continue filling the tank once the filler nozzle stops automatically. The fuel tank could be overfilled. This could cause fuel to splash out and overflow. This could cause fire, explosions and serious injuries.

### NOTICE

- Remove spilt fuel from the vehicle paint as quickly as possible in order to avoid damage to the wheel housing, tyres and vehicle paint.
- Always use the correct mixture for bioethanol in order to prevent damage to the engine and fuel system.



Spilt fuel can pollute the environment.

## Filling the tank with natural gas

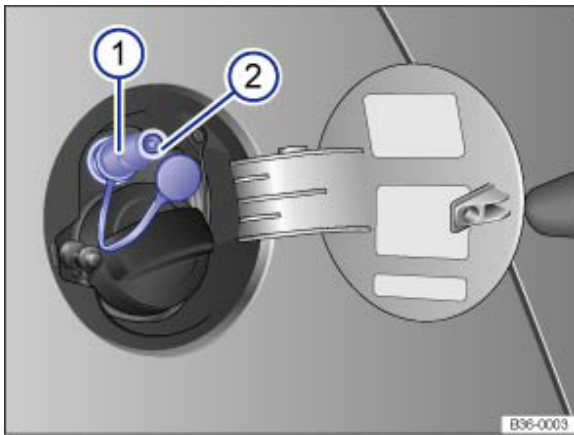




Fig. 189 With the tank flap open: gas filler neck ①, gas filler neck seal ②

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

Switch off the engine, ignition, mobile telephone and auxiliary heater **before** refuelling → .

Please read and follow the instructions for the natural gas refuelling system.

### Opening the tank cap

The gas filler neck is located under the tank flap next to the petrol filler neck.

- Unlock the vehicle using the vehicle key or the  button in the driver door → *Central locking system*.
- Press at the rear of the tank flap and open.

## Filling the tank

**Things to note:** at very high ambient temperatures, the overheating protection function for the natural gas refuelling system could switch off automatically.

- Remove the cap from the gas filler neck → [Fig. 189 ①](#) .
- Place the filler coupling for the refuelling system on the gas filler neck.
- The fuel tank is *full* when the compressor for the refuelling system switches off automatically.
- To end the refuelling procedure press the stop button on the refuelling system.


## Closing the tank cap


- Check whether sealing ring → [Fig. 189 ②](#) on the gas filler neck has slipped onto the filler coupling. Place the seal back in the gas filler neck as necessary.
- Push the cap onto the gas filler neck.
- Close the tank flap so that it engages audibly.


### WARNING

**Natural gas is highly explosive and inflammable. Failure to refuel properly with natural gas could result in accidents, serious burns and other injuries.**

- **Lock the fuel filler nozzle correctly before refuelling natural gas. Stop refuelling immediately if you start to smell gas.**

 The filling couplings for the natural gas refuelling systems can be of various different designs. Please ask for assistance from trained personnel if you are unsure of how to use the system.

 Noises which you may hear while refuelling are normal and do not indicate that the system is malfunctioning.

 The natural gas system in your vehicle is suitable for use with small compressors (slow fill) and large compressors (fast fill).

## Capacities

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

	Fuel tank capacity
<b>Petrol and diesel engines with front-wheel drive</b>	approx 70.0 l, of which approx. 8.0 l reserve.
<b>Petrol and diesel engines with four-wheel drive</b>	approx 68.0 l, of which approx. 8.0 l reserve.
<b>Natural gas engine <sup>a)</sup></b>	Natural gas: approx. 22.0 kg of which reserve max. 3.0 kg Petrol: approx. 31.0 l of which reserve approx. 5.0 l

<sup>a)</sup> The capacity depends on the performance and type of the natural gas refuelling system. The capacities indicated are based on a filling pressure of 200 bar.

## Checks when filling the tank

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

## Checklist

Never carry out any work on the engine or in the engine compartment if you are not familiar with the necessary procedures and the general safety requirements or only incorrect operating equipment and service fluids as well as unsuitable tools are available → [Preparation for working in the engine compartment](#) ! The work should be carried out by a qualified workshop if you are uncertain. Please ensure that the following points are checked regularly, preferably every time you fill the tank:

- ✓ Windscreen washer fluid level Windscreen wiper and washer Windscreen wipers Windscreen washer
- ✓ Engine oil level Engine oil Engine oil Engine compartment Engine oil\_5 Oil see Engine oil\_5
- ✓ Engine coolant level Coolant Coolant Engine compartment Coolant\_5 Engine coolant see Coolant\_5
- ✓ Brake fluid level Braking, stopping and parking Brakes Parking
- ✓ Tyre pressure Wheels and tyres Wheels and tyres Tyres see Wheels and tyres\_0

Vehicle lighting necessary for traffic safety ( Lights Lights ):

- Turn signals
- Side lights, dipped beam headlights and main beam headlights
- Tail light cluster
- Brake lights
- Rear fog light

Information about changing a bulb → [Changing bulbs](#) .

## Fuel

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Fuel types](#)
- [Petrol](#)
- [Diesel fuel](#)
- [Natural gas](#)
- [Bioethanol \(Ethylalcohol\)](#)
- [Information on fuel consumption](#)
- [Fuel consumption](#)
- [CO emissions](#)

The factory-fitted sticker on the inside of the tank flap indicates the correct fuel that is required for your individual vehicle.

### Additional information and warnings:

- ⇒ Booklet [Service schedule](#),
- Filling the tank → [Filling the tank](#)
- Engine management and exhaust system → [Engine management system and exhaust purification system](#)

### WARNING

Incorrect handling of fuel can cause explosions, fire, serious burns and other injuries.

- Fuel is highly explosive and inflammable.
- Never handle fuel near open flames, sparks or glowing items (e.g. cigarettes).
- Keep naked flames, hot parts and sparks at a safe distance.
- Switch off your mobile telephone or two-way radio when dealing with fuel. Electromagnetic radiation could generate sparks which could in turn start a fire.
- Avoid electrostatic discharge as well as electromagnetic radiation in the direct vicinity of fuels

- Avoid electrostatic discharge as well as electromagnetic radiation in the direct vicinity of fuels.

- **Never spill fuel in the vehicle or in the luggage compartment.**
- **Observe any valid safety information and legislation concerning the handling of fuels.**

## Fuel types



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

Different engines require different fuels. The factory-fitted sticker on the inside of the tank flap indicates which fuel is required for your individual vehicle.

Volkswagen recommends using fuels with a low sulphur content or which are sulphur-free in order to reduce fuel consumption and prevent damage to the engine.

Possible fuel types	Alternative terms	Further information
RON <sup>a)</sup> 91	Normal petrol, regular unleaded	→ <a href="#">Petrol</a>
RON <sup>a)</sup> 95	Super petrol, premium, unleaded 95	
RON <sup>a)</sup> 98	Super plus petrol, unleaded 98	
Diesel	–	→ <a href="#">Diesel fuel</a>
Natural gas	LNG, CNG	→ <a href="#">Natural gas</a>
Bioethanol	Ethanol, E85	→ <a href="#">Bioethanol (Ethylalcohol)</a>


<sup>a)</sup> RON

## Petrol



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

### Petrol types


Vehicles with a petrol engine must be run on unleaded petrol in compliance with the European standard EN 228 → .

Petrol types are categorised according to their octane number, e.g. 91, 95, 98 or 99 RON (RON = research octane number). The vehicle may be filled with petrol that has a higher octane number than the engine requires. This does not, however, provide any advantage as regards the fuel consumption or the engine output.


We recommend petrol with a low sulphur content or sulphur-free petrol for use with this engine. This reduces petrol consumption.

### Petrol additives

The quality of the petrol influences running behaviour, performance and service life of the engine. For this reason, fill the tank with quality petrol containing suitable petrol additives. These additives will help to prevent corrosion, keep the fuel system clean and prevent deposits from building up in the engine.

If good quality petrol with additives is not available, or if engine problems arise, the necessary petrol additives must be added to the petrol when filling the tank → .

Not all petrol additives are effective. The use of unsuitable petrol additives can cause considerable damage to the engine and catalytic converter. Metallic additives should be avoided at all times.

Petrol additives on sale that are intended to improve knock resistance or increase the octane number can also contain metallic additives → .

Volkswagen recommends genuine Volkswagen or Audi fuel additives for petrol engines. These additives and information on how to use them are available from your Volkswagen dealership.

 **NOTICE**

- Use only fuel that complies with EN 228 and has the correct octane number. Otherwise, the engine and the fuel system could suffer severe damage. The engine could also lose power or fail.
- The use of unsuitable petrol additives can cause considerable damage to the engine and catalytic converter.
- If, in an emergency, you have to use petrol with an octane number lower than the recommended one, drive at medium engine speeds and avoid high engine loading. Risk of engine damage. Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine loads. Otherwise, this may result in damage to the engine. Fill the tank with petrol with the correct octane number as soon as possible.
- Fuels which are identified at the fuel pump as containing metallic additives may not be used. LRP fuel (lead replacement petrol) also contains high concentrations of metallic additives. Danger of damage to engine!
- Just one tankful of leaded fuel or fuel with other metallic additives would seriously impair the efficiency of the catalytic converter and will also cause considerable damage to it.

## Diesel fuel


---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Diesel

Diesel fuel must comply with the European standard EN 590 (in Germany EN 590 or DIN 51628).

If you use diesel fuel with a high sulphur content, the service intervals are shorter ⇒ Booklet *Service schedule*, → . A Volkswagen dealership will be able to tell you which countries have diesel with a high sulphur content.

Do not mix fuel additives (thinners, or similar additives) with diesel fuel.

### Winter diesel

When using summer-grade diesel fuel, difficulties may be experienced at sub-zero temperatures because the fuel thickens due to wax separation. For this reason winter-grade diesel fuel is available in countries such as Germany during the cold months. It can be used at temperatures lower than -20°C (-4°F).

In countries with different climatic conditions the diesel fuel sold generally has different temperature characteristics. Check with a Volkswagen dealer or filling stations in the country concerned regarding the type of diesel fuels available.

It is not unusual for a cold diesel engine to be louder in cold temperatures than in warm weather. In addition, exhaust emissions may be tinged with blue while the engine starts and reaches operating temperature. The amount of exhaust fumes depends on the outside temperature.

### Filter pre-heater

Diesel vehicles are equipped with a filter pre-heater system. This ensures that the fuel system remains operational even up to approximately -24°C (-11.2°F) provided that winter-grade diesel which is safe up to -15°C (+5.0°F) is used.

However, if the fuel has waxed to such an extent that the engine will not start at temperatures below -24°C (-11.2°F), simply place the vehicle in a warm garage or workshop for a while.

### Supplementary heater

Vehicles fitted with a diesel engine may also be equipped with a fuel pre-heater. This heater is powered with fuel from the vehicle tank. In this case, odour and water vapour may escape from the vehicle, and there may be a greater quantity of smoke. This is quite normal when the system is in use, and does not indicate a damage or malfunction in the system.

The supplementary heater will be switched off automatically if the level in the fuel tank is low (reserve level).

## WARNING

Never use a start booster. Start boosters could explode or cause the engine to suddenly rev which can cause serious injuries and engine damage.

## NOTICE

- Your vehicle is not suitable for use with biodiesel and must not be filled up or driven with biodiesel. Failure to observe this point could result in damage to the fuel system and engine damage.
- Some diesel manufacturers blend biodiesel with diesel fuel in compliance with European Standard 590 or an equivalent standard (in Germany e.g. DIN 51628). This diesel is suitable for use in the vehicle and will not damage the engine and fuel system.
- The diesel engine has been developed for use with diesel fuel only. For this reason, petrol, heating oil or other unsuitable fuels may not be used. These fuels can cause serious damage to the fuel system and engine.
- The service life of the diesel particulate filter could be reduced considerably if diesel fuels with a high sulphur content are used. A Volkswagen dealership will be able to tell you which countries have diesel with a high sulphur content.

## Natural gas



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Natural gas quality and consumption


Natural gas is available in two grades: H-gas and L-gas.

H-gas has a higher calorific value and a lower nitrogen and carbon dioxide content. The higher the calorific value of the natural gas the lower the levels of consumption.

The calorific value and the nitrogen or carbon dioxide values may, however, vary within one quality group. For this reason, the vehicle consumption may vary when using natural gas of the same quality.

The vehicle engine management will automatically adapt to the different natural gas qualities. Both natural gas qualities can therefore be mixed in the fuel tank. You do not need to empty the tank before refuelling with a different grade.

### Safe handling of natural gas

If you can smell gas or think there may be a leak in the natural gas system →  :

- Stop the vehicle immediately.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Open all the doors to fully ventilate the vehicle.
- Extinguish cigarettes immediately.
- Remove items that could cause sparks or fire from the vehicle or switch them off.
- Do not drive on if you can still smell gas.
- Seek expert assistance. Have the fault rectified.

## WARNING

Ignoring the smell of gas in the vehicle or when refuelling can cause serious injuries.

- **Take any necessary action.**
- **Leave the area of risk.**
- **Contact the emergency services if necessary.**



Have the natural gas system checked regularly according to the service schedule by a qualified workshop.

## Bioethanol (Ethylalcohol)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → *Introduction*

Bioethanol E85 consists of 15% petrol (RON 95) and 85% bioethanol (ethylalcohol). Bioethanol E85 normally contains a red dye for identification.

When using the MultiFuel engine with bioethanol, the fuel consumption may rise by approximately a third in comparison to petrol, but the CO<sub>2</sub> emissions remain below those measured when petrol is used exclusively.

### Starting the engine at low outside temperatures

Bioethanol has poor cold-starting properties and it is not easy to start the engine at low temperatures. At outside temperatures of below -10°C (+14°F), the engine should be pre-warmed ( → *Starting and stopping the engine* ) or the quantity of petrol (RON 95) in the mix should be increased.

Outside temperature	Minimum engine pre-heating time:
Above -10°C (+14°F)	Engine pre-heating is not necessary.
Below -10°C (+14°F)	Pre-heat engine <b>for up to one hour.</b>
Below -15°C (+5°F)	Pre-heat engine <b>for at least one hour.</b>
Below -25°C (-13°F)	Pre-heat engine <b>for at least two hours.</b>



### NOTICE

- **Before parking the vehicle for an extended period, fill the tank with fuel with a high percentage of petrol. Bioethanol E85 could contain a small amount of contaminants that may cause corrosion.**
- **Volkswagen recommends that you fill the tank with petrol every 15,000 km to reduce the contaminants in the engine deposited by bioethanol E85.**

## Information on fuel consumption



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → *Introduction*

The figures quoted for fuel consumption and emissions do not refer to an individual vehicle. Their purpose is to enable comparisons to be made between various vehicle types. Fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions not only depend on the efficiency of the vehicle, but also on the way it is driven and other non-technical factors.

### Measuring fuel consumption

The vehicle consumption and emissions values were determined according to directive EG 715/2007 or EEC 80/1268 in the currently valid version and apply for the given vehicle kerb weight. The figures **do not** refer to an individual vehicle. Two measuring cycles are carried out on a rolling road test bed to calculate fuel consumption. The test criteria are as follows:

<b>Urban cycle</b>	The urban cycle starts with an engine cold start. Town driving at speeds between 0 and 50 km/h is then simulated.
	In the extra-urban cycle the car undergoes frequent acceleration and braking in all gears as in normal everyday driving. The

<b>Extra-urban cycle</b>	The extra-urban cycle is calculated with a weighting of around 10% for the urban cycle and 90% for the extra-urban cycle. The road speed ranges from 0 to 120 km/h.
<b>Combined cycle</b>	The combined consumption is calculated with a weighting of around 37% for the urban cycle and 63% for the extra-urban cycle.
<b>CO<sub>2</sub> emissions combined</b>	The exhaust gases are collected during both driving cycles (urban and extra-urban) to calculate the combined carbon dioxide emissions. The gas composition is then analysed to evaluate the CO <sub>2</sub> content and other emissions.



The kerb weight depends on the equipment fitted. This could slightly raise fuel consumption and the CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.



In practice, fuel consumption may vary from the figures determined according to European Commission Directive 715/2007 or EEC 80/1268.

## Fuel consumption



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

For reasons of vehicle registration and vehicle taxation, the fuel consumption values for some engines may vary from the information given in this manual for some countries.

### Petrol engines

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	Fuel consumption according to directive EC 715/2007 or EEC 80/1268		
			Urban cycle	Extra-urban cycle	Combined cycle
90 kW	CAXA	MG6	8.1 l/100 km <sup>e)</sup>	5.1 l/100 km <sup>e)</sup>	6.3 l/100 km <sup>e)</sup>
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 7	8.2 l/100 km <sup>b)</sup>	5.3 l/100 km <sup>b)</sup>	6.4 l/100 km <sup>b)</sup>
118 kW	CDAA	MG6	9.6 l/100 km	5.3 l/100 km	6.9 l/100 km
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 7	9.5 l/100 km	5.5 l/100 km	7.0 l/100 km
155 kW	CCZB	MG6	10.0 l/100 km	5.6 l/100 km	7.2 l/100 km
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 6	10.8 l/100 km	5.9 l/100 km	7.7 l/100 km
220 kW	BWS	DSG <sup>®</sup> 6 4MOTION	12.4 l/100 km	7.4 l/100 km	9.3 l/100 km

### Diesel engines

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	Fuel consumption according to directive EC 715/2007 or EEC 80/1268		
			Urban cycle	Extra-urban cycle	Combined cycle
77 kW with DPF	CAYC	MG6	5.2 l/100 km	3.8 l/100 km	4.3 l/100 km
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 7	5.5 l/100 km	4.1 l/100 km	4.6 l/100 km
77 kW BlueMotion with DPF		MG6	5.2 l/100 km	3.6 l/100 km	4.1 l/100 km
100 kW with DPF	CFFA	MG6	5.6 l/100 km	4.0 l/100 km	4.6 l/100 km
103 kW with DPF	CFFB	MG6	5.6 l/100 km <sup>c)</sup>	4.0 l/100 km <sup>c)</sup>	4.6 l/100 km <sup>c)</sup>
		MG6 4MOTION	6.4 l/100 km	4.6 l/100 km	5.3 l/100 km
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 6	6.3 l/100 km <sup>d)</sup>	4.5 l/100 km <sup>d)</sup>	5.2 l/100 km <sup>d)</sup>
125 kW with DPF	CFGB	MG6	5.4 l/100 km	4.1 l/100 km	4.6 l/100 km
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 6	6.3 l/100 km	4.6 l/100 km	5.3 l/100 km



		DSG®6 4MOTION	6.7 l/100 km	5.0 l/100 km	5.6 l/100 km
125 kW with PRS	CLLA	– <sup>e)</sup>	– l/100 km <sup>e)</sup>	– l/100 km <sup>e)</sup>	– l/100 km <sup>e)</sup>

### Natural gas engine

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	Fuel consumption according to directive EC 715/2007 or EEC 80/1268		
			Urban cycle	Extra-urban cycle	Combined cycle
110 kW <sup>f)</sup>	CDGA	MG6	Natural gas mode: 8.7 m <sup>3</sup> /100 km; 5.7 kg/100 km Petrol mode: 9.0 l/100 km	Natural gas mode: 5,3 m <sup>3</sup> /100 km; 3,5 kg/100 km Petrol mode: 5,4 l/100 km	Natural gas mode: 6.6 m <sup>3</sup> /100 km; 4.4 kg/100 km Petrol mode: 6.8 l/100 km
		DSG®7	Natural gas mode: 8.8 m <sup>3</sup> /100 km; 5.8 kg/100 km Petrol mode: 8.8 l/100 km	Natural gas mode: 5.4 m <sup>3</sup> /100 km; 3.6 kg/100 km Petrol mode: 5.6 l/100 km	Natural gas mode: 6.6 m <sup>3</sup> /100 km; 4.4 kg/100 km Petrol mode: 6.8 l/100 km

### E85 MultiFuel engine

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	Fuel consumption according to directive EC 715/2007 or EEC 80/1268		
			Urban cycle	Extra-urban cycle	Combined cycle
118 kW	CKMA	MG6	Ethanol mode: 12.1 l/100 km Petrol mode: 9.0 l/100 km	Ethanol mode: 7.3 l/100 km Petrol mode: 5.4 l/100 km	Ethanol mode: 9.0 l/100 km Petrol mode: 6.7 l/100 km
		DSG®7	Ethanol mode: 11.3 l/100 km Petrol mode: 8.7 l/100 km	Ethanol mode: 7.3 l/100 km Petrol mode: 5.5 l/100 km	Ethanol mode: 8.8 l/100 km Petrol mode: 6.7 l/100 km

a) For vehicles with start/stop system: urban cycle 7.8 l/100 km, extra urban cycle 4.9 l/100 km, combined cycle 5.9 l/100 km.

b) For vehicles with start/stop system: urban cycle 7.3 l/100 km, extra urban cycle 5.2 l/100 km, combined cycle 6.0 l/100 km.

c) In vehicles with exhaust emissions norm EU6: urban cycle 5.8 l/100 km, extra urban cycle 4.0 l/100 km, combined cycle 4.7 l/100 km.

d) In vehicles with exhaust emissions norm EU6: urban cycle 6.5 l/100 km, extra urban cycle 4.4 l/100 km, combined cycle 5.2 l/100 km.

e) Figures were not available at time of publication.

f) The consumption figures given refer to test fuel G20 (H-gas) with reference to calculation method 80/1268/EEC. Result may vary if L gas is used.

## CO<sub>2</sub> emissions



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  Introduction

### Petrol engines

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	CO <sub>2</sub> emissions
--------------	----	--------------	---------------------------

90 kW	CAXA	MG6	145 g/km <sup>a)</sup>
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 7	148 g/km <sup>a)</sup>
118 kW	CDAA	MG6	160 g/km
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 7	162 g/km
155 kW	CCZB	MG6	169 g/km
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 6	180 g/km
220 kW	BWS	DSG <sup>®</sup> 6 4MOTION	215 g/km

**Diesel engines**

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	CO <sub>2</sub> emissions
77 kW <b>with</b> DPF	CAYC	MG6	114 g/km
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 7	120 g/km
77 kW BlueMotion <b>with</b> DPF		MG6	109 g/km
100 kW <b>with</b> DPF	CFFA	MG6	119 g/km

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	CO <sub>2</sub> emissions
103 kW <b>with</b> DPF	CFFB	MG6	119 g/km <sup>b)</sup>
		MG6 4MOTION	137 g/km
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 6	135 g/km
125 kW <b>with</b> DPF	CFGB	MG6	120 g/km
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 6	139 g/km
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 6 4MOTION	147 g/km
125 kW <b>with</b> PRS	CLLA	– <sup>c)</sup>	– g/km <sup>c)</sup>

**Natural gas engine**

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	CO <sub>2</sub> emissions
110 kW	CDGA	MG6	Natural gas mode: 117 g/km Petrol mode: 157 g/km
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 7	Natural gas mode: 119 g/km Petrol mode: 158 g/km

**E85 MultiFuel engine**

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	CO <sub>2</sub> emissions
118 kW	CKMA	MG6	Ethanol mode: 148 g/km Petrol mode: 156 g/km
		DSG <sup>®</sup> 7	Ethanol mode: 144 g/km Petrol mode: 155 g/km

<sup>a)</sup> For vehicles with start/stop system: 138 g/km

b) In vehicles with exhaust emissions norm EU6: 123 g/km.

c) Figures were not available at time of publication.

## Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue)

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)
- [Information on AdBlue](#)
- [Refilling AdBlue](#)

The AdBlue level should be checked within the scope of the service work ⇒ [BookletService schedule](#), .

### Additional information and warnings:

- Luggage compartment → [Luggage compartment](#)
- Fuel → [Fuel](#)
- Wheels and tyres → [Wheels and tyres](#)
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → [Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)

### WARNING

If the AdBlue level is too low, the vehicle cannot be restarted after the ignition has been switched off. An emergency start and starting with jump leads is also not possible.

- Refill AdBlue at the latest when the remaining distance you are able to travel reaches approximately 1000 km (600 miles).
- Never allow the AdBlue tank to run empty.

### WARNING

AdBlue is an irritant and corrosive fluid that can damage the skin, eyes and breathing passages upon contact.

- If AdBlue gets into the eyes or onto the skin, immediately wash the area with lots of water for at least 15 minutes and consult a doctor.
- If AdBlue is swallowed, immediately rinse the mouth out with lots of water for at least 15 minutes. Do not force any vomiting unless instructed to do so by a doctor. Seek medical assistance immediately.



### NOTICE









AdBlue can corrode surfaces such as painted vehicle parts, plastics, clothing and carpets. Remove any spilt AdBlue as quickly as possible with a damp cloth and plenty of cold water.

- If the AdBlue has already formed crystals, use warm water and a sponge to remove.

## Warning lamps and indicator lamps

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Lit up	Possible cause → 	Correction
	The engine cannot be restarted! AdBlue level too low.	Park the vehicle in a suitable, flat location and refill the minimum amount of AdBlue → <a href="#">Refilling AdBlue</a> .

 with 	<b>The engine cannot be restarted!</b> Fault in the AdBlue system.	Go to a qualified workshop. The system should be checked.
	AdBlue level is low.	Refill AdBlue before the kilometres displayed drop to zero → <a href="#">Refilling AdBlue</a> . Volkswagen recommends that this be carried out by a qualified workshop.
 with 	AdBlue system faulty or not refilled using norm-standard AdBlue.	Go to a qualified workshop. The system should be checked.
	AdBlue level is low.	Refill AdBlue before the kilometres displayed drop to zero → <a href="#">Refilling AdBlue</a> . Volkswagen recommends that this be carried out by a qualified workshop.
 with 	AdBlue system faulty or not refilled using norm-standard AdBlue.	Go to a qualified workshop. The system should be checked.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.

## WARNING

Failure to observe the illuminated warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore warning lamps and text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

## NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Information on AdBlue

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)



In vehicles with selective catalytic reduction, an additive (AdBlue) is injected into the exhaust system upstream of a special catalytic converter. This reduces nitrogen oxides emissions.

The AdBlue consumption figures depend on the individual driving style, the system's operating temperature and the ambient temperature that the vehicle is operated in.

AdBlue is stored in a separate tank in the vehicle and should be refilled during a service. The AdBlue tank has a capacity of approximately 17 litres.

As of a remaining distance of approximately 2,400 km, the instrument cluster display will indicate that the AdBlue must be refilled → [Refilling AdBlue](#) . If the refill request is ignored, it will not be possible to start the engine again later → [Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#) .

Volkswagen recommends that this be carried out by a qualified workshop. If you cannot go to a qualified workshop, you should refill the tank with at least 5.7 litres of AdBlue. Only the AdBlue approved by Volkswagen expressly for the vehicle should be refilled.

As soon as the warning lamps  and  light up together, there is a fault. Volkswagen recommends consulting the nearest specialist workshop.

The AdBlue® trademark is held by the German Association of the Automobile Industry (VDA) in the USA, Germany, the European Union and other countries.

## Refilling AdBlue

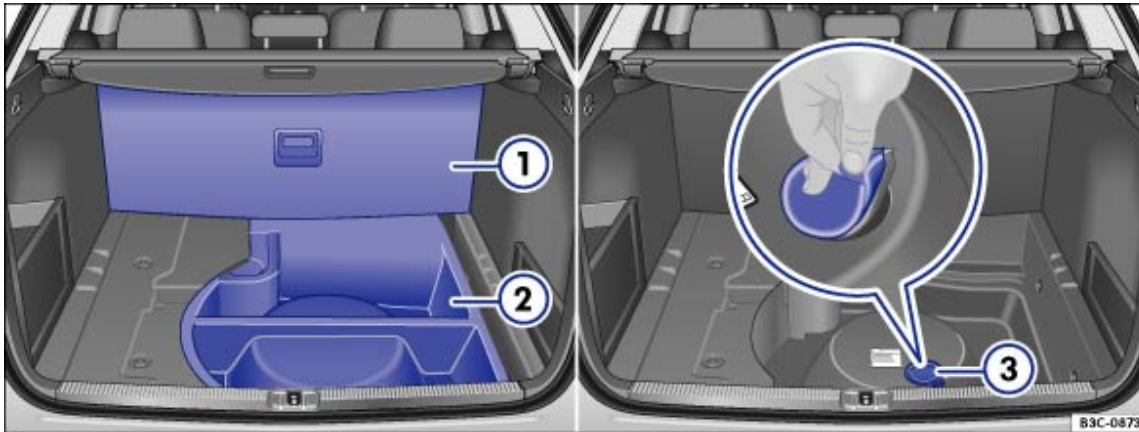


Fig. 190 Luggage compartment with foam rubber component and AdBlue tank

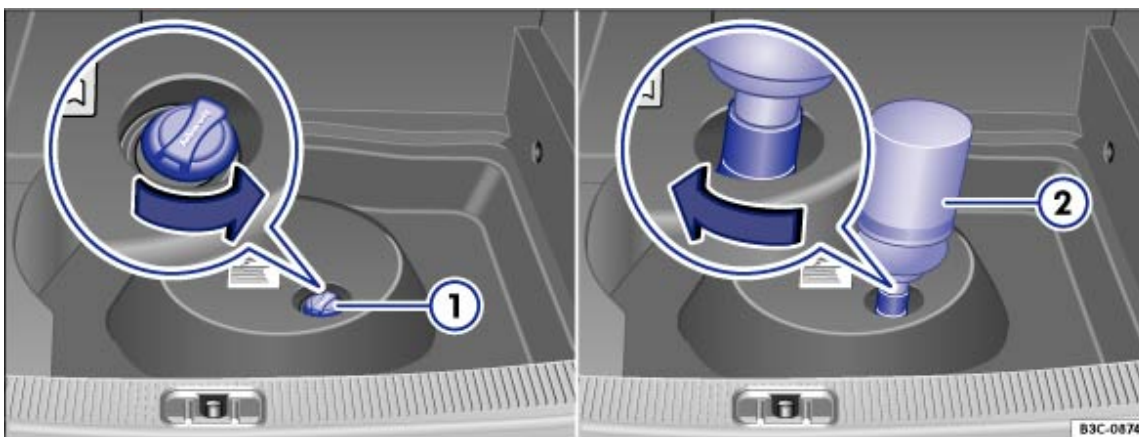


Fig. 191 AdBlue tank with filler neck tank cap and refill bottle

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

To refill AdBlue, the vehicle must be on a level surface and, for example, not with one side up on a kerb or a slope. If the vehicle is not standing level, the tank level gauge may not detect the refill quantity.

### Opening the tank filler neck

- Open the boot lid.
- Lift up or push back the floor covering → Fig. 190 ① .
- Remove the foam rubber component → Fig. 190 ② .
- Remove the stopper → Fig. 190 ③ from the AdBlue tank.
- Unscrew the cap of the tank filler neck → Fig. 191 ① anti-clockwise.

### Refilling AdBlue

**Use only Volkswagen-approved AdBlue that complies with the standard ISO 22241-1. Use original packages only.**

- Please read the manufacturer's notes and information on the refill bottle.
- Observe the expiry date.

- Remove the screw top of the refill bottle.
- Place the neck of the refill bottle → Fig. 191 ② on the tank filler neck and turn it clockwise hand-tight.
- Push the refill bottle towards the filler neck, press and hold down.
- **Refill at least 5.7 litres of AdBlue.** A smaller amount of refill is insufficient.
- Wait until the contents of the refill bottle have entered the AdBlue tank. Do not crumple up or damage the refill bottle!
- Unscrew the refill bottle anti-clockwise and lift it carefully up and out → !.
- When the AdBlue tank is full, AdBlue will no longer flow out of the bottle and into the tank.

### Closing the tank filler neck

- Screw the cap onto the filler neck → Fig. 191 ① clockwise until it engages.
- Carefully replace the stopper → Fig. 190 ③ .
- Insert foam rubber component.
- Fold down or pull the floor covering forward.

### Tasks before continuing journey

- After refilling, switch on the ignition **only**.
- Leave the ignition switched on for at least 30 seconds to allow the system to detect the refill procedure.
- Do not start the engine until the 30 seconds have elapsed!



## WARNING

AdBlue should only be kept in sealed original containers in a safe place.

- **Never store AdBlue in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers may not know that they contain AdBlue.**
- **AdBlue must be stored out of the reach of children.**



## NOTICE

- **Only the AdBlue approved expressly by Volkswagen may be used. The use of any other AdBlue could cause engine damage!**
- **Never mix water or additives with AdBlue. Any damage caused by mixing in water or additives would not be covered by the factory warranty.**
- **Never fill AdBlue in the diesel tank! Otherwise, this may result in damage to the engine.**
- **Do not transport the refill bottle in the vehicle permanently. The bottle may develop a leak following changes in temperature and damage and the AdBlue may damage the vehicle interior.**



The refill bottle must be disposed of in accordance with regulations governing the protection of the environment.



Suitable AdBlue refill bottles are available from a Volkswagen dealership.

# Cleaning and maintenance

## In the engine compartment

### Preparation for working in the engine compartment


#### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Warning lamp](#)
- [Preparing the vehicle for working in the engine compartment](#)
- [Opening and closing the bonnet](#)

Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, always park the vehicle on a level and stable surface.

The engine compartment of a motor vehicle is a hazardous area. Never carry out any work on the engine or in the engine compartment if you are not familiar with the necessary procedures and the general safety requirements or only incorrect operating equipment and service fluids as well as unsuitable tools are available → . The work should be carried out by a qualified workshop if you are uncertain. Serious injuries can be caused if work is carried out incorrectly.

#### **Additional information and warnings:**

- Exterior views → [Exterior views](#)
- Windscreen wiper/washer → [Windscreen wiper and washer](#)
- Starting and stopping the engine → [Starting and stopping the engine](#)
- Brake fluid → [Braking, stopping and parking](#)
- Checks when filling the tank → [Filling the tank](#)
- Engine oil → [Engine oil](#)
- Engine coolant → [Coolant](#)
- Battery → [Vehicle battery](#)
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → [Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)

 **WARNING**

Unintentional vehicle movements during service work can cause serious injury.

- Never work underneath a vehicle if it is not secured against rolling away. If you are working underneath the vehicle while the wheels are on the ground, the vehicle must be on a level, the wheels must be blocked and the vehicle key must be removed from the ignition lock.
- If you have to work underneath the vehicle, use suitable stands to provide extra support for the vehicle. The vehicle jack is not sufficient for this task which can lead to serious accidents.
- The start/stop system must have been deactivated.

 **WARNING**

The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous area. Serious injuries can be sustained here.

- The utmost care and attention must be paid when carrying out any work and you must follow the general safety rules. Never take any risks.
- Never do any work on the engine or in the engine compartment unless you know exactly how to carry out the jobs. If you are uncertain of what to do, the work should be carried out by a qualified workshop. Serious injuries can result from work that has not been carried out properly.
- Never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Hot steam or coolant can cause serious burns. Always wait until you can no longer see or hear steam or coolant coming from the engine compartment.
- Always allow the engine to cool down before opening the bonnet.
- Hot parts in the engine or the exhaust system can burn your skin.
- The following points should be noted before opening the bonnet once it has cooled down.
  - Switch on the electronic parking brake and move the selector lever to position P or move the manual gear lever to the neutral position.
  - Remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock.
  - Always keep children away from the engine compartment and never leave the vehicle unattended.
- The engine cooling system is under pressure when the engine is hot. Never open the cap of the coolant expansion tank when the engine is hot. Coolant may spray out and cause serious burns and other injuries.
  - Turn the cap slowly and very carefully anti-clockwise while exerting some downwards pressure on the cap.
  - Always protect the face, hands and arms from hot coolant or steam with a large, thick cloth.
- When refilling, do not spill any service fluids on engine components or on the exhaust system. The spilt service fluids could start a fire.

 **WARNING**

High voltages in the electrical system can cause electric shocks, burns, serious injuries and death!

- Never short circuit the electric system. The vehicle battery could explode.
- Please note the following points in order to reduce the risk of an electric shock and serious injuries while the engine is running or being started:
  - Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.
  - Never touch the electrical cable and connections of the gas discharge lamp.



**! WARNING**

There are rotating components in the engine compartment that can cause serious injury.

- Never place your hand near these components or in the radiator fan. Touching the rotary blades could result in serious injuries. The fan is temperature-controlled and could start automatically, even when the engine has been switched off and the vehicle key has been removed from the ignition.
- If any work has to be performed when the engine is started or with the engine running, there is an additional, potentially fatal, safety risk from the rotating parts such as the drive belts, alternator, radiator fan, etc., and from the high-voltage ignition system. Always be particularly careful.
  - Always ensure that no body parts, jewellery, ties, loose items of clothing or long hair can be caught up in rotating engine components. Before starting work, remove any jewellery and ties, tie up long hair and pull in clothes tightly in order to avoid being caught up in the engine compartment.
  - Always depress the accelerator carefully and never without due consideration. The vehicle could move, even if the parking brake is applied.
- Always make sure you have not left any objects, such as cleaning cloths and tools, in the engine compartment. Any forgotten items could cause functional errors, engine damage and fires.


**! WARNING**

Operating fluids and some materials in the engine compartment are highly flammable and can cause fires and serious injuries!

- Never smoke in the vicinity of the engine compartment.
- Never work near naked flames or sparks.
- Never spill fluids onto the engine. They could ignite on hot engine components and hence cause injuries.
- Please note the following when carrying out any work on the fuel system or the electrical system:
  - Always disconnect the vehicle battery. Ensure that the vehicle is unlocked when the vehicle battery is disconnected as otherwise the anti-theft alarm will be activated.
  - Never work in the direct proximity of heating systems, water heaters or any other open flames.
- Always have a fully functional and tested fire extinguisher to hand.



**! NOTICE**

When refilling or changing operating fluids please ensure that the fluids are in the correct container. Incorrect operating fluids can cause serious functional problems and create function errors and cause engine damage!

 Service fluids leaks are harmful to the environment. For this reason, make regular checks on the ground underneath your vehicle. If spots of oil or other fluids are detected on the ground, the vehicle should be inspected by a qualified workshop. Any spilt service fluids must be disposed of properly.

**Warning lamp**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Lit up	Possible cause	Correction
	Bonnet not closed properly	 <b>Do not drive on!</b> Close bonnet.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.

A warning lamp  appears in the instrument cluster display if the bonnet is open or not properly closed.

Depending on vehicle equipment levels, a symbol may be shown in the instrument cluster instead of a warning lamp. This indicates that the bonnet is open or not properly closed. These symbols are also visible when the ignition is switched off. The display will go out approximately 15 seconds after the vehicle has been locked with all its doors closed.

## WARNING

Failure to observe the illuminated warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore warning lamps and text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.









## Preparing the vehicle for working in the engine compartment



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  *Introduction*

### Checklist

The following jobs should always be carried out in the given order before working in the engine compartment →  :

-  Park the vehicle on a level and stable surface.
-  Depress and hold the brake pedal until the engine has stopped.
-  Switch on the electronic parking brake Braking, stopping and parking Brakes Parking .
-  Select the neutral position or move the selector lever to P Changing gear Changing gear Automatic gearbox see Automatic gearbox\_0 Automatic gearbox see Changing gear\_0 Automatic gearbox Manual gearbox see Changing gear\_0 Manual gearbox .
-  Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition Starting and stopping the engine Engine and ignition Ignition see Engine and ignition\_0 .
-  Allow the engine to cool down.
-  Children and other persons should be kept well away from the engine compartment.
-  Ensure that the vehicle cannot roll away unexpectedly.

## WARNING

Ignoring any of the points on this important safety checklist can lead to severe injuries.

- Follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.

## Opening and closing the bonnet



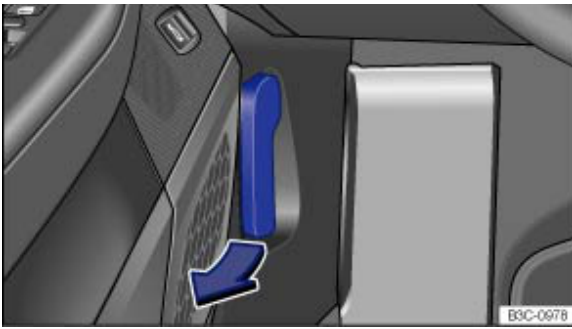


Fig. 192 In the footwell on the driver side: lever for releasing the bonnet



Fig. 193 Release lever for opening the bonnet above the radiator grille



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → ⚠ *Introduction*

### Opening the bonnet

- Please ensure that the windscreen wiper arms are lying on the windscreen before opening the bonnet → ⚠.
- Pull the release lever in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 192. The bonnet is released from its lock by a spring mechanism → ⚠.
- Lift the bonnet at the release lever → Fig. 193 (arrow) and open fully. The bonnet is held in the open position by the gas-filled strut.

### Closing the bonnet

- To close the bonnet, pull it down to overcome the gas strut pressure → ⚠.
- Let the bonnet drop into the catches from a height of about 30 cm – *do not* press it down!

If the bonnet is not closed, open it again and close it properly.

The bonnet will be flush with the body parts around it once it has been closed properly. The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster will no longer be lit up → *Warning lamp*.

## ⚠ WARNING

If the bonnet is not closed properly, it could open suddenly while you are driving and completely obscure your view of the road. This

could lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- After closing the bonnet, always check that it is properly secured. The bonnet must be flush with the surrounding body panels.
- If you notice that the bonnet is not closed properly while the vehicle is in motion, stop the vehicle as soon as possible and close the bonnet.
- Therefore the bonnet should only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in its path.

## NOTICE

- The bonnet should only be opened when the wiper arms are flush to the windscreen in order to avoid damage to the bonnet and the windscreen wiper arms.
- Always fold the windscreen wiper arms back onto the windscreen before driving away.

## Engine oil

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Warning lamps and indicator lamps*
- *Engine oil specification*
- *Checking the engine oil level and refilling engine oil*
- *Engine oil consumption*
- *Changing engine oil*


### Additional information and warnings:

- ⇒ Booklet *Service schedule*,
- Preparation for working in the engine compartment → *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

## WARNING

Incorrect handling of engine oil can cause serious burns and other injuries.

- Always wear protective eye covering when handling engine oil.
- Engine oil is poisonous and must be stored out of the reach of children.
- Engine oil must be kept in the closed original container. This also applies to used oil until it is disposed of.
- Never use empty food containers, bottles or other containers to store engine oil as other people may then drink the engine oil.
- Regular contact with engine oil can damage the skin. Skin that has been in contact with engine oil should be washed thoroughly with water and soap.
- Engine oil becomes extremely hot when the engine is running and can scald skin severely. Always allow the engine to cool down.





 Leaking or spilt engine oil can pollute the environment. Spilt operating fluids must be collected and disposed of properly and with respect for the environment.

### Warning lamps and indicator lamps

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  *Introduction*

! It up | Possible cause

| Correction

Lit up	Possible cause	Correction
	Engine oil level is too low.	Switch off the engine. Check the engine oil level → <a href="#">Checking the engine oil level and refilling engine oil</a> .
Flashes	Possible cause	Correction
	Engine oil pressure is too low.	 <b>Do not drive on!</b> Switch off the engine. Check the engine oil level. – <i>Do not</i> drive on or remain at idling speed if the warning lamp is flashing, even if the engine oil level is correct. The engine could otherwise be damaged. Seek expert assistance.
	Engine oil system is faulty.	Go to a qualified workshop. The engine oil sensor should be checked.

## WARNING

Failure to observe the illuminated warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore warning lamps and text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

## NOTICE


Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Engine oil specification

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The engine oil used must correspond exactly to specifications.

The correct engine oil is important for the function and service life of the engine. A special high quality multigrade oil has been filled at the factory and this can normally be used as an all-season oil.

If possible, use only Volkswagen-approved engine oil →  . To maintain the LongLife Service, only approved LongLife engine oil in accordance with the corresponding VW standard may be refilled ( ). The engine oils listed are **multigrade high-lubricity oils**.

Engine oils are constantly being developed and improved. A Volkswagen dealer is always kept up to date on innovations. Volkswagen therefore recommends having engine oil changes done by a Volkswagen dealer.

Engines	EC	Engine oil specifications	
		with LongLife service (QG1)	with service intervals dependent on time / distance travelled (QG0, QG2, QG3)
All petrol engines	CAXA, CDAA, CCZB, BWS	VW 504 00	VW 502 00

Engines	EC	Engine oil specifications	
		with LongLife service (QG1)	with service intervals dependent on time / distance travelled (QG0, QG2, QG3)

			Approved (QG2, QG3)
All diesel engines <b>with</b> diesel particulate filter	CFFA, CFFB, CFGB, CAYC	VW 507 00	VW 507 00
All diesel engines <b>with</b> particle reduction system	CLLA	–	VW 505 01
All diesel engines <b>without</b> diesel particulate filter	CFFB	VW 507 00	VW 505 01
E85 MultiFuel engines	CKMA	–	VW 502 00
Natural gas engines	CDGA	–	VW 502 00

### ! NOTICE

- Only those engine oil specifications that have been approved for use with the engine should be used. The use of other engine oils could cause engine damage!
- Do not add any additional lubricants to the engine oil. Any damage caused by the use of such additives would not be covered by the factory warranty.

## Checking the engine oil level and refilling engine oil

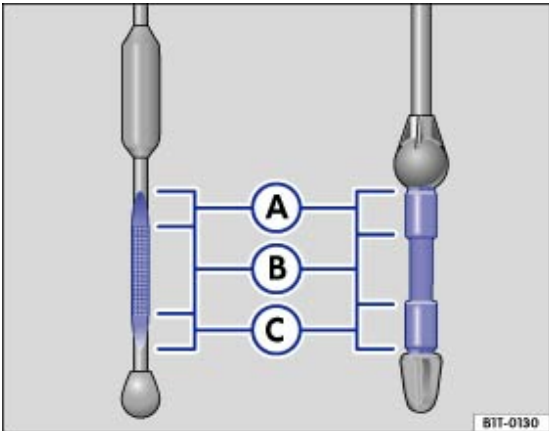



Fig. 194 Oil dipstick with markings



Fig. 195 In the engine compartment: engine oil filler cap

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

## Checklist

Carry out the steps in the given order →  :

- ✓ Park the vehicle, with the engine at operating temperature, on a level surface to ensure that the engine oil reading is correct.
  - ✓ Switch off the engine and wait a few minutes for the engine oil to flow back into the sump.
  - ✓ Open the bonnet Additional information and warnings:.
  - ✓ Identify the engine oil filler cap and oil dipstick. The engine oil filler opening bears the symbol on the cap and the oil dipstick has a coloured handle. If it is unclear where the cap and dipstick are located, please contact a qualified workshop.
  - ✓ Pull the dipstick out of the guide tube and wipe off with a clean cloth.
  - ✓ Insert the oil dipstick in the guide tube again as far as it will go. If there is a marking on the oil dipstick, this marking must fit in the corresponding groove at the top end of the guide tube when inserting.
- Pull the dipstick out again and read the engine oil level on the dipstick as follows: Ⓐ: do not refill oil . Proceed to step 15. Ⓑ: oil can be refilled (approx. 0.5 l). Proceed to step 8 or 15. Ⓒ: oil must be refilled (approx. 1.0 l). Proceed to step 8.
- ✓ After reading the oil level, push the oil dipstick back into the guide tube as far as it will go.
  - ✓ Unscrew the engine oil filler opening cap .
  - ✓ Only the engine oil approved by Volkswagen expressly for this engine should be refilled gradually in small quantities (no more than 0.5 l) .
  - ✓ In order to avoid overfilling, wait for approximately one minute after each refill step to allow the engine oil to flow into the oil sump up to the marking on the engine oil dipstick.
  - ✓ Read the engine oil level from the dipstick again before refilling with a further small quantity of engine oil. Never overfill engine oil .
  - ✓ After the refilling procedure, the engine oil level should be at least in the centre of area Ⓑ , but never above section Ⓐ .
  - ✓ After refilling, screw the engine oil filler cap back on correctly.
  - ✓ Reinsert the oil dipstick correctly in the guide tube as far as it will go.
  - ✓ Close the bonnet correctly Additional information and warnings:.


## WARNING

Engine oil can ignite if it comes into contact with hot engine components. It can cause serious fires, burns and other serious injuries.

- If engine oil is spilt on cold engine parts it can heat up and ignite when the engine is running.
- Always ensure that the engine oil filler cap is securely tightened after refilling, and that the dipstick is properly inserted back into the guide tube. This will prevent the engine oil from draining out on to hot engine components when the engine is running.

## NOTICE

- Do not start the engine if the engine oil level is above area → Fig. 194 Ⓐ . Seek expert assistance. The catalytic converter and the engine could otherwise be damaged.
- When refilling or changing operating fluids please ensure that the fluids are in the correct container. Incorrect operating fluids can cause serious functional problems and create function errors and cause engine damage.

 The engine oil level must never be above area → Fig. 194 Ⓐ . Otherwise oil can be drawn in through the crankcase breather and escape into the atmosphere via the exhaust system.

## Engine oil consumption

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  Introduction

Engine oil consumption will be different from engine to engine and can change during the working life of an engine.

Depending on how you drive and the conditions in which the car is used, oil consumption can be up to 1.0 litre/2,000 km – and is likely to be higher for the first 5,000 km for new vehicles. For this reason, the engine oil level must be checked at regular intervals, preferably when filling the tank and before a long journey.

When the engine is working hard the oil level must be kept within area → [Fig. 194 A](#) , for instance during long motorway cruising in summer, trailer towing or climbing on mountain passes.

## Changing engine oil



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

The engine oil must be changed regularly in accordance with the data given in the service schedule.

The engine oil and filter change should always be carried out by a qualified workshop due to the special tools and knowledge required, this also applies to the disposal of used oil. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

More details on the service intervals can be found in the service schedule.

Additives in the engine oil can cause new engine oil to discolour quickly. This is normal and does not mean that the engine oil should be changed more frequently.

### **WARNING**

**If you have to, in exceptional cases, carry out an oil change yourself in the vehicle, please note the following points:**

- **Always wear eye protection.**
- **Always allow the engine to cool down completely to avoid burns.**
- **Keep your arms horizontal when removing the oil drain plug with your fingers to help prevent oil from running down your arm.**
- **Use a suitable container when draining the used oil. It has to be large enough to hold at least all the engine oil.**
- **Never store engine oil in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers may not know that they contain engine oil.**
- **Engine oil is poisonous and must be stored out of the reach of children.**



Before changing the engine oil, first find an address where old oil can be disposed of properly.




Used oil must be disposed of in accordance with regulations governing the protection of the environment. Never dispose of old oil in locations such as gardens, woods, sewerage systems, on streets and roads, or in rivers and waterways.

## Coolant

### **Introduction**

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Warning lamp and coolant temperature display](#)
- [Coolant specification](#)
- [Checking coolant level and refilling coolant](#)

Never carry out any work on the engine coolant system if you are not familiar with the necessary procedures and if only unsuitable tools as well as incorrect operating equipment and fluids are available →  ! The work should be carried out by a qualified workshop if you are uncertain. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Serious injuries can be caused if work is carried out incorrectly.

### **Additional information and warnings:**

- Towing a trailer → [Towing a trailer](#)
- Preparation for working in the engine compartment → [Preparation for working in the engine compartment](#)




- Repairation for working in the engine compartment → *Repairation for working in the engine compartment*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

## ⚠ WARNING

### Engine coolant is toxic!

- Engine coolant should only be kept in sealed original containers in a safe place.
- Never store engine coolant in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers may then drink the engine coolant.
- The engine coolant must be stored out of the reach of children.
- Please note that the percentage of the correct coolant additive must correspond to the lowest outside temperature that the vehicle is expected to be operated in.
- At extremely cold outside temperatures, the coolant could freeze, causing the vehicle to breakdown. Vehicle occupants with insufficient winter clothing could then freeze to death as the heating will then also no longer function.

 Coolant and coolant additives can pollute the environment. Spilt operating fluids must be collected and disposed of properly and with respect for the environment.

## Warning lamp and coolant temperature display

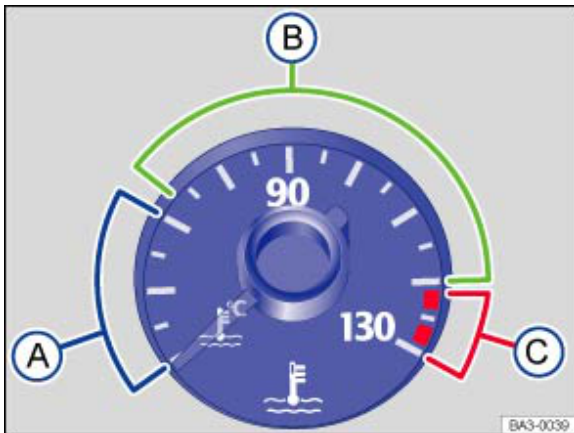








Fig. 196 Coolant temperature display in instrument cluster: Ⓐ cold; Ⓑ normal; Ⓒ warning


 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  *Introduction*

In normal driving conditions, the needle will be in the middle section of the scale. The temperature may also rise when the engine is working hard, especially at high ambient temperatures.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.

Lit up	Pointer position → Fig. 196	Possible cause	Correction
	Ⓒ Warning area	Coolant temperature too high.	<b>Do not drive on!</b> Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so. Stop the engine, let the engine cool down until the needle is back in the normal area. Check the coolant level → <i>Checking coolant level and refilling coolant</i> .
	Ⓑ Normal area	Coolant level too low.	After the engine has cooled down, check the coolant level and refill engine coolant if the level is too low → <i>Checking coolant level and refilling coolant</i> .

			I here is a fault if the coolant level is correct.
	–	Fault in the coolant system.	 <b>Do not drive on!</b> Seek expert assistance.
	–	Engine coolant temperature is too low in vehicles with natural gas engine.	Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine loads.
–	Ⓐ Cold	–	Avoid high engine revs and heavy engine loads until the engine is warm.

Flashes	Possible cause	Correction
	Fault in the coolant system.	Seek expert assistance.

## WARNING

Failure to observe the illuminated warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore warning lamps and text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

## NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Coolant specification


 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The engine coolant system is factory-filled with a mixture of specially prepared water and at least 40 percent of the coolant additive **G 12 plus-plus** (TL-VW 774 G) or **G 12 plus** (TL-VW 774 F). Both coolant additives are dyed pink.

This mixture gives the necessary frost protection down to -25°C (-13°F) and protects the alloy parts of the cooling system against corrosion. The mixture also prevents scaling and raises the boiling point of the coolant.

The proportion of the coolant additive must, in order to protect the coolant system, *always* be at least 40%, even if anti-freeze is not required in warm weather and warm climates.

If greater frost protection is required in very cold climates, the proportion of the anti-freeze additive can be increased. However, the percentage of coolant additive should not exceed 60%, as this would reduce the frost protection and the cooling effect.

When topping up coolant, a mixture of **distilled water** and at least 40% coolant additive - G 12 plus-plus - must be used in order to obtain the optimum corrosion protection → .

## WARNING


Insufficient anti-freeze in the coolant system can cause the engine to break down and cause serious injuries.

- Please note that the percentage of the correct coolant additive must correspond to the lowest outside temperature that the vehicle is expected to be operated in.
- At extremely cold outside temperatures, the coolant could freeze, causing the vehicle to breakdown. Vehicle occupants with insufficient winter clothing could then freeze to death as the heating will then also no longer function.

## ! NOTICE

Never mix genuine coolant additives with other coolants that have not been approved by Volkswagen. Mixing other coolants could cause serious damage to the engine and cooling system.

- The coolant - G 12 plus-plus - can be mixed with - G 12 plus - and - G 11 - .
- If the liquid in the coolant reservoir is not pink, but brown, for example, - G 12 plus-plus - or - G 12 plus - will have been mixed with another coolant. The coolant must be changed as soon as possible if this is the case. Failure to observe this point could result in serious malfunctions and engine damage.

 Coolant and coolant additives can pollute the environment. Spilt operating fluids must be collected and disposed of properly and with respect for the environment.

## Checking coolant level and refilling coolant

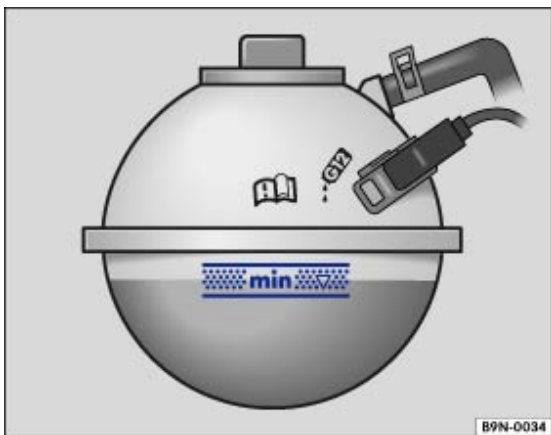




Fig. 197 In the engine compartment: mark on the coolant expansion tank







Fig. 198 In the engine compartment: coolant expansion tank cap

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  Introduction

The warning lamp for the engine coolant will light up if the engine coolant level is too low.

### Preparation





- Park the vehicle on a level and solid surface.
- Allow the engine to cool down → .
- Open the bonnet  → Preparation for working in the engine compartment .
- The coolant expansion tank has the  symbol on its cap → Fig. 198

- The coolant expansion tank has the  symbol on its cap → Fig. 190.

## Checking the coolant level

- Check the coolant level at the side marking of the expansion tank when the engine is cold → Fig. 197.
- Refill the coolant if the liquid level is below the minimum marking (min). When the engine is warm, the coolant level may be slightly above the top end of the marked area.

## Refilling coolant

- Always protect your hands and arms from hot coolant or steam by placing a suitable cloth on the cap of the coolant expansion tank.
- Unscrew the cap carefully → .
- Refill only **new** coolant according to the Volkswagen specification ( → [Coolant specification](#) ) → .
- The coolant level must be between the marks on the expansion tank → Fig. 197. **Do not fill up over the top line of the marked area** → !
- Close the cap tightly.
- If in an emergency you do not have access to the required specification ( → [Coolant specification](#) ), do not use any other coolant additive! Instead, initially refill only **distilled water** → . Then add the correct proportion of coolant additive as soon as possible → [Coolant specification](#) .

## WARNING

Hot steam or engine coolant can cause serious burns.

- **Never open the bonnet if you can see or hear steam or engine coolant coming out of the engine compartment. Always wait until you can no longer see or hear escaping steam or coolant.**
- **Always allow the engine to cool down completely before carefully opening the bonnet. Hot components could burn your skin.**
- **The following points should be noted before opening the bonnet once it has cooled down.**
  - Switch on the electronic parking brake and move the selector lever to position P or move the manual gear lever to the neutral position.

- Remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock.
- Always keep children away from the engine compartment and never leave the vehicle unattended.
- The engine cooling system is under pressure when the engine is hot. Never open the cap of the coolant expansion tank when the engine is hot. Coolant may spray out and cause serious burns and other injuries.
  - Turn the cap slowly and very carefully anti-clockwise while exerting some downwards pressure on the cap.
  - Always protect the face, hands and arms from hot coolant or steam with a large, thick cloth.
- When refilling, do not spill any service fluids on engine components or on the exhaust system. The spilt service fluids could start a fire. The ethylene glycol in the engine coolant could, in certain circumstances, catch fire.

## NOTICE

- Refill only with distilled water. All other types of water could cause corrosion in the engine due to the chemical components contained therein. This could also lead to engine failure. If any other type of water is refilled, the fluid in the engine cooling system should be completely replaced by a qualified workshop immediately.
- Do not fill coolant above the top of the marked area → *Fig. 197*. Otherwise the excess coolant will be pressed out of the cooling system when the engine is hot and could cause damage.
- If a large amount of coolant has been lost, do not refill the coolant until the engine has *cooled completely*. A large amount of coolant loss is an indication of leaks in the engine cooling system. The engine cooling system should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Otherwise, this may result in damage to the engine.
- When refilling operating fluids, please ensure that the correct container is filled. The use of incorrect operating fluids could result in serious malfunctions and engine damage!


## Vehicle battery

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Warning lamp*
- *Checking the electrolyte level of the vehicle battery*
- *Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery*

The vehicle battery is a component of the electrical system in the vehicle.




Never carry out any work on the electrical system if you are not familiar with the necessary procedures and the general safety requirements and only unsuitable tools are available → . The work should be carried out by a qualified workshop if you are uncertain. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose. Serious injuries can be caused if work is carried out incorrectly.




### Number and location of the vehicle battery

Depending on the engine fitted, the vehicle battery is located either in the engine compartment or behind a cover in the luggage compartment,

In some models, the vehicle may have 2 vehicle batteries. The second vehicle battery is then also located in the luggage compartment.

### Explanation of the warnings on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection!
	Electrolyte is very corrosive and caustic. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection!
	Fires, sparks, naked lights and smoking are prohibited!

	Flames, sparks, naked lights and smoking are prohibited.
	A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the vehicle battery is charging!
	Always keep children away from acid and vehicle battery!

### Additional information and warnings:

- ⇒ Booklet *Service schedule*,
- Pull-away assist systems → *Pull-away assist systems*
- Preparation for working in the engine compartment → *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*



## WARNING

Any work on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire and electric shocks. Always read the following warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work:

- Switch off the ignition and all electrical consumers before carrying out any work on the vehicle battery and also disconnect the negative cable from the vehicle battery.
- Children should always be kept away from electrolyte and the vehicle battery.
- Always wear eye protection.
- Electrolyte is very aggressive. It can burn the skin and can cause blindness. When working with the battery, ensure that your hands, arms and face in particular are protected from acid spillages.

- Never smoke and never work near naked flames or sparks.
- When handling cables and electrical equipment, avoid generating sparks and electrostatic charge.
- Never short the battery poles.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery. It could explode. A damaged vehicle battery must be replaced as soon as possible.
- A damaged or frozen vehicle battery must be replaced immediately. A discharged vehicle battery can even freeze at temperatures of around 0°C (+32°F).
- In vehicles with the vehicle battery in the luggage compartment: ensure that the gas discharge hose is connected properly to the vehicle battery.


### NOTICE

- Never disconnect batteries or connect them if the ignition is switched on or if the engine is running. This could damage the electrical system or electronic components.
- Do not allow direct sunlight onto the vehicle battery for an extended period as the UV rays could damage the battery housing.
- If the vehicle is left standing in cold conditions for a long period, protect the vehicle battery from frost. If it freezes it will be damaged.

## Warning lamp



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Lit up	Possible cause	Correction
	Fault in the alternator.	Go to a qualified workshop. The electrical system should be checked. Switch off all electrical equipment that is not required. The vehicle battery will not be charged by the alternator while the vehicle is in motion.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.

### WARNING

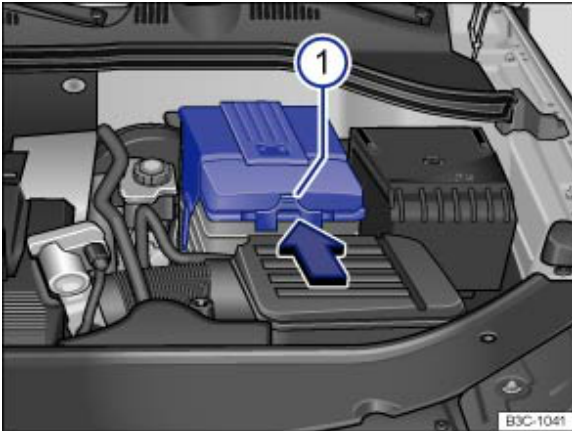
Failure to observe the illuminated warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore warning lamps and text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

### NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Checking the electrolyte level of the vehicle battery



**Fig. 199** In the engine compartment: removing the battery cover



**Fig. 200** Engine compartment: pushing up the vehicle battery sleeve




**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

The electrolyte level of the vehicle battery should be checked regularly in high-mileage vehicles, in hot countries and in older vehicle batteries. The vehicle battery is otherwise maintenance free.

Vehicles with start/stop system ( → [Pull-away assist systems](#) ) are fitted with a special vehicle battery. It may not be possible to check the acid level of this vehicle battery for technical reasons.

### Preparation

- Preparing the vehicle for working in the engine compartment → [Preparation for working in the engine compartment](#) .
- Open the bonnet  → [Preparation for working in the engine compartment](#) .

### Opening the battery cover

Depending on the engine fitted to the vehicle, the vehicle battery covers have a different design:

- *If a cover is fitted:* press the tab → [Fig. 199](#) ① in the direction of the arrow and remove cover upwards.
- *If a sleeve is fitted:* fold the cover away in the direction of the arrow → [Fig. 200](#) .

### Checking the electrolyte level

- Ensure that enough lighting is available in order to see the colours clearly. Never use naked flames or glowing items (e.g. cigarettes) as a light source.
- The colour display in the round window on the top side of the vehicle battery will change according to the electrolyte level.



Colour display	Action
<i>Light yellow or without colour</i>	The electrolyte level of the vehicle is too low. The vehicle battery should be checked and replaced by a qualified workshop if necessary.
<i>Black</i>	The electrolyte level of the vehicle battery is correct.

## WARNING


Any work on the vehicle battery can cause serious chemical burns, explosions and electric shocks.

- Always wear eye protection and protective gloves.
- Electrolyte is very aggressive. It can burn the skin and can cause blindness. When working with the battery, ensure that your hands, arms and face in particular are protected from acid spillages.
- Never tilt the vehicle battery. Electrolyte may spill out of the battery vents and cause chemical burns.
- Never open a vehicle battery.
- If acid is spilt in your eye or on your skin, rinse immediately for several minutes with clear water. Then consult a doctor immediately.
- If acid is swallowed, consult a doctor immediately.

## Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Charging the battery

The vehicle battery should be charged by a qualified workshop only as factory-fitted batteries using special technology have been used and they must be charged in a controlled environment → . Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

### Replacing a vehicle battery


The battery has been developed to suit the conditions of its location and has special safety features. If a vehicle battery has to be replaced, discuss the electromagnetic compatibility, size and necessary servicing, output and safety requirements for the new vehicle battery with a Volkswagen dealer before purchase. Volkswagen recommends that the vehicle battery is changed by a Volkswagen dealership.

Only service-free vehicle batteries compliant with the standards TL 825 06 and VW 7 50 73 should be used. These standards must be dated August 2008 or later.

In vehicles with a special vehicle battery, e.g. *vehicles with start/stop system* ( → [Pull-away assist systems](#) ), replace the vehicle battery only with a vehicle battery with the same specifications.


### Disconnecting the vehicle battery

Please note the following points if the vehicle battery has to be disconnected from the electrical system in the vehicle:

- Switch off all electrical consumers and the ignition.
- The vehicle must be unlocked before disconnecting the battery as the alarm will otherwise be triggered.
- Disconnect first the negative cable and then the positive cable → .

### Connecting the vehicle battery

- Switch off all electrical consumers and the ignition before reconnecting the vehicle battery.

- Reconnect first the positive cable and then the negative cable →  .

Various indicator lamps may light up after the vehicle battery has been connected and the ignition is switched on. They will go out if you drive a short distance at a speed of 15–20 km/h (9–12 mph). If the indicator lamps remain lit up, the vehicle should be checked by a qualified workshop.

If the vehicle battery was disconnected for long periods, the system may not be able to calculate or correctly display the time when the next service is due → *Instruments* . Observe the maximum permissible service intervals ⇒ *BookletService schedule* , .

**Vehicles with Keyless Access** ( → *Locking and unlocking a vehicle with Keyless Access* ): if the ignition cannot be switched on after connecting the vehicle battery, lock and unlock the vehicle from the outside. Then try to start the ignition again. Please contact an expert if the ignition cannot be switched on.

### Automatic switch-off for electrical consumers

The intelligent vehicle electrical system automatically implements a range of measures to prevent the battery discharging when high demands are made on it:

- The idling speed is increased so that the alternator provides more electricity.
- If necessary, large electrical consumers will only have a limited output or will be switched off completely.
- The supply of electricity to the 12-volt sockets and the cigarette lighter is interrupted temporarily while the engine is being started.

The vehicle electrical system cannot always prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. For example when the ignition is switched on for an extended period with the engine off, or when the side or parking lights are on when the vehicle is parked for an extended period.

### Battery switch-off in an accident with airbag triggered

In vehicles with a vehicle battery in the luggage compartment: in the event of an accident in which the airbags are triggered, the electrical connection to the vehicle battery is disconnected automatically. This prevents short-circuiting.

### How can the vehicle battery discharge?

- Extended parking time in which the engine is not running, especially when the ignition is switched on.
- Use of electrical consumers when the engine is switched off.
- When the auxiliary heater is being used → *Auxiliary heater (supplementary heating system)* .

## WARNING

**Incorrect fastening and the use of incorrect vehicle batteries can cause short circuits, fire and serious injuries.**

- **Always use maintenance-free and leak-proof batteries which have the same properties, specifications and dimensions as the factory-fitted vehicle battery.**

## WARNING

**A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the vehicle battery is being charged.**

- **Vehicle batteries should only be charged in well-ventilated rooms.**
- **Never charge a frozen or defrosted vehicle battery. A discharged vehicle battery can even freeze at temperatures of around 0°C (+32°F).**

- **A vehicle battery must be replaced if it has been frozen.**
- **Incorrectly connected cables can cause a short circuit. Reconnect first the positive cable and then the negative cable.**

## NOTICE

- **Never disconnect the battery if the ignition is switched on or if the engine is running. This could damage the electrical system or electronic components.**
- **Never connect equipment which generates electricity, such as solar panels or battery charging units for charging the vehicle battery, to the 12-volt socket or to the cigarette lighter. The electrical system of the vehicle could otherwise be damaged.**



Dispose of the vehicle battery as required by legislation. Batteries may contain toxic substances such as sulphuric acid and lead.



Electrolyte can pollute the environment. Clean up any service fluid leakages and dispose of them properly.

## Vehicle care and maintenance

### Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Washing the vehicle*
- *Washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner*
- *Cleaning windows and exterior mirrors*
- *Cleaning and changing windscreen wiper blades*
- *Waxing and polishing the vehicle*
- *Cleaning and caring for chrome and aluminium trim parts*
- *Cleaning wheels*
- *Care of rubber seals*
- *De-icing door lock cylinders*
- *Underseal*
- *Cleaning the engine compartment*

Regular and expert care helps to **maintain the value** of the vehicle. Proper maintenance may also be one of the requirements for acknowledging warranty claims in the event of corrosion or paint defects.

Suitable care products are available from Volkswagen dealers.

#### Additional information and warnings:

- Central locking system → *Central locking system*
- Preparation for working in the engine compartment → *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*
- Cleaning and caring for the interior → *Cleaning and caring for the interior*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

## WARNING

**Car care products can be toxic and hazardous. Unsuitable care products and incorrect application of care products can cause accidents, serious injuries, burns or poisoning.**

- **The care product must be kept in the closed original container.**
- **Read the manufacturer's instructions.**
- **Never store car care products in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers may not know that they contain care products.**

- **Keep children away from care products.**
- **Harmful fumes could be created when using the products. The products should therefore only be used outside or in well-ventilated rooms.**
- **Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail varnish remover or other volatile fluids to wash, clean or care for your vehicle. They are toxic and highly inflammable.**


## **WARNING**


**Incorrect care and cleaning of vehicle parts can impair the safety features of the vehicle and thus cause serious injury.**


- **Vehicle parts must be cleaned according to the manufacturer's instructions.**
- **Only use approved or recommended cleaning products.**

## **NOTICE**

**Cleaning products which contain solvents will damage the material.**

 In the interests of environmental protection, the vehicle should be washed only in specially provided wash bays. This prevents toxic, oil, grease and fuel laden waste water entering the sewerage system. In some districts, washing vehicles anywhere else may be prohibited.

 Environmentally-friendly care products should be used.


 Left over car care products should not be disposed of with ordinary household waste. Read the manufacturer's instructions.

## Washing the vehicle

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

The longer substances such as insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road dirt, industrial deposits, tar, soot or road salt and other corrosive materials remain on the vehicle, the more damage they do to the paintwork. High temperatures (for instance in strong sunlight) further intensify the corrosive effect. The **underside** of the vehicle should also be cleaned thoroughly on a regular basis.

### Car washes

**Please observe the signs on the automatic car wash.** Before using an automatic car wash take the usual precautions, such as closing all windows and folding in the exterior mirrors, in order avoid damage to the vehicle. You must speak with the car wash operator if there are special parts on your vehicle such as spoilers, roof luggage carrier systems or radio aerials → .

The paint is so hard-wearing that the car can normally be washed without problems in an automatic car wash. However, the effect on the paint depends to a large extent on the design of the car wash. Volkswagen recommends the use of car washes without brushes.

To remove any waxy residue from the windows and to stop wipers rubbing, please note the following points → *Cleaning windows and exterior mirrors* .

### Washing the car by hand

When washing by hand, first soften the dirt with plenty of water and rinse off as well as possible.

Then clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **glove** or a **brush** using only light pressure. Start with the roof and work from the top to the bottom. Use a **shampoo** for very stubborn dirt only.

The sponge or glove should be wrung out thoroughly at regular intervals.

Clean the wheels, sill panels etc. last. Use a different sponge for this purpose.

## WARNING

Parts with sharp edges on the vehicle could cause injury.

- Protect your hands and arms from cuts on sharp parts when, for example, cleaning the underbody or the inside of the wheel housings.

## WARNING

After the car has been washed, the braking effect could set in later than normal and extend the braking distance as the brake discs and brake pads will be wet, or even frozen in winter.

- You can dry and de-ice the brakes using careful braking manoeuvres. Make sure that you do not endanger any other road users or violate any legal requirements while doing this.

## NOTICE

- The water may be no warmer than +60°C (+140°F).
- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight in order to avoid damage to the vehicle paintwork.
- Never clean with insect removing sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar products as the surface will otherwise be damaged.
- Never clean the headlights with a dry cloth or sponge. They should be wet for this purpose. Soapy water is preferable.
- Washing the vehicle in cold weather: if the vehicle is rinsed with a hose, do not direct the water into the lock cylinders or the gaps round the doors, boot, or bonnet. The locks and seals could freeze.

## NOTICE

Observe the following points before driving the vehicle into an automatic car wash in order to avoid damage to the vehicle:


- Make sure that the gap between the guide rails in the car wash is sufficient for the vehicle track. If the track is too narrow your wheels and tyres will be damaged!


- Switch off the rain sensor and the auto hold function before driving the vehicle into a car wash.
- Check that the car wash is sufficiently tall and wide for your vehicle!
- Fold in the exterior mirrors. Electrically folding exterior mirrors must be moved electrically. Do not fold in and out by hand.
- In order to prevent damage to the paintwork of the bonnet, fold the windscreen wipers back onto the windscreen carefully after drying the wiper blades. Do not drop the wipers onto the glass!
- Lock the boot lid to prevent the car wash from causing it to open accidentally.

## Washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer when cleaning your vehicle using a high-pressure cleaner. This applies in particular to **pressure** and the **spraying distance** → .

Maintain sufficient distance to soft materials such as rubber hoses, plastic parts, insulation, as well as to the sensors for the parking distance warning system. The sensors of the parking distance warning system are located in the front and also in the rear bumper → .

Never use **concentrated jet nozzles** or so-called **dirt blasters** → .



### WARNING

The incorrect use of a high-pressure cleaner can cause visible and invisible long-term damage to tyres and other materials. This could cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Maintain sufficient distance between the nozzle and the tyres.
- Never clean the tyres with concentrated jet nozzles (dirt blasters). Even at large spraying distances and short cleaning times, visible and invisible damage can occur to the tyres.



### WARNING

After the car has been washed, the braking effect could set in later than normal and extend the braking distance as the brake discs and brake pads will be wet, or even frozen in winter.

- You can dry and de-ice the brakes using careful braking manoeuvres. Make sure that you do not endanger any other road users or violate any legal requirements while doing this.

 **NOTICE**

- The water may be no warmer than +60°C (+140°F).
- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight in order to avoid damage to the vehicle paintwork.
- The sensors in the bumpers must be kept clean and free of ice to ensure that the parking distance warning system and the Park Assist system work properly. When cleaning with pressure hoses and steam cleaners, the sensors should only be sprayed briefly. A distance of more than approx. 10 cm between the sensors and the steam/hose nozzle must be observed.
- Do not clean windows that are iced over or covered in snow with a high-pressure cleaner.
- Washing the vehicle in cold weather: if the vehicle is rinsed with a hose, do not direct the water into the lock cylinders or the gaps round the doors, boot, or bonnet. The locks and seals could freeze.

## Cleaning windows and exterior mirrors

---




First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Cleaning windows and exterior mirrors

Moisten the windows and exterior mirrors with commercially available, alcohol-based glass cleaner.


Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a lint-free cloth. Chamois leathers which have been used on painted surfaces are not suitable for use on glass surfaces. They will be soiled with wax deposits which could smear the surfaces.

Use window cleaner or a silicone remover to clean off rubber, oil, grease and silicone deposits → .

### Removing wax

Car washes and care products could leave **wax deposits** on the glass surfaces. Wax residue can only be removed using a special cleaning product or cleaning cloths. Wax deposits on the windscreen could cause the wiper blades to rub. Volkswagen recommends that you use a cleaning cloth to remove wax deposits from the windscreen each time the vehicle is cleaned.

A window cleaner specifically for removing wax will stop the blades rubbing if added to the windscreen wash water. Dilute the cleaner as instructed.

Grease removing cleaners will not remove wax deposits → .

Special cleaners and glass cleaners are available from Volkswagen dealerships. Volkswagen recommends the following cleaning agents for removing wax deposits:

- For warm weather: summer windscreen wash - G 052 184 A1 - . Dilution 1:100 (1 part concentrate, 100 parts water) in the washer fluid reservoir.
- For use throughout the year: windscreen wash - G 052 164 A2 - . Dilution in winter to -18°C (-0.4°F) approx. 1:2 (1 part concentrate, 2 parts water), otherwise dilute one part concentrate to four parts water (1:4) in the washer fluid reservoir.
- Glass cleaning cloths - G 052 522 A1 - for all glass surfaces, including exterior mirrors.

### Removing snow

Use a small brush to remove snow from the windows and exterior mirrors.

### Removing ice

The best method to remove ice is to use a de-icer spray. If you use an ice scraper, **do not** move it to and fro, but push it in one direction only. Dirt could scratch the window when moving the ice scraper back.

 **WARNING**

**Dirty or misted up windows reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.**

- Only drive when you have a clear view through all windows.
- Ice, snow and mist must be removed from the inside and outside of all windows.

### ! NOTICE

- Never combine the recommended cleaning agents with other cleaning agents for use in the windscreen washer fluid. This could cause the ingredients to separate and block the windscreen washer jets.
- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This could cause the glass to crack.
- The heating elements for the rear window heater are on the inside of the rear window. Never apply stickers over the heating elements and never clean the inside of the rear window with corrosive or acidic detergents or any other chemicals.
- Aerials located on the inside of the windows could be damaged by corrosive or acidic detergents, any other chemicals or if hard objects rub against the window. Never apply stickers over the window aerials and never clean the aerials with corrosive or acidic detergents or any other chemicals.

## Cleaning and changing windscreen wiper blades

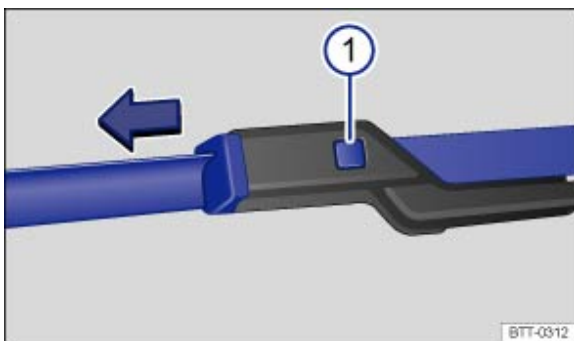


Fig. 201 Changing the windscreen wiper blades

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The factory-fitted windscreen wiper blades are coated with graphite. The graphite coating ensures that windscreen wiper blade moves quietly over the windscreen. If the graphite coating is damaged, the windscreen wiper will become louder.

Regularly check the condition of the wiper blades. **Rubbing wiper blades** should be changed if damaged or cleaned if dirty → .


Damaged wiper blades should be replaced immediately. Windscreen wiper blades can be bought from a qualified workshop.

### Lifting and folding back the windscreen wiper arms

To lift or fold back a wiper arm take hold **only** at the wiper blade mounting.


Adjust the wiper arms to the service position before folding back → [Windscreen wiper and washer](#) .

### Cleaning windscreen wiper blades

- Lift and fold back the windscreen wiper arms.
- Use a soft cloth to remove dust and dirt carefully from the windscreen wiper blades.
- If the windscreen wiper blades are heavily soiled, clean them carefully with a sponge or cloth → .



## Changing the windscreen wiper blades

- Lift and fold back the windscreen wiper arms.
- Press and hold release button → [Fig. 201](#)  and pull off the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow at the same time.
- Insert a new wiper blade with the **same length and design** on to the wiper arm. Push it on until it engages.
- Push the windscreen wiper arm back onto the windscreen.

### **WARNING**

Worn or dirty windscreen wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.

- Therefore, always change windscreen wiper blades if they are damaged and worn and or longer clean the windscreen properly.

### **NOTICE**

- Damaged or dirty windscreen wipers could scratch the windscreen.
- Detergents containing solvents, hard sponges and other sharp objects can damage the graphite coating.
- Do not use fuel, nail varnish remover, paint thinner or similar products to clean the windows.

## Waxing and polishing the vehicle



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Waxing

Waxing protects the paintwork. You will need to wax the vehicle with a good **hard wax** at the latest when the water does not clearly form **small drops** and run off the paintwork when it is *clean*.

Even if a **wax solution** is used regularly in the car wash, Volkswagen recommends protecting the paint with a coat of hard wax at least twice a year.

### Polishing

Polishing is only necessary if the paint has lost its shine, and the gloss cannot be brought back by applying wax.

The car must be waxed after polishing if the polish used does not contain wax compounds to seal the paint.

### **NOTICE**

- In order to avoid damage, matt-finish parts, plastic parts, headlight lenses and the tail lights may not be treated with polish or hard wax.
- Do not polish the paint if the vehicle is in a sandy or dusty environment or if it is dirty.

## Cleaning and caring for chrome and aluminium trim parts



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

- Use a damp, clean, lint-free and soft cloth to clean the surfaces.
- For heavy soiling use a special **solvent-free** cleaning product.
- Polish the chrome and aluminium trim parts using a soft, dry cloth.

 **NOTICE**

To ensure that the chrome and aluminium parts are not damaged:

- Do not clean or polish in direct sunlight.
- Do not clean or polish in sandy or dusty environments.
- Do not use any abrasive care products (e.g. cream cleaners).
- Never clean with insect removing sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar products.
- Do not polish any dirty surfaces.
- Do not use solvent-based cleaning products.
- Do not use any hard wax.

 **NOTICE**

Chrome rims or wheel covers may also have an additional varnish finish and may not be treated using chrome or aluminium cleaning agents or chrome or aluminium polish. A normal commercially available paint cleaning product should be used instead.

## Cleaning wheels

---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Cleaning steel wheels

Use an industrial cleaner to remove brake dust. Steel wheels should therefore be cleaned regularly with a separate sponge.

Any damage to the paint on steel wheels should be touched up before the metal starts to rust.

### Caring for and cleaning alloy wheels

Wash grit and brake dust from alloy wheels approximately **every 2 weeks**. Then use an acid-free detergent to clean the wheels. Volkswagen recommends applying a hard wax compound to the wheels approximately **every 3 months**.

It is important to remove road salt and brake dust by washing the wheels at regular intervals, otherwise the finish will be impaired.

Always use an acid-free detergent for alloy wheels. Car polish or other abrasive agents should not be used on the wheels.

If the protective coating is damaged, e.g. by stone impact, the damaged area should be repaired immediately.

## Care of rubber seals

---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)



The rubber seals on the doors, windows etc. will seal better, remain flexible and last longer if they are treated at regular intervals with a suitable care product.

Use a soft cloth to remove dust and dirt from the rubber seals.

## De-icing door lock cylinders

---





 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

Volkswagen recommends the use of genuine Volkswagen spray with lubricating and anti-corrosive properties to de-ice the lock cylinders.

## NOTICE

**Do not use lock de-icers which contain substances which dissolve grease as this could cause the door lock to rust.**

## Underseal

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

The underside of the vehicle is coated to protect it from corrosion and damage. The protective coating on the underside of the vehicle could be damaged when driving. Volkswagen recommends therefore that the protective coating on the underside of the vehicle and on the running gear should be checked regularly and repaired if necessary.

## CAUTION


**Underseal and anti-corrosion coatings can ignite on the hot exhaust system or on other hot engine parts.**

- **Never apply underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter, heat shields or other vehicle components that become hot.**

## Cleaning the engine compartment

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a hazardous area → [Preparation for working in the engine compartment](#) .

The engine compartment should be cleaned by a qualified workshop. An incorrect cleaning procedure could possibly remove corrosion protection and damage electrical components. Furthermore, water could enter the vehicle interior directly via the plenum chamber →  .

If the engine compartment is very dirty, we recommend that you always go to a qualified workshop to have it cleaned following correct procedures. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

### Plenum chamber

The plenum chamber is located in the engine compartment between the windscreen and the engine and has a perforated cover. Air from outside is drawn in from the plenum chamber and is passed into the vehicle interior via the air conditioning system.

Leaves and other loose items must be removed from the cover of the plenum chamber at regular intervals using a vacuum cleaner or by hand.

## WARNING

**All work in the engine compartment carries the risk of injury, scalding, accidents and fire.**

- **Before carrying out any work make sure you are familiar with necessary procedures and with general safety regulations** → [Preparation for working in the engine compartment](#) .
- **Volkswagen recommends having the work carried out by a qualified workshop.**

## NOTICE

**Water that has entered the plenum chamber via a manual process (e.g. from a high-pressure cleaner) can cause considerable damage to**

the vehicle.



In the interests of environmental protection, the engine compartment should be washed only in specially provided wash bays. This prevents toxic waste water containing oil, grease and fuel from entering the sewerage system. In some districts, washing the engine compartment anywhere else may be prohibited.

## Cleaning and caring for the interior

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Handling of seat covers*
- *Cleaning cloth seat covers, fabric trim and Alcantara upholstery*
- *Cleaning and caring for natural leather covers*
- *Cleaning leatherette upholstery*
- *Cleaning stowage compartments, drink holders and ash trays*
- *Cleaning and caring for the dash panel, wooden trims and plastic parts*
- *Cleaning seat belts*

Modern fabrics, such as dark denim, are often not colourfast. Light-coloured upholstery (soft materials or leather) is particularly sensitive to staining caused by these fabrics, even if you are careful. This is not caused by a fault in the upholstery, but by the non-colourfast nature of the garments.

Leaving stains, dirt and other deposits on the surface of vehicle components and cloth seat covers for a long time can make it difficult to clean and tend to them. Stains, dirt and deposits may become impossible to remove, particularly if left for a long time.

#### Additional information and warnings:

- Cleaning and caring for the vehicle exterior → *Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*



### WARNING

Car care products can be toxic and hazardous. Unsuitable care products and incorrect application of care products can cause accidents, serious injuries, burns or poisoning.

- The care product must be kept in the closed original container.
- Read the manufacturer's instructions.
- Never store car care products in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers may not know that they contain care products.
- Keep children away from care products.
- Harmful fumes could be created when using the products. The products should therefore only be used outside or in well-ventilated rooms.
- Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail varnish remover or other volatile fluids to wash, clean or care for your vehicle. They are toxic and highly inflammable.



### WARNING

Incorrect care and cleaning of vehicle parts can impair the safety features of the vehicle and cause serious injury.

- Vehicle parts must be cleaned according to the manufacturer's instructions.

- Only use approved or recommended cleaning products.

## NOTICE

- Cleaning products which contain solvents attack the material and may cause irreparable damage.
- Stains, dirt and other deposits containing aggressive and solvent-based ingredients attack the material and may cause irreparable damage, even if only left for a short time.
- Stains, dirt and other deposits should be removed as quickly as possible and not allowed to dry in.
- To avoid damage, stubborn stains should be removed by a specialist cleaning company.




Suitable care products are available from a Volkswagen dealership.

## Handling of seat covers



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

## Checklist

Please note the following for the cleaning and maintenance of the seat covers → :

- ✓ Before getting into the vehicle, close all Velcro fasteners that could touch the cloth seat covers and fabric trims. Open Velcro fasteners can cause damage to cloth seat covers and fabric trims.
- ✓ Avoid the direct contact of sharp-edged items and applications to the upholstery and fabric trims in order to prevent damage. Applications are for example zips, studs, rhinestones on clothing or belts.
- ✓ Dust and grit in the pores and seams should be removed regularly so that no permanent damage is caused to the surface of the seats by scratching.

Always check whether garments are colourfast to prevent damage to the upholstery. This is especially important for light-coloured upholstery.



## NOTICE

Ignoring any of the points on this important checklist for maintaining the seat covers can lead to damage or discolouration to the seat covers and fabric trims.

- Follow the instructions on the checklist.




Volkswagen recommends that stained upholstery is cleaned by a specialist company.


## Cleaning cloth seat covers, fabric trim and Alcantara® upholstery



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Cleaning upholstery on seat cushions with seat heating, electrically adjustable seats, or seats containing airbag components



Airbag-related components and electrical connectors may be installed in the driver seat, passenger seat and sometimes also in the rear outer seats. Seat cushions or backrests that are damaged, incorrectly cleaned or treated, or that become wet, may cause damage to the vehicle electrics or trigger a fault in the airbag system → .

Electrical components and connectors are installed in electrically adjustable seats and seat cushions with seat heating. These can be damaged if cleaned or treated incorrectly → . This can also result in damage to other parts of the vehicle electrics.

For this reason, please observe the following notes on cleaning:

- Do not use high-pressure cleaners, steam cleaners or coolant spray.
- Do not use washing paste or fine detergent solutions.
- Avoid getting the seat wet.
- Only use detergents that have been approved by Volkswagen.
- If in doubt, consult a specialist cleaning company.

### **Cleaning upholstery on seat cushions without seat heating, seats that are not electrically adjustable, and seats that do not contain airbag components**

- Please read and follow the instructions, notes and warnings on the package before using cleaning products.
- Upholstery, fabric trims, Alcantara® seat covers and carpeting should be cleaned regularly with a vacuum cleaner (brush).
- Do not use high-pressure cleaners, steam cleaners or coolant spray.
- We recommend that you use a soft sponge or commercially available lint-free micro fibre cloth for cleaning jobs → .
- Clean Alcantara® surfaces with a slightly damp cotton or woollen cloth or a commercially available lint-free micro fibre cloth → .

General surface soiling of the upholstery and fabric trim can be cleaned with a commercially available foam cleaner.

If the upholstery and fabric trims are generally heavily soiled, consult a Volkswagen dealer for information on suitable cleaning methods before attempting any cleaning. If required, take the vehicle to a specialist cleaning company.

### **Stain removal**

When treating stains, it may be necessary to clean the entire surface and not just the stain itself. This particularly applies if the surface shows general signs of wear. The cleaned area could otherwise be lighter than the surrounding area. If in doubt, consult a specialist cleaning company.

<b>Type of stain</b>	<b>Recommended cleaning method for seat cushions and upholstery</b>
<i>Water-based stains</i> , e.g. coffee, fruit juice.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Moisten a sponge using a spray bottle and treat the stain by rubbing it in a circular motion.</li> <li>– Wipe with a dry absorbent cloth.</li> </ul>
<i>Stubborn stains</i> , e.g. chocolate, make-up.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Only use detergents approved by Volkswagen.</li> <li>– If required, take the vehicle to a specialist cleaning firm to have the upholstery cleaned.</li> </ul>
<i>Oily stains</i> , e.g. oil, lipstick.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Only use detergents approved by Volkswagen.</li> <li>– If required, take the vehicle to a specialist cleaning firm to have the upholstery cleaned.</li> </ul>

## **DANGER**

**If there is a fault in the airbag system, the airbag may not trigger correctly, may not trigger at all or may trigger unexpectedly. This could cause severe or fatal injuries.**

- **The airbag system should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.**

## **NOTICE**

**If the upholstery on electrically adjustable seats or on seat cushions containing airbag components gets wet, electric components and the vehicle electrics could be damaged.**

- **A wet seat cushion should always be dried out, and system components checked, by a qualified workshop.**
- **Do not use steam cleaners as the steam pushes the soiling into the fabric and sets it.**
- **High-pressure cleaners and coolant sprays can damage the upholstery.**

 **NOTICE**

- **Brushes should be used on carpeting and mats only! Other surfaces could be damaged by brushes.**
- **When washing paste or fine detergent solutions are applied with a damp cloth or sponge, visible edges may appear on the upholstery once it has dried. This can be due to substances such as surfactants. These edges are usually difficult or even impossible to remove.**

 **NOTICE**

- **Do not soak Alcantara® under any circumstances.**
- **Do not use leather care products, solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers or similar products on Alcantara®.**
- **Do not use brushes if cleaning with liquids. This could damage the surface of the material.**

## Cleaning and caring for natural leather covers




First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Please contact a Volkswagen dealership or other qualified workshop if you have any questions on cleaning and caring for the leather equipment in your vehicle.

### Care and use

Natural leather is sensitive as it does not have a uniform coating of dye.



- Use a leather cream with sunlight protection and impregnation properties on a regular basis and always after cleaning. The cream nourishes the leather, keeps it breathable and supple and replaces lost moisture. It also protects the surface.
- Leather should be cleaned every two to three months and fresh stains removed.
- Treat the leather with a special leather care product every six months → .
- Always apply cleaning and care products extremely sparingly and always use a dry cotton or woollen cloth that is free from fluff. Do not apply cleaning and care products directly to the leather.
- Remove fresh stains such as ink, ball-point pen ink, lipstick, shoe cream etc. as quickly as possible.
- Look after the pigment. Use a special coloured leather cream to refresh the colour where necessary.
- Wipe off with a soft cloth.

### Cleaning

Volkswagen recommends that you use a damp cotton or wool cloth for general cleaning purposes.

Do not let the water soak through the leather or soak into the seams.

Please observe the following notes **prior to cleaning** the leather upholstery → [Cleaning upholstery on seat cushions with seat heating, electrically adjustable seats, or seats containing airbag components](#) .

Type of stain	Cleaning
<i>Stubborn stains</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Use a cloth to apply a mild soap solution after thoroughly wringing out the cloth.<sup>a)</sup></li> <li>– Dry with an absorbent, dry cloth.</li> </ul>
<i>Water-based stains</i> , e.g. coffee, tea, juice, blood etc.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Remove fresh stains with an absorbent cloth,</li> <li>– If the stain has already dried, use a suitable cleaning agent → .</li> </ul>
<i>Oily stains</i> , e.g. oil, lipstick etc.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Remove fresh stains with an absorbent cloth.</li> <li>– If the stain has not yet penetrated the surface, use a suitable cleaning agent → .</li> </ul>

– If the stain has not yet penetrated the surface, use a suitable cleaning agent → .

*Difficult stains, e.g. biro, felt tip pen, nail varnish, emulsion paint, shoe polish etc.*

- Dry with an absorbent, dry cloth.
- Clean with a suitable leather stain remover.

## NOTICE

- Do not use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, spot removers or similar products on leather.
- A stain cannot be removed if it has been left on the leather for a long time and has penetrated the surface.
- Spilt liquids should be cleaned immediately using an absorbent cloth as the leather surface and the stitching absorb liquids quickly.
- If the car is left standing outdoors for long periods, the leather should be protected against direct sunlight to prevent it from fading.



However, slight colour variations will arise in normal use.

a) Mild soap solution: two tablespoons neutral soap diluted in one litre of water.

## Cleaning leatherette upholstery



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Please observe the following notes prior to cleaning the leatherette upholstery → [Cleaning upholstery on seat cushions with seat heating, electrically adjustable seats, or seats containing airbag components](#) .

Only use water and neutral detergents to clean the leatherette upholstery.

## NOTICE

Do not use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, spot removers or similar products on the leatherette upholstery. These may cause the material to become hard and brittle prematurely.

## Cleaning storage compartments, drink holders and ash trays

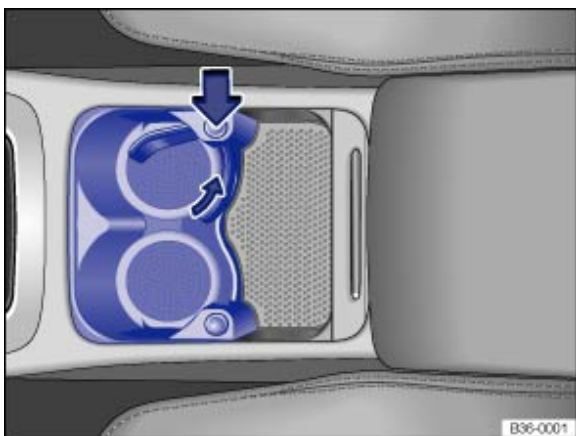


Fig. 202 In the front centre console: drink holders



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Cleaning storage compartments and drink holders



Some stowage compartments and drink holders have a removable rubber insert in the base.

- Moisten a clean, lint-free cloth with water and clean the parts.
- If this does not provide satisfactory results, use a special **solvent-free** plastic cleaning product.

### Cleaning the drink holders in the front centre console

- Press the button → *Fig. 202* (large arrow) to open the holder.
- Turn the insert against the direction of the small arrow to move it out of the mount → *Fig. 202* and remove it.
- Replace the insert once it has been cleaned.
- Turn the insert in the direction of the small arrow until it engages.

### Cleaning the ashtray


- Remove and empty the ashtray.
- Wipe the ashtray with a cloth to clean it.

To clean the snuffer, use a toothpick or similar object to pick out the ashes.

## Cleaning and caring for the dash panel, wooden trims and plastic parts



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

- Moisten a clean, lint-free cloth with water and clean the parts.
- Treat *plastic parts (inside and outside the vehicle) and the dash panel* with a special **solvent-free** plastic cleaning and care product that has been approved by Volkswagen → .
- Treat *wooden trims* with a mild soap solution.

### WARNING

**Solvents cause the surface of the airbags to become porous. In an accident which triggers the airbag, loose plastic parts can cause serious injury.**

- **Never clean the dash panel or the airbag covers with cleansers that contain solvents.**


## Cleaning seat belts



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The automatic belt will not be able to roll back properly if there is dirt on the belt and thus prevent the seat belt from working properly.

The seat belts must never be removed for cleaning purposes.

- Remove dirt with a soft brush → .
- Carefully pull the dirty seat belt right out and leave it out.
- Clean the seat belt with a *mild* soap solution.
- Allow the seat belt fabric to dry completely.
- Do not allow the seat belt to roll up until it has dried completely.

### WARNING

**Regularly check the condition of all seat belts. If the belt webbing or any other part of the seat belt becomes damaged have it removed and replaced immediately by a qualified workshop. Damaged seat belts are very dangerous and could cause severe or fatal injuries.**

- **Never use chemical cleaning agents on the seat belts or their components. Furthermore the seat belts may not come into contact with corrosive fluids, solvents or sharp objects. This can considerably weaken the webbing.**
- **After cleaning, allow seat belts to dry completely before rolling them up. Otherwise the automatic belt retractors could become damaged and thus impair their function.**
- **Never let any foreign bodies or liquids get into the slot for the seat belt buckle. This could prevent the belt buckle and seat belt from working properly.**
- **Never try to repair, modify or remove the seat belts yourself.**
- **Damaged seat belts must be replaced immediately with new seat belts approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type. Seat belts used in and stretched during an accident must be replaced by a qualified workshop. Renewal may be necessary even if there is no apparent damage. The belt anchorage should also be checked.**

## Wheels and tyres

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Handling of wheels and tyres](#)
- [Rims](#)
- [New wheels and tyres](#)
- [Tyre pressure](#)
- [Tread depth and wear indicators](#)
- [Tyre damage](#)
- [Spare wheel](#)
- [Tyre lettering](#)
- [Winter tyres](#)
- [Snow chains](#)

Volkswagen recommends that work on tyres and wheels is carried out by a qualified workshop. They are familiar with the procedure and have the necessary special tools and spare parts as well as the proper facilities for disposing of the old tyres. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

### Additional information and warnings:


- Transporting → [Driving notes](#)
- Towing a trailer → [Towing a trailer](#)
- Braking, stopping and parking → [Braking, stopping and parking](#)
- Park Assist system → [Park Assist system](#)
- Tyre monitoring systems → [Tyre monitoring systems](#)
- Cleaning and caring for the vehicle exterior → [Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior](#)
- Consumer information → [Consumer information](#)
- Vehicle tool kit → [Vehicle tools](#)
- Hub caps → [Hub caps](#)
- Changing a wheel → [Changing a wheel](#)
- Breakdown set → [Breakdown set](#)

### WARNING

**New tyres or tyres which are old, worn down or damaged cannot provide full levels of vehicle control and braking power.**

- **Incorrect handling of wheels and tyres can reduce vehicle safety and cause accidents and serious injuries.**
- **All 4 wheels must be fitted with radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern.**

- New tyres will have to be run in as they will initially have reduced grip and braking effect. Drive particularly carefully for the first 600 km in order to prevent accidents and serious injury.
- Check tyre pressures regularly and always keep to the specified tyre pressure value. If the tyre pressure is too low, it is possible that the tyre temperature will increase to such an extent that the tread peels off and the tyre bursts.
- Never drive with damaged (cuts, cracks or blisters) or worn down tyres. Driving with these tyres can result in blown tyres, accidents and serious injuries. Worn down or damaged tyres must be replaced as soon as possible.
- Never exceed the top speed and load permitted for the tyres that are fitted.
- The effectiveness of the driver assist systems and brake assist systems depends on the tyre grip.
- If you notice unusual vibration or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, stop the car immediately and check the wheels and tyres for damage.
- In order to reduce the risk of losing control over the vehicle, of an accident and of serious injury, never loosen the bolts on rims with bolted on rim rings.
- Do not use wheels or tyres if their history of use is not known. Used wheels and tyres could be damaged, even if the damage is not visible.
- Old tyres – even if they have not been used – can suddenly lose pressure or burst, especially at high speed, and thus cause accidents and serious injuries. Avoid using tyres that are more than six years old. If you have no alternative, drive slowly and with extra care at all times.

 For technical reasons, it is not generally possible to use the wheels from other vehicles. This can also apply to wheels of the same vehicle type. Refer to the vehicle documentation and ask a Volkswagen dealership if necessary.

## Handling of wheels and tyres

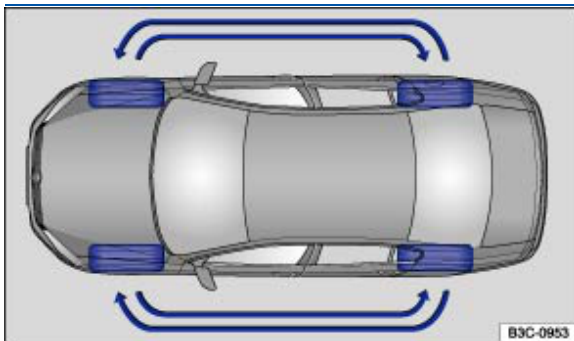


Fig. 203 Changing wheels

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)


The tyres are the most used and most underestimated parts of a vehicle. Tyres are very important as the narrow tyre surfaces are the only contact between the vehicle and the road.

The service life of tyres is dependent on tyre pressure, driving style handling and fitting.

The tyres and wheel rims are an essential part of the vehicle's design. The tyres and rims approved by Volkswagen are specially matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and make a major contribution to good road holding and safe handling.

### Avoiding damage to the tyres

- If you have to drive over a kerb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as near as possible at a right angle to the kerb.
- Inspect the tyres regularly for damage such as cuts, cracks or blisters.
- Remove foreign objects that are in the outer tyre profile and **have not penetrated the inner tyre** → [Tyre damage](#) .
- Always respond to any warning messages given by the tyre monitoring system → [Tyre monitoring systems](#) .
- Damaged or worn tyres must be replaced immediately → [Tyre damage](#)

- Damaged or worn tyres must be replaced immediately → [Tyre damage](#) .
- Regularly check the tyres for hidden damage → [Tyre damage](#) .
- Never exceed the top speed and load permitted for the tyres that are fitted → [Tyre lettering](#) .
- Protect the wheels, including the spare wheel, from contact with corrosive substances, including oils, lubricants, fuel and brake fluid →  .
- Replace missing dust caps immediately.

### Tyres with directional tread pattern

Tyres with directional tread pattern have been developed to roll in one direction only. An arrow on the tyre sidewall indicates the direction of rotation on tyres with directional tread → [Tyre lettering](#) . The direction of rotation must be adhered to. This is the only guarantee for optimum grip and helps to avoid aquaplaning, excessive noise and wear.

If, however, the tyre is fitted in the opposite direction to the tread pattern, you must take more care when driving as the tyre is now no longer being used according to its designation. This is particularly important on wet roads. The tyres must be replaced as quickly as possible or be fitted with the tread in the correct direction.


### Rotating wheels front to rear

A regular rotation of the wheels as shown in the illustration → [Fig. 203](#) is recommended to ensure a uniform level of wear for the tyres. All the tyres will then last for about the same time.

Volkswagen recommends having the wheels changed by a qualified workshop.

### Tyres which are older than 6 years

Tyres age through physical and chemical processes which can impair their function. Tyres which are stored unused for an extended period will harden and become brittle more quickly than tyres which are in constant use.

Volkswagen recommends replacing tyres which are older than six years with new tyres. This also applies for tyres, including the spare wheel, which appear to still be in good condition and whose tread depth has not yet reached the minimum value stipulated by legislation →  .

The age of a tyre can be determined from the manufacturing date, which is a component of the tyre identification number ( **TIN** ) → [Tyre lettering](#) .

### Storing tyres

Mark tyres before you remove them to indicate the direction of rotation. This ensures you will be able to mount them correctly when you replace them (left, right, front, rear). When removed, the wheels or tyres should be stored in a cool, dry and preferably dark place. **Do not** store tyres mounted on the rim vertically.

Any tyres without wheels should be protected against dirt and stored standing on the tread.

#### **WARNING**

**Corrosive liquids and other substances can cause visible and invisible damage to the tyres, which could cause the tyre to burst.**

- Always keep chemicals, oils, lubricants, fuel, brake fluid and other corrosive substances away from the tyres.

#### **WARNING**

**Old tyres – even if they have not been used – can suddenly lose pressure or burst, especially at high speed, and thus cause accidents and serious injuries.**

- Avoid using tyres that are more than six years old. If you have no alternative, drive slowly and with extra care at all times.



Old tyres should be disposed of as required by legislation.

## Rims



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

The design of the wheel bolts is matched to the rims. If different rims are fitted, the correct wheel bolts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt heads must be used. This ensures that wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system works properly → [Changing a wheel](#) .

For technical reasons, it is not generally possible to use the wheels from other vehicles. This can also apply to wheels of the same vehicle type.

The tyres and rims approved by Volkswagen are specially matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and make a major contribution to good road holding and safe handling.

### Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must always be tightened with the correct tightening torque → [Changing a wheel](#) .

### Rims with bolted on rings

Rims with bolted on rings consist of several components. These components are fastened using special bolts and special fastening technology. This ensures that the wheel functions properly, does not leak, remains safe and runs true. For this reason, damaged rims should be replaced. They may only be repaired by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose → .

### Rims with bolted on trims

Rims may have removable trims which are attached to the rim with self-locking bolts. Damaged trims may only be repaired by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose → .

## WARNING

The use of unsuitable or damaged rims can impair vehicle safety and cause accidents and serious injury.

- Only use rims which have been approved for the vehicle.
- Check the rims regularly for damage and replace as necessary.

## WARNING

Incorrect loosening and tightening of the bolts on rims with bolted on rings can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never remove the bolts on rims with bolted on rings.
- All work on rims with bolted on rings must be carried out by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## New wheels and tyres



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)


### New tyres

- Drive particularly carefully for the first 600 km with new tyres as the tyres have to be *run in*. Tyres that have not been run in have reduced grip → and braking effect → .
- All 4 wheels must be fitted with radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern

- All wheels must be fitted with road tyres of the same type, size (including air clearance), and the same tread pattern.

- The tread depth of new tyres may vary, according to the type and make of tyre and the tread pattern.

## Replacing tyres

- Tyres should be replaced at least in pairs and not individually (i.e. both front tyres or both rear tyres together) → .
- Old tyres should only be replaced by tyres that have been approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle type. Ensure that the tyres used are correct in respect of size, diameter, load-carrying capacity and maximum speed.
- Never use tyres with an effective size that is larger than Volkswagen-approved tyres. Larger wheels could rub against the body or other parts of the vehicle.
- The vehicle is factory-fitted with mobility tyres only (including winter and all-year tyres). When replacing the tyres, please ensure that the new tyres have a run-flat system. It is otherwise recommended to have a breakdown set available in the vehicle.

## Additional information for vehicles with a tyre monitor display

On vehicles with a tyre monitor display, the system will have to relearn every time a new wheel is fitted, regardless of whether the wheel in question is being fitted in the same or in a different position → [Tyre monitoring systems](#) .

Further information about the tyre pressure monitoring system, how it functions and what you must know → [Tyre monitoring systems](#) .

## Additional points for vehicles fitted with a tyre pressure monitoring system

If you wish to replace factory-fitted wheels, please ensure that the new wheels are equipped with sensors that are compatible with the factory-fitted tyre pressure monitoring system. New wheels with sensors are *registered* and integrated into the system. The vehicle must be left stationary for at least 20 minutes after a wheel is fitted and then driven at a speed of over 25 km/h (15 mph) for an extended period so that the new tyre can be registered.

Volkswagen recommends that a new valve set and set of seals is used every time the sensors are replaced or modified. Further information is available from a Volkswagen dealership.

If tyres with dimensions other than those defined by Volkswagen for the vehicle and model are used, the tyre pressure monitoring system must be reprogrammed with the new tyre pressure values. Further information is available from a Volkswagen dealership.

If you use wheels that do not have a sensor, or which have non-compatible sensors, the tyre pressure monitoring system will not be able to *register* them. The tyre pressure monitoring system will then not be able to measure tyre pressures. A fault is displayed or the system is switched off.

Further information about the tyre pressure monitoring system, how it functions and what you must know → [Tyre monitoring systems](#) .

### WARNING


**New tyres will have to be run in as they will initially have reduced grip and braking effect.**

- **Drive particularly carefully for the first 600 km in order to prevent accidents and serious injury.**

### WARNING

**Wheels must have the necessary freedom of operation. If the wheels do not have the necessary freedom of operation, the tyre could rub on parts of the running gear, the vehicle body and the brake system. This could lead to a malfunction of the brake system and to tread separation and thus to a tyre bursting.**

- **The actual tyre size must not exceed the tyre dimensions of manufacturers approved by Volkswagen and must not rub on any vehicle body parts.**

 Despite identical size details, the actual size of the various tyre makes may vary from these specified dimensions, or the tyre contours may vary considerably.

 Volkswagen-approved tyres are guaranteed to have the dimensions that are suitable for the vehicle. The salesperson will have to provide a

certificate from the tyre manufacturer for other tyre makes to prove that the tyre is also suitable for the vehicle. This certificate must be put in a safe place and kept in the vehicle.

## Tyre pressure

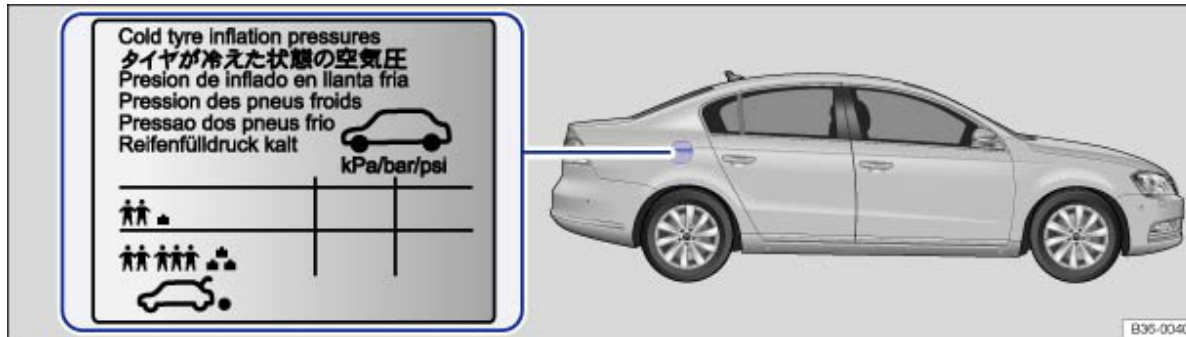


Fig. 204 Tyre pressure plate in the tank flap

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → [Introduction](#)

The correct tyre pressure for factory-fitted tyres is shown on a sticker – applies to all-season, summer and winter tyres. The sticker → [Fig. 204](#) is located either on the driver door column or inside the tank flap.

If the tyre pressure is too low or too high, the tyres will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well → . The correct tyre pressure is particularly important at **high speeds**. Incorrect tyre pressure causes premature wear and could cause tyre blow-out.

The pressure should therefore be checked at least once a month and before starting a journey.

The given tyre pressure applies to **cold tyres**. Tyre pressure is always higher in warm tyres than it is in cold tyres.

For this reason, never reduce the pressure in warm tyres to adjust the tyre pressure. This would result in low tyre pressures that could cause the tyre to burst suddenly.

### Checking tyre pressure

The tyre pressure should only be checked if the tyres have not been driven for more than just a few kilometres at low speed in the last 3 three hours.

- The tyre pressures should be checked regularly and only when the tyres are cold. Always check all the tyres, including the spare wheel if fitted. The tyre pressure should be checked more frequently in colder regions, but only if the vehicle has not been moved beforehand. The tyre pressure tester must function correctly.
- The tyre pressures must be adjusted to suit a heavy vehicle load.
- After altering the tyre pressures, please ensure that the valve caps are screwed on and observe any information and instructions on setting the tyre monitoring system → [Tyre monitoring systems](#) .

The **temporary spare wheel** is filled to the highest tyre pressure permissible for the vehicle.

## WARNING

A tyre pressure that is too high or too low may cause the tyre to suddenly lose pressure or burst while the vehicle is in motion. This could cause accidents and fatal injuries.

- If the tyre pressure is too low, it is possible that the tyre temperature will increase to such an extent that the tread peels off and the tyre bursts.
- Fast speeds or overloading of the vehicle can cause overheating, sudden tyre damage including tyre bursts and ripping of the tread surface and thus to a loss of control over the vehicle.
- If the tyre pressure is too low or too high, the tyres will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.
- Check tyre pressures regularly, at least once a month, and before every long journey.

- All tyres must have the correct tyre pressure to suit the vehicle load.
- Never reduce excess pressure when the tyres are warm.

## ! NOTICE

- When attaching the tyre pressure gauge make sure that you do not position it at an angle to the valve shaft. This could damage the tyre valve and the tyre pressure sensor.
- Missing valve caps, or valve caps which are not suitable or not screwed on properly, could cause damage to the tyre valve and the sensors of the tyre pressure monitoring system. Always use valve caps that comply with the factory-fitted valve cap specifications. Always screw on valve caps fully.



Under-inflated tyres will increase fuel consumption.



The readings on the manometer when filling the tyres and the reading on the tyre pressure sensors may be different. The electronic tyre pressure control system provides more accurate results.



If the tyre monitoring system warns that the tyre pressure in at least one tyre is too low, check tyre pressures with a functioning tyre pressure tester. Low tyre pressure cannot be determined exclusively by looking at the tyre. This also applies to tyres with a low profile.

## Tread depth and wear indicators

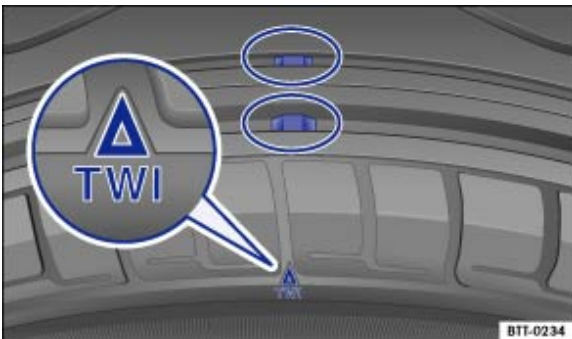



Fig. 205 Tyre tread: wear indicators



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  *Introduction*

### Tread depth

Difficult driving situations demand the deepest possible tread depth for the tyres and the same tread depth for the tyres on the front and rear axle. This applies in particular for driving in winter weather and cold temperatures and in wet conditions → .

In most countries, the minimum tread depth required by law is 1.6 mm (measured in the tread grooves next to the tread wear indicators). Observe any country-specific legal requirements.

**Winter tyres** lose a large degree of their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm.

The tread depth of new tyres can vary according to type and manufacturer due to construction and tread design.

### Tread wear indicator in tyres

The original tyres on your vehicle have 1.6 mm high tread wear indicators running across the tread → *Fig. 205*. These wear indicators are positioned at set intervals around the tyre. Markings on the tyre sidewall (for instance the letters TWI or other symbols) indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators.



The tread wear indicators show if a tyre is worn down. The tyre must be replaced at the latest when the tread depth is just before the tread wear indicator.

## WARNING


**Worn tyres are a safety risk and can lead to a loss of control over the vehicle and cause serious injury.**

- Tyres must be replaced at the latest when the tread is worn down to the tread wear indicators.
- Worn tyres have considerably less tread, particularly on wet roads and the vehicle swims on the road surface (aquaplaning).
- Worn tyres reduce the possibility of controlling the vehicle well in normal and difficult driving situations and increase braking distance and the risk of sliding.

## Tyre damage



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  *Introduction*

Damage to tyres and rims is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual **vibrations** or that the car is **pulling to one side**, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged → .

- Reduce your speed immediately if you suspect that a wheel is damaged!
- Check the tyres and rims for damage.
- If the tyre is damaged, do not drive on. Seek expert assistance.
- If there is no visible damage, drive slowly and cautiously to the next qualified workshop in order to have the vehicle checked.

### Foreign bodies in the tyre

- Leave the foreign body in the tyre if it has entered the inner tyre!
- A sealant inside the tyre encloses foreign bodies penetrating the mobility tyre and seals the tyre temporarily.
- Seek expert assistance as soon as possible.

### Tyre wear

The tyre wear is affected by several factors, for example:

- Driving style.
- Unbalanced wheels.
- Running gear setting.

*Driving style* – fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear. The running gear should be checked by a qualified workshop if the tyres show excessive wear despite a normal driving style.

*Unbalanced wheels* – the wheels on new vehicles are balanced. However, various factors encountered in normal driving can cause them to become unbalanced, which results in steering vibration. Unbalanced wheels will affect levels of wear on the steering system and the suspension. In this case the wheels should be balanced again. A new tyre will have to be balanced after fitting.

*Running gear setting* – incorrect wheel alignment causes excessive tyre wear, impairing the safety of the vehicle. The wheel alignment should be checked by a qualified workshop if tyres show excessive wear.

## WARNING

**If you notice unusual vibration or the car pulling to one side while the vehicle is in motion, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged.**

Reduce speed immediately and seek the vehicle without obstructing traffic.

- **Reduce speed immediately and park the vehicle without obstructing traffic.**
- **Check the tyres and rims for damage.**
- **Never drive on if wheels or tyres are damaged. Seek expert assistance instead.**
- **If there is no visible damage, drive slowly and cautiously to the next qualified workshop in order to have the vehicle checked.**

## Spare wheel



**Fig. 206** In the luggage compartment: handwheel for securing the spare wheel



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)


### Removing the spare wheel

- Open the boot lid and hook the floor covering on the top edge of the luggage compartment.
- Unscrew the handwheel in the middle of the spare wheel → *Fig. 206* anti-clockwise fully and remove the spare wheel.

### Storing the removed wheel

- Hook the floor covering on the top edge of the luggage compartment.
- Place the removed wheel into the spare wheel well with the rim facing downwards with the central hole in the rim positioned exactly above the stud.
- Turn the handwheel clockwise on the stud until the wheel is secured firmly.
- If necessary, place the vehicle tools back in the container in the luggage compartment.
- Unhook the floor covering and place it back on the luggage compartment floor.
- Close the boot lid.

### When the spare wheel is not the same as the other tyres mounted on the vehicle

If the spare tyre is not the same as the tyres that are mounted on the car - for example with winter tyres - only use the spare tyre for a short period of time and drive with extra care → 

and drive with extra care → .

Refit the normal road wheel as soon as possible.

#### Observe the driving tips:

- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid full acceleration, sudden braking and fast driving through bends in the road.
- The tyre pressure must be checked as soon as possible after fitting the spare wheel → [Tyre pressure](#) .

The tyre pressure of the spare wheel should be checked together with the normal tyres, at least once a month. The spare tyre should have the highest pressure allowed for the vehicle → [Tyre pressure](#) .


### WARNING

Incorrect use of the spare wheel can lead to a loss of control over the vehicle, to collisions or other accidents and cause serious injuries.

- Never use a spare tyre if it is damaged or worn down to the tread wear indicators.
- In some vehicles, the spare wheel could be smaller than the standard wheel. The small spare wheel has a sticker with the text 80 km/h or 50 mph. This is the maximum speed you are permitted to drive with this tyre.
- Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph). Do not accelerate quickly, brake suddenly or drive at high speed through bends.
- The spare wheel must always be secured firmly with the wheel bolts supplied by the factory.
- After fitting the spare wheel, the tyre pressure must be checked as soon as possible → [Tyre pressure](#) .

### NOTICE

The spare wheel is not fitted with wheel electronics. After approx. 10 minutes of the spare wheel being in use, the tyre pressure monitor indicator lamp (TPM) flashes in the instrument cluster display → [Tyre monitoring systems](#) .

 If possible, stow the spare wheel or the removed wheel safely in the luggage compartment. In vehicles with a breakdown set, the removed wheel cannot be secured.

## Tyre lettering

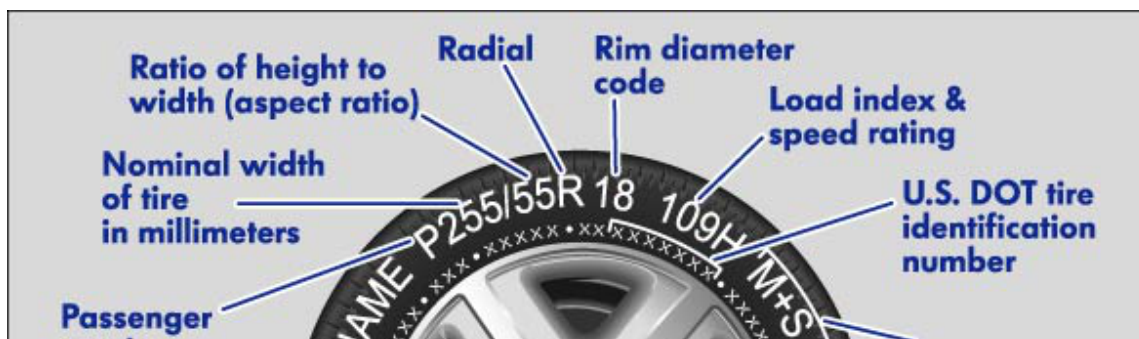





Fig. 207 International tyre lettering



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  *Introduction*

Tyre lettering (example)	Meaning	
<i>Brand name, logo</i>	<i>Manufacturer</i>	
Tyre lettering (example)	Meaning	
<i>Product name</i>	Individual tyre lettering from manufacturer.	
P215 / 55 R 18	Size designation:	
	P	Identification for passenger vehicle.
	255	Tyre width from wall to wall in mm.
	55	Height/width ratio in %.
	R	Tyre construction: radial.
18	Rim diameter in inches.	
109 H	Load capacity index → <i>Tyre load</i> and speed index → <i>Speed index</i> .	
XL	Heavy-duty tyres (reinforced).	
M+S or M/S or 	Denotes winter tyres (mud and snow tyres) → <i>Winter tyres</i> .	
RADIAL TUBELESS	Tubeless radial tyres.	
E4 ...	Certification of conformity with international requirements. The number following (E) is the code number of the country which granted approval. This is followed by the number of the type approval certificate.	
DOT BT RA TY5 1709	Tyre identification number ( <b>TIN</b> <sup>a</sup> ) – is possibly only be on the inner side of the wheel) and date of manufacture:	
	DOT	The tyre complies with the legal requirements of the USA Department of Transportation, responsible for tyre safety standards.
	BT	Code identifier of the factory that manufactured the tyre.
	RA	Tyre manufacturer's data on tyre size.
	TY5	Manufacturer's tyre characteristics.
1709	Manufacture date: 17th week in 2009.	
TWI	Indicates the position of the Tread Wear Indicator → <i>Tread depth and wear indicators</i> .	
Made in Germany	Country of manufacture.	
MAX LOAD 615 KG	US load data for the maximum load per wheel.	
MAX INFLATION 350 KPA (51 PSI)	US limitation for the maximum air pressure.	

SIDEWALL 1 PLY RAYON	Data for the components of the tyre sub-construction: 1 layer of rayon (artificial silk)
TREAD 4 PLIES 1 RAYON + 2 STEEL + 1 NYLON	Data on the tread surface components: In the example there are four layers under the tread surface: 1 layer of rayon, 2 steel belt layers and 1 nylon layer.
<b>Information for the end user concerning comparative values for specified basic tyres (standardised test procedure) → <a href="#">Consumer information</a> :</b>	
TREADWEAR 220	Relative life expectancy for the tyre, with reference to a US-specific standard test.
TRACTION A	Wet braking response of the tyre (AA, A, B or C).
TEMPERATURE A	Temperature stability of the tyre at higher test speeds (A, B or C).
<b>Any other characters are internal codes used by the tyre manufacturer or are country-specific codes, e.g. for Brazil or China.</b>	

## Tyres with directional tread pattern

Tyres with directional tread pattern have been developed to roll in one direction only. An arrow on the tyre sidewall indicates the direction of rotation on tyres with directional tread. The direction of rotation must be adhered to. This guarantees optimum grip and helps to avoid aquaplaning, excessive noise and wear.

If, however, the tyre is fitted in the opposite direction to the tread pattern, you must take more care when driving as the tyre is now no longer being used according to its designation. This is particularly important on wet roads. The tyres must be replaced as quickly as possible or be fitted with the tread in the correct direction.

## Tyre load

The load capacity index indicates how many kilograms can be loaded onto an individual tyre (tyre load).

91 615 kg 93 650 kg 95 690 kg 97 730 kg 99 775 kg

## Speed index

The speed index indicates the maximum permitted speed that may be driven when particular wheels are fitted.

P max. 150 km/h (93 mph) Q max. 160 km/h (99 mph) R max. 170 km/h (106 mph) S max. 180 km/h (112 mph) T max. 190 km/h (118 mph) U max. 200 km/h (124 mph) H max. 210 km/h (130 mph) V max. 240 km/h (149 mph) Z over 240 km/h (149 mph) W max. 270 km/h (168 mph) Y max. 300 km/h (186 mph)

Some tyre manufacturers use the code ZR for tyres with a highest permitted speed of over 240 km/h (149 mph).

a) The TIN is the tyre serial number.

## Winter tyres



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)**


In winter road conditions winter tyres will considerably improve the car's handling. The design of summer tyres (width, rubber compound, tread pattern) gives less grip on ice and snow. Volkswagen urgently recommends the use of winter tyres or all-year tyres on all 4 wheels of the vehicle, particularly if winter conditions are expected on the roads. Winter tyres will also improve the braking response of the vehicle and will help to reduce braking distances in winter weather. Volkswagen recommends that winter tyres be fitted to the vehicle at temperatures under +7°C (+45°F).

Winter tyres lose their effectiveness when the **tread** is worn down to a depth of 4 mm. Winter tyres also largely lose their effectiveness through **ageing** – regardless of the tread depth.

## The following applies when using winter tyres:

- Observe any country-specific legal requirements.
- Use winter tyres on all 4 wheels at the same time.

Only use in winter road conditions

- Only use in winter road conditions.
- Only use those winter tyre sizes which have been approved for the vehicle.
- Winter tyres must have the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern.
- Observe the maximum speed permitted by the speed index → .

## Speed limitation

Winter tyres have a speed limitation depending on the speed index → [Tyre lettering](#) .

In some model versions, a speed warning can be set in the menu **MFD (multifunction display)** in the instrument cluster → [Volkswagen information system](#) .

If you use **V-rated tyres** the speed limits and tyre pressure will be determined by engine size. You must ask your Volkswagen dealership for the highest permitted speed and required tyre pressure.

## Four-wheel drive (4MOTION)


Thanks to its four-wheel drive, the vehicle will have plenty of traction in winter conditions, even with the standard tyres. Nevertheless, Volkswagen still recommends that winter tyres or all-year tyres should be fitted *on all 4 wheels* in winter, mainly because this will give a better *braking response*.


Please refer to the corresponding information and notes when using **snow chains** → [Snow chains](#) .


### WARNING

The improved winter driving characteristics afforded by the winter tyres should not encourage you to take any risks.

- Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Never exceed the top speed and load permitted for the winter tyres that are fitted.

 The summer tyres should be fitted in good time at the end of the winter. The vehicle handling is better if summer tyres are fitted at temperatures above +7°C (+45°F). They are quieter, do not wear so quickly and reduce fuel consumption.

 In the case of vehicles with a tyre pressure monitoring system, the system may have to be reprogrammed after new tyres are fitted → [Tyre monitoring systems](#) .

 Volkswagen dealerships can provide details on permissible winter tyre sizes.

## Snow chains

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Please observe legislation and also the permitted speed when driving your vehicle with snow chains.


In winter conditions, snow chains will not only improve acceleration, but also braking response.

Snow chains **may only be fitted on the front wheels** – even on **four-wheel drive vehicles (4MOTION)** – and only with the **following wheel and tyre combinations**:

Tyre size	Wheel
205/55 R16	6 1/2 J x 16 offset 42
205/50 R17	6 1/2 J x 17 offset 42

Volkswagen recommends that you ask your Volkswagen dealership for information about appropriate wheel, tyre and snow chain size.

If possible, use snow chains with fine-pitch links which do not protrude more than 15 mm, including the tensioner.

Remove wheel centre covers and trim rings before fitting snow chains → . For safety reasons cover caps must then be fitted over the wheel bolts. These are available from your Volkswagen dealership.

## WARNING

The use of snow chains which are unsuitable for your vehicle or the incorrect installation of snow chains can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always use the correct snow chains.
- Follow the assembly instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer.
- Never exceed the maximum speed permitted for the snow chains that are fitted.

## NOTICE

- Remove the snow chains when driving on roads that are free of snow. The snow chains will otherwise impair handling, damage the tyres and wear out very quickly.
- Snow chains with a direct contact to the wheel can either scratch or damage the wheel. Volkswagen recommends using non-scratch snow chains.



Snow chains are available in a range of sizes for a vehicle type.

## Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Running-in*
- *Accessories and parts*
- *Service fluids and consumables*
- *Repairs and technical modifications*
- *Repairs and faults in the airbag system*
- *Retrofitting two-way radios*
- *Information stored in the control units*
- *Using a mobile telephone in the vehicle without a connection to the external aerial*
- *Lift points for the vehicle*

### Additional information and warnings:

- Seat belts → *Seat belts*

- Airbag system → *Airbag system*
- Towing a trailer → *Towing a trailer*
- Ashtray and cigarette lighter → *Ashtray and cigarette lighter*
- Electrical sockets → *Electrical sockets*
- Toll card reader (ETC) → *Toll card reader (ETC)*
- Braking, stopping and parking → *Braking, stopping and parking*
- Pull-away assist systems → *Pull-away assist systems*
- Parking distance warning → *Parking distance warning system*
- Park Assist system → *Park Assist system*
- Rear Assist → *Rear Assist system*
- Cruise control system (CCS) → *Cruise control system (CCS)*
- Adaptive chassis control (DCC) → *Adaptive chassis control (DCC)*
  
- Tyre monitoring systems → *Tyre monitoring systems*
- Preparation for working in the engine compartment → *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*
- Engine oil → *Engine oil*
- Engine coolant → *Coolant*
- Battery → *Vehicle battery*
- Cleaning and caring for the vehicle exterior → *Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior*
- Cleaning and caring for the interior → *Cleaning and caring for the interior*
- Consumer information → *Consumer information*
- ⇒ Booklet*Radio*,
- ⇒ Booklet*Navigation system*,
- ⇒ Booklet*Provision for mobile telephone*,

## Windscreen repairs

To function properly, some items of equipment require a camera or sensor, which is located on the inside of the windscreen near the interior mirror. If the windscreen in the viewing field of the camera or sensors has been damaged, e.g. by stone impact, the windscreen must be replaced. Repairing the crack could lead to malfunction or functional faults in the equipment.

After changing the windscreen, the camera and sensors must be fit and calibrated by a qualified workshop.

### **WARNING**

**Unsuitable spare parts and accessories as well as incorrectly carried out work, modifications and repairs can lead to damage to the vehicle, accidents and serious injuries.**

- **Volkswagen strongly recommends you use only approved Volkswagen accessories and Volkswagen Genuine Parts®. These parts and accessories have been specially tested by Volkswagen for suitability, reliability and safety.**
- **Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should only be carried out by a qualified workshop. Qualified workshops have the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information and qualified personnel.**
- **Never fit parts to your vehicle that are in any way different from the factory-fitted parts.**
- **Never secure or mount objects such as drink holders, telephone holders either on or next to the airbag covers or within the deployment zone of the airbag.**
- **Only use rim/tyre combinations which have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type.**



## Running-in

---



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

Please follow the regulations concerning running-in of new parts.

### Running in a new engine

A new engine needs to be run in during the first 1,500 kilometres. During its first few hours of running, the internal friction in the engine is greater than later on when all the moving parts have bedded down.

The style of driving during the first 1,500 kilometres will also affect the engine quality. Even after this time - and especially with a cold engine - drive the vehicle at moderate speeds in order to reduce engine wear and to increase the mileage that the engine can cover. Do not drive at engine speeds which are too low. Always shift down gear if the engine is not running smoothly. **Up to 1,000 kilometres, the following applies:**

- Do not depress the accelerator fully.
- Do not drive the vehicle at more than 2/3 of the top engine speed.
- Do not drive with a trailer attached.

**From 1,000 to 1,500 kilometres, gradually** increase driving performance to top speed and highest engine speed.

### Running in new tyres and brake pads

- New wheels and tyres → [Wheels and tyres](#)
- Information on the brakes → [Information on the brakes](#)



If the engine is run in gently, the life of the engine will be increased and its oil consumption reduced.

## Accessories and parts

---



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

Volkswagen recommends that you seek advice from a Volkswagen dealership before purchasing accessories, spare parts or service fluids. For example, if the vehicle is to be retrofitted with accessories or if parts have to be renewed. Volkswagen dealerships can recommend accessories, parts and service fluids which are suitable for your requirements. They can also answer any questions you might have regarding official regulations.

Volkswagen recommends you use only approved **Volkswagen accessories** and **Volkswagen Genuine Parts**<sup>®</sup>. These parts and accessories have been specially tested by Volkswagen for suitability, reliability and safety. A Volkswagen dealership is also qualified for correct installation.

Although the market is constantly scrutinised, Volkswagen cannot assume responsibility for the reliability, safety and suitability of products **Volkswagen has not approved**. Volkswagen can therefore assume no responsibility for these parts, even if they have been approved by an official testing agency or are covered by an official approval certificate.

Any **retro-fitted equipment** which has a direct effect on the driver's control of the vehicle and/or the way it is driven must be approved by Volkswagen for use in your vehicle and bear the **e** mark (the European Union's authorization symbol). These devices include cruise control systems or an electronically controlled suspension.

If any **additional electrical components** are fitted which do not serve to control the vehicle itself, these must bear the **CE** mark (manufacturer conformity declaration in the European Union). These devices include a refrigerator box, laptop or ventilator fan.



### WARNING

**Incorrectly performed repairs or modifications to your vehicle can impair the effectiveness of the airbags, cause faults, accidents and fatal injury.**

- Never secure or mount objects such as drink holders or telephone holders either on or next to the airbag covers or within the deployment zones of the airbag modules.
- Items which are either on or next to the airbag module covers or are in the deployment zone of the airbags can cause serious or even fatal injuries should the airbags be activated.

## Service fluids and consumables



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

All service fluids and consumables, e.g. toothed belts, tyres, coolant, engine oil, spark plugs and vehicle batteries, are being constantly developed. For this reason, service fluids and consumables should be replaced at a qualified workshop. A Volkswagen dealer is always kept up to date on innovations.

### WARNING

Unsuitable service fluids and consumables and using fluids and consumables incorrectly could cause accidents, serious injuries, burns or poisoning.

- Service fluids must be kept in the closed original container.
- Never store service fluids in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers could drink them.
- Keep children away from all service fluids and consumables.
- Always read and follow the information and warnings on the service fluid packaging.
- When using products that give off harmful fumes, always work outdoors or in a well-ventilated area.
- Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail varnish remover or other volatile fluids for vehicle care. They are poisonous and highly flammable. They could cause fires and explosions.

### NOTICE

- Only suitable service fluids should be refilled. Never use the wrong service fluid. Failure to observe this warning can result in serious malfunctions and engine damage.
- Optional equipment and other accessories in front of the air inlet reduce the cooling effect of the coolant. The engine may overheat at high ambient temperatures and high engine loads.




Leaking service fluids can pollute the environment. Spilt service fluids must be collected in suitable containers and disposed of properly and with respect for the environment.

## Repairs and technical modifications



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Repairs and modifications must always be carried out according to Volkswagen specifications →  !

Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components or software in the vehicle may cause malfunctioning. As the electronic components are linked together in networks, these malfunctions may indirectly affect the working of other systems. This can seriously impair safety, lead to excessive wear of components, and also invalidate the type approval for the vehicle.

The Volkswagen dealer cannot be held liable for any damage caused by technical modifications and/or work performed incorrectly.

The Volkswagen dealer cannot be held liable for any damage caused by technical modifications and/or work performed incorrectly. This is also not covered by the Volkswagen guarantee.

Volkswagen recommends that all repairs and technical modifications be performed by an authorised Volkswagen workshop using **Volkswagen Genuine Parts®**.

### Vehicles with special auxiliary equipment or body parts

The manufacturer of these components must ensure that these parts (fittings) adhere to the stipulated environmental laws and regulations, particularly the EU directive 2000/53/EC concerning end-of-life vehicles and EU directive 2003/11/EC concerning the restriction on the marketing and use of certain dangerous substances and preparations.

The assembly documents of these auxiliary fittings must be kept by the vehicle owner and must be given to the scrapping company should the vehicle have to be scrapped. In this way, the environmentally compatible disposal should be guaranteed for all vehicles, including refitted vehicles.

## WARNING


**Incorrect repairs and modifications can cause function problems and damage to the vehicle and impair the effectiveness of the driver assist systems. This could result in serious injury and accidents.**

- Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should only be carried out by a qualified workshop.

## Repairs and faults in the airbag system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

**Repairs and modifications must always be carried out according to Volkswagen specifications** →  !

Modifications and repairs to the front bumper, the doors, the front seats, the roof or the bodywork should be carried out by a qualified workshop. System components and airbag system sensors could be located on these vehicle parts.

If you work on the airbag system or remove and install parts of the system when performing other repair work, parts of the airbag system may be damaged. The consequence may be that, in the event of an accident, the airbag inflates incorrectly or does not inflate at all.

So that the effectiveness of the airbags is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution, regulations must be observed. Qualified workshops are familiar with these requirements.

Any modifications to the vehicle's suspension could prevent the airbag system from working properly during a collision. For example, using tyre/rim combinations which have not been approved by Volkswagen, lowering the vehicle, making modifications to the suspension rate including work on the springs, struts and shock absorbers could cause the forces which are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit to change. Some changes to the suspension could cause the forces measured by the sensors to increase. This could lead to the airbag system being triggered in collision scenarios where it normally would not be triggered if modifications to the suspension had not been made. Other modifications could cause the forces measured by the sensors to decrease therefore preventing the airbag system from being triggered when it should have been.

## WARNING

**Incorrect repairs and modifications can cause function problems and damage to the vehicle and impair the effectiveness of the airbag system. This could result in accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.**

- Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should only be carried out by a qualified workshop.
- Airbag modules cannot be repaired. They must be replaced.
- Never use recycled airbag components or components that have been taken from end-of-life vehicles in your vehicle.

## WARNING

**⚠ WARNING**

**Modifications to the vehicle's suspension, including the use of unsuitable tyre/rim combinations, could cause the airbag system to work differently and increase the risk of serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.**

- **Never install any components in the suspension system that have not got the same characteristics as the original factory-fitted components.**
- **Never use tyre/rim combinations that have not been approved by Volkswagen.**

## Retrofitting two-way radios



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

You will need an external aerial to use a two-way radio in the vehicle.

Any retrofit installation of electrical or electronic equipment in the vehicle will affect its vehicle type approval. Under certain circumstances, this could mean that you might lose the type approval for the vehicle.

Volkswagen has approved the vehicle for use with two-way radios providing the following conditions are observed:

- Correct installation of external aerial.
- Transmitting power of maximum 10 watts.

An external aerial is needed to give the equipment its optimal range.

Check first with a qualified workshop if you wish to use a two-way radio with a transmitting power of over 10 watts. A qualified workshop is familiar with the technical options for retrofitting. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Please observe legislation as well as the instructions and information given in the operating manuals for radio equipment.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If a mobile telephone is not secured or not properly secured in the vehicle, it could be flung through the interior during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, or in the event of an accident. This could cause serious injuries.**

- **While the vehicle is in motion, always secure two-way radios properly outside the airbag deployment zones or stow them away safely.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**If you use two-way radios in the car without an external aerial, electromagnetic radiation in the vehicle could exceed limit values. This also applies to external aerials which have not been correctly installed.**

- **Two-way radios should only be used in the vehicle if an external aerial is properly connected.**

## Information stored in the control units



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

Your vehicle is factory fitted with electronic control units which are responsible for engine and gearbox management. The control units also monitor the function of the exhaust system and the airbags.

These electronic control units continuously evaluate data relevant to the vehicle while the vehicle is being driven. Only these data will be stored if there are any faults recorded or any deviations from the specified values. This is generally displayed by the indicator lamps on the instrument cluster.

Special units are required to read out and evaluate data stored in the control units.

These data are stored so that specialist workshops are able to diagnose and solve problems. The following data may have been stored:

- Engine and gearbox-relevant data
- Speed
- Direction of travel
- Braking power
- Seat belt monitor

The control units do not record conversations taking place in the vehicle.

In vehicles with an emergency call function via a mobile telephone or other units, the current location can be transmitted. In the event of an accident in which the control units register that an airbag has deployed, the system can automatically send out a signal. This depends on your service provider. Transmission is possible only in areas with a sufficiently strong mobile telephone signal.

## Event data recorder

The vehicle is **not** fitted with an event data recorder.

Information concerning the vehicle is stored temporarily in an event data recorder. This provides precise information in the event of an accident. In vehicles with an airbag system, data that might be relevant in the event of an accident can be stored, e.g. impact speed, belt buckle status, seat positions and trigger speed. The scope of the data is manufacturer-specific.

An event data recorder may only be fitted if the owner has approved the procedure. This is covered by legislation in some countries.

## Reprogramming control units

All data for the control of components are stored in the control units. Some convenience functions, such as lane-change flash, single door unlocking and displays, can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If the convenience functions are reprogrammed, the descriptions in your vehicle wallet will no longer correspond with the changed functions. Volkswagen recommends that you have any reprogramming confirmed in the service schedule under Workshop comments.

Information about possible reprogramming can be obtained from the Volkswagen dealer.

## Reading the vehicle's fault memory

A diagnosis interface for reading the fault memories is located in the vehicle interior. The fault memory documents the faults and deviations from the specified values in the electronic control units.

The diagnosis interface is located in the footwell on the driver side behind a cover next to the lever for opening the bonnet.

The fault memory should only be read and reset by a qualified workshop.

## Using a mobile telephone in the vehicle without a connection to the external aerial

---



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

During a telephone call and when in stand-by mode, mobile telephones transmit and receive radio waves, also known as high-frequency energy. Current scientific literature warns us that radio waves can be harmful to human beings if they exceed certain limits. Governmental bodies and international committees have introduced threshold values and guidelines to ensure that electromagnetic radiation produced by mobile telephones does not pose a hazard to health. However, there is no proven scientific evidence that demonstrates that cordless telephones are absolutely safe.

For this reason, some experts are calling for a precautionary use of mobile telephones through the application of measures which reduce the level of personal exposure to electromagnetic radiation.

If a mobile telephone which is not connected to the vehicle's external aerial is used inside the vehicle, the level of electromagnetic radiation could be higher than when the mobile telephone is connected to an integrated aerial or any other external aerial.

If the vehicle is fitted with a suitable hands-free unit which enables the use of innumerable additional functions of Bluetooth® compatible mobile telephones, this will satisfy the legal requirements in many countries which permit the use of a mobile telephone in a vehicle only if a hands-free unit is used.

The factory-fitted hands-free system in your vehicle has been developed for the use of mobile telephones that are compatible with Bluetooth®. Mobile telephones must be located in a suitable telephone holder or be stored securely in the vehicle. If a telephone holder is used it must be securely attached to the base plate. This is the only way to ensure that the mobile telephone is securely attached to the dash panel and always within reach for the driver. The connection between the mobile telephone and the external aerial is established, depending on the hands-free system, either via the telephone holder or via an existing Bluetooth® connection between the mobile telephone and the vehicle.

If the mobile telephone is connected to a telephone aerial integrated in the vehicle or to an external telephone aerial, the electromagnetic radiation generated by the telephone that could affect health, is reduced. Moreover, it improves the quality of the signal.

If a mobile telephone is used in the vehicle interior without this hands-free system, it is not safely secured in the vehicle and also not connected to the vehicle's external telephone aerial. Furthermore, the mobile telephone is not being charged in the telephone holder. It is also likely that the telephone connection will be disrupted and the signal strength will be poor.

A mobile telephone should only be used in the vehicle if it is connected to a hands-free unit. Volkswagen recommends the use of an external aerial when using a mobile telephone in the vehicle.

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth® SIG, Inc.

## **! WARNING**

If a mobile telephone is not secured or is incorrectly secured in the vehicle, it could be flung through the interior during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, or in the event of an accident. This could cause injuries.

- Mobile telephones, other devices as well as accessories for the telephone such as, e.g. telephone holders, note blocks or portable navigation devices must always be secured properly outside of the airbag deployment zones whilst the vehicle is in motion or be stored in a safe place.

## **! WARNING**

If mobile telephones or two-way radios that are not connected to an external aerial are used, electromagnetic radiation in the vehicle could exceed limit values and thus be a health hazard for drivers and other vehicle occupants. This also applies to external aerials which have not been correctly installed.

- Maintain a gap of at least 20 centimetres between the aerials of the mobile telephone and a pacemaker, as mobile telephones may affect the functioning of pacemakers.
- Do not carry a mobile telephone in your breast pocket above a pacemaker when the telephone is switched on or in standby mode.
- The mobile telephone must be switched off immediately if there is a suspicion of interference with a pacemaker.

## Lift points for the vehicle

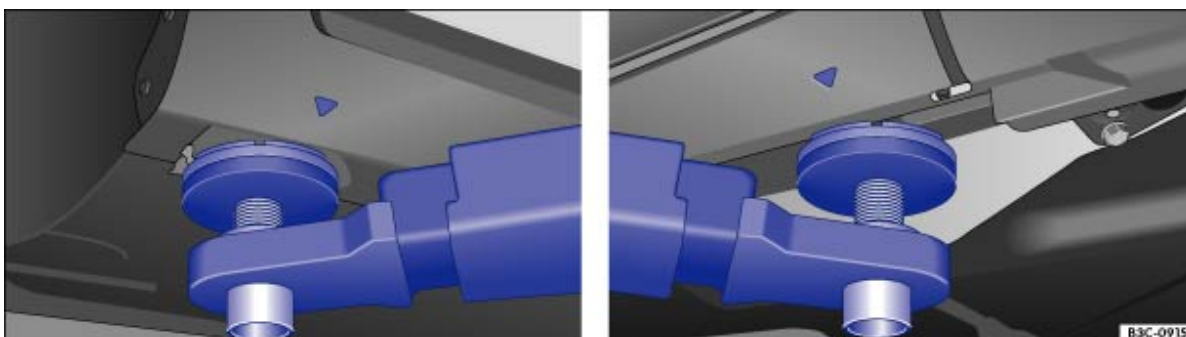
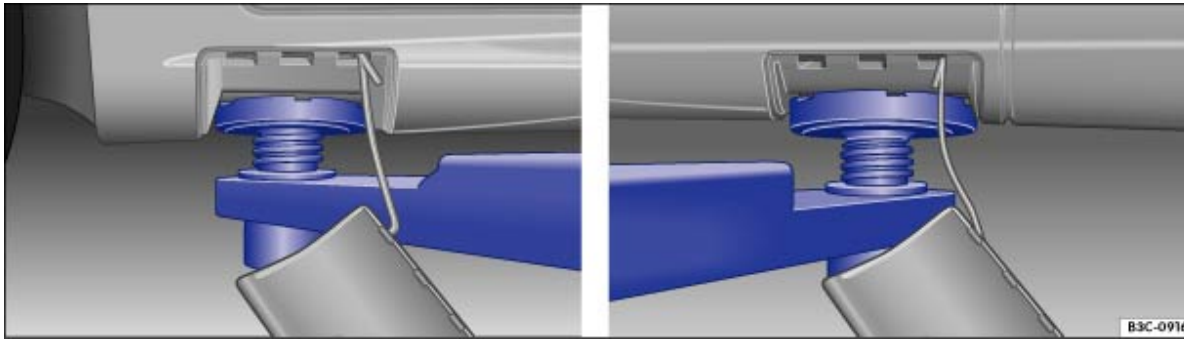


Fig. 208 Raising with lifting platform: lifting points on vehicles without covers



**Fig. 209** Raising with lifting platform: lifting points on vehicles with covers

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → *Introduction*

The vehicle may only be lifted at the points shown in the illustrations → *Fig. 208* and → *Fig. 209*. If the vehicle is not raised on the lifting points shown, the vehicle could be damaged → . There is also a risk of serious injury → .

Lifting platforms with fluid filled cushions (receiving platforms) may not be used for lifting the vehicle.

There are many precautions that have to be followed when lifting a vehicle on a workshop hoist or floor jack. Do not try to lift a vehicle on a lifting platform or vehicle jack unless you have the training, knowledge and experience to be able to do so safely.

Information on removing the covers and using the jack to lift the vehicle → *Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (covered jacking points)* .

## **WARNING**

Lifting your vehicle incorrectly with a lifting platform or vehicle jack can cause accidents and serious personal injury:

- Always read and heed the operating instructions from the lifting platform or vehicle jack manufacturer and any legal regulations before lifting the vehicle.
- All occupants should leave the vehicle before it is lifted.
- The vehicle should only be lifted at those points indicated in the illustrations → *Fig. 208* and → *Fig. 209*. If the vehicle is not lifted at the points shown, it could fall off the lifting platform when work is carried out, for example, when the engine or gearbox is removed.
- The vehicle jacking points must be placed on the centre of the support surfaces of the vehicle lift and have as much contact as possible.
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised. The vibration of the engine could cause the vehicle to fall off the lifting point.
- If work has to be carried out underneath the lifted vehicle, secure the vehicle with suitable jack stands with a sufficient load-bearing capacity.
- Never climb up the lifting platform.
- Always ensure that the vehicle is not heavier than the lifting capacity of the lifting platform.

## **NOTICE**

- Never lift the vehicle on the engine oil sump, the gearbox or the front or rear axle.
- To prevent damage to the underside of the vehicle when lifting, rubber pads must be used. Make sure that the lifting platform arms are able to move freely.
- The lifting platform arms must not be allowed to come into contact with the sills or any other part of the vehicle.

## CONSUMER INFORMATION

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Information stickers and plates*
- *Using the vehicle in other countries and continents*
- *Radio reception and aerials*
- *Volkswagen repair information*
- *Declaration of conformity*
- *Recycling and scrapping end-of-life vehicles*
- *User license for the remote control*
  
- *Declaration of conformity for wheels and tyres*
- *Vehicle tracking system*

#### Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views → *Exterior views*
- Pull-away assist systems → *Pull-away assist systems*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts → *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*
- ⇒ Booklet *Service schedule*,

### WARNING

Handling the vehicle incorrectly will increase the risk of accident and injuries.

- Observe legal requirements.
- Observe the owner's manual.

### NOTICE

Handling the vehicle incorrectly could lead to the vehicle becoming damaged.

- Observe legal requirements.
- Carry out service jobs in accordance with the service schedule.
- Observe the owner's manual.

### Information stickers and plates

---

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

Safety certificates, stickers and plates containing important information on operating the vehicle are factory-fitted in the engine compartment and on certain parts such as the tank flap, front passenger sun visor, the driver door pillar or in the luggage compartment floor.

- Never remove or damage the safety certificates, stickers and plates. They must remain legible at all times.
- If vehicle parts bearing safety certificates, stickers or plates are removed from the vehicle, replacement safety certificates, stickers or plates with the same information must be applied properly to the new parts by the qualified workshop.

#### Safety certificate

A safety certificate on the door pillar of the driver door provides the information that all necessary safety standards and specifications of the transport safety authorities of the individual country have been met at the time of production. The month and year of production as well as the chassis number may also be listed.

#### High voltage warning sticker



**high voltage warning sticker**

There is a sticker near the bonnet lock that provides a warning of the high voltage in the electrical system of the vehicle.

## Using the vehicle in other countries and continents

---



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

In the factory, the vehicle is produced specifically for a certain country and complies with this country's registration regulations valid at the time of vehicle production.

If the vehicle is going to be sold in another country or is going to be used in another country for an extended period, the legal requirements applicable in that country must be observed.

In some cases, certain equipment will have to be fitted or removed and functions deactivated. The scope and type of service available may also be affected. This is particularly important if the vehicle is driven in another climate region for a long period of time.

Because different frequency bands are used in different countries, the factory-fitted radio or navigation system may not work in other countries.

### NOTICE

- Volkswagen is not responsible for any vehicle damage caused by low-quality fuel, inadequate servicing work or lack of availability of Genuine Parts.
- Volkswagen cannot be held responsible if the vehicle does not comply with or only partly complies with the relevant legal requirements in other countries and continents.

## Radio reception and aerials

---



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

For factory-fitted radio and navigation devices, the aerial for radio reception can be installed in various locations in the vehicle:

- On the inside of the rear window, together with the rear window heating,
- On the inside of the rear side windows
- On the inside of the windscreen
- On the roof of the vehicle.

Aerials on the interior of the windows can be identified by thin wires.

### NOTICE

**Aerials located on the inside of the windows could be damaged by corrosive or acidic detergents, any other chemicals or if hard objects rub against the window. Never apply stickers over the window aerials and never clean the aerials with corrosive or acidic detergents or any other chemicals.**



Interference of AM radio reception could occur if electrical devices are used in the vicinity of the aerials in the windows.

## Volkswagen repair information

---



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

Volkswagen Service information and official Volkswagen repair information can be purchased from the following addresses:

## Customers in Europe, Asia, Australia, Africa, Central and South America

Please contact a Volkswagen dealership or a qualified workshop or order the literature you require from [www.erwin.volkswagen.de](http://www.erwin.volkswagen.de).

### **WARNING**

**Incorrect repairs and modifications can cause function problems and damage to the vehicle and impair the effectiveness of the driver assist systems and the airbag systems. This could result in serious injury and accidents.**

- Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should only be carried out by a qualified workshop.

## Declaration of conformity

---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The individual manufacturer declares herewith that the following products conform, at the time of vehicle production, with the basic requirements and other relevant laws and regulations, including FCC Part 15.19, FCC Part 15.21 and RSS-Gen Issue 1:

### Radio-based equipment

- Electronic immobilizer.
- Tyre pressure monitoring system.
- Key for the vehicle.
- Radio remote control for the auxiliary heater.
- Keyless Access locking and starting system.
- ACC (adaptive cruise control).

### Electrical equipment

- 12-volt socket.
- 230-volt Euro socket / 115-volt socket

## Recycling and scrapping end-of-life vehicles

---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Recycling end-of-life vehicles

Volkswagen has already made provision for the time when you choose to have your vehicle recycled in an environmentally-friendly manner. A recycling system which operates in many European countries will take back a vehicle when the time comes. When the vehicle has been recycled, a certificate of destruction will be issued to show that the vehicle has been disposed of correctly.

End-of-life vehicles are recycled free of charge, provided that national legislation is complied with.

Further information on the recycling of end-of-life vehicles can be found at a Volkswagen dealership.

### Scrapping

The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the airbag and the belt tensioners are scrapped. Qualified

The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the air bag and the belt tensioners are scrapped. Qualified workshops are familiar with these requirements.

Applies only in Brazil.

## User license for the remote control

---




Fig. 210 Schematic diagram: sticker with number sequence indicating approval by ANATEL

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

The remote control conforms to all criteria of approval and use. It has been approved by the national agency for telecommunications (ANATEL) for vehicle control purposes.

The respectively valid ANATEL approval number for the remote control is printed above the barcode on the sticker. The other information is data about the supplier of the remote control.

 This system works in secondary mode and is not protected against interference frequencies. This also applies to systems of the same type. This system cannot cause interference to systems that operate in primary mode.

Applies only in India

## Declaration of conformity for wheels and tyres

---

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

Tyres fitted in the vehicle meet the requirement of BIS and comply with the requirements under the Central Motor Vehicle Rules (CMVR), 1989.

Applies only in Brazil.

## Vehicle tracking system

---

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

In factory-produced vehicles for Brazil, a legally prescribed system for tracking down stolen vehicles is fitted.

### Activating the system

At the time of delivery, the vehicle tracking system has not been activated. In order to activate the system, the vehicle, along with the vehicle identification number and the data on the vehicle owner, must be registered with the monitoring and surveillance centre. The monitoring and surveillance centre can pass the information on to other state or non-state agencies for further processing and storage.

For more information, please contact your Volkswagen dealership.

## Components and function

The vehicle tracking system consists of a control unit and aerials fitted in the vehicle. When the vehicle tracking system has been activated and the ignition is switched on, the control unit relays the location of the vehicle to the monitoring and surveillance centre via the aerials.

The monitoring and surveillance centre can influence the vehicle functions over very large distances. If an authorised person reports the vehicle as stolen, the monitoring and surveillance centre can prevent the engine from being switched on. In addition, further steps can be taken to determine the position of the stolen vehicle.

If an engine is disabled by the monitoring and surveillance centre, it can only be reactivated in the vehicle itself by the monitoring and surveillance centre, a qualified workshop or at a Volkswagen dealership.

## Engine management system and exhaust purification system

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Indicator lamps*
- *Catalytic converter*
- *Diesel particulate filter*

### Additional information and warnings:

- Changing gear → *Changing gear*
- Filling the tank → *Filling the tank*
- Fuel → *Fuel*
- Engine oil → *Engine oil*
- Battery → *Vehicle battery*
- Information stored in the control units → *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*
- Tow starting and towing → *Tow starting and towing* .




### WARNING

The components of the exhaust system become very hot. This could cause a fire.





- Park the vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass.
- Never apply underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter, diesel particulate filter or the heat shields on the exhaust system.

## Indicator lamps

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  *Introduction*

Lit up	Possible cause	Correction
	Engine management system fault (Electronic Power Control).	The engine should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
	Diesel engine pre-glow before starting the engine.	→ <i>Starting and stopping the engine</i> .
	Fault in catalytic converter.	Decrease speed. Drive carefully to the next qualified workshop. The engine should be checked.

ENGINE SHOULD BE CHECKED.

	Diesel particulate filter has become saturated with soot.	Drive for approximately 15 minutes in 4th gear (manual gearbox) or select <b>D</b> (automatic gearbox) at a speed of at least 70 km/h (45 mph). Please observe any valid speed limits →  . Go to a qualified workshop if the indicator lamp still does not go out.
Flashes	Possible cause	Correction
	Fault in engine management system (diesel engine).	The engine should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
	Misfiring which damages the catalytic converter.	Decrease speed. Drive carefully to the next qualified workshop. The engine should be checked.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.

## WARNING



Please observe legal requirements if cleaning the diesel particulate filter when in traffic.

- Follow driving recommendation only if visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions are suitable.
- Do not endanger other vehicles on the road.

## NOTICE

To avoid damage to your vehicle, always observe the indicator lamps and associated warning texts.



If the indicator lamps ,  or **EPC** are lit up, fuel consumption may be higher and engine performance reduced.

## Catalytic converter



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The catalytic converter is used for exhaust gas post-treatment and helps to reduce exhaust emissions. Observe the following points to ensure that the exhaust system and the catalytic converter in the petrol engine will function for a long time:

- Use unleaded petrol only.
- Do not allow the fuel tank to run empty.
- Do not overfill engine oil → [Engine oil](#) .
- Do not tow start the vehicle. Use jump leads → [Starting the engine with jump leads](#) .

If you notice misfiring, uneven running or loss of power when the vehicle is moving, reduce speed immediately. The vehicle should be inspected at the nearest qualified workshop. If this happens, unburnt fuel can enter the exhaust system and escape into the atmosphere. The catalytic converter can also be damaged by overheating.



Even when the exhaust purification system is working perfectly, there may be a smell of sulphur from the exhaust in some conditions. This depends on the sulphur content of the fuel being used.


## Diesel particulate filter




First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The diesel particulate filter filters out soot particles in the exhaust gas. The soot particles are collected in the filter and are burnt off. To assist in this combustion process, Volkswagen recommends that you avoid making only short journeys.

- Use only diesel with low sulphur levels → *Fuel* .
- Never use petrol or heating oil.
- Never use biodiesel. It is permissible for the fuel manufacturer to mix biodiesel within the scope of EN 590 → *Fuel* .
- Do not allow the fuel tank to run empty.
- Do not overfill engine oil → *Engine oil* .
- Do not tow start the vehicle. Use jump leads → *Starting the engine with jump leads* .

To minimise a blockage of the diesel particulate filter, the engine speed in vehicles with an automatic gearbox may increase slightly in order to automatically initiate the cleaning process of the diesel particulate filter. The indicator lamp  will, however, not light up.

 Even when the exhaust purification system is working perfectly, there may be a smell of sulphur from the exhaust in some conditions. This depends on the sulphur content of the fuel being used.

# If and when

## Practical tips

### Frequently asked questions

If you suspect that there is a fault in the vehicle or if your vehicle has been damaged, read and observe the following information **before** contacting a Volkswagen dealership or qualified workshop. You may also find useful information in the index under the headings Things to note or Checklist.

Irregularity	Some possible causes	Possible solution
Engine does not start.	Vehicle battery is discharged.	– Jump-start the engine → <i>Starting the engine with jump leads</i> . – Recharge the vehicle battery → <i>Vehicle battery</i> .
	An incorrect vehicle key is being used.	Use a valid vehicle key → <i>Vehicle key set</i> .
	Fuel level is too low.	Fill the tank → <i>Filling the tank</i> .
	AdBlue level is too low.	Refill AdBlue → <i>Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue)</i> .
Smoke is coming from the wing.	Auxiliary heater is running.	Switch off the auxiliary heater → <i>Auxiliary heater (supplementary heating system)</i> .
	Supplementary heater is running.	No solution → <i>Supplementary heater</i> .
Vehicle cannot be locked or unlocked with the vehicle key.	– Battery in vehicle key discharged. – Too far away from vehicle. – Buttons pressed outside the effective range.	– Replace battery → <i>Vehicle key set</i> . – Move closer to the vehicle. – Synchronise vehicle key → <i>Vehicle key set</i> . – Unlock or lock vehicle manually → <i>Manual opening or closing</i> .
Unusual noises.	Cold engine, brake assist systems, ACC, refuel natural gas, electronic parking brake, Auto Hold, auxiliary heater.	Refer to the index under entries for Noises.
Unusual handling.	Assist systems are active.	Refer to the index under entries for Assist systems.
	Dual clutch gearbox DSG® is too hot.	Stop the vehicle immediately → <i>Driving with an automatic gearbox</i> .
Driver seat and exterior mirrors move when the vehicle is unlocked.	Convenience settings are saved.	Correct convenience settings → <i>Seat functions</i> .
	Memory seat settings are saved.	– Re-assign the seat setting → <i>Seat functions</i> . – Delete memory seat memory → <i>Seat functions</i> .
Front seats cannot be adjusted electrically.	Vehicle battery is discharged.	Recharge vehicle battery → <i>Vehicle battery</i> .
	Fuse blown.	Check fuse and replace as necessary → <i>Fuses</i> .
The vehicle has no vehicle jack, spare wheel or breakdown set.	Equipment depends on type of vehicle.	No direct solutions possible as it depends on the equipment level. Contact a Volkswagen dealership if necessary → <i>Vehicle tools</i> .
	The vehicle has wheels with mobility tyres.	
The interior monitoring system triggers a false alarm.	– Windows or sliding/tilting roof are open. – Item attached to the interior mirror is moving. – Mobile telephone vibrates in the vehicle.	Remove any objects that could trigger a false alarm → <i>Risk of false alarm</i> .
Functions are not working as described in the owner's manual.	Settings have been made in the Volkswagen information system.	Check and if necessary reset back to factory settings → <i>Volkswagen information system</i> .

<b>Irregularity</b>	<b>Some possible causes</b>	<b>Possible solutions</b>
The road ahead is not lit up properly.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Headlight has been adjusted for driving on the left or on the right.</li> <li>– Headlight too high.</li> <li>– Bulbs have failed.</li> <li>– Dipped headlights not switched on.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Switch the headlights over for driving on the left or right → <i>Lights</i> .</li> <li>– Adjust headlight range → <i>Lights</i> .</li> <li>– Change bulbs → <i>Changing bulbs</i> .</li> <li>– Switch dipped headlights on → <i>Lights</i> .</li> </ul>
Electrical consumers not working.	Vehicle battery is discharged.	Recharge vehicle battery → <i>Vehicle battery</i> .
	Low fuel level.	Fill the tank → <i>Filling the tank</i> .
	Fuse blown.	Check fuse and replace as necessary → <i>Fuses</i> .
Fuel consumption is higher than indicated.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Short distances driven.</li> <li>– Uneven acceleration.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Avoid driving short distances.</li> <li>– Think ahead when driving.</li> <li>– Accelerate evenly.</li> </ul>
	An electrical consumer is switched on.	Switch off all consumers that are not needed.
	Fault in engine management system.	Have the fault rectified → <i>Engine management system and exhaust purification system</i> .
	Tyre pressure too low.	Adjust the tyre pressure → <i>Wheels and tyres</i> .
	Driving in hilly regions.	No direct solutions possible.
	Driving with a trailer or roof carrier.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Check whether it is needed.</li> <li>– Remove when not needed.</li> </ul>
	Driving with a heavy load.	No direct solutions possible.
	Driving at high engine speed.	Select a high gear.

## In an emergency

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Making you and your vehicle safe*
- *First-aid kit, warning triangle, high-visibility waistcoat and fire extinguisher*

#### Additional information and warnings:

- Braking, stopping and parking → *Braking, stopping and parking*
- Manually closing or opening → *Manual opening or closing*
- Vehicle tool kit → *Vehicle tools*
- Changing a wheel → *Changing a wheel*

### WARNING

**A broken down vehicle increases the risk of accidents in road traffic – both for you and other road users.**

- **Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so. Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic in order to lock all doors securely in an emergency. Switch on hazard warning lights to warn other road users.**
- **Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle when the doors are locked. This may mean that they are locked in the vehicle in an emergency. Persons locked in the vehicle may be subjected to very high or very low temperatures.**

### Making you and your vehicle safe





**Fig. 211** In the upper section of the centre console: switch for the hazard warning lights



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

Observe any legislation concerning the safety of a broken-down vehicle. For example, many countries stipulate that you have to switch on the hazard warning lights and wear a high-visibility waistcoat → *First-aid kit, warning triangle, high-visibility waistcoat and fire extinguisher* .

## Checklist

To ensure your own safety and the safety of your passengers, observe the following points in the order given →  :

- ✓ Stop the vehicle at a safe distance away from moving traffic and on a suitable surface .
- ✓ Switch on the hazard warning lights using the button .
- ✓ Switch on the electronic parking brake Braking, stopping and parking Brakes Parking .
- ✓ Select the neutral position or move the selector lever to P Changing gear Changing gear Automatic gearbox see Automatic gearbox\_0 Automatic gearbox see Changing gear\_0 Automatic gearbox Manual gearbox see Changing gear\_0 Manual gearbox .
- ✓ Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition Starting and stopping the engine Engine and ignition Ignition see Engine and ignition\_0 .
- ✓ Make sure all occupants exit the vehicle away from moving traffic and move to safety, for instance behind the safety barrier.
- ✓ Take all vehicle keys with you when you leave the vehicle.
- ✓ Place the warning triangle in position to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle.
- ✓ Allow the engine to cool down and, if necessary, seek expert assistance.

When the hazard warning lights are switched on, for example if you are being towed, you can still indicate a change in direction or lane change by operating the turn signal. The warning lights will be interrupted temporarily.

### Switch on the hazard warning lights:

- When traffic ahead suddenly starts moving more slowly or you reach the tail end of a traffic jam. This will warn vehicles behind you.
- When there is an emergency.
- When the vehicle breaks down.
- When the vehicle is being towed.

Always follow local regulations for the use of the hazard warning lights.

If the hazard warning lights are not working, use an alternative method of drawing attention to the broken down vehicle. This method must comply with traffic legislation.

Ignoring any of the points on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.

## **WARNING**

The components of the exhaust system become very hot. This could lead to fires and serious injuries.

- Park the vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass, fuel.

**i** The vehicle battery will discharge if the hazard warning lights are left on over a long period of time – also when the ignition is switched off.

**i** If you brake hard at speeds over approximately 80 km/h (50 mph), the brake lights will flash to warn the traffic behind. If you then continue to brake, the hazard warning lights will be switched on automatically at speeds under approximately 10 km/h (6 mph). The brake light will light up continuously. Once you start to accelerate, the hazard warning lights will switch off again.

## First-aid kit, warning triangle, high-visibility waistcoat and fire extinguisher



Fig. 212 In the boot lid: holder for the warning triangle

**📖** First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → **⚠️** *Introduction*

### High-visibility waistcoat

In some vehicles there is a stowage compartment for a high-visibility waistcoat in the driver door → *Vehicle interior* .

### Warning triangle

When the boot lid is open, press the holder (close-up view) → *Fig. 212* and remove the warning triangle.

### First-aid kit

Depending on the model version, a **first-aid kit** will fit into the stowage compartment in the rear centre armrest or in the stowage compartment in the rear seat backrest behind the centre armrest → *Stowing* .

The first-aid kit must comply with legal requirements. Observe the expiry dates of the contents.

### Fire extinguisher

A **fire extinguisher** may be located in a holder in the footwell in front of the front passenger seat.

The fire extinguisher must comply with the valid legal requirements. It must be fully functional and checked regularly. See the testing label on the fire extinguisher.

## WARNING

In the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident, loose objects could be flung through the vehicle and cause severe injuries.

- Always secure the fire extinguisher, high-visibility waistcoat, first-aid kit and warning triangle safely in the holders.

## Manual opening or closing

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- *Locking and unlocking the driver door manually*
- *Locking the front passenger door and rear doors manually*
- *Unlocking the boot lid manually*
- *Closing the sliding/tilting roof manually*
- *Unlocking the selector lever lock manually*

If the vehicle key or central locking system fails, the doors, boot lid and sliding/tilting roof can be locked and, with some exceptions, unlocked manually.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Vehicle key set → *Vehicle key set*
- Central locking system → *Central locking system*
- Doors → *Doors*
- Boot lid → *Boot lid*
- Sliding/tilting roof → *Sliding/tilting roof*
- In an emergency → *In an emergency*

## WARNING

Careless manual opening and closing can cause serious injury.

- If the vehicle is locked from the outside, the doors and windows cannot be opened from the inside.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the car in an emergency and will not be able to get themselves to safety.
- Depending on the time of year, a locked vehicle can be subjected to very high or very low temperatures. This could cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially for small children.

## WARNING

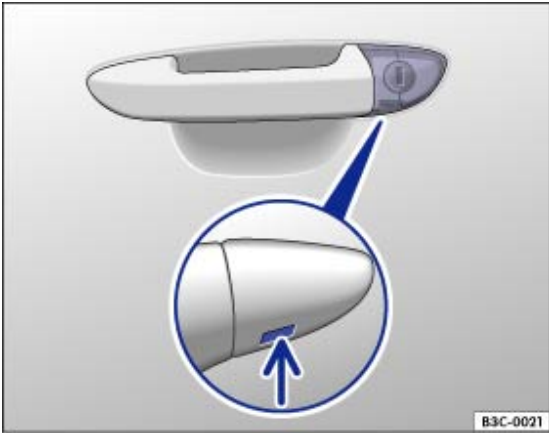
The path of the doors, boot lid and sliding/tilting roof is a dangerous area. Injuries could be sustained here.

- Therefore doors, the boot lid and the sliding/tilting roof should only be opened or closed when nobody is in their path.



## NOTICE

When carrying out manual closing or opening, remove and install parts carefully in order to avoid damage to the vehicle.

## Locking and unlocking the driver door manually



**Fig. 213** Door handle on driver's door: covered lock cylinder


 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

If locked manually, all doors are locked. If unlocked manually, only the driver door is unlocked. Observe information on the anti-theft alarm → *Central locking system* .

- Remove the spare key from the vehicle key → *Vehicle key set* .
- Insert the spare key into the opening for the cover on the driver door handle → *Fig. 213* (arrow) from below. Lift up the cover.
- Insert the spare key into the lock cylinder and lock or unlock the vehicle.
- Close the cover down onto the locking cylinder.

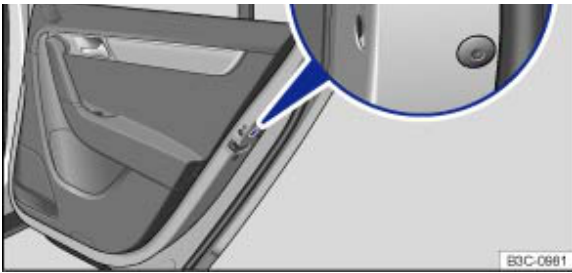
### Things to note when unlocking:

- The anti-theft alarm stays active when the vehicle is unlocked. However, the alarm will not be triggered → *Central locking system* .
- Open the driver door. The alarm will be triggered if the ignition is not switched on within 15 seconds.
- Switch on the ignition. When the ignition is switched on, the electronic immobilizer recognises a valid vehicle key and deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.

 The anti-theft alarm is not activated when the vehicle is manually locked using the spare key → *Central locking system* .

## Locking the front passenger door and rear doors manually






**Fig. 214** In the end face of the right-hand door: manual lock covered by a rubber seal




**Fig. 215** Manually locking the vehicle with the spare key

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

The front passenger door and the rear doors can be locked manually. This does **not** activate the anti-theft alarm.

- Open the door.
- Remove the rubber seal from the end face of the door. The seal is marked by a lock symbol  → *Fig. 214*.
- Remove the spare key from the vehicle key → *Vehicle key set* .
- Insert the spare key into the vertical slot and turn the spare key away from the vehicle → *Fig. 215* .
- Put the rubber seal back in place and close the door fully.
- Ensure that the door is locked.
- If necessary, carry out this process on the other doors.
- The vehicle should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

 The vehicle doors can be unlocked and opened from inside by pulling the door release handle. You may have to pull the door release lever twice → *Central locking system* .

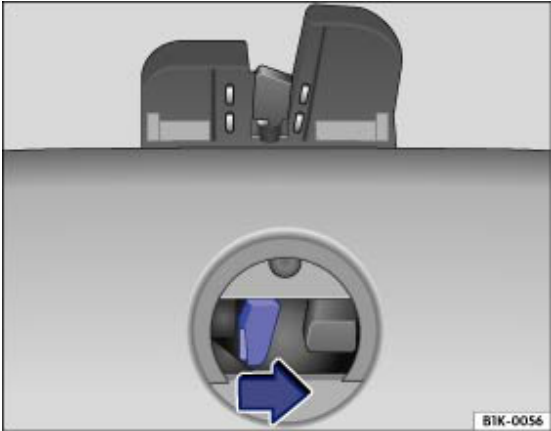
## Unlocking the boot lid manually

---





**Fig. 216** Lever for unlocking the boot lid from inside the luggage compartment



**Fig. 217** Inside the luggage compartment: unlocking the boot lid manually

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

- If necessary, fold the backrest of the rear bench seat forwards → *Seat functions* .
- Remove items of luggage so you can reach the boot lid from the inside.

#### Opening in vehicles with a handle:

- Pull the handle → *Fig. 216* .

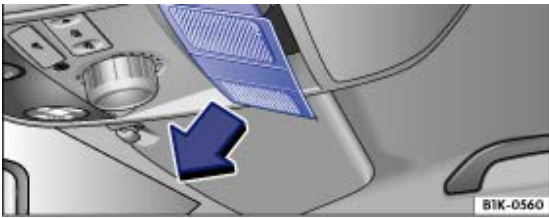
#### Opening in vehicles without a handle:

- Remove the round cover from the interior trim on the boot lid.
- Push the release lever in the direction of the arrow → *Fig. 217* to unlock the boot lid.

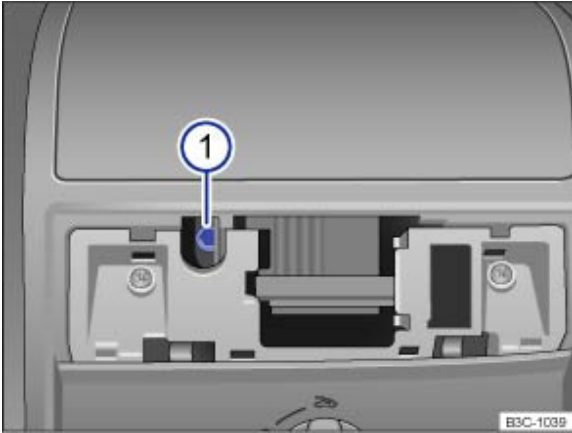
### Closing the sliding/tilting roof manually

---






**Fig. 218** In the roof: removing the cover



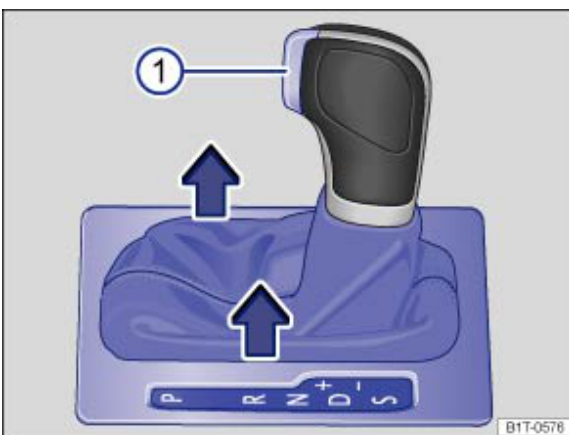
**Fig. 219** Hexagon socket head bolt for closing the sliding/tilting roof

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

- Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow → [Fig. 218](#).
- Insert a 4 mm, commercially available hexagon key<sup>1)</sup> into the hexagon socket screw → [Fig. 219](#) ①.
- Turn the hexagon key to close the sliding/tilting roof.
- Replace the cover.
- The sliding/tilting roof should be checked by a qualified workshop. The functioning and roll-back function of the sliding/tilting roof could malfunction if it is closed manually.

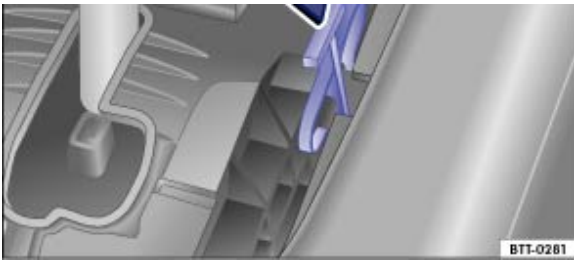
<sup>1)</sup> Not included in the vehicle tools.

## Unlocking the selector lever lock manually



**Fig. 220** Removing the cover of the gearshift gate





**Fig. 221** Unlocking the selector lever lock manually



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)


If the power fails in the vehicle (for example if the battery has no charge) and the vehicle has to be pushed or towed, the manual release mechanism must be used to move the selector lever to the **N** position.

The manual release mechanism is located under the cover of the gearshift gate on the right-hand side, as seen from the direction of travel. A screwdriver, or other suitable object, is needed in order to unlock the selector lever lock.

## Preparation

- Switch on the electronic parking brake. If the electronic parking brake cannot be applied firmly the vehicle will have to be prevented from rolling off using other means.
- Switch off the ignition.

## Removing the cover of the gearshift gate

- Pull the cover upwards in the area around the selector lever sleeve → [Fig. 220](#).
- Pull the cover up and over the selector lever → .

## Unlocking the selector lever lock manually

- Push the release lever → [Fig. 221](#) in the direction of the arrow and hold it in this position.
- Press the lock button → [Fig. 220](#) ① on the selector lever and put the selector lever into position **N**.

## WARNING

Never move the selector lever out of the position **P** if the electronic parking brake is not switched on. Otherwise the vehicle could move unexpectedly if it is stopped on an incline, which could lead to accidents and serious injuries.

## NOTICE

The automatic gearbox will become damaged if the vehicle is allowed to roll for a long period of time or at a high speed (for example while being towed) with the selector lever in position **N** and the engine switched off.

## Vehicle tools

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Storing](#)
- [Contents](#)

Observe any country-specific legislation when securing your vehicle in the event of a breakdown.

## Additional information and warnings:

- Preparation for working in the engine compartment → [Preparation for working in the engine compartment](#)



- In an emergency → *In an emergency*
- Changing a wheel → *Changing a wheel*
- Breakdown set → *Breakdown set*

## ⚠ WARNING

In the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident, a loose vehicle tools container, breakdown set and spare wheel could be flung through the vehicle and cause severe injuries.

- Always ensure that the vehicle tools, breakdown set or spare wheel are secured in the luggage compartment.

## ⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable or damaged tools can lead to accidents and injuries.

- Never work with unsuitable or damaged tools.

## Storing

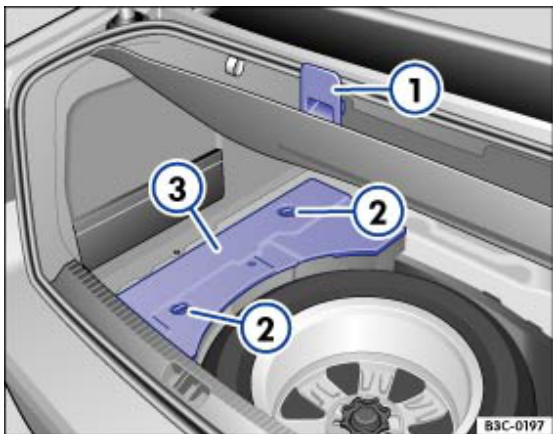


Fig. 222 In the luggage compartment under the floor covering ①: spare wheel and cover ② for vehicle tools

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → *Introduction*

The vehicle tools, spare wheel or breakdown set can be located in various places in the luggage compartment.

The breakdown set may be stored in the foam rubber holder near the vehicle tools.

Storage in the luggage compartment	Action
In a foam rubber holder under the floor covering:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Attach the floor covering to the upper edge of the luggage compartment → Fig. 222 ①.</li> <li>– Turn quick-release catches → Fig. 222 ② 90° in order to remove the cover → Fig. 222 ③ of the vehicle tools.</li> </ul>
Storage in the luggage compartment	Action
If applicable, behind a cover in the right and left sides:	Turn the two catches by 90° to remove the cover.

After use, crank the vehicle jack back to its original position so that it can be stored safely.

## Contents

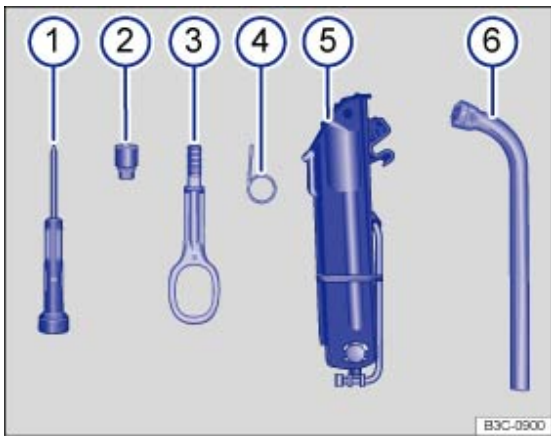


Fig. 223 Contents of the tool kit



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The contents of the vehicle tool kit depends on the vehicle equipment level. The following describes the maximum scope.

The vehicle tool kit comprises the following parts → [Fig. 223](#)

- 1 Screwdriver with hexagon socket in the handle for slackened wheel bolts. The screwdriver blade is reversible. The screwdriver may be located under the box spanner.
- 2 Adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolts. Volkswagen recommends you carry the wheel bolt adapter in the vehicle tool kit at all times. The **code number** of the anti-theft wheel bolt is engraved on the front of the adapter. You will need this number to replace the adapter if lost. Make a note of the code number for the anti-theft wheel bolt and keep it in a safe place – but not inside the vehicle.
- 3 Removable towing eye.
- 4 Wire hook for pulling off the centre cover, wheel covers and the wheel bolt caps.
- 5 Jack. Before you return the jack to the tool box, fully wind in the claw. Next the crank lever must be braced against the side of the jack in order to stow the jack.
- 6 Box spanner for wheel bolts.

## Hub caps

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Centre covers](#)
- [Wheel cover](#)
- [Wheel bolt caps](#)

### Additional information and warnings:

- Cleaning and caring for the vehicle exterior → [Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior](#)
- Vehicle tool kit → [Vehicle tools](#)
- Changing a wheel → [Changing a wheel](#)
- Breakdown set → [Breakdown set](#)

### WARNING

Using unsuitable hub caps and fitting the hub caps incorrectly could cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Hub caps which are not fitted properly could become loose while the vehicle is in motion and endanger other road users.

- Do not use damaged hub caps.
- Always ensure that the flow of air to cool the brakes is not restricted or reduced. This also applies to the retrofitting of wheel trims. If the flow of air is not sufficient, the braking distance could increase significantly.

## ! NOTICE

Remove hub caps carefully and fit them again properly so as to avoid damage to the vehicle.

## Centre covers



Fig. 224 Removing the centre covers by pulling



Fig. 225 Removing the centre covers by turning

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Depending on the design, the centre cover can be removed by pulling → [Fig. 224](#) or turning → [Fig. 225](#).

### Vehicles with centre covers that can be removed by pulling

- To remove take the wire hook from the tool kit and insert it into a hole in the cover → [Fig. 224](#).
- Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow.
- To replace press up the centre cover against the rim until you feel it engage.

### Vehicles with centre covers that can be removed by turning

- To remove turn the centre covers clockwise or anti-clockwise until they are released from the rim → [Fig. 225](#).
- Reach behind one of the bars and remove the centre cover.

- To *replace* place the centre cover in the middle of the rim.
- Press the centre cover against the rim until you feel it engage.

## Wheel cover

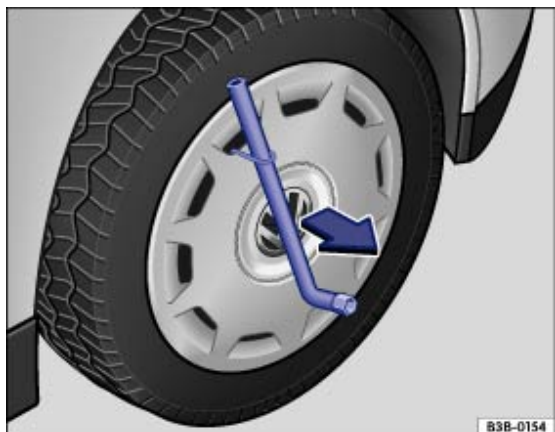


Fig. 226 Removing the wheel covers



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Removing the wheel covers

- Take the box spanner and wire hook from the tool kit → [Vehicle tools](#) .
- Insert the wire hook into one of the holes in the wheel cover.
- Push the box spanner through the wire hook → [Fig. 226](#) and remove the wheel cover in the direction of the arrow.

### Fitting the wheel covers

Before fitting the wheel cover, the anti-theft wheel bolt must be screwed into position → [Fig. 229](#) ② or ③. The wheel cover can otherwise not be fitted.

The wheel covers must be pushed on to the rims with the hole for the valve aligned with the valve → [Fig. 229](#) ① . When fitting the wheel cover, make sure that it engages securely on the entire circumference.

## Wheel bolt caps





**Fig. 227** Removing the wheel bolt caps



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  **Introduction**

- Take the wire hook from the tool kit → [Vehicle tools](#) .
- Insert the hook through the opening in the cap → [Fig. 227](#) and pull off in the direction of the arrow.

The caps protect the wheel bolts and must be replaced after changing the tyre.

The **anti-theft wheel bolt** has a separate cap. It fits only on the anti-theft wheel bolts and not on conventional wheel bolts.

## Changing a wheel



### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Preparations for changing a wheel](#)
- [Wheel bolts](#)
- [Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack \(open jacking points\)](#)
- [Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack \(covered jacking points\)](#)
- [Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack \(R-Line models\)](#)
- [Changing the wheel](#)
- [After changing a wheel](#)

Some model versions are delivered without a factory-fitted jack or box spanner. If this is the case, the wheel should be changed by a qualified workshop.

Only change the wheel yourself when the car is parked in a safe place, you are familiar with the necessary actions and safety procedures and you have access to all the correct tools. Seek expert assistance if this is not the case.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views → [Exterior views](#)
- Vehicle key set → [Vehicle key set](#)
- Wheels and tyres → [Wheels and tyres](#)
- In an emergency → [In an emergency](#)
- Vehicle tool kit → [Vehicle tools](#)
- Hub caps → [Hub caps](#)

## WARNING

Changing a wheel could be dangerous, especially if it is carried out on the side of a road. Please note the following points in order to reduce the risk of serious injuries:

- **Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so. Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic in order to carry out the wheel change.**
- **All passengers and children in particular must be at a safe distance and away from your area of work during the wheel change.**
- **Switch on hazard warning lights to warn other road users.**
- **Make sure that the ground is flat and firm. If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support for the vehicle jack.**

- Only change the wheel yourself when you feel confident with carrying out the procedure. If not, seek expert assistance.
- Always use suitable and undamaged tools to change the wheel.
- Always switch off the engine, switch on the electronic parking brake and move the selector lever to the position P or select a gear on a manual gearbox in order to reduce the risk of unintended vehicle movement.
- The wheel bolt tightening torque should be checked with a torque wrench immediately after changing a wheel.

## Preparations for changing a wheel



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

## Checklist

The following actions must always be carried out in the given order in preparation for changing the wheel →  :

- ✓ In the event of a flat tyre, park your vehicle on a flat and solid surface at a safe distance from the flow of traffic.
- ✓ Switch on the electronic parking brake Braking, stopping and parking Brakes Parking .
- ✓ Automatic gearbox: move the selector lever to position P Changing gear Changing gear Automatic gearbox see Automatic gearbox\_0 Automatic gearbox see Changing gear\_0 Automatic gearbox Manual gearbox see Changing gear\_0 Manual gearbox .
- ✓ Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition Starting and stopping the engine Engine and ignition Ignition see Engine and ignition\_0 .
- ✓ Manual gearbox: select a gear Changing gear Changing gear Automatic gearbox see Automatic gearbox\_0 Automatic gearbox see Changing gear\_0 Automatic gearbox Manual gearbox see Changing gear\_0 Manual gearbox .
- ✓ Make sure all vehicle occupants exit the vehicle and move to safety, for instance behind the safety barrier.
- ✓ Chock the wheel opposite the wheel being worked on with a stone or a similar object.
- ✓ When towing a trailer: unhitch the trailer from the vehicle and park it properly.
- ✓ When the luggage compartment is loaded: remove items of luggage.
- ✓ Remove the spare wheel and vehicle tools from the luggage compartment.
- ✓ Remove the hub cap Hub caps Hub caps .

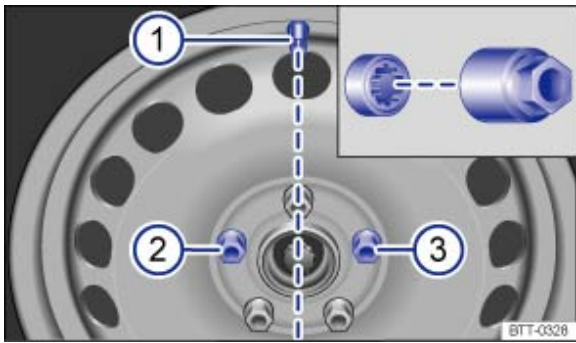
## WARNING

Ignoring any of the points on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.

## Wheel bolts



**Fig. 228** Changing the wheel: loosening the wheel bolts**Fig. 229** Changing wheel: tyre valve ① and locations of the anti-theft wheel bolt ② or ③

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → *Introduction*

Only the spanner delivered with the vehicle should be used to loosen the wheel bolts.

Loosen the wheel bolts only about one turn before raising the vehicle with the jack.

If the wheel bolt is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by pushing down the end of the spanner carefully with your foot. Hold on to the car for support and take care not to slip.

### Loosening the wheel bolts

- Fit the box spanner over the wheel bolt as far as it will go → *Fig. 228*.
- Hold the end of the box spanner and turn the wheel bolt *one* turn anti-clockwise → .

### Loosening the anti-theft wheel bolt

The anti-theft wheel bolt must be bolted into position → *Fig. 229* ② or ③ on wheels with a wheel cover. The wheel cover can otherwise not be fitted.

- Take the adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts out of the vehicle tool kit.
- Insert the adapter into the anti-theft wheel bolt. Push it in as far as it will go.
- Insert the box spanner into the adapter as far as it will go.
- Hold the end of the box spanner and turn the wheel bolt *one* turn anti-clockwise → .

### Important information about the wheel bolts

The design of the wheel rims and wheel bolts is matched to the factory-installed wheels. If different rims are fitted, the correct wheel bolts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt heads must be used. This ensures that wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system works properly.

Wheel bolts from a vehicle of the same model series may, in certain circumstances, not be used.

### Tightening torque for the wheel bolts

The tightening torque for wheel bolts for steel and alloy wheels is **120 Nm**. The tightening torque should be checked with a torque wrench immediately after changing a wheel.

If the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn, they must be replaced and the wheel hub threads cleaned **before the tightening torque is checked**.

Never grease or lubricate wheel bolts or the threads of the wheel hub. They could otherwise loosen while the vehicle is in motion, even if the required torque setting is used.

**WARNING**

Incorrectly tightened wheel bolts can loosen while the vehicle is in motion and cause accidents, serious injury, and loss of control of the vehicle.

- Use only wheel bolts which belong to the wheel.
- Never use different wheel bolts.
- The wheel bolts and threads of the wheel hubs must be clean, free from oil and grease and turn easily.
- Always use the box spanner placed in the vehicle at the factory to loosen and tighten the wheel bolts.
- Loosen the wheel bolts only about one turn before raising the vehicle with the jack.
- Never grease or lubricate wheel bolts or the threads of the wheel hub. They could otherwise loosen while the vehicle is in motion, even if the required torque setting is used.
- Never remove the bolts on rims with bolted on rings.
- If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too low, the wheel bolts and rims could loosen while the vehicle is in motion. If the tightening torque is too high, the wheel bolts and threads could be damaged.

### Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (open jacking points)

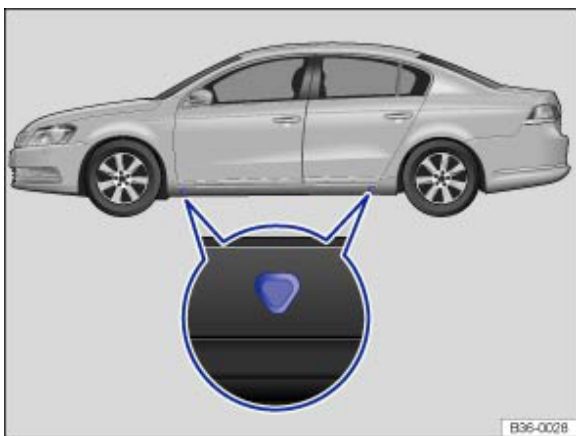


Fig. 230 Jacking points

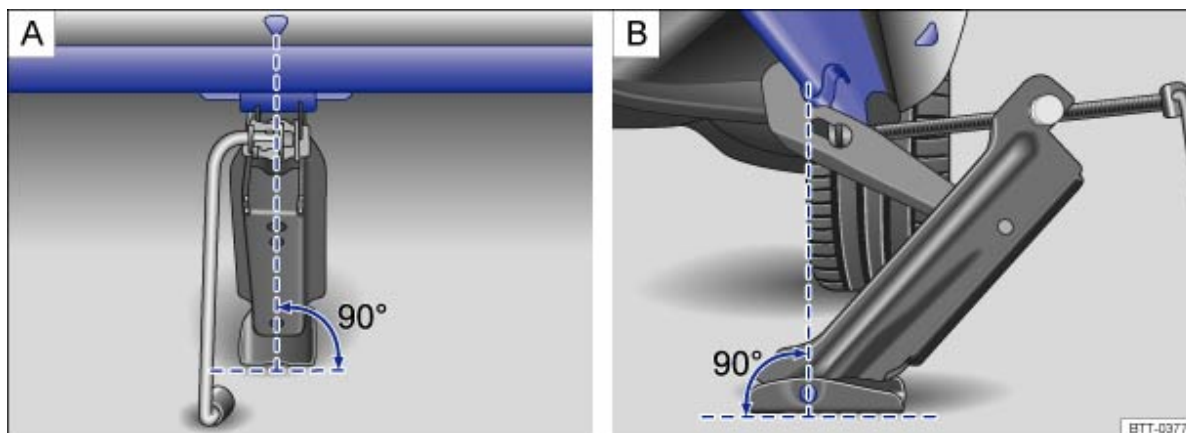



Fig. 231 Jack at the rear on the left-side of the vehicle
















**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

The jack may be applied only at the jacking points shown (markings on the body) → [Fig. 230](#). Always use the jacking point closest to the wheel you are working on → .

## Checklist

To ensure your own safety and the safety of your passengers, observe the following points in the order given →  :

-  Find a flat and firm surface suitable for lifting the vehicle.
-  Switch off the engine. Stop the engine, select a gear for a manual gearbox or move the selector lever to position P for an automatic gearbox  
Changing gear Changing gear Automatic gearbox see [Automatic gearbox\\_0](#) Automatic gearbox see [Changing gear\\_0](#) Automatic gearbox  
Manual gearbox see [Changing gear\\_0](#) Manual gearbox . Close the electronic parking brake Braking, stopping and parking Brakes Parking .
-  Chock the wheel diagonally opposite using the collapsible chocks or other suitable items.
-  When towing a trailer: unhitch the trailer from the vehicle and park it properly.
-  Loosen the wheel bolts on the wheel that is being changed Wheel bolts Anti-theft wheel bolts Wheel bolts Changing a wheel Wheel bolts\_2 .
-  Find the jacking point under the vehicle which is closest to the wheel that is being changed.
-  Raise the jack until it just fits under the jacking point of the vehicle.
-  Ensure that the foot of the jack is resting securely on the ground with its whole surface and that the foot of the jack is positioned precisely, i.e. vertically beneath the point of application .
-  Position the jack. At the same time, continue to crank the claw up until it is in position around the vertical rib underneath the vehicle .
-  Crank the jack further until the wheel is just clear of the ground.



## WARNING

Incorrect use of the vehicle jack could cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. This could lead to severe injuries. Please note the following points in order to reduce the risk of injuries:

- Only use vehicle jacks which have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type. Other jacks could slip out of place – this includes jacks supplied with other Volkswagen models.
- The ground must be flat and firm. Soft ground or surfaces at an incline under the jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support for the vehicle jack.
- On a hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping.
- Fit the jack only at the points described. The jack claw must grip the vertical rib under the sill securely → [Fig. 231](#) .
- Never place any part of your body e.g. arm or leg, underneath the vehicle if it is only supported by the jack.

- If you have to work underneath the vehicle, use suitable stands to provide extra support for the vehicle.
- Never lift the vehicle if it is at an angle to one side or the engine is running.
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised on a jack. The vibration of the engine could cause the vehicle to fall off the vehicle jack.

## **⚠ WARNING**

Ignoring any of the points on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.

### Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (covered jacking points)

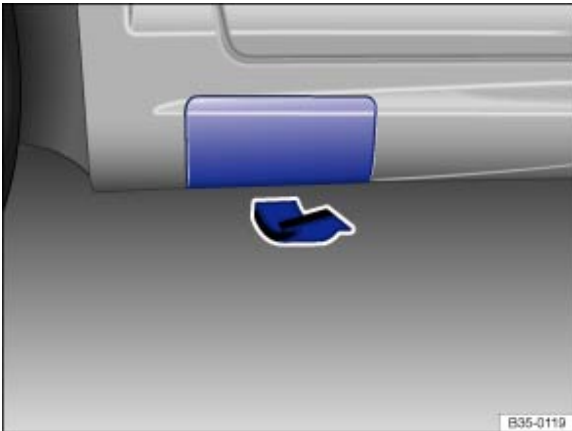


Fig. 232 Fold the cover out

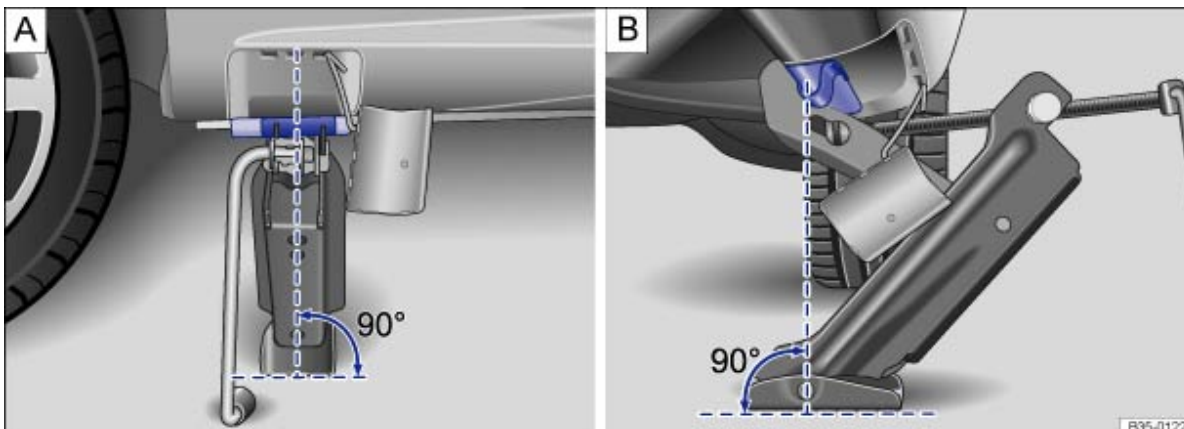




Fig. 233 Jack at the rear on the left-side of the vehicle



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → **⚠ Introduction**

The jack may be applied only at the jacking points shown, and only when the cover is folded down → [Fig. 232](#) . Always use the jacking point closest to the wheel you are working on →  .

## Checklist

To ensure your own safety and the safety of your passengers, observe the following points in the order given →  :

- ✓ Find a flat and firm surface suitable for lifting the vehicle.
- ✓ Switch off the engine. Stop the engine, select a gear for a manual gearbox or move the selector lever to position P for an automatic gearbox  
Changing gear Changing gear Automatic gearbox see [Automatic gearbox\\_0](#) Automatic gearbox see [Changing gear\\_0](#) Automatic gearbox  
Manual gearbox see [Changing gear\\_0](#) Manual gearbox . Close the electronic parking brake Braking, stopping and parking Brakes Parking .
- ✓ Chock the wheel diagonally opposite using the collapsible chocks or other suitable items.
- ✓ When towing a trailer: unhitch the trailer from the vehicle and park it properly.
- ✓ Loosen the wheel bolts on the wheel that is being changed Wheel bolts Anti-theft wheel bolts Wheel bolts Changing a wheel Wheel bolts\_3 .
- ✓ Find the jacking point under the vehicle which is closest to the wheel that is being changed.
- ✓ Remove the cap in the sill. To do this, pull forcefully but carefully in the direction of the arrow. The cap is fitted with a retaining strap.
- ✓ Raise the jack until it just fits under the jacking point of the vehicle.
- ✓ Ensure that the foot of the jack is resting securely on the ground with its whole surface and that the foot of the jack is positioned precisely, i.e. vertically beneath the point of application .
- ✓ Position the jack. At the same time, continue to crank the claw up until it is in position around the vertical rib underneath the vehicle .
- ✓ Crank the jack further until the wheel is just clear of the ground.

## WARNING

**Incorrect use of the vehicle jack could cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. This could lead to severe injuries. Please note the following points in order to reduce the risk of injuries:**

- Only use vehicle jacks which have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type. Other jacks could slip out of place – this includes jacks supplied with other Volkswagen models.
- The ground must be flat and firm. Soft ground or surfaces at an incline under the jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support for the vehicle jack.
- On a hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping.
- Fit the jack only at the points described. The jack claw must grip the vertical rib under the sill securely → [Fig. 233](#) .
- Never place any part of your body e.g. arm or leg, underneath the vehicle if it is only supported by the jack.
- If you have to work underneath the vehicle, use suitable stands to provide extra support for the vehicle.

- Never lift the vehicle if it is at an angle to one side or the engine is running.
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised on a jack. The vibration of the engine could cause the vehicle to fall off the vehicle jack.

## ⚠ WARNING

Ignoring any of the points on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.

### Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (R-Line models)

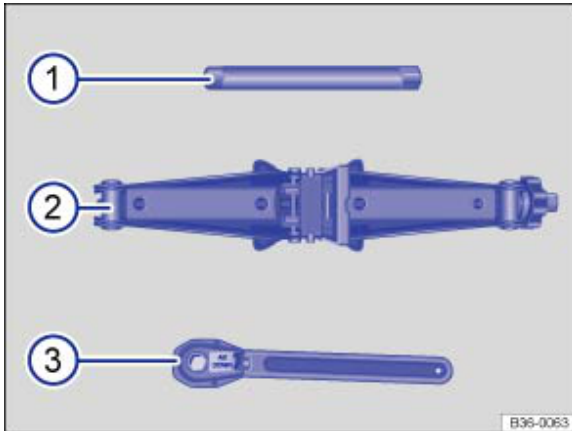


Fig. 234 Elements of the scissors jack

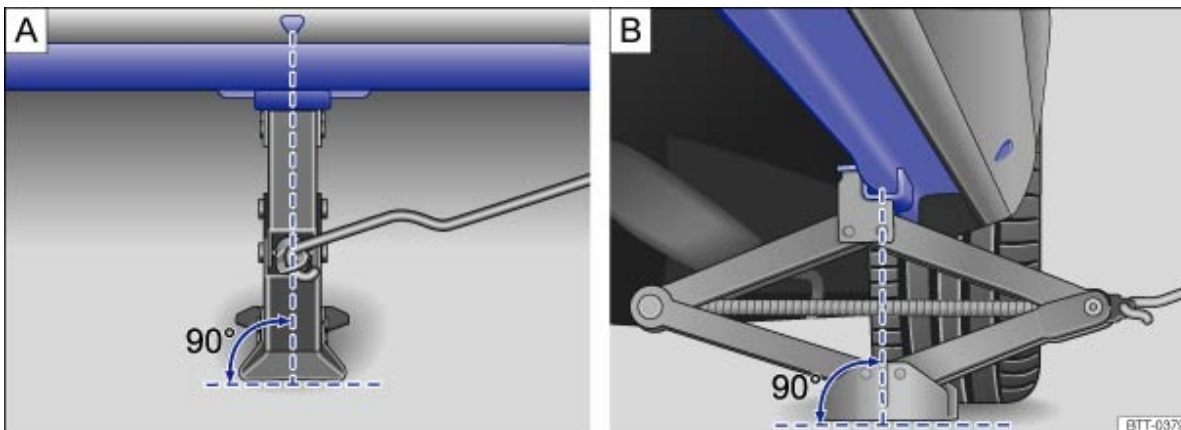



Fig. 235 Scissors jack at the rear on the left-side of the vehicle



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → ⚠ Introduction












The jack may be applied only at the jacking points shown - markings on the body → Fig. 235. Always use the jacking point closest to the wheel you are

working on → .

Raise the vehicle using only the designated jacking points.

## Checklist

To ensure your own safety and the safety of your passengers, observe the following points in the order given → .

-  Find a flat and firm surface suitable for lifting the vehicle.
-  Stop the engine, move the selector lever to position P Changing gear Automatic gearbox see Automatic gearbox\_0 Automatic gearbox see Changing gear\_0 Automatic gearbox Manual gearbox see Changing gear\_0 Manual gearbox and close the electronic parking brake Braking, stopping and parking Brakes Parking .
-  Chock the wheel diagonally opposite using the collapsible chocks or other suitable items.
-  When towing a trailer: unhitch the trailer from the vehicle and park it properly.
-  Activate the jacking-up mode.
-  Loosen the wheel bolts on the wheel that is being changed. Connect extension ① to the scissors jack ② . Insert the hand crank ③ onto the extension ① .
-  Find the jacking point under the vehicle which is closest to the wheel that is being changed.
-  Raise the scissors jack until it just fits under the jacking point of the vehicle.
-  Ensure that the foot of the jack is resting securely on the ground with its whole surface and that the foot of the jack is positioned precisely, i.e. vertically beneath the point of application .
-  Position the jack. At the same time, continue to crank the claw up until it is in position around the vertical rib underneath the vehicle .
-  Crank the jack further until the wheel is just clear of the ground.

### WARNING

Incorrect use of the vehicle jack could cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. This could lead to severe injuries. Please note the following points in order to reduce the risk of injuries:

- Only use vehicle jacks which have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type. Other jacks could slip out of place – this includes jacks supplied with other Volkswagen models.
- The ground must be flat and firm. Soft ground or surfaces at an incline under the jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support for the vehicle jack.
- On a hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping.
- Fit the jack only at the points described. The jack claw must grip the vertical rib under the sill securely → [Fig. 235](#).
- Never place any part of your body (e.g. arm or leg) underneath the vehicle if the latter is only supported by the jack.
- If you have to work underneath the vehicle, use suitable stands to provide extra support for the vehicle.
- Never lift the vehicle if it is at an angle to one side or the engine is running.

Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised on a jack. The vibration of the engine could cause the vehicle to fall off the vehicle.

- never start the engine when the vehicle is raised on a jack. The vibration of the engine could cause the vehicle to fall off the vehicle jack.

## **⚠ WARNING**

Ignoring any of the points on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.

## Changing the wheel



Fig. 236 Changing the wheel: removing the wheel bolts with the screwdriver handle


 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Removing the wheel

- Read the checklist → [Preparations for changing a wheel](#) .
- Loosen the wheel bolts → [Wheel bolts](#) .
- Jack up the vehicle → [Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack \(open jacking points\)](#) or → [Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack \(covered jacking points\)](#) .
- Using the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle → [Fig. 236](#) , unscrew the loosened wheel bolts, remove and place on a clean surface.
- Remove the wheel.

### Fitting the spare wheel

If applicable, take note of the running direction of the tyre → [Wheels and tyres](#) .

- Position the spare wheel.
- Insert the anti-theft wheel bolt using the adapter at position → [Fig. 229](#) ② or ③ and tighten it slightly in a clockwise direction.
- Screw in all the other wheel bolts in a clockwise direction and use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to tighten them *gently*.
- Lower the vehicle with the jack.
- Use the box spanner to tighten all the wheel bolts securely in a clockwise direction →  . Do not tighten the bolts in clockwise or anti-clockwise sequence. Tighten them in diagonal sequence.
- Fit the cover caps, centre covers or wheel covers → [Hub caps](#) .

## **⚠ WARNING**

An incorrect torque or incorrectly handled wheel bolts can lead to a loss of control over the vehicle, cause accidents and serious

**injuries.**

- **Always keep all wheel bolts and threads in the wheel hubs clean and free from oil and grease. The wheel bolts must be easy to turn and be tightened to the specified torque.**
- **The hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle should be used for turning wheel bolts only. Do not use it to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.**

## After changing a wheel

---



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

- Clean the tools as necessary and place them back in the foam rubber holder in the luggage compartment → [Vehicle tools](#) .
- Stow the spare wheel or the removed wheel safely in the luggage compartment.
- The tightening torque of the wheel bolts should be checked immediately with a torque wrench → [Tightening torque for the wheel bolts](#) .
- The damaged wheel should be replaced as soon as possible.



In the case of vehicles with a tyre pressure monitoring system, the system may have to be reprogrammed after new tyres are fitted → [Tyre monitoring systems](#) .

## Breakdown set



### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Contents of the breakdown set](#)
- [Preparations](#)
- [Sealing and inflating tyres](#)
- [Test after driving for 10 minutes](#)

You can use the breakdown set (tyre mobility set) to safely seal any tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or punctures (up to 4 mm in diameter). **Do not remove foreign objects (e.g. screws or nails) from the tyre!**

Once the sealant has been added to the tyre, the tyre pressure must be checked again after approximately 10 minutes of driving.

Only use breakdown set to fill a tyre if the car is parked in a safe place, you are familiar with the necessary actions and safety procedures and you have access to all the correct tools. Seek expert assistance if this is not the case.

### The tyre sealant must not be used:

- If the rim is damaged.
- If the outside temperature is below -20°C (-4°F).
- If there are cuts or punctures in the tyre that are larger than 4 mm.
- If the tyre pressure is very low or the tyres are flat.
- If the use-by date on the tyre filler bottle has expired.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Vehicle key set → [Vehicle key set](#)
- Braking, stopping and parking → [Braking, stopping and parking](#)
- Wheels and tyres → [Wheels and tyres](#)
- In an emergency → [In an emergency](#)
- Hub caps → [Hub caps](#)

**! WARNING**

Using the breakdown set can be dangerous, especially if the tyres are inflated at the roadside. Please note the following points in order to reduce the risk of serious injuries:

- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so. Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic in order to fill the tyre.
- Make sure that the ground is flat and firm.
- All passengers and children in particular must be at a safe distance and away from your area of work.
- Switch on hazard warning lights to warn other road users.
- The breakdown set should only be used when you feel confident with carrying out the procedure. If not, seek expert assistance.
- Tyres repaired with the breakdown set are intended for temporary, emergency use only. Use only until you can reach a qualified workshop.
- Tyres that have been repaired using the breakdown set should be replaced as soon as possible.
- Sealant is hazardous to health and must be washed off immediately if it gets onto skin.
- The breakdown set must be stored out of the reach of children.
- Never use a vehicle jack, even if it is approved for the vehicle.
- Always switch off the engine, switch on the electronic parking brake and move the selector lever to the position P or select a gear on a manual gearbox in order to reduce the risk of unintended vehicle movement.

**! WARNING**

A tyre which has been filled with sealant will not handle in the same way as a standard tyre.

- Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid full acceleration, sudden braking and fast driving through bends in the road.
- Drive for 10 minutes only at a maximum of 80 km/h (50 mph) and then check the tyre.



Dispose of used or out-of-date sealant in accordance with legal requirements.



You can get a new tyre filler bottle from a Volkswagen dealership.



Observe the separate instructions from the manufacturer of the breakdown set.

## Contents of the breakdown set

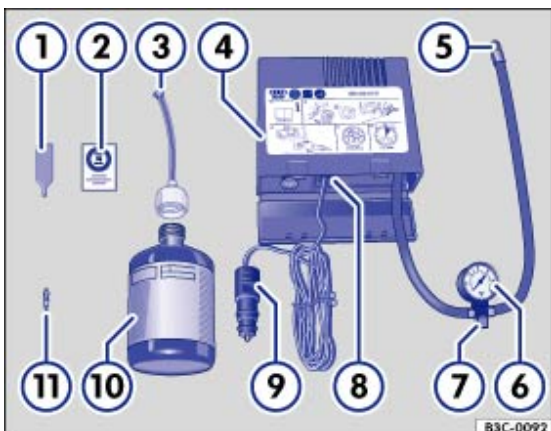


Fig. 027 The breakdown set





**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → [Introduction](#)

The breakdown set is located underneath the floor covering in the luggage compartment. It includes the following components → [Fig. 237](#):

- 1 Valve insert extractor
- 2 Sticker with the maximum permitted speed max. 80 km/h or max. 50 mph
- 3 Filler hose with plug
- 4 Air compressor
- 5 Tyre filler hose
- 6 Tyre pressure display<sup>1)</sup>
- 7 Air bleed screw<sup>2)</sup>
- 8 ON/OFF switch
- 9 12-volt plug
- 10 Tyre filler bottle with sealant<sup>1)</sup>
- 11 Spare valve insert

There is a slot on the lower end of the **valve insert extractor** ① for the valve insert. This is required for extracting and fitting the tyre valve. This also applies to the spare valve insert ⑪.

<sup>1)</sup> Could also be integrated in the compressor.

<sup>2)</sup> A button in the compressor may be in the place of this instead.

## Preparations

---



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → [Introduction](#)

## Checklist

---

The following actions must always be carried out in the given order in preparation for filling a wheel → :

- ✓ In the event of a flat tyre, park your vehicle on a flat and solid surface at a safe distance from the flow of traffic.
- ✓ Switch on the electronic parking brake Braking, stopping and parking Brakes Parking .
- ✓ Automatic gearbox: move the selector lever to position P Changing gear Changing gear Automatic gearbox see Automatic gearbox\_0 Automatic gearbox see Changing gear\_0 Automatic gearbox Manual gearbox see Changing gear\_0 Manual gearbox .
- ✓ Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition Starting and stopping the engine Engine and ignition Ignition see Engine and ignition\_0 .
- ✓ Manual gearbox: select a gear Changing gear Changing gear Automatic gearbox see Automatic gearbox\_0 Automatic gearbox see Changing gear\_0 Automatic gearbox Manual gearbox see Changing gear\_0 Manual gearbox .
- ✓ Make sure all vehicle occupants exit the vehicle and move to safety, for instance behind the safety barrier.
- ✓ Switch on the hazard warning lights and position the warning triangle In an emergency Emergency . Observe any legal requirements.
- ✓ Check whether the puncture can be repaired with the breakdown set Breakdown set Do not use\_2 The tyre sealant must not be used:.
- ✓ When towing a trailer: unhitch the trailer from the vehicle and park it properly.
- ✓ When the luggage compartment is loaded: remove items of luggage.

- ✓ Take the breakdown set out of the luggage compartment.
- ✓ Take the sticker ② from the breakdown set and stick it on the dash panel within the driver's field of vision.
- ✓ Do not remove foreign objects (e.g. screws or nails) from the tyre.

## WARNING

Ignoring any of the points on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.

## Sealing and inflating tyres






First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Sealing a tyre

- Unscrew the cap from the tyre valve.
- Use the valve insert extractor → [Fig. 237 ①](#) to screw the valve insert out of the tyre valve. Place the insert on a clean surface.
- Shake the tyre filler bottle → [Fig. 237 ⑩](#) vigorously up and down several times.
- Screw the filler hose → [Fig. 237 ③](#) tightly onto the tyre filler bottle in a clockwise direction. The plastic foil on the plug is pierced automatically.
- Remove the plug from the filler hose → [Fig. 237 ③](#) and place the open end fully on the tyre valve.
- Hold the bottle upside down and inject the **entire** contents of the filler bottle into the tyre.
- Remove the empty tyre filler bottle from the valve.
- Use the valve insert extractor → [Fig. 237 ①](#) to screw the valve insert back onto the tyre valve.

### Inflating the tyre

- Screw the tyre filler hose → [Fig. 237 ⑤](#) of the air compressor tightly onto the tyre valve.
- Check that the bleed screw → [Fig. 237 ⑦](#) is closed.
- Start the engine and let it run.
- Insert the plug → [Fig. 237 ⑨](#) into one of the vehicle's 12-volt sockets → [Electrical sockets](#) .
- Use the ON/OFF switch → [Fig. 237 ⑧](#) to switch on the air compressor.
- Run the compressor until the tyre pressure has reached 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi / 200 – 248 kPa) →  . **The maximum running time is 8 minutes** → .
- Switch off the air compressor.
- If a pressure level of 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi / 200 – 248 kPa) **cannot be achieved** unscrew the tyre filler hose from the tyre valve.
- Drive (or reverse) the vehicle approx. 10 metres so that the sealing compound is more evenly distributed in the tyre.
- Screw the tyre filler hose for the air compressor firmly back onto the tyre valve and inflate the tyre again.
- If the required pressure still cannot be reached, the tyre is too badly damaged. The tyre cannot be sealed with the breakdown set. Do not drive on. Seek expert assistance → .
- Disconnect the air compressor and unscrew the tyre filler hose from the tyre valve.
- Drive the vehicle no faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) once a tyre pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi / 200 – 248 kPa) has been reached.
- Check the tyre pressure after driving for **10 minutes** → [Test after driving for 10 minutes](#) .

## WARNING

The tyre filler hose and the air compressor can get hot during pumping.

- Protect your hands and skin from the hot components.

- Do not place the hot tyre filler hose and the hot air compressor on any inflammable materials.
- Before packing away, allow the device to cool down fully.
- If the tyre will not inflate to at least 2.0 bar (29 psi / 200 kPa), the tyre is too damaged. The sealant is unable to seal the tyre. Do not drive on. Seek expert assistance.



## NOTICE

Switch the air compressor off after a maximum of 8 minutes to avoid overheating. Let the air compressor cool down for a few minutes before switching it back on.


## Test after driving for 10 minutes



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Re-connect the tyre filler hose → [Fig. 237](#)  and check the tyre pressure on the tyre pressure monitoring display .

### 1.3 bar (19 psi / 131 kPa) and lower:

- Do not drive on! The tyre cannot be sealed sufficiently with the breakdown set.
- Seek expert assistance → .

### 1.4 bar (20 psi / 138 kPa) and higher:

- Set the tyre pressure back to the correct value → [Wheels and tyres](#) .
- Resume your journey to the nearest qualified workshop. Do not exceed a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).
- The damaged tyre should be replaced there.

## WARNING

Driving with an unsealed tyre is dangerous as it could cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Do not carry on driving if the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar (19 psi / 131 kPa) or lower.
- Seek expert assistance.

## Fuses

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Fuses in the vehicle](#)
- [Changing a blown fuse](#)

At the time of print we are unable to provide an up-to-date overview of the locations of the fuses for the electrical consumers. This is because the vehicle is under constant development, because fuses are assigned differently depending on the vehicle equipment level and because several consumers may use a single fuse. You can get more information about the fuse layout from a Volkswagen dealership.

Several electrical consumers could share a single fuse. Conversely, a single consumer could have more than one fuse.

Therefore, fuses should only be replaced when the cause of a fault has been rectified. If a newly inserted fuse blows after a short time, the electrical

system must be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Preparation for working in the engine compartment → *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*

#### **WARNING**

High voltages in the electrical system can cause electric shocks, serious burns and death!

- Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.
- Avoid causing short-circuits in the electrical system.


#### **WARNING**


Using unsuitable or repaired fuses and bridging an electrical circuit without fuses can cause a fire and serious injuries.

- Never fit fuses that have a higher fuse protection limit. Fuses must always be replaced with a new fuse which has the same amp rating (same colour and imprint) and size.
- Never repair a fuse.
- Never use a metal strip, paper clip or similar items to replace a fuse.

#### **NOTICE**

- In order to avoid damage to the electrical system in the vehicle, the ignition, the lights and all electrical consumers must be switched off and the vehicle key removed from the ignition before changing a fuse.
- You could cause damage to another location in the electrical system by using a fuse with a higher amp rating.
- Fuse boxes must be protected from dirt and moisture when opened. Dirt and moisture in the fuse boxes could cause damage to the electrical system.

 A single consumer could have more than one fuse.

 Several consumers could share a single fuse.

### Fuses in the vehicle

---





Fig. 238 Dash panel on the driver side: fuse box cover



Fig. 239 In the engine compartment: fuse box cover

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Fuses must always be replaced with a new fuse which has the same amp rating (same colour and imprint) and size.


### Colour coding of fuses

Colour	Amp rating
purple	3
Colour	Amp rating
light brown	5
brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
white or clear	25
green	30
orange	40

### Opening the fuse box in the dash panel

Insert a flat object (e.g. the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit) into the recess → [Fig. 238](#) (arrow) and carefully prise off the cover.

### Opening the fuse box in the engine compartment

- Open the bonnet  → [Preparation for working in the engine compartment](#) .
- Press the release buttons to the front in the direction of the arrow to release the fuse box cover → [Fig. 239](#) .
- Lift off the cover.

To fit, place the cover over the fuse box. Press the release buttons in the opposite direction to the arrow until they click into place.

- To fit place the cover over the fuse box. Press the release buttons in the opposite direction to the arrow until they click into place.

## ! NOTICE

- Remove the covers for the fuse boxes carefully and install them again properly so as to avoid damage to the vehicle.
- Fuse boxes must be protected from dirt and moisture when opened. Dirt and moisture in the fuse boxes could cause damage to the electrical system.



This chapter does not refer to all the fuses located in the vehicle. These should be changed only by a qualified workshop.

## Changing a blown fuse

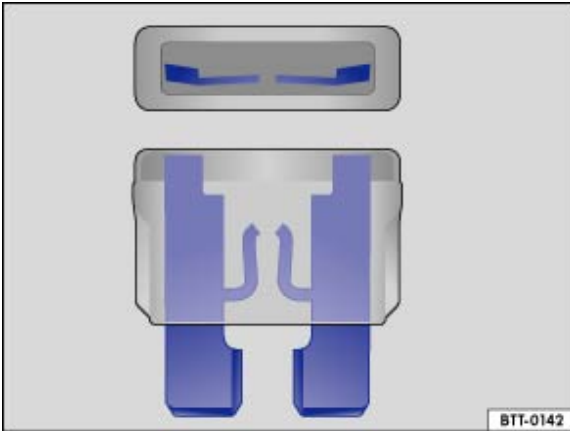


Fig. 240 A fuse which has blown

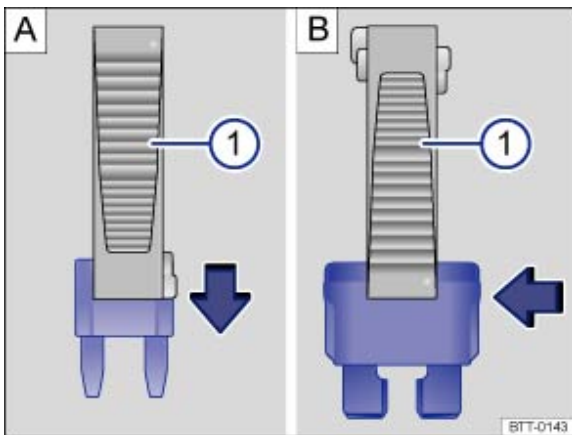


Fig. 241 Removing or fitting the fuse using the plastic pliers



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

### Preparations


- Switch off the ignition, the lights and all electrical consumers.
- Open the appropriate fuse box → [Fuses in the vehicle](#) .

### Detecting a fuse which has blown

A melted metal strip indicates that the fuse has blown → [Fig. 240](#) .

Shine a torch onto the fuse. This will help you to spot the blown fuse more easily.

## Changing a fuse

- If applicable, take the plastic pliers → [Fig. 241 ①](#) out of the fuse box cover.
- For *small fuses*, push on the catch → [Fig. 241 ①](#) from above → [Fig. 241 A](#).
- For *bigger fuses*, push the catch → [Fig. 241 ①](#) onto the fuse from the side → [Fig. 241 B](#).
- Pull out the blown fuse.
- If the fuse has blown, replace it with a new fuse of the *same* amp rating (same colour and same imprint) and *same* size → .
- Replace the cover.

### NOTICE

You could cause damage to another location in the electrical system by using a fuse with a higher amp rating.

## Changing bulbs

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Indicator lamps](#)
- [Information on changing bulbs](#)
- [Changing bulbs in the front headlights \(Halogen\)](#)
- [Changing bulbs in the front headlights \(Xenon\)](#)
- [Changing bulbs in the front bumper](#)
- [Changing bulbs in the tail light cluster in the boot lid](#)
- [Changing bulbs in the tail light cluster in the body](#)
- [Changing the bulb in the number plate light](#)

Changing the vehicle bulbs requires considerable technical skill. Therefore if you do not feel confident with the procedure, Volkswagen recommends having the bulbs changed by a Volkswagen dealership or other expert assistance. You must contact a qualified workshop if other vehicle parts around the lights need to be removed or gas discharge lamps need to be replaced.

Store spare light bulbs in the vehicle for safety-relevant lights. Spare bulbs are available from Volkswagen dealers. In some countries you are required by law to have these spare bulbs in the vehicle.

It may be illegal to drive with a defective bulb in the exterior lighting.

### Additional bulb specifications

Some bulbs in headlights or in tail light clusters might have factory specifications that are different to standard bulbs. The designation is inscribed on the bulb, either on the glass part or on the base.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views → [Exterior views](#)
- Lights → [Lights](#)
- Preparation for working in the engine compartment → [Preparation for working in the engine compartment](#)
- Vehicle tool kit → [Vehicle tools](#)
- Fuses → [Fuses](#)

### WARNING

Accidents could be caused if roads are not sufficiently lit and the vehicle cannot be seen or is very difficult to be seen by other road users.

## WARNING

Changing the bulb incorrectly could cause accidents and serious injuries.

- When working in the engine compartment, always read and observe the safety warnings → [Preparation for working in the engine compartment](#) . The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous area. Serious injuries can be sustained here.
- Gas discharge lamps are supplied with a high voltage level. If they are not handled properly, they could cause serious or fatal injuries.
- H7 and gas discharge bulbs are pressurised and could explode when they are being changed.
- Only change the defective bulb once it has had time to cool down completely.
- Never change a bulb unless you are familiar with the procedure. If you are uncertain of what to do, the work should be carried out by a qualified workshop.
- Do not touch the glass part of the bulb with unprotected fingers. When the light is switched on, heat will cause fingerprints to evaporate on the bulb which will causes the reflector to dim.
- There are sharp-edged parts in the headlight housing in the engine compartment and on the tail light cluster housing. Protect your hands when changing a bulb.


## NOTICE

Damage to the electrical system could be caused by water entering the system if the rubber covers or plastic caps on the headlight housing are not properly mounted.

## Indicator lamps





First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

Lit up	Possible cause	Correction
	There is a defective bulb in the vehicle's exterior lighting.	Change the defective bulb.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on while the vehicle runs functional checks. They will switch off after a few seconds.

## Monitoring of the light bulbs on the trailer

For vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket, the vehicle will also monitor certain bulbs on a trailer which has been connected properly via the trailer socket:

If a turn signal in the trailer fails, the indicator lamp ( or ) in the instrument cluster will flash twice as fast → [Lights](#) .

- Failure of all turn signals on one side.
- Failure of the tail light on one side (in some models, failure of the licence plate light).
- Failure of both brake lights.

## WARNING



Failure to observe the illuminated warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.





- **Never ignore warning lamps and text messages.**
- **Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.**

## NOTICE


Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.






 If a light emitting diode (LED) in the tail light cluster fails, a warning is not given. If all LEDs fail, this is indicated by the indicator lamp .

## Information on changing bulbs










 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

## Checklist

Always carry out the following actions for changing a bulb in the given order →  :

-  Park the vehicle on a flat and solid surface at a safe distance from the flow of traffic.
-  Switch on the electronic parking brake Braking, stopping and parking Brakes Parking .
-  Turn the light switch to position 0 Lights Lights .
-  Shift the turn signal lever to the neutral position Lights Lights .
-  Automatic gearbox: move the selector lever to position P Changing gear Changing gear Automatic gearbox see Automatic gearbox\_0 Automatic gearbox see Changing gear\_0 Automatic gearbox Manual gearbox see Changing gear\_0 Manual gearbox .

Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition Starting and stopping the engine Engine and ignition Ignition see Engine and ignition\_0 .

-   Manual gearbox: select a gear Changing gear Changing gear Automatic gearbox see Automatic gearbox\_0 Automatic gearbox see Changing gear\_0 Automatic gearbox Manual gearbox see Changing gear\_0 Manual gearbox .
-  Switch off the orientation lighting Lights Lights .
-  Leave the defective bulbs to cool down.
-  Check to see if a fuse has blown Fuses Fuses .
-  Follow the instructions to change the affected bulb . Always use identical bulbs with the same designation. The designation is inscribed on the bulb, either on the glass part or on the base.
-  Do not touch the glass part of the bulb with unprotected fingers. The heat of the bulb would cause the fingerprint to evaporate and condense on the reflector. This will impair the brightness of the headlight.
-  After changing the bulb, check to make sure that the bulb is working properly. If the bulb is not working properly, the bulb may not have been inserted properly or may have failed again, or the connector may have been inserted incorrectly.
-  Each time you change a bulb in the front of the vehicle, the headlight settings should be checked by a qualified workshop.

## WARNING

Ignoring any of the points on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- **Follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.**

## NOTICE

Always take care when removing or fitting lights to prevent damage to the paintwork or to other vehicle parts.

## Changing bulbs in the front headlights (Halogen)

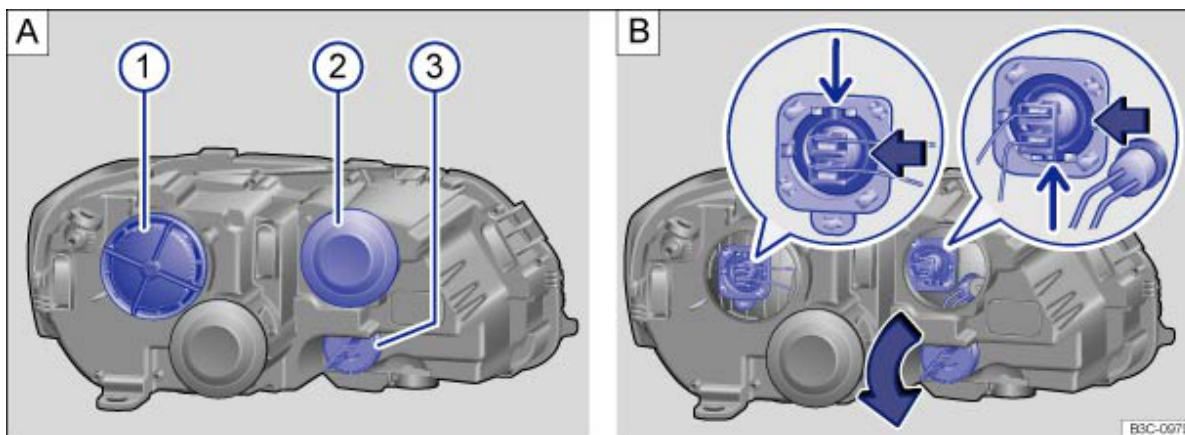


Fig. 242 In the engine compartment: covers on the left front headlight

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → Introduction

The headlight does not have to be removed in order to change a bulb.

### The jobs should be carried out in the given order only:

→ Fig. 242	①	②	③
	Dipped beam headlights	Main beam / side light (small bulb holder)	Front turn signal
1.	Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist → Information on changing bulbs .		

### The jobs should be carried out in the given order only:

→ Fig. 242	①	②	③
	Dipped beam headlights	Main beam / side light (small bulb holder)	Front turn signal
2.	Open the bonnet  → Preparation for working in the engine compartment .		
3.	Turn the plastic cover to the left and remove it.	Pull off rubber cover from back of headlight.	
4.	Push the bulb with its connector to the left (arrow, left side close-up) and pull it out backwards.	Main beam: push the bulb with its connector to the left (arrow, right side close-up) Side lights: pull out the bulb holder with the bulb backwards.	Turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise and pull it out backwards.
5.	Remove the connector from the bulb.	Main beam: remove the connector from the bulb. Side lights: pull the bulb straight out of the bulb holder.	Push bulb in slightly and turn anti-clockwise.
6.	Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.		
7.	Fit the connector.	Main beam: fit the connector. Side lights: push the bulb straight into the bulb holder.	Push bulb in slightly and turn clockwise.
8.	Fit the bulb into the headlights from the left and push it to the right, until it clicks into place. The bolt for positioning the bulb must be pointing upwards (thin arrow, left side close-up).	Main beam: fit the bulb into the headlights from the left and push it to the right, until it clicks into place. The bolt for positioning the bulb must be pointing downwards (thin arrow, right side close-up). Side lights: fit the bulb holder into the	Insert bulb holder in the headlights and turn clockwise to original position.

headlights as far as it will go.

9.

Fit rubber cover or plastic cover.

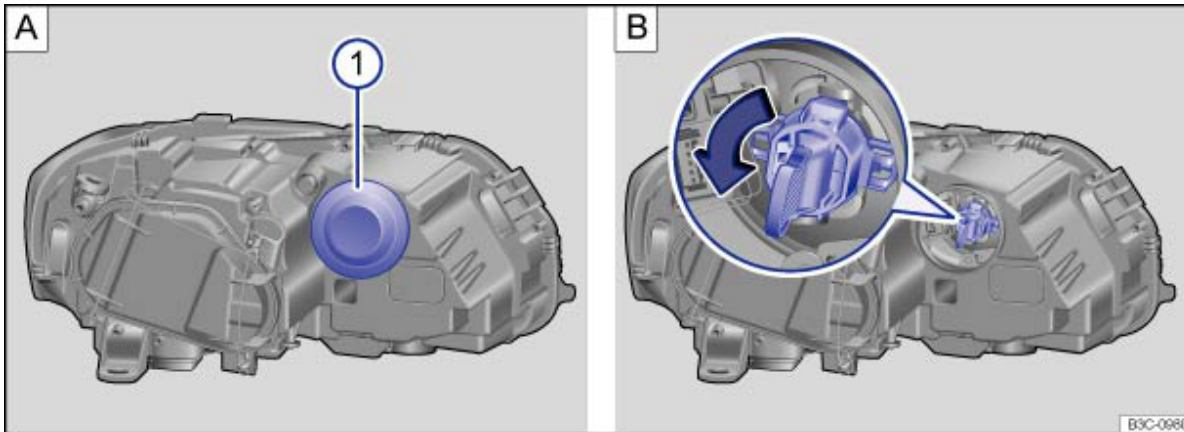


The illustrations show the left-hand headlight from the rear. The right-hand headlight is a mirror image of the one shown.



It is not possible to change the LEDs of a daytime running light with LED technology. Seek expert assistance.

## Changing bulbs in the front headlights (Xenon)



**Fig. 243** In the engine compartment: cover on the left front headlight for the turn signal



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** → *Introduction*

The headlight does not have to be removed in order to change a bulb.

The side lights and daytime headlights are designed with LED technology. The LEDs are part of the headlights and cannot be changed or replaced. Please go to a qualified workshop for the same.

The jobs should be carried out in the given order only:

### Changing turn signal bulb

1. Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist → *Information on changing bulbs*
2. Open the bonnet → *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*
3. Pull off rubber cover from back of headlight → *Fig. 243*.
4. Turn the bulb holder → *Fig. 243* anti-clockwise.
5. Pull out bulb holder.
6. Pull the bulb straight out of the bulb holder.  
If applicable, push the catch on the bulb holder.
7. Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.
8. Push the bulb in the bulb holder.
9. Insert bulb holder and turn clockwise to original position.
10. Put the rubber cover on.

### Changing gas discharge bulbs


Seek professional assistance for changing gas discharge bulbs

SEEK PROFESSIONAL ASSISTANCE FOR CHANGING GAS DISCHARGE BULBS.



The illustrations show the left-hand headlight from the rear. The right-hand headlight is a mirror image of the one shown.



If a light emitting diode (LED) in a headlight fails, a warning is not given. If all LEDs fail, this is indicated by the indicator lamp .

## Changing bulbs in the front bumper

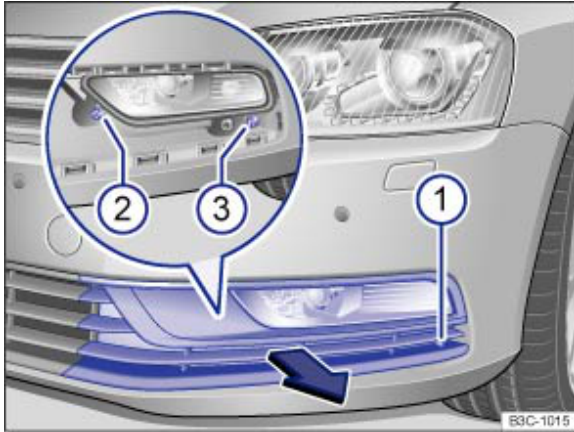


Fig. 244 Front bumper, left-hand side: fog lights, daytime headlights and cornering lights

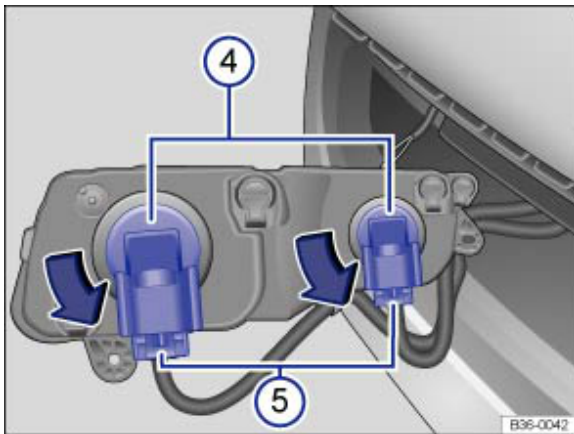


Fig. 245 Changing the bulbs in the headlights



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### The jobs should be carried out in the given order only:

1. Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist → [Information on changing bulbs](#) .
2. Use the screwdriver from the tool kit ( → [Fig. 223](#) ) to unscrew the securing bolt → [Fig. 244](#) ① .
3. Pull the cover forwards in the direction of the arrow → [Fig. 244](#) .
4. Remove the securing bolts → [Fig. 244](#) ② ③ with the screwdriver.
5. Push the headlight downwards and then pull it forwards out of the bumper.
6. Release the connectors → [Fig. 245](#) ⑤ and pull them off.
7. Turn the bulb → [Fig. 245](#) ④ anti-clockwise as far as it will go and pull it out.
8. Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.

9. Insert the bulb in the holder and turn clockwise to its original position.
10. Check whether the bulb is fitted securely.
11. Push the corresponding connector → Fig. 245 ⑤ onto the bulb until it audibly engages.
12. Fit the headlight into the bumper.
13. Screw in securing bolts → Fig. 244 ② ③ .
14. Fit the cover on the bumper and screw in securing bolt → Fig. 244 ① .



The illustrations show the left-hand headlight. The right-hand headlight is a mirror image of the one shown.

## Changing bulbs in the tail light cluster in the boot lid

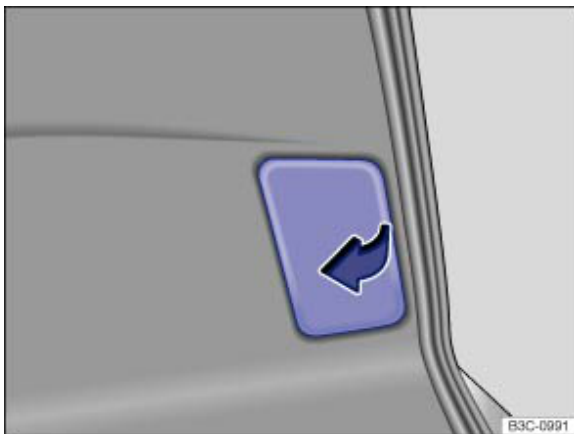


Fig. 246 In the boot lid: removing the cover

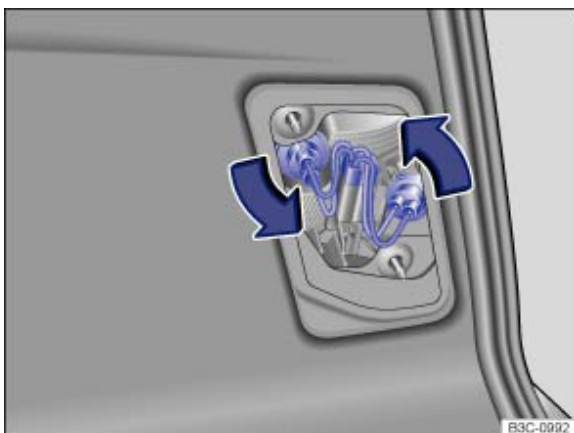


Fig. 247 In the boot lid: removing bulbs



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The bulbs for the tail light and the rear fog light are located in the boot lid.

### The jobs should be carried out in the given order only:

1. Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist → [Information on changing bulbs](#) .
2. Open the boot lid → [Boot lid](#) .
3. Take the screwdriver from the tool kit ( → [Fig. 223](#) ) and use the flat blade to lever the cover off carefully → [Fig. 246](#) .
4. Turn the bulb holder approximately 30° anti-clockwise and pull it out together with the bulb.
5. Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.
6. Insert bulb holder in the tail lights and turn about 30° clockwise. The bulb holder must click into place.
7. Replace the cover. The cover must engage fully and securely.

### LEDs in the rear lights in the boot lid

The LEDs cannot be replaced. Go to a qualified workshop.



Due to different versions of the tail light cluster, the location of the bulbs may differ slightly to that shown in the illustrations.

### Changing bulbs in the tail light cluster in the body

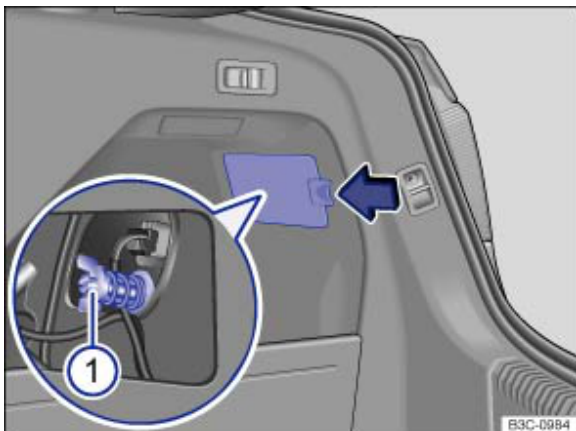


Fig. 248 In the body: removing tail light cluster

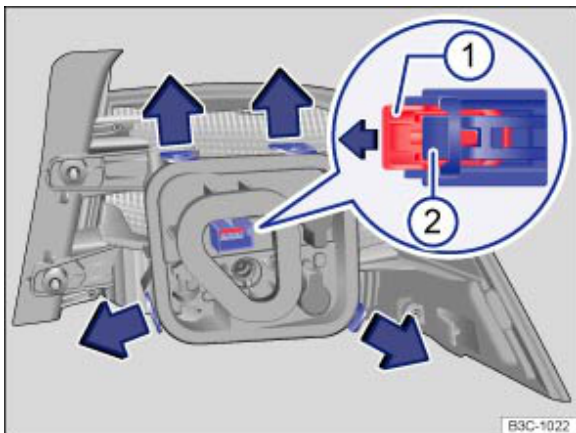


Fig. 249 Removing the bulb holder



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings → [Introduction](#)

The jobs should be carried out in the given order only:

## Removing the tail light cluster

1. Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist → [Information on changing bulbs](#).
2. Open the boot lid → [Boot lid](#).
3. Open the cover → [Fig. 248](#) (arrow).
4. Unscrew the securing bolts by hand → [Fig. 248 ①](#).
5. Carefully pull the rear light cluster to the rear and remove it from the body.
6. Pull the release lever in the direction of the arrow → [Fig. 249 ①](#).
7. Press the catch ② and pull out the connector.
8. Place the tail light on a clean and flat surface.

## Changing the bulb

9. To release the bulb holder, push the tabs → [Fig. 249](#) in the direction of the arrows.
10. Remove the bulb holder from the tail light cluster.
11. Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.
12. Insert the bulb holder into the tail light cluster. The release tabs must click into place.

## Fitting the tail light cluster

13. Connect the connector to the bulb holder.
14. Pull the release lever against the direction of the arrow → [Fig. 249 ①](#).
15. Carefully put the tail light cluster into the opening in the body.
16. Use one hand to hold the tail light cluster in the fitting position while using the other hand to screw the securing bolt firmly back on → [Fig. 248 ①](#).
17. Check that the tail light cluster is positioned correctly and securely.
18. Fit the side trim back into the luggage compartment.
19. Close the boot lid → [Boot lid](#).

## LEDs in the rear lights in the body

The LEDs cannot be replaced. Go to a qualified workshop. Normal bulbs are used for the turn signals. These bulbs can be changed.



Due to different versions of the tail light cluster, the location of the bulbs may differ slightly to that shown in the illustrations.

## Changing the bulb in the number plate light





Fig. 250 In the rear bumper: number plate light

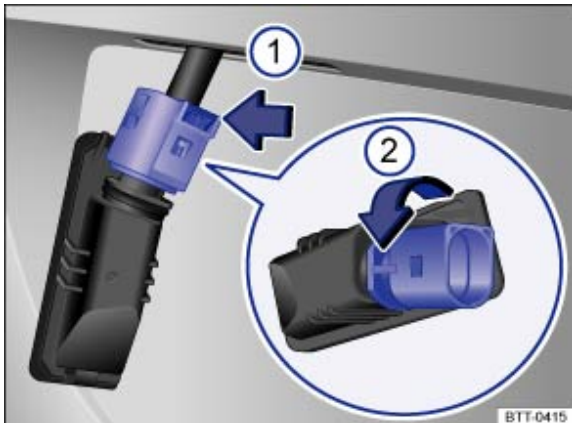



Fig. 251 Number plate light: removing the bulb holder

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### The jobs should be carried out in the given order only:

1.	Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist → <a href="#">Information on changing bulbs</a> .
2.	Take the screwdriver from the tool kit ( → <a href="#">Vehicle tools</a> ), insert the flat blade into the recess in the direction of the arrow → <a href="#">Fig. 250</a> .
3.	Pull the number plate light out slightly.
4.	Push the catch on the connector in the direction of the arrow → <a href="#">Fig. 251 ①</a> and pull the connector out.
5.	Turn the bulb holder in the direction of the arrow → <a href="#">Fig. 251 ②</a> and pull it out together with the bulb.
6.	Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.
7.	Insert the bulb holder into the number plate light and turn it as far as it will go in the opposite direction to the arrow → <a href="#">Fig. 251 ②</a> .
8.	Connect the connector to the bulb holder.
9.	Carefully put the number plate light into the opening in the body. Make sure you put the number plate light in the right way round.
10.	Push the number plate light into the bumper until it clicks into place.

 It is not possible to change the LEDs of a number plate light with LED technology. Seek expert assistance.

## Starting the engine with jump leads

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Positive jump lead connection point](#)
- [How to start the engine using jump leads](#)

If the engine fails to start because of a discharged vehicle battery, the battery can be connected to the battery of another vehicle to start the engine. Before using jump leads, check the window on the vehicle battery → [Vehicle battery](#) .



Jump leads must comply with DIN 72553 (see manufacturer's documentation). The wire cross section must be at least 25 mm<sup>2</sup> for petrol engines and at least 35 mm<sup>2</sup> for diesel engines.

In vehicles without a battery in the engine compartment, the jump leads must only be connected to the jump lead connection points in the engine compartment.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Pull-away assist systems → *Pull-away assist systems*
- Preparation for working in the engine compartment → *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*
- Battery → *Vehicle battery*

## WARNING

Using the jump leads incorrectly or completing the jump start procedure incorrectly could cause the battery to explode which could lead to severe injuries. Please note the following points in order to reduce the risk of the battery exploding:

- All work on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire and electric shocks. Always read the warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work on the vehicle battery → *Vehicle battery* .
- The vehicle battery providing assistance must have the same voltage as the discharged vehicle battery (12 V) and approximately the same capacity (see imprint on battery).
- Never charge a frozen or defrosted vehicle battery. A discharged vehicle battery can even freeze at temperatures of around 0°C (+32°F).
- The battery should be replaced if it has frozen or defrosted.
- A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when jump starting the vehicle battery! Always keep fire, sparks, naked flames and lit cigarettes away from the vehicle battery. Never use a mobile telephone when the jump leads are being connected or disconnected.
- Only charge the battery in a well-ventilated room as the battery emits a highly explosive mixture of gases when the vehicle is being jump started.
- Place the jump leads so that they never come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.
- Never confuse the negative and positive terminals or connect the jump leads incorrectly.
- Observe the instructions from the jump lead manufacturer.

## NOTICE

Please note the following in order to avoid considerable damage to the electrical system in the vehicle:

- A short circuit can be caused if the jump leads are connected incorrectly.
- The vehicles must not touch each other, otherwise electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.

## Positive jump lead connection point

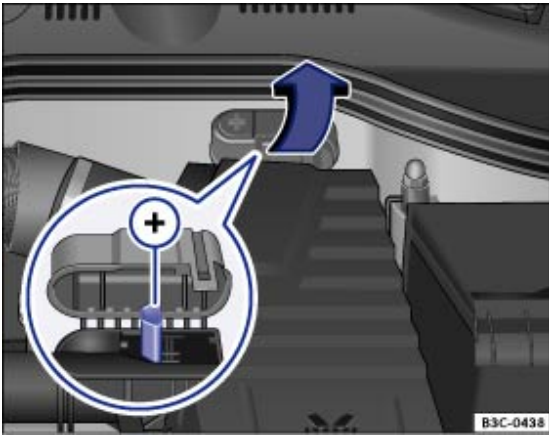


Fig. 252 In the engine compartment: jump lead connection point, positive ⊕

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  Introduction

In some vehicles, a jump lead connection point is located under a coloured cover in the engine compartment.

## How to start the engine using jump leads

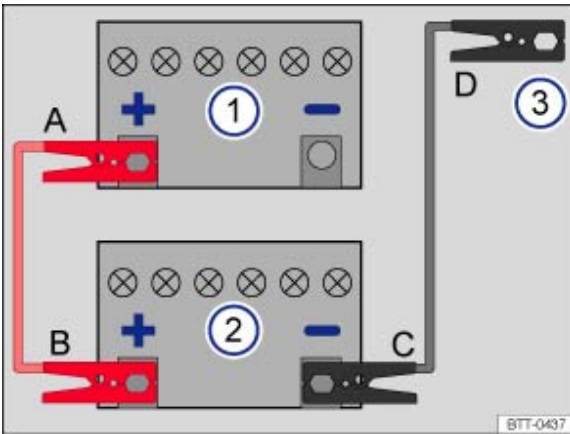


Fig. 253 How to connect the jump leads in starting vehicles without start/stop system or energy recovery function: discharged battery ⊕ and battery providing assistance ⊕

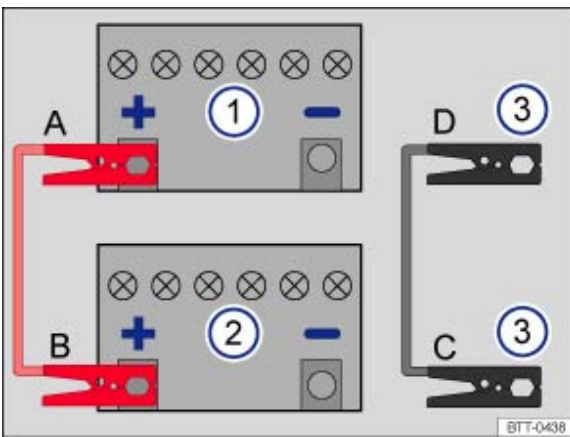


Fig. 254 How to connect the jump leads in starting vehicles with start/stop system or with energy recovery function: discharged battery ⊕ and battery providing assistance ⊕

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  Introduction

The discharged vehicle battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system.

The vehicles must not touch. Otherwise electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.

Make sure the battery clamps have good metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.

If the engine does not start immediately, switch off the starter after about 10 seconds and try again after about half a minute.

The actions should be carried out in the given order only.

## Attaching the jump leads

- Switch off the ignitions in both vehicles → *Starting and stopping the engine* .
- If applicable, open the battery cover → *Vehicle battery* or the cap on the positive jump lead connection point<sup>1)</sup> in the engine compartment in the direction of the arrow → *Fig. 252* .
- Connect one end of the *red* jump lead to the positive terminal → *Fig. 253* ⊕ or → *Fig. 252* ⊕ of the vehicle with the discharged battery ① → ⚠ .
- Connect the other end of the *red* jump lead to the positive terminal ⊕ in the vehicle providing assistance ② .
- In vehicles **without start/stop system or energy recovery function**: connect one end of the *black* jump lead to the negative terminal ⊖ of the battery in the vehicle providing assistance ② → *Fig. 253* .
- In vehicles **with start/stop system or with energy recovery function**: <sup>2)</sup> connect one end of the *black* jump lead ③ to a suitable earth connection, to a solid metal part which is securely bolted onto the cylinder or to the cylinder block itself → *Fig. 254* .
- Connect the other end of the *black* jump lead ③ to a solid metal component which is bolted on to the engine block, or onto the engine block itself, in the vehicle with the discharged battery. Do not connect it to a point near the battery ① → ⚠ .
- Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.

## Starting the engine

- Start the engine of the vehicle which is providing assistance and let it run at idle.
- Start the engine of the car with the discharged vehicle battery and wait 2 or 3 minutes until the engine is running smoothly.

## Removing the jump leads

- Before disconnecting the jump leads, switch off the dipped beam headlights if they are switched on.
- Turn on the heater blower and rear window heater in the vehicle with the discharged battery. This helps to minimise voltage peaks which are generated when the leads are disconnected.
- With the engines running, disconnect the jump leads in the exact reverse order to the instructions given above.
- Close the battery cover or fold back the cap<sup>1)</sup> for the positive jump lead connection point.

## WARNING

**Jump starting the vehicle incorrectly could cause the battery to explode which could lead to serious injuries. Please note the following points in order to reduce the risk of the battery exploding:**

- **All work on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire and electric shocks. Always read the warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work on the vehicle battery → *Vehicle battery* .**
- **Always wear suitable eye protection and never lean over the vehicle battery.**
- **Attach the connector cables in the correct order – the positive terminal first, followed by the negative.**
- **Never connect the negative cable to parts of the fuel system or to the brake hose/pipe.**
- **The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. The jump lead attached to the positive vehicle battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle.**
- **Check the window on the vehicle battery using a torch if necessary. If the display is light yellow or colourless, do not jump start the vehicle. Seek expert assistance.**
- **Avoid electrostatic discharge in the vicinity of the vehicle battery. The gas emitted from the vehicle battery could be ignited by sparks.**

- Do not use jump leads to start the engine if the vehicle battery is damaged, frozen or has defrosted.

<sup>1)</sup> In vehicles without a battery in the engine compartment → [Positive jump lead connection point](#) .

<sup>2)</sup> Engine code: CCZB or BWS.

## Tow starting and towing

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- [Notes on tow starting](#)
- [Fitting the front towing eye](#)
- [Fitting the rear towing eye](#)
- [Driving notes on towing](#)

**For technical reasons, your vehicle may not be push started. Use jump leads to start the engine instead** → [Starting the engine with jump leads](#)

**For technical reasons, the vehicle must not be tow-started with a discharged battery. Use jump leads to start the engine instead** → [Starting the engine with jump leads](#) .

Observe any legal requirements when tow starting.

### Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views → [Exterior views](#)
- Engine management system and exhaust purification system → [Engine management system and exhaust purification system](#)

### WARNING

Never tow start a vehicle which has no power supply.

- Never remove the key from the ignition. Otherwise the electronic steering column lock could engage suddenly. You will no longer be able to steer the vehicle. This could lead to a loss of vehicle control, accidents and serious injuries.

### WARNING

If a vehicle is being towed, the vehicle handling and braking effect will change significantly Please note the following points in order to reduce the risk of an accident or serious injuries:

- Notes for the driver of the towed vehicle:
  - You will need to depress the brake pedal more vigorously than normal as the brake servo is not working. Always be careful not to drive into the vehicle that is pulling your vehicle.
  - You will need to turn the steering wheel more vigorously as the power-assisted steering function is not working.
- Notes for the driver of the towing vehicle
  - Accelerate carefully and gently.
  - Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.
  - Brake earlier than normal by pressing lightly on the brake pedal.



- Remove and install the cover and the towing eye carefully so as to avoid damage to the vehicle, e.g. the paintwork.
- Fuel could enter the catalytic converter and damage it while the vehicle is being towed.

## Notes on tow starting

---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Tow rope or tow bar

It is easier and safer to tow a vehicle with a tow bar. Only use a tow rope if you do not have a tow bar.

A tow rope should be slightly elastic to reduce the loading on both vehicles. It is advisable to use a tow rope made of synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material.

Only attach the tow rope or tow bar to the specially provided towing eyes or to the towing bracket.

Vehicles with a **factory-fitted towing bracket** must be towed **only** with a tow-bar that is specially designed for fitting to a ball coupling → [Electrically folding ball coupling](#) .

### Towing vehicles which have an automatic gearbox

Observe the following points for the towed vehicle:

- Move the selector lever to **N**.
- Do not drive faster than 50 km/h (30 mph) when towing a vehicle.
- Do not tow further than 50 km.
- If a breakdown truck is used, the vehicle must be towed with the front wheels raised. Observe the notes for towing vehicles with four-wheel drive (4MOTION).

### Towing vehicles with four-wheel drive (4MOTION)

Vehicles with four-wheel drive (4MOTION) may be towed with a tow-bar or with a tow-rope. If the vehicle is towed with the rear or front axle raised, the engine must be switched off otherwise the drive train could be damaged.

In vehicles with a dual clutch gearbox DSG® read and observe the information on towing vehicles with an automatic gearbox → [Towing vehicles which have an automatic gearbox](#) .

### When should you not tow start the vehicle?

The vehicle may not be towed and must be transported on a special transporter or trailer when the following conditions apply:

- If, due to damage, the vehicle gearbox no longer contains any lubricant.
- If the vehicle battery is discharged. This means that the steering system remains locked and the electronic parking brake and electronic steering column lock, if applied, cannot be released.
- If the distance to be towed is further than 50 km - applies to vehicles with an automatic gearbox only.

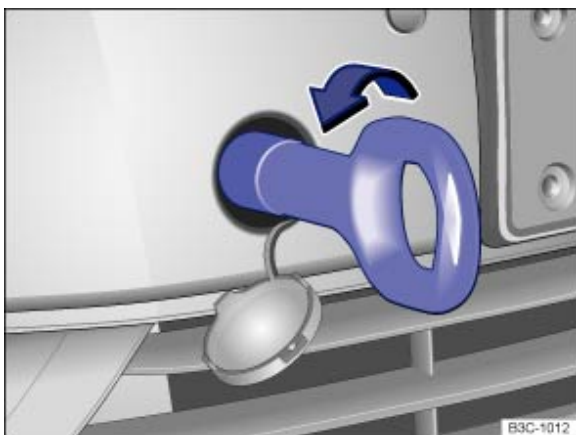


The vehicle can be towed only when the electronic parking brake and the electronic steering column lock are released. If the power supply fails or if there are faults in the electrical system, you may need to use jump leads to start the engine to release the electronic parking brake and the electronic steering column lock.


### Fitting the front towing eye



**Fig. 255** In the front bumper, right-hand side: removing the cover



**Fig. 256** Front bumper, right-hand side: screwing in the towing eye


 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

The towing eye is screwed into a threaded hole under a cover on the right of the front bumper → *Fig. 255*.

The towing eye must always be kept in the vehicle.

Observe the notes on tow starting → *Notes on tow starting* .

### Fitting the towing eye at front

- Remove the towing eye from the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment → *Vehicle tools* .
- Press at the bottom of the cover → *Fig. 255* (arrow) to release the cover.
- Take off the cover and leave it to hang on the vehicle.
- Turn the towing eye **anti-clockwise** into the threaded hole and tighten as far as possible →  . Use a suitable object to screw the towing eye fully and securely into the mounting.
- After you have finished towing, remove the towing eye by unscrewing it with a suitable object **clockwise**.
- Insert the lower locking lug in the opening in the bumper and push on the upper area of the cover until the upper locking lug engages in the bumper.

### NOTICE

The towing eye must always be screwed firmly into the mounting. The towing eye could otherwise be ripped out of the mounting when the vehicle is towing/being towed.

## Fitting the rear towing eye

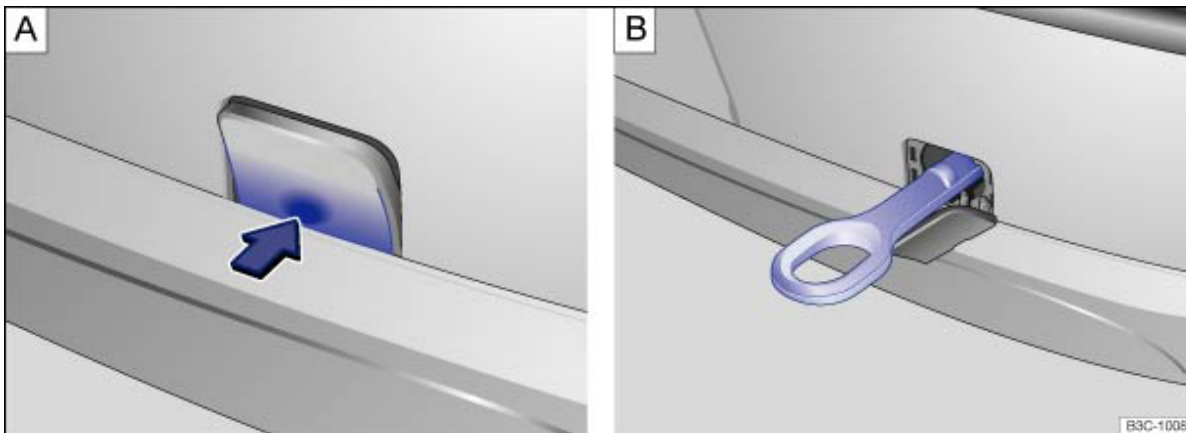


Fig. 257 In the front bumper, right-hand side (variant 1): removing the cover (A) and the inserted towing eye (B)

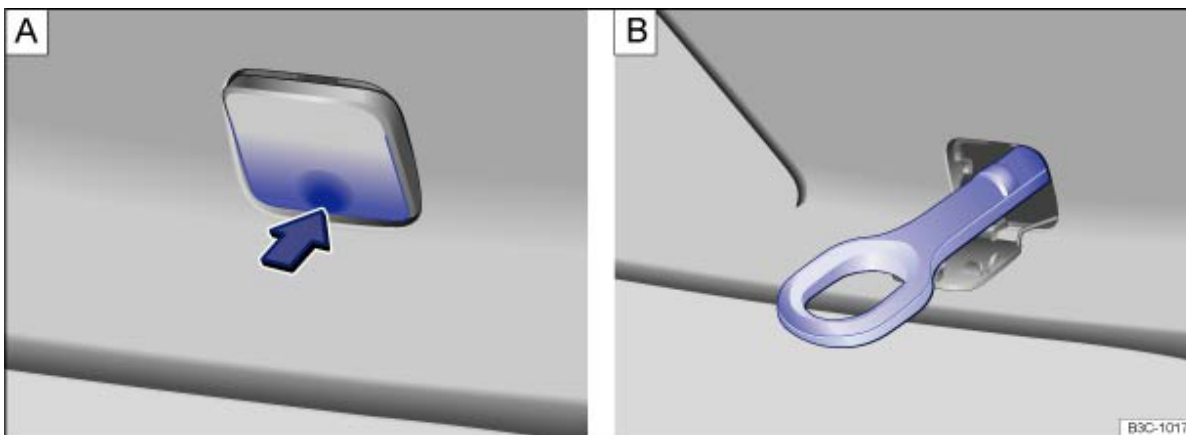




Fig. 258 In the front bumper, right-hand side (variant 2): removing the cover (A) and the inserted towing eye (B)

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  *Introduction*

The towing eye is screwed into a threaded hole behind a cover on the right of the rear bumper → *Fig. 257* or → *Fig. 258*. In *vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket* there is **no** mounting for the removable towing eye behind the cover. To tow start, fit and use the ball coupling → *Towing a trailer*, → .

Observe the notes on tow starting → *Notes on tow starting*.

### Fitting the towing eye at the rear (vehicles without factory-fitted towing bracket)

- Remove the towing eye from the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment → *Vehicle tools*.
- Press the bottom of the cover → *Fig. 257 A* or → *Fig. 258 A* in the direction of the arrow to release the cover.
- Take off the cover and leave it to hang on the vehicle.
- Turn the towing eye **anti-clockwise** into the threaded hole and tighten as far as possible → . Use a suitable object to screw the towing eye fully and securely into the mounting.
- After you have finished towing, remove the towing eye by unscrewing it with a suitable object **clockwise**.
- Insert the lower locking lug in the opening in the bumper and push on the upper area of the cover until the upper locking lug engages in the bumper.

#### NOTICE

- **The towing eye must always be screwed firmly into the mounting. The towing eye could otherwise be ripped out of the mounting when the vehicle is towing/being towed.**

- **Vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket must use only tow-bars that are specially designed for fitting to a ball coupling. If you use an unsuitable tow-bar the ball coupling and the vehicle could be damaged. You should use a tow-rope instead.**

## Driving notes on towing

---



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** →  [Introduction](#)

Towing requires some experience, especially when using a tow rope. Both drivers should be familiar with the technique required for towing. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow.

When driving, make sure that you do not pull too hard on the towing vehicle and take care to avoid jerking movements. When towing on an unpaved road, there is always a risk of overloading and damaging the anchorage points.

You can still use the turn signals if your vehicle is towed with the hazard warning lights and ignition switched on. Move the turn signal lever to signal the desired direction. The hazard warning lights will not flash while the turn signal is being used. The hazard warning lights will start flashing automatically as soon as the turn signal lever is moved back to the neutral position.

### Notes for the driver of the towed vehicle:

- The ignition of the vehicle being towed must be switched on to prevent the steering wheel from locking, to enable the electronic parking brake to be released and so that the turn signals, horn, windscreen wipers and washers can be used.
- As the power assisted steering does not work if the engine is not running, you will need more strength to steer than you normally would.
- You will need to depress the brake pedal more vigorously than normal as the brake servo is not working. Do not drive too close to the towing vehicle.
- Observe any information and notes in the towing vehicle's owner's manual.

### Notes for the driver of the towing vehicle

- Accelerate carefully and gently. Avoid any sudden driving manoeuvres.
- Brake earlier than normal by pressing lightly on the brake pedal.
- Observe any information and notes in the towed vehicle's owner's manual.



# Abbreviations

## Abbreviation Definition

---

1 rpm	Revolutions per minute - engine speed
4MOTION	Four-wheel drive.
ABS	Anti-lock brake system.
ACC	Adaptive cruise control.
AFS	Dynamic and static bend lighting.
AG6	6-speed automatic gearbox.
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
TCS	Traction control system.
BAS	Brake assist system.
ccm	Cubic centimetres. Unit of displacement.
CID	Cubic inches. Unit of displacement.
CO <sub>2</sub>	Carbon dioxide.
DCC	Adaptive chassis control.
DIN	German Standards Authority (Deutsches Institut für Normung).
DPF	Diesel particulate filter.
DRL	Daytime running lights.
DSG <sup>®6</sup>	Automatic 6-speed dual clutch gearbox DSG <sup>®</sup> .
DSG <sup>®7</sup>	Automatic 7-speed dual clutch gearbox DSG <sup>®</sup> .
ATA	Anti-theft alarm.
EDL	Electronic differential lock.
EN	European standard.
EPC	Engine management system (electronic power control).
ESC	Electronic stabilisation control.
ESP	Electronic stabilisation programme.
ETC	Electronic toll collection system.
FAQ	Frequently Asked Questions.
FSI	Fuel stratified injection.
g/km	Carbon dioxide emissions in grams per kilometre.
CCS	Cruise control system.
kN	Kilonewton, pulling power.
kW	Kilowatt, engine power.
LED	Light-emitting diode.
MFD	Multifunction display.
EC	Engine code.
Nm	Newton metres, unit of engine torque.
OPS	Optical parking system.

**Abbreviation Definition**

---

PRS	Particle reduction system.
RON	Research octane number, indication of the knock resistance of petrol.
MG5	5-speed manual gearbox.
MG6	6-speed manual gearbox.
TDI®	Diesel engine with direct injection and turbocharging (turbocharged direct or diesel injection).
trip	Trip recorder.
TSI®	Petrol direct injection with turbocharging or twin charging (Turbocharged or Twincharged Stratified Injection).

**A**

- Abroad* (Using the vehicle in other countries and continents)
  - Extended trips with your vehicle* (Using the vehicle in other countries and continents)
  - Selling the vehicle* (Using the vehicle in other countries and continents)
- ABS* (Brake assist systems)
- ACC* (Front view)
  - Area monitoring system
    - ACC (adaptive cruise control)*
    - Area monitoring system (Front Assist)* (ACC (adaptive cruise control))
  - Display* (Display, warning lamps and indicator lamps)
  - Driving situations
    - Area monitoring system (Front Assist)*
    - Driving situations* (Area monitoring system (Front Assist))
  - Fault* (ACC (adaptive cruise control))
  - Indicator lamp* (Display, warning lamps and indicator lamps)
  - Operating* (Operating ACC)
  - Radar sensor*
  - see Adaptive cruise control
    - ACC (adaptive cruise control)*
    - Assistants submenu*
    - Changing gear*
    - Cruise control system (CCS)*
    - Display and indicator lamps*
    - Front view*
    - Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist)*
    - Main menu*
    - Overview of the driver side*
    - Warning lamps and indicator lamps*
    - Warning lamps and indicator lamps* (Front view)
  - Switching off temporarily
    - Area monitoring system (Front Assist)*
    - Switch off the ACC temporarily in the following situations* (Area monitoring system (Front Assist))
  - Warning lamp* (Display, warning lamps and indicator lamps)
- Accessories* (Seat belts)
- Acoustic warnings* (Overview of the driver side)
- Lights
  - Main beam control*
  - Switching lights on and off*
- Seat belt not fastened* (Warning lamp)
- Warning and indicator lamp
  - Displays*
  - Instruments*
  - Overview of the driver side*
  - Warning lamps and indicator lamps* (Overview of the driver side)
- Adaptive chassis control* (Adaptive chassis control (DCC))
  - Fault
    - Adaptive chassis control (DCC)*
    - Function and operation* (Adaptive chassis control (DCC))
  - Function* (Function and operation)
  - Operation* (Function and operation)
- Adaptive chassis control* (Lower section of the centre console)
- Adaptive cruise control* (Front view)
- AdBlue* (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)
  - Indicator lamp
    - Information on AdBlue*
    - Warning lamps and indicator lamps*
  - Information* (Information on AdBlue)
  - Minimum quantity* (Information on AdBlue)

## Refilling

[Information on AdBlue](#)[Refilling AdBlue](#)[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)[Specification](#) (Refilling AdBlue)[Tank capacity](#) (Information on AdBlue)

## Warning lamp

[Information on AdBlue](#)[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)[Adjusting](#) (Correct sitting position)[Back massage](#) (Back massage function)[Correct sitting position](#)[Electrical front seats](#) (Electrical controls on the front seats)[Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards](#)[Headlight range](#) (Headlight range control, instrument and switch lighting)[Mechanical front seats](#) (Mechanical controls on the front seats)[Memory seats](#)[Rear backrests](#) (Folding the backrests on the rear bench seat forwards and backwards)[Sports seats](#) (Sports seats with pneumatic lumbar support and side supports)[Steering](#) (Adjusting the steering wheel position)[Adjusting](#) (Adjusting the head restraints)[Aerial](#) (Radio reception and aerials)[AFS](#) (Indicator lamps)[Air conditioning system](#) (Front view)

Air recirculation mode

[Air recirculation mode](#)[Controls](#)[Information on the air conditioning system](#) (Controls)[Climatic](#) (Controls)[Controls](#)[Fault](#) (Information on the air conditioning system)

## Indirect ventilation

[Information on the air conditioning system](#)[Vents](#) (Information on the air conditioning system)[Information](#) (Information on the air conditioning system)[Settings](#) (Information on the air conditioning system)[Things to note](#) (Information on the air conditioning system)

## Vents

[Information on the air conditioning system](#)[Vents](#) (Information on the air conditioning system)[Air conditioning system \(manual\)](#) (Front view)[Climatronic](#) (Controls)

See Air conditioning system

[Auxiliary heater \(supplementary heating system\)](#)[Changing gear](#)[Front view](#)[Heating, ventilating, cooling](#)[Overview of the driver side](#)[Overview of the front passenger side](#)[Rear view](#)[Switching the auxiliary heater on or off](#)[Upper section of the centre console](#)[Upper section of the centre console](#)[Windscreen wiper and washer](#) (Front view)[Air recirculation mode](#) (Controls)

## Function

[Air recirculation mode](#)[Controls](#)[Information on the air conditioning system](#) (Controls)

## Switching off

[Air recirculation mode](#)

[Controls](#)[Information on the air conditioning system](#) (Controls)

Switching off temporarily

[Air recirculation mode](#)[Controls](#)[Information on the air conditioning system](#) (Controls)[Airbag system](#) (Overview of the driver side)[Automatic battery switch-off](#) (Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery)[Cleaning the dash panel](#) (Cleaning and caring for the dash panel, wooden trims and plastic parts)[Curtain airbags](#)[Description](#) (Description and function of the airbag system)[Different front passenger front airbag systems](#) (Types of front passenger front airbag system)[Faults](#) (Repairs and faults in the airbag system)[Front airbags](#)[Function](#) (Description and function of the airbag system)

Indicator lamp

[Indicator lamp](#)[Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off manually using the key-operated switch](#) (Indicator lamp)[Locking the vehicle after deployment](#) (Description of the central locking system)[Repairs](#) (Repairs and faults in the airbag system)[Side airbags](#)

Switching off the front passenger front airbag

[Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off manually using the key-operated switch](#)[Types of front passenger front airbag system](#)[Using a child seat on the front passenger seat](#) (Types of front passenger front airbag system)

Switching off with the key switch

[Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off manually using the key-operated switch](#)[Types of front passenger front airbag system](#)[Using a child seat on the front passenger seat](#) (Types of front passenger front airbag system)[Using child seats](#) (Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off manually using the key-operated switch)[Vehicle care](#) (Cleaning and caring for the dash panel, wooden trims and plastic parts)[Alarm button on the vehicle key](#) (Vehicle key)[Alarm system](#) (Anti-theft alarm)[Alcantara](#) (Cleaning cloth seat covers, fabric trim and Alcantara upholstery)[Alternator](#) (Warning lamp)[Aluminium](#) (Cleaning and caring for chrome and aluminium trim parts)[Anodised surfaces](#) (Cleaning and caring for chrome and aluminium trim parts)[Anti-freeze](#) (Coolant specification)[Anti-lock brake system \(ABS\)](#) (Brake assist systems)[Anti-theft alarm](#)

Anti-tow alarm

[Anti-theft alarm](#)[Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm](#) (Anti-theft alarm)

Description

[Anti-theft alarm](#)[Towing a trailer](#) (Anti-theft alarm)

Interior monitoring system

[Anti-theft alarm](#)[Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm](#) (Anti-theft alarm)

Risk of false alarm

[Frequently asked questions](#)[Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm](#)[Trailer](#) (Hitching and connecting the trailer)[Anti-theft wheel bolts](#) (Side view)[Anti-tow alarm](#) (Anti-theft alarm)[Area monitoring system](#) (Front view)[Armrest](#) (Centre armrest)[Ashtray](#) (Lower section of the centre console)[Assist systems](#) (Side view)

Adaptive chassis control

[Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)

*Adaptive chassis control (DCC)*

*Lower section of the centre console*

#### Adaptive cruise control

*ACC (adaptive cruise control)*

*Assistants submenu*

*Changing gear*

*Cruise control system (CCS)*

*Display and indicator lamps*

*Front view*

*Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist)*

*Main menu*

*Overview of the driver side*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps (Front view)*

#### *Anti-lock brake system (ABS) (Brake assist systems)*

#### Area monitoring system

*ACC (adaptive cruise control)*

*Assistants submenu*

*Changing gear*

*Cruise control system (CCS)*

*Display and indicator lamps*

*Front view*

*Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist)*

*Main menu*

*Overview of the driver side*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps (Front view)*

#### Area monitoring system (Front Assist)

*ACC (adaptive cruise control)*

*Area monitoring system (Front Assist) (ACC (adaptive cruise control))*

#### *Auto Hold (Auto Hold function)*

#### *Brake assist system (BAS) (Brake assist systems)*

#### CCS

*ACC (adaptive cruise control)*

*Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

*Cruise control system (CCS)*

*Driving situations*

*Overview of the driver side*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps (Overview of the driver side)*

#### DCC

*Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

*Adaptive chassis control (DCC)*

*Lower section of the centre console*

#### *Downhill driving assistant*

#### Driver Alert system

*Assistants submenu*

*Driver Alert system (recommendation of rest breaks) (Assistants submenu)*

#### *Electronic differential lock (EDL) (Brake assist systems)*

#### *Electronic stabilisation programme (ESP) (Brake assist systems)*

#### GRA

*ACC (adaptive cruise control)*

*Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

*Cruise control system (CCS)*

*Driving situations*

*Overview of the driver side*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps (Overview of the driver side)*

#### *Hill Hold assist (Auto Hold function)*

#### *Indicator lamps*

#### Lane change assist system

*Assistants submenu*

*Function*

- [Lane change assist system \(Side Assist\)](#)
- [Lane departure warning system \(Lane Assist\)](#)
- [Rear view](#)
- [Side view](#)
- [Warning lamps and indicator lamps \(Side view\)](#)
- Lane departure warning system
  - [ACC \(adaptive cruise control\)](#)
  - [Assistants submenu](#)
  - [Front view](#)
  - [Information level and warning levels](#)
  - [Lane change assist system \(Side Assist\)](#)
  - [Lane departure warning system \(Lane Assist\)](#)
  - [Main menu](#)
  - [Warning lamps and indicator lamps \(Front view\)](#)
- [Optical parking system \(Optical parking system \(OPS\) with all-round display\)](#)
- [Optical parking system \(Optical parking system \(OPS\)\)](#)
- Park Assist system
  - [Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)
  - [Changing gear](#)
  - [Front view](#)
  - [Lower section of the centre console](#)
  - [Optical parking system \(OPS\)](#)
  - [Optical parking system \(OPS\) with all-round display](#)
  - [Park Assist system](#)
  - [Parking distance warning system](#)
  - [Rear view](#)
  - [Side view](#)
  - [Wheels and tyres \(Side view\)](#)
- Parking aid
  - [Optical parking system \(OPS\)](#)
  - [Optical parking system \(OPS\) with all-round display](#)
  - [Parking distance warning system](#)
- Parking distance warning system
  - [Optical parking system \(OPS\)](#)
  - [Optical parking system \(OPS\) with all-round display](#)
  - [Parking distance warning system](#)
- Rear Assist system
  - [Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)
  - [Changing gear](#)
  - [Optical parking system \(OPS\)](#)
  - [Optical parking system \(OPS\) with all-round display](#)
  - [Rear Assist system](#)
  - [Rear view](#)
- Recommendation of rest breaks
  - [Assistants submenu](#)
  - [Driver Alert system \(recommendation of rest breaks\) \(Assistants submenu\)](#)
- Road sign recognition system
  - [Assistants submenu](#)
  - [Displays](#)
  - [Road sign recognition \(Sign Assist\) \(Displays\)](#)
- Side Assist
  - [Assistants submenu](#)
  - [Function](#)
  - [Lane change assist system \(Side Assist\)](#)
  - [Lane departure warning system \(Lane Assist\)](#)
  - [Rear view](#)
  - [Side view](#)
  - [Warning lamps and indicator lamps \(Side view\)](#)
- Sign Assist
  - [Assistants submenu](#)
  - [Displays](#)

[Road sign recognition \(Sign Assist\)](#) (Displays)

Start/stop

[Indicator lamps](#)

[Start/stop system](#) (Indicator lamps)

Switching off

[Button for the driver assist systems](#)

[Main menu](#) (Button for the driver assist systems)

Switching on

[Button for the driver assist systems](#)

[Main menu](#) (Button for the driver assist systems)

Traction control system (TCS)

[Brake assist systems](#)

[Switching the TCS on and off](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)

[Types of tyre monitoring systems](#)

[Tyre monitor display](#)

Tyre monitoring systems

[Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)

[After changing a wheel](#)

[Handling of wheels and tyres](#)

[New wheels and tyres](#)

[Spare wheel](#)

[Stowing items of luggage](#)

[Tyre monitoring systems](#)

[Tyre pressure](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)

[Wheels and tyres](#)

[Winter tyres](#) (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

[Tyre pressure monitoring system](#)

[Auto Hold](#) (Auto Hold function)

[Automatic belt retractor](#) (Automatic belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter)

[Automatic car wash](#) (Washing the vehicle)

[Automatic gearbox](#) (Overview of the driver side)

[Changing gear](#) (Automatic gearbox: selecting a gear)

Driving

[Driving with an automatic gearbox](#)

[Frequently asked questions](#) (Driving with an automatic gearbox)

Dual clutch gearbox

[Driving with an automatic gearbox](#)

[Frequently asked questions](#) (Driving with an automatic gearbox)

Fault

[Fault in the function of the automatic gearbox](#)

Freewheel

[Driving with an automatic gearbox](#)

[Frequently asked questions](#) (Driving with an automatic gearbox)

Kick-down function

[Driving with an automatic gearbox](#)

[Frequently asked questions](#) (Driving with an automatic gearbox)

Launch Control Programme

[Driving with an automatic gearbox](#)

[Frequently asked questions](#) (Driving with an automatic gearbox)

[Pulling away on inclines](#) (Driving with an automatic gearbox)

[Safety interlock for ignition key](#) (Ignition lock)

see Automatic gearbox

[Changing gear](#)

[Cruise control system \(CCS\)](#)

[Displays](#)

[Engine management system and exhaust purification system](#)

[Information on changing bulbs](#)

[Instruments](#)

[Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack \(covered jacking points\)](#)



[Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack \(open jacking points\)](#)  
[Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack \(R-Line models\)](#)  
[Lower section of the centre console](#)  
[Making you and your vehicle safe](#)  
[Mirrors](#)  
[Overview of the driver side](#)  
[Preparations](#)  
[Preparations for changing a wheel](#)  
[Preparing the vehicle for working in the engine compartment](#)  
[Settings menu](#)  
[Starting and stopping the engine](#)  
[Towing a trailer](#)  
[Warning lamps and indicator lamps \(Overview of the driver side\)](#)

see [Changing gear](#)

[Changing gear](#)  
[Cruise control system \(CCS\)](#)  
[Displays](#)  
[Engine management system and exhaust purification system](#)  
[Information on changing bulbs](#)  
[Instruments](#)  
[Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack \(covered jacking points\)](#)  
[Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack \(open jacking points\)](#)  
[Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack \(R-Line models\)](#)  
[Lower section of the centre console](#)  
[Making you and your vehicle safe](#)  
[Mirrors](#)  
[Overview of the driver side](#)  
[Preparations](#)  
[Preparations for changing a wheel](#)  
[Preparing the vehicle for working in the engine compartment](#)  
[Settings menu](#)  
[Starting and stopping the engine](#)  
[Towing a trailer](#)  
[Warning lamps and indicator lamps \(Overview of the driver side\)](#)

[Stopping on inclines \(Driving with an automatic gearbox\)](#)

[Tow starting](#)

[Fitting the front towing eye](#)  
[Fitting the rear towing eye](#)  
[Notes on tow starting](#)

[Unlocking the selector lever lock manually](#)

[Automatic headlight control \(Lights and vision – functions\)](#)

[Automatic main beam control \(Indicator lamps\)](#)

[Switching off](#)

[Indicator lamps](#)  
[Main beam control \(Indicator lamps\)](#)

[Switching on](#)

[Indicator lamps](#)  
[Main beam control \(Indicator lamps\)](#)

[Automatic switch-off for electrical consumers \(Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery\)](#)

[AUX-IN socket \(Stowing\)](#)

[Auxiliary equipment or body parts \(Repairs and technical modifications\)](#)

[Auxiliary heater \(Displays\)](#)

[Activating](#)

[Auxiliary heater \(supplementary heating system\)](#)  
[Programming the auxiliary heater](#)  
[Switching the auxiliary heater on or off \(Auxiliary heater \(supplementary heating system\)\)](#)

[Automatic switch-off \(Indicator lamps and fuel gauge\)](#)

[Operation](#)

[Programming](#)

[Auxiliary heater \(supplementary heating system\)](#)  
[Programming the auxiliary heater](#)

[Switching the auxiliary heater on or off](#) (Auxiliary heater (supplementary heating system))

Remote control

[Remote control](#)

[Switching the auxiliary heater on or off](#)

[Remote control: range](#) (Remote control)

[Switching off](#) (Switching the auxiliary heater on or off)

[Switching on](#) (Switching the auxiliary heater on or off)

Things to note

[Operation](#)

[Switching the auxiliary heater on or off](#)

[Auxiliary heater](#) (Remote control)

[Axle weight rating](#) (Vehicle-specific weight ratings)

## B

[Back massage function](#)

[Background lighting](#) (Interior and reading lights)

[Bag hook](#)

[BAS](#) (Brake assist systems)

[Battery](#) (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

[Discharged](#) (Operation)

Jump lead connection point

[How to start the engine using jump leads](#)

[Positive jump lead connection point](#)

[Remote control key \(auxiliary heater\)](#) (Remote control)

Replacing in vehicle key

[Indicator lamp in the vehicle key](#)

[Replacing the battery](#)

[Vehicle key](#)

see Vehicle battery

[Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)

[Engine management system and exhaust purification system](#)

[Frequently asked questions](#)

[How to start the engine using jump leads](#)

[Preparation for working in the engine compartment](#)

[Pull-away assist systems](#)

[Starting the engine with jump leads](#)

[Steering](#)

[Switching the auxiliary heater on or off](#)

[Vehicle battery](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)

[Starting the engine with jump leads](#) (How to start the engine using jump leads)

[Belt height adjuster](#)

[Belt tension limiter](#) (Automatic belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter)

[Belt tensioner](#) (Automatic belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter)

Disposal

[Automatic belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter](#)

[Service and disposal of belt tensioners](#) (Automatic belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter)

Service and disposal

[Automatic belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter](#)

[Service and disposal of belt tensioners](#) (Automatic belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter)

[Bench seat](#) (Folding the backrests on the rear bench seat forwards and backwards)

[Bend lighting](#) (Lights and vision – functions)

[Bend lighting](#) (Indicator lamps)

[Bicycle carrier](#) (Fitting a bicycle carrier on the mechanically positioned ball coupling)

[Fitting on the ball coupling](#) (Fitting a bicycle carrier on the mechanically positioned ball coupling)

[Maximum load](#) (Fitting a bicycle carrier on the mechanically positioned ball coupling)

[Biodiesel](#) (Diesel fuel)

[Bioethanol](#) (Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85)

Filling the tank

[Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85](#)

*Things to note* (Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85)

*Bonnet* (Warning lamp)

*Closing* (Opening and closing the bonnet)

*Opening* (Opening and closing the bonnet)

Warning lamp

*Opening and closing the bonnet*

*Warning lamp*

*Boot lid* (Rear view)

*Closing* (Closing the boot lid)

*Driving with an open boot lid*

*Locking* (Closing the boot lid)

*Locking and unlocking* (Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the outside)

*Manual closing or opening* (Unlocking the boot lid manually)

*Opening* (Opening the boot lid)

*Unlocking* (Opening the boot lid)

*Warning lamp*

*Bottle holder* (Drink holder)

*Brake assist system (BAS)* (Brake assist systems)

*Brake fluid* (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

*Brake servo* (Information on the brakes)

*Brake system* (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

*Brakes* (Lower section of the centre console)

*Brake assist system* (Brake assist systems)

Brake fluid

*Brake fluid*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps*

Brake fluid level

*Brake fluid*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps*

Brake pads

*Information on the brakes*

*Running-in* (Information on the brakes)

*Brake servo* (Information on the brakes)

*Changing brake fluid* (Brake fluid)

Electronic parking brake

*Electronic parking brake*

*Parking*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps*

*Emergency brake lights for emergency brake* (Making you and your vehicle safe)

*Emergency braking function* (Electronic parking brake)

Fault

*Information on the brakes*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps*

Indicator lamp

*Electronic parking brake*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps*

Parking brake

*Electronic parking brake*

*Parking*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps*

Running in brake pads

*Information on the brakes*

*Running-in* (Information on the brakes)

Warning lamp

*Electronic parking brake*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps*

*Braking distance reduction* (Front view)

*Breakdown* (Making you and your vehicle safe)

*Breakdown set* (Wheels and tyres)

*Contents* (Contents of the breakdown set)

Do not use

*Breakdown set*

*Preparations* (Breakdown set)

*Inflating the tyre* (Sealing and inflating tyres)

*Preparations*

*Sealing the tyre* (Sealing and inflating tyres)

Test after driving for 10 minutes

*Sealing and inflating tyres*

*Test after driving for 10 minutes* (Sealing and inflating tyres)

*Bulb defect* (Front view)

## C

*Calling up service messages* (Service interval display)

*Capacities* (Checking and refilling the windscreen washer fluid level)

*AdBlue tank* (Information on AdBlue)

Fuel tank

*Capacities*

*Indicator lamps and fuel gauge*

Natural gas tank

*Capacities*

*Indicator lamps and fuel gauge*

*Washer fluid reservoir* (Checking and refilling the windscreen washer fluid level)

*Car telephone* (Retrofitting two-way radios)

*Car wash* (Auto Hold function)

*Switching off Auto Hold* (Auto Hold function)

*Switching off Hill Hold Assist* (Auto Hold function)

*Card reader* (Toll card reader (ETC))

*Care* (Locking and unlocking a vehicle with)

*Catalytic converter* (Indicator lamps)

*Fault* (Indicator lamps)

*Indicator lamp* (Indicator lamps)

*CCS* (Overview of the driver side)

*CD changer* (Stowing)

*Central locking system* (Overview of the driver door)

Anti-theft alarm

*Anti-theft alarm*

*Towing a trailer* (Anti-theft alarm)

Central locking button

*Description of the central locking system*

*Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside* (Description of the central locking system)

Description

*Description of the central locking system*

*Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside* (Description of the central locking system)

Keyless Access

*Anti-theft alarm*

*Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery*

*Description of the central locking system*

*Electronic immobilizer*

*Locking and unlocking a vehicle with* (Description of the central locking system)

Locking and unlocking from the inside

*Description of the central locking system*

*Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside* (Description of the central locking system)

*Locking and unlocking from the outside* (Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the outside)

SAFELOCK mechanism

*Locking and unlocking a vehicle with*

*Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside*

*SAFELOCK mechanism* (Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside)

Single door opening

*Description of the central locking system*

*Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside* (Description of the central locking system)

*Centre armrest*

*Centre console* (Upper section of the centre console)

*Changing a wheel* (Side view)

*After changing a wheel*

*Changing the wheel*

Lifting the vehicle (covered jacking points)

*Changing the wheel*

*Lift points for the vehicle*

*Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (covered jacking points)* (Lift points for the vehicle)

Lifting the vehicle (open jacking points)

*Changing the wheel*

*Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (open jacking points)*

Preparations

*Changing the wheel*

*Preparations for changing a wheel*

Wheel bolts

*Changing the wheel*

*Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (covered jacking points)*

*Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (open jacking points)*

*Wheel bolts*

*Changing bulbs* (Front view)

*Checklist* (Information on changing bulbs)

*Front bumper* (Changing bulbs in the front bumper)

*In front headlights (Halogen)* (Changing bulbs in the front headlights (Halogen))

*In front headlights (Xenon)* (Changing bulbs in the front headlights (Xenon))

*In the body* (Changing bulbs in the tail light cluster in the body)

*In the boot lid* (Changing bulbs in the tail light cluster in the boot lid)

*Indicator lamp* (Indicator lamps)

*Number plate* (Changing the bulb in the number plate light)

Preparations

*Changing bulbs in the front bumper*

*Changing bulbs in the front headlights (Halogen)*

*Changing bulbs in the front headlights (Xenon)*

*Changing bulbs in the tail light cluster in the body*

*Changing bulbs in the tail light cluster in the boot lid*

*Changing the bulb in the number plate light*

*Information on changing bulbs*

Tail light cluster

*Changing bulbs in the tail light cluster in the body*

*Changing bulbs in the tail light cluster in the boot lid*

*Changing gear* (Overview of the driver side)

*Automatic gearbox* (Automatic gearbox: selecting a gear)

*Gear-change indicator*

*Manual gearbox* (Manual gearbox: selecting a gear)

*Selecting a gear (automatic gearbox)* (Automatic gearbox: selecting a gear)

*Selecting a gear (manual gearbox)* (Manual gearbox: selecting a gear)

*Unlocking the selector lever lock manually*

*Warning lamp and indicator lamp* (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

With Tiptronic

*Changing gear using Tiptronic*

*Driving with an automatic gearbox* (Changing gear using Tiptronic)

*Chassis control* (Lower section of the centre console)

*Chassis number* (Vehicle identification data)

*Checking the oil level* (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

*Checklist* (Preparing for a journey and driving safely)

*Before working in the engine compartment* (Preparing the vehicle for working in the engine compartment)

*Breakdown set* (Preparations)

*Broken down* (Making you and your vehicle safe)

*Changing bulbs* (Information on changing bulbs)

*Checking engine oil level* (Checking the engine oil level and refilling engine oil)

*Checks when filling the tank*

*Driving abroad*

*Driving safely* (Preparing for a journey and driving safely)

*Emergency* (Making you and your vehicle safe)

*Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (covered jacking points)*

*Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (open jacking points)*

*Preparations for changing a wheel*

*Preparing for a journey* (Preparing for a journey and driving safely)

*Seat belts* (Using seat belts)

*Seat covers* (Handling of seat covers)

*Topping up engine oil* (Checking the engine oil level and refilling engine oil)

*Transporting children in the vehicle* (General information on transporting children in the vehicle)

*Checks when filling the tank*

*Child seat* (Preparing for a journey and driving safely)

Attaching with ISOFIX

*Attaching child seats using lower anchoring points (ISOFIX, LATCH)*

*Securing child seats with the top tether*

*Various securing systems*

Attaching with LATCH

*Attaching child seats using lower anchoring points (ISOFIX, LATCH)*

*Securing child seats with the top tether*

*Various securing systems*

Integrated child seat

*Child seats (accessories)*

*Integrated child seat*

*Seat belts*

*ISOFIX child seats on the rear seats* (Using a child seat on the rear seats)

On the front passenger seat

*General information on transporting children in the vehicle*

*Using a child seat on the front passenger seat* (General information on transporting children in the vehicle)

*On the rear seats* (Using a child seat on the rear seats)

*Securing child seats* (Various securing systems)

*Securing systems* (Various securing systems)

Securing with seat belt

*Securing a child seat with a seat belt*

*Various securing systems*

Securing with top tether

*Securing child seats with the top tether*

*Various securing systems*

*Standards* (General information on transporting children in the vehicle)

*Switching off the front passenger front airbags* (Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off manually using the key-operated switch)

*Transporting children in the vehicle* (General information on transporting children in the vehicle)

*Weight classes* (General information on transporting children in the vehicle)

*Childproof lock*

*Chrome* (Cleaning and caring for chrome and aluminium trim parts)

*Cigarette lighter*

*City emergency brake function*

*Cleaning* (Locking and unlocking a vehicle with)

*Climatronic* (Front view)

*Clock* (Instrument overview)

*Closing* (Side view)

*Boot lid* (Closing the boot lid)

Doors

*Central locking system*

*Doors*

*Manual opening or closing*

*Overview of the driver door*

*Side view*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps* (Side view)

From the inside

*Description of the central locking system*

*Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside* (Description of the central locking system)

*From the outside* (Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the outside)

*Sliding/tilting roof* (Opening or closing the sliding/tilting roof)

*Windows* (Opening or closing the windows electrically)

With Keyless Access

*Anti-theft alarm*

*Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery*

*Description of the central locking system*

*Electronic immobilizer*

*Locking and unlocking a vehicle with* (Description of the central locking system)

*CO2 emissions* (CO emissions)

*Coat hook* (Other stowage compartments)

*Cockpit* (Overview of the driver side)

*Code number* (Contents)

*Coin holder* (Stowage compartment on the driver side)

*Coming Home function* (Light & Vision submenu)

*Communication window* (Insulating glass windscreen)

*Compass* (Displays)

*Consumables* (Service fluids and consumables)

*Consumer information* (Side view)

*Control units* (Information stored in the control units)

*Convenience closing* (Opening or closing the windows electrically)

Electric windows

*Electric windows – functions*

*Opening or closing the windows electrically*

*Roll-back function for the electric windows*

*Roll-back function for the sliding/tilting roof* (Opening or closing the windows electrically)

*Sliding/tilting roof* (Sliding/tilting roof – functions)

*Convenience functions* (Information stored in the control units)

*Convenience opening* (Opening or closing the windows electrically)

*Coolant* (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

Checking coolant level

*Checking coolant level and refilling coolant*

*Warning lamp and coolant temperature display*

Filler opening

*Checking coolant level and refilling coolant*

*Warning lamp and coolant temperature display*

G 12 plus-plus

*Checking coolant level and refilling coolant*

*Coolant specification*

Refilling

*Checking coolant level and refilling coolant*

*Warning lamp and coolant temperature display*

Specification

*Checking coolant level and refilling coolant*

*Coolant specification*

*Temperature display* (Warning lamp and coolant temperature display)

*Warning lamp* (Warning lamp and coolant temperature display)

*Cornering lighting* (Lights and vision – functions)

*Counter power steering* (Information on steering)

*Cruise control system (CCS)* (Front view)

*Display* (Display and indicator lamp)

*Indicator lamp* (Display and indicator lamp)

*Operating* (Operating cruise control system (CCS))

see Adaptive cruise control

*ACC (adaptive cruise control)*

*Assistants submenu*

*Changing gear*

*Cruise control system (CCS)*

*Display and indicator lamps*

*Front view*

*Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist)*

[Main menu](#)  
[Overview of the driver side](#)  
[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)  
[Warning lamps and indicator lamps \(Front view\)](#)

[Curtain airbags](#)

## D

[Dash panel \(Overview of the driver side\)](#)

[Airbag system](#)

[Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)  
[Adjusting the seat position](#)  
[Airbag system](#)  
[Child seats \(accessories\)](#)  
[Cleaning and caring for the dash panel, wooden trims and plastic parts](#)  
[Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards](#)  
[Luggage compartment](#)  
[Overview of the driver side](#)  
[Overview of the front passenger side](#)  
[Seat belts](#)  
[Seat functions](#)  
[Spare key](#)  
[Upper section of the centre console](#)  
[Using a child seat on the front passenger seat](#)  
[Warning lamps and indicator lamps \(Overview of the driver side\)](#)

[Cleaning \(Cleaning and caring for the dash panel, wooden trims and plastic parts\)](#)

[Data Link Connector \(DLC\) \(Information stored in the control units\)](#)

[Data recorders \(Information stored in the control units\)](#)

[Data recording during a journey \(Information stored in the control units\)](#)

[Daytime headlights \(Lights and vision – functions\)](#)

[Daytime running lights \(Indicator lamps\)](#)

[DCC \(Lower section of the centre console\)](#)

[De-icing door lock cylinders](#)

[De-icing locks \(De-icing door lock cylinders\)](#)

[Declaration of conformity](#)

[Diagnosis connection \(Information stored in the control units\)](#)

[Diesel \(Filling the tank\)](#)

[Biodiesel \(Diesel fuel\)](#)

[Filling the tank](#)

[Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85](#)

[Filter pre-heater \(Diesel fuel\)](#)

[Fuel gauge](#)

[Filling the tank](#)

[Indicator lamps and fuel gauge \(Filling the tank\)](#)

[Supplementary heater](#)

[Diesel fuel](#)

[Frequently asked questions \(Diesel fuel\)](#)

[Winter diesel \(Diesel fuel\)](#)

[Diesel particulate filter \(Gear-change indicator\)](#)

[Fault \(Indicator lamps\)](#)

[Gear-change indicator](#)

[Indicator lamp \(Indicator lamps\)](#)

[Things to note \(Diesel fuel\)](#)

[Differential lock \(Brake assist systems\)](#)

[Digital clock \(Instrument overview\)](#)

[Dimensions](#)

[Dipped beam headlights \(Switching lights on and off\)](#)

[Display \(Instrument overview\)](#)

[ACC \(Display, warning lamps and indicator lamps\)](#)

[Cruise control system \(CCS\) \(Display and indicator lamp\)](#)

[Instrument cluster](#)



[Displays](#)

[Instrument overview](#)

[Lane departure warning system](#) (Display and indicator lamps)

[Road sign recognition system](#) (Display)

[Display in instrument cluster](#) (Overview of the menu structure)

[Disposal](#) (Automatic belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter)

[Airbag system](#) (Recycling and scrapping end-of-life vehicles)

Belt tensioner

[Automatic belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter](#)

[Service and disposal of belt tensioners](#) (Automatic belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter)

[End-of-life vehicle](#) (Recycling and scrapping end-of-life vehicles)

[Door release lever](#) (Side view)

[Doors](#) (Side view)

[Childproof lock](#)

[Manual closing or opening](#) (Locking and unlocking the driver door manually)

[Warning lamp](#)

[Downhill driving assistant](#)

[Drawbar load](#) (Towing a trailer)

[Drink holder](#) (Overview of the driver door)

[Front centre console](#) (Drink holders in front centre console)

[Rear centre armrest](#) (Drink holders in the rear centre armrest)

[Driver Alert system](#) (Assistants submenu)

[Fault](#) (Driver Alert system (recommendation of rest breaks))

[Function](#) (Function and operation by the user)

[Operation by the user](#) (Function and operation by the user)

[Switching off](#) (Function and operation by the user)

[Switching on](#) (Function and operation by the user)

[Driver assist systems](#) (Lower section of the centre console)

[Driver door](#) (Overview of the driver door)

[Driving](#) (Driving tips)

Before setting off

[Airbag system](#)

[Driving tips](#)

[Data recording](#) (Information stored in the control units)

[Driving abroad](#)

Driving tips

[Airbag system](#)

[Driving tips](#)

Economically

[Driving tips](#)

[Driving with respect for the environment](#)

[Roof carrier](#)

[Technical data](#)

[Towing a trailer](#) (Driving tips)

[Engine and transmission guard](#) (Driving tips)

Fuel gauge

[Filling the tank](#)

[Indicator lamps and fuel gauge](#) (Filling the tank)

[Fuel level too low](#) (Indicator lamps and fuel gauge)

Parking on an incline

[Parking](#)

[Preparing for a journey](#) (Preparing for a journey and driving safely)

[Pulling away on inclines](#) (Driving with an automatic gearbox)

[Stopping on inclines](#) (Driving with an automatic gearbox)

[Through salt water](#) (Driving through water)

[Towing](#) (Driving notes on towing)

[Water on the roads](#) (Driving through water)

[With a trailer](#) (Towing a trailer)

With an automatic gearbox

[Driving with an automatic gearbox](#)

[Frequently asked questions](#) (Driving with an automatic gearbox)

With Loaded vehicle

*Boot lid*  
*Driving notes*  
*Luggage compartment*  
*Roof carrier*  
*Wheels and tyres* (Boot lid)

With respect for the environment

*Driving tips*  
*Driving with respect for the environment*  
*Roof carrier*  
*Technical data*  
*Towing a trailer* (Driving tips)

*Driving* (Spare wheel)

*Driving abroad*

*Checklist* (Driving abroad)

Headlights

*Main beam control*  
*Masking or switching over headlights for driving abroad* (Main beam control)

*Driving economically* (Driving tips)

*Driving safely* (Preparing for a journey and driving safely)

*Driving through salt water* (Driving through water)

*Driving through water*

*Driving tips*

*Driving with respect for the environment* (Driving tips)

*DSG* (Driving with an automatic gearbox)

*Dual clutch gearbox* (Driving with an automatic gearbox)

*Fault* (Fault in the function of the automatic gearbox)

see Automatic gearbox

*Driving with an automatic gearbox*

*Frequently asked questions* (Driving with an automatic gearbox)

*Dust filter* (Heating, ventilating, cooling)

*Dynamic headlight range control* (Headlight range control, instrument and switch lighting)

*Dynamic Light Assist* (Indicator lamps)

## E

*E85* (Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85)

*Easy open* (Description of the central locking system)

See Keyless Access

*Anti-theft alarm*

*Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery*

*Description of the central locking system*

*Electronic immobilizer*

*Locking and unlocking a vehicle with* (Description of the central locking system)

*Things to note* (Locking and unlocking a vehicle with)

*EDL* (Brake assist systems)

*Electric windows* (Overview of the driver door)

*Buttons* (Opening or closing the windows electrically)

*Closing* (Opening or closing the windows electrically)

Convenience closing

*Electric windows – functions*

*Opening or closing the windows electrically*

*Roll-back function for the electric windows*

*Roll-back function for the sliding/tilting roof* (Opening or closing the windows electrically)

Convenience opening

*Electric windows – functions*

*Opening or closing the windows electrically*

*Roll-back function for the electric windows*

*Roll-back function for the sliding/tilting roof* (Opening or closing the windows electrically)

*Fault* (Electric windows – functions)

*One-touch opening and closing* (Electric windows – functions)

*Opening* (Opening or closing the windows electrically)

*Roll-back function* (Roll-back function for the electric windows)

*Electrical consumers* (Hitching and connecting the trailer)

*Electrical sockets* (Lower section of the centre console)

*Electrically folding* (Electrically folding ball coupling)

Ball coupling

*Electrically folding ball coupling*

*Notes on tow starting*

*Swivelling out the ball coupling (R-Line)* (Electrically folding ball coupling)

Trailer

*Electrically folding ball coupling*

*Notes on tow starting*

*Swivelling out the ball coupling (R-Line)* (Electrically folding ball coupling)

*Electrolyte* (Checking the electrolyte level of the vehicle battery)

*Electronic differential lock (EDL)* (Brake assist systems)

*Electronic immobilizer*

*Electronic parking brake* (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

*Electronic stabilisation programme (ESP)* (Brake assist systems)

*Emergency* (Overview of the driver door)

*Breakdown* (Making you and your vehicle safe)

*Checklist* (Making you and your vehicle safe)

Fire extinguisher

*First-aid kit, warning triangle, high-visibility waistcoat and fire extinguisher*

*Making you and your vehicle safe*

First-aid kit

*First-aid kit, warning triangle, high-visibility waistcoat and fire extinguisher*

*Making you and your vehicle safe*

*Hazard warning lights* (Making you and your vehicle safe)

*Making you and your vehicle safe*

Warning triangle

*First-aid kit, warning triangle, high-visibility waistcoat and fire extinguisher*

*Making you and your vehicle safe*

*Emergency brake* (Making you and your vehicle safe)

*Emergency brake lights* (Making you and your vehicle safe)

*Emergency braking function* (Electronic parking brake)

*Emergency breakaway cable* (Technical requirements)

*Engine* (Starting the engine)

*Noises* (Starting the engine)

*Running in* (Running-in)

*Engine and ignition* (Overview of the driver door)

*12-volt sockets* (Electrical sockets)

*Glow* (Starting the engine)

Ignition lock

*Ignition lock*

*Starter button*

*Starting the engine*

*Stopping the engine* (Ignition lock)

*Immobilizer* (Electronic immobilizer)

*Indicator lamp*

Non-authorized vehicle key

*Ignition lock*

*Starter button*

*Starting the engine*

*Stopping the engine* (Ignition lock)

*Starting the engine*

Starting the engine with Keyless Access

*Lower section of the centre console*

*Starter button*

*Starting the engine*

*Stopping the engine* (Lower section of the centre console)

*Stopping the engine with Keyless Access* (Stopping the engine)

[Engine and transmission guard](#) (Driving tips)

[Engine code](#) (Vehicle identification data)

[Engine compartment](#) (Front view)

[Cleaning](#) (Cleaning the engine compartment)

Coolant

[Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)

[Checks when filling the tank](#)

[Coolant](#)

[Instrument overview](#)

[Preparation for working in the engine compartment](#)

[Technical data](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)

Engine oil

[Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)

[Catalytic converter](#)

[Checks when filling the tank](#)

[Diesel particulate filter](#)

[Driving abroad](#)

[Engine management system and exhaust purification system](#)

[Engine oil](#)

[Preparation for working in the engine compartment](#)

[Technical data](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)

[Plenum chamber](#) (Cleaning the engine compartment)

[Preparations](#) (Preparing the vehicle for working in the engine compartment)

Vehicle battery

[Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)

[Engine management system and exhaust purification system](#)

[Frequently asked questions](#)

[How to start the engine using jump leads](#)

[Preparation for working in the engine compartment](#)

[Pull-away assist systems](#)

[Starting the engine with jump leads](#)

[Steering](#)

[Switching the auxiliary heater on or off](#)

[Vehicle battery](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)

[Engine coolant](#) (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

[Engine data](#)

[Engine fault](#) (Indicator lamps)

[Engine management system](#) (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

[Engine oil](#) (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

[Changing](#) (Changing engine oil)

Checking the engine oil level

[Checking the engine oil level and refilling engine oil](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)

[Consumption](#) (Engine oil consumption)

Dipstick

[Checking the engine oil level and refilling engine oil](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)

Filler opening

[Checking the engine oil level and refilling engine oil](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)

[Indicator lamp](#) (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

Refilling

[Checking the engine oil level and refilling engine oil](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)

[Specification](#) (Engine oil specification)

[Warning lamp](#) (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

[ESC](#) (Brake assist systems)

[ESP](#) (Brake assist systems)

*ETC* (Toll card reader (ETC))  
*Ethylalcohol* (Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85)  
*Event Data Recorder* (Information stored in the control units)  
*Exhaust purification system* (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)  
*Exhaust purification system* (Indicator lamps)  
*Exterior mirrors*  
     *Automatic anti-dazzle* (Exterior mirrors)  
     *Driving with a trailer* (Technical requirements)  
     *Fault* (Exterior mirrors)  
     *Folding in* (Exterior mirrors)  
     *Saving settings for reversing* (Exterior mirrors)  
     *Synchronised mirror adjustment* (Exterior mirrors)  
 Vehicle care  
     *Cleaning windows and exterior mirrors*  
     *Washing the vehicle*

*Exterior views*  
*External aerial* (Retrofitting two-way radios)

## F

*Factory plate* (Vehicle identification data)  
*FAQs* (Frequently asked questions)  
*Fastening rings*  
*Fault* (Electric windows – functions)  
     *115-volt socket* (Sockets in the vehicle)  
     *230-volt Euro socket* (Sockets in the vehicle)  
     *ACC* (ACC (adaptive cruise control))  
 Adaptive chassis control  
     *Adaptive chassis control (DCC)*  
     *Function and operation* (Adaptive chassis control (DCC))  
*Air conditioning system* (Information on the air conditioning system)  
*Area monitoring system* (ACC (adaptive cruise control))  
 Automatic gearbox  
     *Fault in the function of the automatic gearbox*  
*Catalytic converter* (Indicator lamps)  
*Diesel particulate filter* (Indicator lamps)  
*Driver Alert system* (Driver Alert system (recommendation of rest breaks))  
*Dual clutch gearbox* (Fault in the function of the automatic gearbox)  
*Electric exterior mirrors* (Exterior mirrors)  
*Electric windows* (Electric windows – functions)  
*Immobilizer* (Starting and stopping the engine)  
*Lane change assist system* (Lane change assist system (Side Assist))  
*Lane departure warning system* (Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist))  
*Main beam assist* (Main beam control)  
*Park Assist system*  
*Parking distance warning system*  
*Parking distance warning system* (Parking distance warning system)  
 Radio reception  
     *Electrical sockets*  
     *Radio reception and aerials* (Electrical sockets)  
*Rain sensor*  
*Reversing assistant* (General information)  
*Sliding/tilting roof*  
*Towing bracket* (Hitching and connecting the trailer)  
 Tyre monitoring system  
     *Tyre monitor indicator lamp*  
     *Tyre pressure monitoring system* (Tyre monitor indicator lamp)  
*Fault finding* (Frequently asked questions)  
*Fault memory* (Information stored in the control units)  
     *Connection* (Information stored in the control units)  
     *Reading* (Information stored in the control units)

[Filling the tank \(Side view\)](#)  
[At the filling station](#)  
[Bioethanol](#)  
     [Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85](#)  
[Checks when filling the tank](#)  
[Diesel](#)  
     [Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85](#)  
[E85](#)  
     [Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85](#)  
[Fuel gauge](#)  
     [Filling the tank](#)  
     [Indicator lamps and fuel gauge \(Filling the tank\)](#)  
[Incorrect fuel \(Filling the tank\)](#)  
[Indicator lamp](#)  
     [Filling the tank](#)  
     [Indicator lamps and fuel gauge \(Filling the tank\)](#)  
[Natural gas \(Filling the tank with natural gas\)](#)  
[Petrol](#)  
     [Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85](#)  
[Filter pre-heater \(Diesel fuel\)](#)  
[Fire extinguisher \(Technical requirements\)](#)  
[First-aid kit \(Making you and your vehicle safe\)](#)  
[Fog lights \(Indicator lamps\)](#)  
[Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards](#)  
[Foot mats \(Pedals\)](#)  
[Four-wheel drive \(Winter tyres\)](#)  
     [Snow chains](#)  
[Tow starting](#)  
     [Fitting the front towing eye](#)  
     [Fitting the rear towing eye](#)  
     [Notes on tow starting](#)  
     [Winter tyres](#)  
[Freewheel \(Driving with an automatic gearbox\)](#)  
[Frequently asked questions](#)  
[Front airbags](#)  
[Front Assist \(Front view\)](#)  
[Front passenger front airbag \(Overview of the driver side\)](#)  
     see Airbag system  
         [Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)  
         [Adjusting the seat position](#)  
         [Airbag system](#)  
         [Child seats \(accessories\)](#)  
         [Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards](#)  
         [Luggage compartment](#)  
         [Overview of the driver side](#)  
         [Overview of the front passenger side](#)  
         [Seat belts](#)  
         [Seat functions](#)  
         [Spare key](#)  
         [Upper section of the centre console](#)  
         [Using a child seat on the front passenger seat](#)  
         [Warning lamps and indicator lamps \(Overview of the driver side\)](#)  
[Switching off with the key switch](#)  
     [Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off manually using the key-operated switch](#)  
     [Types of front passenger front airbag system](#)  
     [Using a child seat on the front passenger seat \(Types of front passenger front airbag system\)](#)  
[Frontal collisions and the laws of physics](#)  
[Fuel \(Technical data\)](#)  
     [Bioethanol](#)  
         [Bioethanol \(Ethylalcohol\)](#)  
         [Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85](#)

[Fuel types](#) (Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85)

Diesel

[Diesel fuel](#)

[Fuel types](#)

[Engine dependent](#) (Fuel types)

[Fuel type](#) (Fuel types)

[Information on fuel consumption](#)

Natural gas

[Fuel types](#)

[Natural gas](#) (Fuel types)

Petrol

[Fuel types](#)

[Petrol](#) (Fuel types)

[Fuel consumption](#) (Driving tips)

[CO2 emissions](#) (CO emissions)

Driving economically

[Driving tips](#)

[Driving with respect for the environment](#)

[Roof carrier](#)

[Technical data](#)

[Towing a trailer](#) (Driving tips)

[How is it determined?](#) (Information on fuel consumption)

[Information](#) (Information on fuel consumption)

[Technical data](#) (Fuel consumption)

[What increases it?](#) (Indicator lamps)

[Fuel gauge](#) (Filling the tank)

Indicator lamp

[Filling the tank](#)

[Indicator lamps and fuel gauge](#) (Filling the tank)

Natural gas

[Filling the tank](#)

[Indicator lamps and fuel gauge](#) (Filling the tank)

Petrol or diesel

[Filling the tank](#)

[Indicator lamps and fuel gauge](#) (Filling the tank)

[Fuel type](#) (Fuel types)

[Fuses](#) (Frequently asked questions)

[Changing](#) (Changing a blown fuse)

[Colour coding of fuses](#) (Fuses in the vehicle)

[Detecting a blown fuse](#) (Changing a blown fuse)

Fuse box

[Changing a blown fuse](#)

[Fuses in the vehicle](#)

[Preparations for changing](#) (Changing a blown fuse)

## G

[Gas smell](#) (Natural gas)

[Gear-change indicator](#)

[Glasses compartment](#) (Stowage area in the roof console (glasses compartment))

[Glove compartment](#) (Overview of the front passenger side)

[Lights](#) (Interior and reading lights)

see Stowing

[Overview of the front passenger side](#)

[Stowage compartment on the front passenger side](#) (Overview of the front passenger side)

[Glow](#) (Starting the engine)

[Gross combination weight rating](#) (Maximum permitted gross combination weight)

[G 12 plus](#) (Coolant specification)

[G 12 plus-plus](#) (Coolant specification)

## H

*Handbrake* (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

*Hazard warning lights* (Making you and your vehicle safe)

*Head restraints* (Adjusting the head restraints)

*Headlight range control* (Overview of the driver side)

*Automatic ride height setting* (Headlight range control, instrument and switch lighting)

*Dynamic headlight range control* (Headlight range control, instrument and switch lighting)

*Headlights* (Switching lights on and off)

*Cleaning system* (Windscreen wiper functions)

Driving abroad

*Main beam control*

*Masking or switching over headlights for driving abroad* (Main beam control)

*Heated seats* (Seat heating)

*High-pressure cleaner* (Washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner)

*High-visibility waistcoat* (First-aid kit, warning triangle, high-visibility waistcoat and fire extinguisher)

*Horn* (Overview of the driver side)

*Hub caps* (Side view)

*Centre covers*

*Wheel bolt caps*

*Wheel cover*

*Identification number* (Vehicle identification data)

*If and when* (Frequently asked questions)

*Ignition* (Overview of the driver door)

*Ignition key* (Vehicle key)

*Ignition lock*

Non-authorized vehicle key

*Ignition lock*

*Starter button*

*Starting the engine*

*Stopping the engine* (Ignition lock)

*Withdrawal lock* (Ignition lock)

*Immobilizer* (Starting and stopping the engine)

*Indicator lamp* (Overview of the driver side)

*ACC* (Display, warning lamps and indicator lamps)

AdBlue

*Information on AdBlue*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps*

Airbag system

*Indicator lamp*

*Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off manually using the key-operated switch* (Indicator lamp)

Brake pad wear indicator

*Electronic parking brake*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps*

Brake system

*Electronic parking brake*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps*

*Catalytic converter* (Indicator lamps)

*Changing bulbs* (Indicator lamps)

*Changing gear* (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

*Checking the oil level* (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

*Cruise control system (CCS)* (Display and indicator lamp)

Depress brake

*Electronic parking brake*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps*

*Diesel particulate filter* (Indicator lamps)

*Engine and ignition* (Indicator lamp)

*Engine management system* (Indicator lamps)

*Engine oil sensor* (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

ESP



[Electronic parking brake](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)

[Exhaust purification system](#) (Indicator lamps)

Filling the tank

[Filling the tank](#)

[Indicator lamps and fuel gauge](#) (Filling the tank)

Fuel level

[Filling the tank](#)

[Indicator lamps and fuel gauge](#) (Filling the tank)

[In the driver door](#) (SAFELOCK mechanism)

Lane change assist system

[Function](#)

[Indicator lamps](#)

[Lane departure warning system](#) (Display and indicator lamps)

[Lights](#) (Indicator lamps)

Overview

[Displays](#)

[Instruments](#)

[Overview of the driver side](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#) (Overview of the driver side)

Remote control key (auxiliary heater)

[Remote control](#)

[Switching the auxiliary heater on or off](#)

[Start/stop system](#) (Indicator lamps)

[Steering column lock](#) (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

Tyre monitoring system

[Tyre monitor indicator lamp](#)

[Tyre pressure monitoring system](#) (Tyre monitor indicator lamp)

[Vehicle key](#) (Indicator lamp in the vehicle key)

[Windscreen washer fluid level](#) (Indicator lamp)

[Indirect ventilation](#) (Information on the air conditioning system)

[Information on fuel consumption](#)

[Information stored in the control units](#)

[Infrared windscreen](#) (Insulating glass windscreen)

[Instrument cluster](#) (Overview of the driver side)

[Display](#) (Instrument overview)

Displays

[Displays](#)

[Instrument overview](#)

[Overview of the menu structure](#) (Instrument overview)

Indicator lamp

[Displays](#)

[Instruments](#)

[Overview of the driver side](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#) (Overview of the driver side)

[Instruments](#) (Instrument overview)

[Menu structure](#) (Overview of the menu structure)

Service interval display

[Displays](#)

[Service interval display](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)

Symbols

[Displays](#)

[Instruments](#)

[Overview of the driver side](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#) (Overview of the driver side)

Using menus

[Button for the driver assist systems](#)

[Using the menus in the instrument cluster](#)

Warning lamp

[Displays](#)

*Instruments**Overview of the driver side**Warning lamps and indicator lamps* (Overview of the driver side)*Instruments* (Instrument overview)*Integrated child seat* (Seat belts)*Assembling* (Folding out the integrated child seat)

## Seat belt routing

*Folding out the integrated child seat**Seat belt routing for an integrated child seat* (Folding out the integrated child seat)*Stowing* (Stowing the child seat)*Interior lights* (Interior and reading lights)*Interior mirror**Interior monitoring system* (Anti-theft alarm)*ISOFIX* (Preparing for a journey and driving safely)**J***Jump starting* (Starting and stopping the engine)

## Positive jump lead connection point

*How to start the engine using jump leads**Positive jump lead connection point*

## see Starting the engine with jump leads

*Catalytic converter**Diesel particulate filter**Electronic parking brake**Frequently asked questions**Pull-away assist systems**Starting and stopping the engine**Starting the engine with jump leads**Tow starting and towing* (Starting and stopping the engine)**K***Kerb weight* (Vehicle-specific weight ratings)*Key* (Vehicle key)*Key switch* (Types of front passenger front airbag system)*Keyless Access* (Lower section of the centre console)

## Easy open

*Anti-theft alarm**Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery**Description of the central locking system**Electronic immobilizer**Locking and unlocking a vehicle with* (Description of the central locking system)

## Keyless Entry

*Anti-theft alarm**Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery**Description of the central locking system**Electronic immobilizer**Locking and unlocking a vehicle with* (Description of the central locking system)

## Keyless Exit

*Anti-theft alarm**Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery**Description of the central locking system**Electronic immobilizer**Locking and unlocking a vehicle with* (Description of the central locking system)

## Keyless Go

*Anti-theft alarm**Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery**Description of the central locking system**Electronic immobilizer**Locking and unlocking a vehicle with**Lower section of the centre console*

[Starter button](#)

[Starting the engine](#)

[Stopping the engine](#) (Lower section of the centre console)

Locking and unlocking vehicle

[Anti-theft alarm](#)

[Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery](#)

[Description of the central locking system](#)

[Electronic immobilizer](#)

[Locking and unlocking a vehicle with](#) (Description of the central locking system)

Starter button

[Lower section of the centre console](#)

[Starter button](#)

[Starting the engine](#)

[Stopping the engine](#) (Lower section of the centre console)

[Steering column lock](#) (Information on steering)

[Things to note](#) (Locking and unlocking a vehicle with)

[Keyless Access locking and starting system](#) (Description of the central locking system)

[Engine and ignition](#) (Stopping the engine)

See Keyless Access

[Anti-theft alarm](#)

[Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery](#)

[Description of the central locking system](#)

[Electronic immobilizer](#)

[Locking and unlocking a vehicle with](#) (Description of the central locking system)

[Keyless Entry](#) (Description of the central locking system)

[Keyless Exit](#) (Description of the central locking system)

[Keyless Go](#) (Description of the central locking system)

[Kick-down function](#) (Driving with an automatic gearbox)

## L

[Lane Assist](#) (Front view)

[Lane Assist PLUS](#) (Function)

[Lane change assist system](#) (Lane change assist system (Side Assist))

[Display in exterior mirror](#) (Function)

[Fault](#) (Lane change assist system (Side Assist))

[Function](#)

Indicator lamp

[Function](#)

[Indicator lamps](#)

[Information level and warning levels](#)

[Setting the display brightness](#) (Information level and warning levels)

[Special driving situations](#) (Function)

[Switching off](#) (Function)

[Switching on](#) (Function)

[Trailer](#) (Lane change assist system (Side Assist))

[Lane change assist system](#) (Side view)

[Lane change flash](#) (Indicator lamps)

[Lane departure warning system](#) (Front view)

[Display](#) (Display and indicator lamps)

[Function](#)

[Indicator lamp](#) (Display and indicator lamps)

[When do I switch it off?](#) (Switch of the lane departure warning system in the following situations)

[Lane departure warning system](#) (Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist))

[Lane departure warning system PLUS](#) (Function)

[LATCH](#) (Preparing for a journey and driving safely)

[Launch Control Programme](#) (Driving with an automatic gearbox)

[Leaving Home function](#) (Light & Vision submenu)

[Lift points for the vehicle](#)

[Lifting platform](#) (Lift points for the vehicle)

[Lifting the vehicle](#) (Lift points for the vehicle)

*Lifting platform* (Lift points for the vehicle)

*R-Line* (Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (R-Line models))

*With lifting platform* (Lift points for the vehicle)

With the vehicle jack (covered jacking points)

*Changing the wheel*

*Lift points for the vehicle*

*Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (covered jacking points)* (Lift points for the vehicle)

With the vehicle jack (open jacking points)

*Changing the wheel*

*Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (open jacking points)*

*Lifting the vehicle (covered jacking points)* (Lift points for the vehicle)

*Checklist* (Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (covered jacking points))

Vehicle jack

*Changing the wheel*

*Lift points for the vehicle*

*Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (covered jacking points)* (Lift points for the vehicle)

*Lifting the vehicle (open jacking points)* (Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (open jacking points))

*Checklist* (Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (open jacking points))

Vehicle jack

*Changing the wheel*

*Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (open jacking points)*

*Light Assist* (Indicator lamps)

*Lights* (Side view)

Acoustic warnings

*Main beam control*

*Switching lights on and off*

*AUTO* (Lights and vision – functions)

Automatic main beam control

*Indicator lamps*

*Main beam control* (Indicator lamps)

Coming Home

*and functions (orientation lighting)*

*Light & Vision submenu*

*Switching lights on and off* (Light & Vision submenu)

*Daytime headlights* (Lights and vision – functions)

Daytime running lights

*Indicator lamps*

*Lights and vision – functions* (Indicator lamps)

Dipped beam headlights

*Main beam control*

*Switching lights on and off*

Dynamic bend lighting

*Indicator lamps*

*Lights and vision – functions*

*Main beam control* (Indicator lamps)

Fog lights

*Indicator lamps*

*Switching lights on and off* (Indicator lamps)

Functions

*Lights and vision – functions*

*Turn signal and main beam lever*

*Headlight range control* (Headlight range control, instrument and switch lighting)

*Indicator lamp* (Indicator lamps)

*Instrument lighting* (Headlight range control, instrument and switch lighting)

*Interior lights* (Interior and reading lights)

Leaving Home

*and functions (orientation lighting)*

*Light & Vision submenu*

*Switching lights on and off* (Light & Vision submenu)

Light switch

*Main beam control*

*Switching lights on and off*

## Main beam assist

*Indicator lamps**Main beam control* (Indicator lamps)

## Main beam lever

*and functions (orientation lighting)**Indicator lamps**Main beam control**Switching lights on and off**Turn signal and main beam lever* (Indicator lamps)*Parking light* (Lights and vision – functions)*Permanent parking light on both sides* (Lights and vision – functions)*Reading lights* (Interior and reading lights)

## Side lights

*Main beam control**Switching lights on and off**Static bend lighting* (Lights and vision – functions)*Switch lighting* (Headlight range control, instrument and switch lighting)

## Switching off

*Main beam control**Switching lights on and off*

## Switching on

*Main beam control**Switching lights on and off*

## Turn signal lever

*and functions (orientation lighting)**Indicator lamps**Main beam control**Switching lights on and off**Turn signal and main beam lever* (Indicator lamps)*Load carrier system* (Driving notes)*Load compartment net* (Luggage net)*Loading* (Boot lid)*Driving with an open boot lid**Fastening rings*

## General notes

*Boot lid**Driving notes**Luggage compartment**Roof carrier**Wheels and tyres* (Boot lid)*Load carrier system* (Loading the load carrier system)

## Luggage compartment

*Driving notes**Luggage compartment**Other stowage compartments**Removing and fitting the head restraints**Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue)**Stowing items of luggage* (Removing and fitting the head restraints)*Ski and snowboard bag*

## Stowing items of luggage

*Driving a loaded vehicle**Stowing items of luggage*

## Through-loading aperture

*Ski and snowboard bag**Through-loading aperture**Trailer* (Loading the trailer)*Lock button* (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)*Locking* (Description of the central locking system)*After the airbags have been deployed* (Description of the central locking system)

## From the inside

*Description of the central locking system*

*Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside* (Description of the central locking system)

*From the outside* (Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the outside)

With Keyless Access

*Anti-theft alarm*

*Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery*

*Description of the central locking system*

*Electronic immobilizer*

*Locking and unlocking a vehicle with* (Description of the central locking system)

*Lowering of front passenger exterior mirror* (Exterior mirrors)

*Luggage compartment* (Removing and fitting the head restraints)

*Luggage compartment lights* (Interior and reading lights)

*Luggage net*

*Luggage net*

## M

*Main beam assist* (Main beam control)

*Main beam control* (Indicator lamps)

Switching off

*Indicator lamps*

*Main beam control* (Indicator lamps)

Switching on

*Indicator lamps*

*Main beam control* (Indicator lamps)

*Main beam lever* (Indicator lamps)

*Manual closing or opening* (Vehicle key set)

*Boot lid* (Unlocking the boot lid manually)

*Driver door* (Locking and unlocking the driver door manually)

*Front passenger door* (Locking the front passenger door and rear doors manually)

*Rear doors* (Locking the front passenger door and rear doors manually)

*Sliding/tilting roof* (Closing the sliding/tilting roof manually)

*Unlocking the selector lever lock manually*

*Manual gearbox* (Overview of the driver side)

*Maximum speed* (Performance figures)

*Mechanically positioned ball coupling* (Fitting a bicycle carrier on the mechanically positioned ball coupling)

*MEDIA-IN* (Stowing)

*Memory seats*

*Metal-coated windscreen* (Insulating glass windscreen)

*Mileage display* (Instrument overview)

*Mirrors* (Side view)

*Convenience functions* (Exterior mirrors)

*Exterior mirrors*

*Folding in mirrors* (Exterior mirrors)

*Interior mirror*

*Lowering of front passenger exterior mirror* (Exterior mirrors)

*Synchronised mirror adjustment* (Exterior mirrors)

*Mobile telephone* (Using a mobile telephone in the vehicle without a connection to the external aerial)

*Mobility tyres* (Tyre damage)

*Modifications* (Repairs and technical modifications)

*Modifications to the vehicle* (Seat belts)

*MultiFuel engine* (Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85)

*Multifunction display* (Overview of the menu structure)

*Multifunction steering wheel* (Overview of the driver side)

## N

*Natural gas* (Filling the tank)

*Filling the tank* (Filling the tank with natural gas)

Fuel gauge

*Filling the tank*

*Indicator lamps and fuel gauge* (Filling the tank)

*Leaking natural gas system* (Natural gas)

*Smell* (Natural gas)

*Tank cap* (Filling the tank with natural gas)

Things to note

*Filling the tank with natural gas*

*Indicator lamps and fuel gauge*

*New engine* (Running-in)

*New tyres* (New wheels and tyres)

*Noises* (Starting the engine)

*ACC* (ACC (adaptive cruise control))

*Auxiliary heater* (Operation)

*Brake assist system (BAS)* (Brake assist systems)

Engine

*Diesel fuel*

*Starting the engine*

*Parking brake* (Electronic parking brake)

*Refuelling with natural gas* (Filling the tank with natural gas)

*Tyres* (Winter tyres)

*Number of seats* (Adjusting the seat position)

## O

*Octane number* (Fuel types)

*Odometer* (Instrument overview)

*Off-road driving* (Driving tips)

*Oil* (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

*Oil dipstick* (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

*Old tyres* (Handling of wheels and tyres)

*On-Board-Diagnostic System (ODB)* (Information stored in the control units)

*Opening* (Side view)

*Boot lid* (Opening the boot lid)

Doors

*Central locking system*

*Doors*

*Manual opening or closing*

*Overview of the driver door*

*Side view*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps* (Side view)

From the inside

*Description of the central locking system*

*Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside* (Description of the central locking system)

*From the outside* (Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the outside)

*Sliding/tilting roof* (Opening or closing the sliding/tilting roof)

*Windows* (Opening or closing the windows electrically)

With Keyless Access

*Anti-theft alarm*

*Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery*

*Description of the central locking system*

*Electronic immobilizer*

*Locking and unlocking a vehicle with* (Description of the central locking system)

*Optical parking system* (Optical parking system (OPS) with all-round display)

*Optical parking system* (Optical parking system (OPS))

*Optical parking system with all-round display* (Optical parking system (OPS) with all-round display)

*Outside temperature display* (Displays)

*Overview* (Side view)

*Driver door* (Overview of the driver door)

*Driver side* (Overview of the driver side)

*Front passenger side* (Overview of the front passenger side)

*Front view*

Indicator lamp

*Displays*

*Instruments**Overview of the driver side**Warning lamps and indicator lamps* (Overview of the driver side)*Instruments* (Instrument overview)*Lower section of the centre console**Menu structure* (Overview of the menu structure)*Rear view**Roof* (Symbols in the roof)*Side view*

## Turn signal and main beam lever

*and functions (orientation lighting)**Indicator lamps**Main beam control**Switching lights on and off**Turn signal and main beam lever* (Indicator lamps)*Upper section of the centre console*

## Warning lamp

*Displays**Instruments**Overview of the driver side**Warning lamps and indicator lamps* (Overview of the driver side)**P***Paddles* (Changing gear using Tiptronic)*Panic button* (Vehicle key)*Park Assist system* (Side view)*Automatic cancel* (Driving out of a parking space with the Park Assist system (only parking spaces parallel to side of road))*Braking intervention* (Brake assistance)*Cancel* (Parking using the Park Assist system)*Fault* (Park Assist system)*Getting out* (Driving out of a parking space with the Park Assist system (only parking spaces parallel to side of road))*Parking* (Parking using the Park Assist system)*Preparations for parking* (Parking using the Park Assist system)*Switching on or off (getting out)* (Driving out of a parking space with the Park Assist system (only parking spaces parallel to side of road))*Switching on or off (parking)* (Parking using the Park Assist system)*Using a high-pressure cleaner* (Washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner)*Parking* (Lower section of the centre console)*Parking aid* (Side view)*Parking brake* (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)*Automatic release* (Electronic parking brake)*Emergency braking function* (Electronic parking brake)*Switching off* (Electronic parking brake)*Switching on* (Electronic parking brake)*Parking distance warning system* (Side view)

## Fault

*Parking distance warning system**Optical parking system* (Optical parking system (OPS) with all-round display)*Optical parking system* (Optical parking system (OPS))*Using a high-pressure cleaner* (Washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner)*With trailer* (Parking distance warning system)*Parking light* (Lights and vision – functions)*ParkPilot* (Parking distance warning system)*Particulate filter* (Diesel particulate filter)*Parts* (Accessories and parts)*Pedals* (Correct sitting position)*Performance figures**Permanent parking light* (Lights and vision – functions)*Petrol* (Filling the tank)

## Additives

*Fuel types*



[Petrol](#) (Fuel types)

Filling the tank

[Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85](#)

Fuel

[Fuel types](#)

[Petrol](#) (Fuel types)

Fuel gauge

[Filling the tank](#)

[Indicator lamps and fuel gauge](#) (Filling the tank)

Types

[Fuel types](#)

[Petrol](#) (Fuel types)

[Plates](#) (Information stickers and plates)

[Plenum chamber](#) (Cleaning the engine compartment)

[Polishing](#) (Waxing and polishing the vehicle)

[Pollen filter](#) (Heating, ventilating, cooling)

[Pollution filter](#) (Heating, ventilating, cooling)

[Preparations](#) (Preparing for a journey and driving safely)

[Before every trip](#) (Preparing for a journey and driving safely)

[Breakdown set](#) (Preparations)

Changing a wheel

[Changing the wheel](#)

[Preparations for changing a wheel](#)

Changing bulbs

[Changing bulbs in the front bumper](#)

[Changing bulbs in the front headlights \(Halogen\)](#)

[Changing bulbs in the front headlights \(Xenon\)](#)

[Changing bulbs in the tail light cluster in the body](#)

[Changing bulbs in the tail light cluster in the boot lid](#)

[Changing the bulb in the number plate light](#)

[Information on changing bulbs](#)

Checking coolant level

[Checking coolant level and refilling coolant](#)

[Warning lamp and coolant temperature display](#)

Checking the engine oil level

[Checking the engine oil level and refilling engine oil](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)

Refilling coolant

[Checking coolant level and refilling coolant](#)

[Warning lamp and coolant temperature display](#)

Refilling engine oil

[Checking the engine oil level and refilling engine oil](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)

[Vehicle battery](#) (Checking the electrolyte level of the vehicle battery)

[Working in the engine compartment](#) (Preparing the vehicle for working in the engine compartment)

[Preparing for a journey](#) (Preparing for a journey and driving safely)

[Problem solving](#) (Frequently asked questions)

[Protection from the sun](#) (Lower section of the centre console)

[Protective covering for the loading edge](#) (Protective covering for the rear bumper)

[Protective covering for the rear bumper](#)

[Push starting](#) (Starting and stopping the engine)

## R

[R-Line](#) (Electrically folding ball coupling)

Things to note

[Electrically folding ball coupling](#)

[Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack \(R-Line models\)](#)

[Swivelling out the ball coupling \(R-Line\)](#) (Electrically folding ball coupling)

Towing a trailer

[Electrically folding ball coupling](#)

*Swivelling out the ball coupling (R-Line)* (Electrically folding ball coupling)

*Radar sensor*

*Radio reception* (Electrical sockets)

*Aerial* (Radio reception and aerials)

Fault

*Electrical sockets*

*Radio reception and aerials* (Electrical sockets)

*Rain sensor*

*Reading lights* (Interior and reading lights)

*Rear Assist rear-view camera* (Rear view)

*Rear Assist system* (Rear view)

*Display* (General information)

*General information*

*Mode 1* (Parking at a right angle to the road (mode 1))

*Mode 2* (Parking parallel to the road (mode 2))

*Things to note* (General information)

*Rear backrests* (Folding the backrests on the rear bench seat forwards and backwards)

*Folding backwards* (Folding the backrests on the rear bench seat forwards and backwards)

*Folding forwards* (Folding the backrests on the rear bench seat forwards and backwards)

*Rear bench seat* (Folding the backrests on the rear bench seat forwards and backwards)

*Rear window heating* (Controls)

*Rear-view mirror* (Interior mirror)

*Recommendation of rest breaks* (Assistants submenu)

*Function* (Function and operation by the user)

*Operation by the user* (Function and operation by the user)

*Switching off* (Function and operation by the user)

*Switching on* (Function and operation by the user)

*Recycling end-of-life vehicles* (Recycling and scrapping end-of-life vehicles)

*Refitting* (Repairs and technical modifications)

*Remote control key* (Vehicle key)

*Remote control key (auxiliary heater)* (Remote control)

*Removable ashtray* (Ashtray and cigarette lighter)

*Removing ice* (Cleaning windows and exterior mirrors)

*Removing snow* (Cleaning windows and exterior mirrors)

*Removing wax* (Cleaning windows and exterior mirrors)

*Renewal of parts* (Seat belts)

*Repairing cracks (note)* (Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts)

*Repairs* (Seat belts)

*Airbag system* (Repairs and faults in the airbag system)

*Lifting platform* (Lift points for the vehicle)

*Plates* (Information stickers and plates)

*Stickers* (Information stickers and plates)

*Windscreen* (Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts)

*Replacement key* (Vehicle key)

*Reprogramming control units* (Information stored in the control units)

*Retrofit* (Retrofitting two-way radios)

*Car telephone* (Retrofitting two-way radios)

*Two-way radio* (Retrofitting two-way radios)

*Rev counter* (Instrument overview)

*Reversing assistant* (General information)

*Rims*

*Bolted on rings* (Rims)

*Bolted on trims* (Rims)

*Road sign recognition system* (Displays)

*Display*

*Function*

*Switching off* (Function)

*Switching on* (Function)

*Trailers* (Function)

*Roll-back function* (Roll-back function for the electric windows)

*Electric windows* (Roll-back function for the electric windows)

*Sliding/tilting roof* (Roll-back function for the sliding/tilting roof)

*Roof carrier* (Driving notes)

*Rubber seals* (Care of rubber seals)

*Running in* (Information on the brakes)

Brake pads

*Information on the brakes*

*Running-in* (Information on the brakes)

*Engine* (Running-in)

*The first kilometres* (Running-in)

*Tyres* (New wheels and tyres)

*Running in brake pads* (Information on the brakes)

## S

*SAFE* (Electronic immobilizer)

*SAFELOCK mechanism* (Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside)

*Safety equipment* (Automatic belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter)

*Scrapping* (Recycling and scrapping end-of-life vehicles)

*Seat belt routing*

*Seat belt warning lamps* (Warning lamp)

*Seat belts* (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

*Automatic belt retractor* (Automatic belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter)

*Belt height adjuster*

*Belt status display* (Warning lamp)

*Belt tension limiter* (Automatic belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter)

*Belt tensioner* (Automatic belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter)

*Checklist* (Using seat belts)

*Cleaning* (Cleaning seat belts)

*Fastening* (Fastening and unfastening seat belts)

*Not fastened* (What happens to passengers who have not fastened their seat belts)

Seat belt routing

*Belt height adjuster*

*Seat belt routing*

*Twisted seat belt* (Using seat belts)

*Unfastening* (Fastening and unfastening seat belts)

*Using* (Using seat belts)

*Warning lamp*

*Seat belts protect*

*Seat covers* (Airbag system)

*Checklist* (Handling of seat covers)

*Cleaning Alcantara* (Cleaning cloth seat covers, fabric trim and Alcantara upholstery)

*Cleaning and caring for natural leather* (Cleaning and caring for natural leather covers)

*Cleaning cloth seat covers* (Cleaning cloth seat covers, fabric trim and Alcantara upholstery)

*Cleaning fabric trim* (Cleaning cloth seat covers, fabric trim and Alcantara upholstery)

Handling of seat covers

*Handling of seat covers*

*Leatherette* (Cleaning leatherette upholstery)

*Seat functions* (Upper section of the centre console)

*Seat heating*

*Seat ventilation* (Ventilated seats)

*Seats* (Adjusting the seat position)

Adjusting the head restraints

*Adjusting the head restraints*

*Removing and fitting the head restraints* (Adjusting the head restraints)

*Adjusting the steering wheel position*

*Back massage function*

*Electrical front seats* (Electrical controls on the front seats)

*Fitting head restraint* (Removing and fitting the head restraints)

*Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards*

*Mechanical front seats* (Mechanical controls on the front seats)

*Memory seats*

*Number of seats* (Adjusting the seat position)  
*Rear backrests* (Folding the backrests on the rear bench seat forwards and backwards)  
*Removing head restraint* (Removing and fitting the head restraints)  
*Seat heating*  
*Seat ventilation* (Ventilated seats)  
*Sport seats* (Sports seats with pneumatic lumbar support and side supports)  
*Selecting a gear* (Automatic gearbox: selecting a gear)  
*Selecting a gear* (Manual gearbox: selecting a gear)  
*Selective catalytic reduction* (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)  
*Selector lever lock* (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)  
*Selling the vehicle* (Using the vehicle in other countries and continents)  
*Service fluids* (Service fluids and consumables)  
*Service interval display* (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)  
*Service position for the front windscreen wipers* (Windscreen wiper and washer)  
*Setting the time* (Instrument overview)  
     *Analogue clock* (Instrument overview)  
     *Digital clock* (Instrument overview)  
*Settings* (Information on the air conditioning system)  
*Side airbags*  
*Side Assist* (Side view)  
*Side Assist PLUS* (Information level and warning levels)  
*Side lights* (Switching lights on and off)  
*Sign Assist* (Displays)  
*Single door opening* (Description of the central locking system)  
*Sitting* (Overview of the driver side)  
*Sitting position* (The dangers of assuming an incorrect sitting position)  
     *Correct sitting position*  
     *Incorrect sitting position* (The dangers of assuming an incorrect sitting position)  
*Ski and snowboard bag*  
*Sliding/tilting roof* (Symbols in the roof)  
     *Closing* (Opening or closing the sliding/tilting roof)  
     *Convenience closing* (Sliding/tilting roof – functions)  
     *Fault* (Sliding/tilting roof)  
     *Manual closing* (Closing the sliding/tilting roof manually)  
     *Opening* (Opening or closing the sliding/tilting roof)  
     *Roll-back function* (Roll-back function for the sliding/tilting roof)  
     *Solar fan* (Solar fan and solar roof)  
     *Solar roof* (Solar fan and solar roof)  
*Smell* (Natural gas)  
*Snow chains* (Winter tyres)  
*Sockets* (Hitching and connecting the trailer)  
     115-volt  
         *Socket in the rear centre console*  
         *Sockets in the vehicle*  
     12-volt  
         *Socket in the rear centre console*  
         *Sockets in the vehicle*  
     230-volt  
         *Socket in the rear centre console*  
         *Sockets in the vehicle*  
     *Fault* (Sockets in the vehicle)  
     *Trailer* (Hitching and connecting the trailer)  
*Solar fan* (Solar fan and solar roof)  
*Solar roof* (Solar fan and solar roof)  
*Spanner symbol* (Service interval display)  
*Spare fuel canister* (Filling the tank)  
*Spare key*  
*Spare wheel*  
     *Driving notes* (Spare wheel)  
     *Removing* (Spare wheel)  
*Spares* (Accessories and parts)

[Speed index](#) (Tyre lettering)  
[Start/stop system](#) (Indicator lamps)  
[Starter button](#) (Lower section of the centre console)  
[Starting the engine with jump leads](#) (Starting and stopping the engine)  
     [How to](#) (How to start the engine using jump leads)  
     [Jump leads](#) (How to start the engine using jump leads)  
[Steering](#) (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)  
     [Adjusting](#) (Adjusting the steering wheel position)  
     [Counter power steering](#) (Information on steering)  
     [Electromechanical](#) (Information on steering)  
     [Indicator lamp](#) (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)  
     [Power steering](#) (Information on steering)  
     [Pulling to one side](#) (Tyre damage)  
     Steering column lock  
         [Information on steering](#)  
     [Vibration](#) (Tyre damage)  
     [Warning lamp](#) (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)  
[Steering wheel](#) (Adjusting the steering wheel position)  
     Paddles (Tiptronic)  
         [Changing gear using Tiptronic](#)  
         [Driving with an automatic gearbox](#) (Changing gear using Tiptronic)  
         see [Steering](#) (Adjusting the steering wheel position)  
[Stickers](#) (Information stickers and plates)  
[Stowage compartment lights on the front passenger side](#) (Interior and reading lights)  
[Stowing](#) (Overview of the driver door)  
     [Coin holder](#) (Stowage compartment on the driver side)  
     [Driver side](#) (Stowage compartment on the driver side)  
     [Front](#) (Front stowage compartment)  
     [Front centre armrest](#) (Stowage compartment in the front centre armrest)  
     [Front centre console](#) (Stowage compartment in the front centre console)  
     Front passenger side  
         [Overview of the front passenger side](#)  
         [Stowage compartment on the front passenger side](#) (Overview of the front passenger side)  
     [Glasses compartment](#) (Stowage area in the roof console (glasses compartment))  
     Glove compartment  
         [Overview of the front passenger side](#)  
         [Stowage compartment on the front passenger side](#) (Overview of the front passenger side)  
     [In roof console](#) (Stowage area in the roof console (glasses compartment))  
     [Other stowage compartments](#)  
     [Rear centre armrest](#) (Stowage compartment in the rear centre armrests)  
     [Stowage compartment lights](#) (Interior and reading lights)  
     Vehicle wallet  
         [Overview of the front passenger side](#)  
         [Stowage compartment on the front passenger side](#) (Overview of the front passenger side)  
[Stowing items of luggage](#)  
[Sun blind](#) (Sun blind for the rear window)  
     [Rear window](#) (Sun blind for the rear window)  
     [Side windows](#) (Sun blind for the rear side windows)  
[Sun visors](#)  
[Supplementary heater](#) (Displays)  
     [Automatic switch-off](#) (Indicator lamps and fuel gauge)  
     see [Auxiliary heater](#)  
         [An economic driving style](#)  
         [Auxiliary heater \(supplementary heating system\)](#)  
         [Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery](#)  
         [Controls](#)  
         [Displays](#)  
         [Filling the tank](#)  
         [Frequently asked questions](#)  
         [Heating, ventilating, cooling](#)  
         [Main menu](#)

[Overview of the menu structure](#)

[Volkswagen information system](#) (Displays)

[Supposed faults](#) (Frequently asked questions)

[Switch-off of electrical consumers](#) (Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery)

[Swivelling out the ball coupling](#) (Electrically folding ball coupling)

[Symbols](#) (Overview of the driver side)

see Indicator lamp

[Displays](#)

[Instruments](#)

[Overview of the driver side](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#) (Overview of the driver side)

see Warning lamp

[Displays](#)

[Instruments](#)

[Overview of the driver side](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#) (Overview of the driver side)

[Systems](#) (Side view)

[ABS](#) (Brake assist systems)

Adaptive chassis control

[Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)

[Adaptive chassis control \(DCC\)](#)

[Lower section of the centre console](#)

Adaptive cruise control

[ACC \(adaptive cruise control\)](#)

[Assistants submenu](#)

[Changing gear](#)

[Cruise control system \(CCS\)](#)

[Display and indicator lamps](#)

[Front view](#)

[Lane departure warning system \(Lane Assist\)](#)

[Main menu](#)

[Overview of the driver side](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#) (Front view)

[Anti-lock brake system \(ABS\)](#) (Brake assist systems)

Area monitoring system

[ACC \(adaptive cruise control\)](#)

[Assistants submenu](#)

[Changing gear](#)

[Cruise control system \(CCS\)](#)

[Display and indicator lamps](#)

[Front view](#)

[Lane departure warning system \(Lane Assist\)](#)

[Main menu](#)

[Overview of the driver side](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#) (Front view)

[Auto Hold](#) (Auto Hold function)

[Automatic headlight control](#) (Lights and vision – functions)

Automatic main beam control

[Indicator lamps](#)

[Main beam control](#) (Indicator lamps)

[BAS](#) (Brake assist systems)

[Brake assist system \(BAS\)](#) (Brake assist systems)

CCS

[ACC \(adaptive cruise control\)](#)

[Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)

[Cruise control system \(CCS\)](#)

[Driving situations](#)

[Overview of the driver side](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#) (Overview of the driver side)

## DCC

*Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

*Adaptive chassis control (DCC)*

*Lower section of the centre console*

*Downhill driving assistant*

## Driver Alert system

*Assistants submenu*

*Driver Alert system (recommendation of rest breaks)* (Assistants submenu)

## Dynamic bend lighting

*Indicator lamps*

*Lights and vision – functions*

*Main beam control* (Indicator lamps)

*EDL* (Brake assist systems)

*Electronic differential lock (EDL)* (Brake assist systems)

*Electronic stabilisation programme (ESP)* (Brake assist systems)

*ESP* (Brake assist systems)

*Hill Hold assist* (Auto Hold function)

## Lane change assist system

*Assistants submenu*

*Function*

*Lane change assist system (Side Assist)*

*Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist)*

*Rear view*

*Side view*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps* (Side view)

## Lane departure warning system

*ACC (adaptive cruise control)*

*Assistants submenu*

*Front view*

*Information level and warning levels*

*Lane change assist system (Side Assist)*

*Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist)*

*Main menu*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps* (Front view)

*Launch Control Programme* (Driving with an automatic gearbox)

## Main beam control

*Indicator lamps*

*Main beam control* (Indicator lamps)

*Optical parking system* (Optical parking system (OPS) with all-round display)

*Optical parking system* (Optical parking system (OPS))

## Park Assist system

*Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

*Changing gear*

*Front view*

*Lower section of the centre console*

*Optical parking system (OPS)*

*Optical parking system (OPS) with all-round display*

*Park Assist system*

*Parking distance warning system*

*Rear view*

*Side view*

*Wheels and tyres* (Side view)

## Parking aid

*Optical parking system (OPS)*

*Optical parking system (OPS) with all-round display*

*Parking distance warning system*

## Parking distance warning system

*Optical parking system (OPS)*

*Optical parking system (OPS) with all-round display*

*Parking distance warning system*

## Rear Assist system

*Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

*Changing gear*

*Optical parking system (OPS)*

*Optical parking system (OPS) with all-round display*

*Rear Assist system*

*Rear view*

Recommendation of rest breaks

*Assistants submenu*

*Driver Alert system (recommendation of rest breaks)* (Assistants submenu)

Road sign recognition system

*Assistants submenu*

*Displays*

*Road sign recognition (Sign Assist)* (Displays)

Side Assist

*Assistants submenu*

*Function*

*Lane change assist system (Side Assist)*

*Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist)*

*Rear view*

*Side view*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps* (Side view)

Sign Assist

*Assistants submenu*

*Displays*

*Road sign recognition (Sign Assist)* (Displays)

Start/stop

*Indicator lamps*

*Start/stop system* (Indicator lamps)

*Static bend lighting* (Lights and vision – functions)

Switching off

*Button for the driver assist systems*

*Main menu* (Button for the driver assist systems)

Switching on

*Button for the driver assist systems*

*Main menu* (Button for the driver assist systems)

TCS

*Brake assist systems*

*Switching the TCS on and off*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps*

Traction control system (TCS)

*Brake assist systems*

*Switching the TCS on and off*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps*

*Types of tyre monitoring systems*

*Tyre monitor display*

Tyre monitoring systems

*Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

*After changing a wheel*

*Handling of wheels and tyres*

*New wheels and tyres*

*Spare wheel*

*Stowing items of luggage*

*Tyre monitoring systems*

*Tyre pressure*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps*

*Wheels and tyres*

*Winter tyres* (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

*Tyre pressure monitoring system*

*XDL* (Brake assist systems)



[Tail light cluster](#) (Changing bulbs in the tail light cluster in the boot lid)

[Tailgate](#) (Rear view)

[Tank cap](#) (Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85)

Bioethanol

[Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85](#)

Closing

[Filling the tank with natural gas](#)

[Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85](#)

Diesel

[Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85](#)

[Natural gas](#) (Filling the tank with natural gas)

Opening

[Filling the tank with natural gas](#)

[Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85](#)

Petrol

[Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85](#)

see [Tank cap](#)

[Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85](#)

[TCS](#) (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

see [Brake assist system \(BAS\)](#)

[Brake assist systems](#)

[Switching the TCS on and off](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)

Switching on and off

[Brake assist systems](#)

[Switching the TCS on and off](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)

[Technical data](#)

[Axle weight rating](#) (Vehicle-specific weight ratings)

Capacities

[Capacities](#)

[Checking and refilling the windscreen washer fluid level](#)

[Indicator lamps and fuel gauge](#) (Checking and refilling the windscreen washer fluid level)

[Capacity](#) (Engine data)

[CO2 emissions](#) (CO emissions)

[Dimensions](#)

[Drawbar load](#) (Towing a trailer)

[Engine data](#)

[Engine oil specification](#)

[Factory plate](#) (Vehicle identification data)

[Fuel consumption](#)

[Fuel type](#) (Fuel types)

[Gross combination weight rating](#) (Maximum permitted gross combination weight)

[Kerb weight](#) (Vehicle-specific weight ratings)

[Maximum speed](#) (Performance figures)

[Output](#) (Engine data)

[Performance figures](#)

[Roof load](#) (Loading the load carrier system)

Trailer weight

[Loading the trailer](#)

[Maximum permitted trailer weights](#) (Loading the trailer)

[Type plate](#) (Vehicle identification data)

Tyre pressure

[Spare wheel](#)

[Tyre pressure](#)

[Vehicle data sticker](#) (Vehicle identification data)

[Vehicle weight rating](#) (Vehicle-specific weight ratings)

[Weights](#) (Vehicle-specific weight ratings)

[Technical modifications](#) (Repairs and technical modifications)

[Lifting platform](#) (Lift points for the vehicle)

[Plates](#) (Information stickers and plates)

*Stickers* (Information stickers and plates)

*Temperature display* (Displays)

*Coolant* (Warning lamp and coolant temperature display)

*Outside temperature* (Displays)

*Things to note* (Front view)

*Automatic car wash* (Washing the vehicle)

Auxiliary heater

*Operation*

*Switching the auxiliary heater on or off*

*Bioethanol* (Filling the tank with petrol, diesel or E85)

*Diesel particulate filter* (Diesel fuel)

*Disconnecting the vehicle battery* (Service interval display)

*Easy open* (Locking and unlocking a vehicle with)

*Folding in mirrors* (Exterior mirrors)

*Gas smell* (Natural gas)

High-pressure cleaner

*Electrically folding ball coupling*

*Washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner* (Electrically folding ball coupling)

Keyless Access

*Bioethanol (Ethylalcohol)*

*Locking and unlocking a vehicle with*

*Long periods without use* (Central locking system)

*Natural gas* (Filling the tank with natural gas)

*Natural gas fuel gauge* (Indicator lamps and fuel gauge)

Parking

*Braking, stopping and parking*

*Dimensions*

*Parking* (Dimensions)

*Parking distance warning system*

*Push starting* (Starting and stopping the engine)

R-Line

*Electrically folding ball coupling*

*Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (R-Line models)*

*Swivelling out the ball coupling (R-Line)* (Electrically folding ball coupling)

*Radio reception* (Radio reception and aerials)

*Rear Assist system* (General information)

*Removing the vehicle key* (Ignition lock)

Smoke

*Diesel fuel*

*Frequently asked questions*

*Operation*

*Switching off Auto Hold* (Auto Hold function)

Tow starting

*Engine management system and exhaust purification system*

*Front view*

*Rear view*

*Starting and stopping the engine*

*Steering*

*Tow starting and towing* (Front view)

Towing

*Engine management system and exhaust purification system*

*Front view*

*Notes on tow starting*

*Rear view*

*Starting and stopping the engine*

*Steering*

*Tow starting and towing* (Front view)

*Towing a trailer*

Washing the vehicle

*Locking and unlocking a vehicle with*

*Washing the vehicle* (Locking and unlocking a vehicle with)

[Water underneath the vehicle](#) (Information on the air conditioning system)

[Workshop](#) (Locking and unlocking a vehicle with)

[Through-loading aperture](#)

[Tightening torque](#) (Wheel bolts)

[Time setting](#) (Settings menu)

[Analogue clock](#) (Settings menu)

[Digital clock](#) (Settings menu)

[Timer](#) (Instrument overview)

[TIN](#) (Tyre lettering)

[Tiptronic](#) (Changing gear using Tiptronic)

[Toll card reader](#) (Toll card reader (ETC))

[ETC card](#) (Function)

[Switching on](#) (Function)

[Tools](#) (Wheels and tyres)

[Tow starting](#) (Front view)

Automatic gearbox

[Fitting the front towing eye](#)

[Fitting the rear towing eye](#)

[Notes on tow starting](#)

Four-wheel drive

[Fitting the front towing eye](#)

[Fitting the rear towing eye](#)

[Notes on tow starting](#)

[Rear towing eye](#) (Fitting the rear towing eye)

Things to note

[Engine management system and exhaust purification system](#)

[Front view](#)

[Rear view](#)

[Starting and stopping the engine](#)

[Steering](#)

[Tow starting and towing](#) (Front view)

Tow bar

[Fitting the front towing eye](#)

[Fitting the rear towing eye](#)

[Notes on tow starting](#)

Tow rope

[Fitting the front towing eye](#)

[Fitting the rear towing eye](#)

[Notes on tow starting](#)

Towing bracket

[Fitting the front towing eye](#)

[Fitting the rear towing eye](#)

[Notes on tow starting](#)

When not to tow start

[Fitting the front towing eye](#)

[Fitting the rear towing eye](#)

[Notes on tow starting](#)

[Towing](#) (Front view)

[Driving notes](#) (Driving notes on towing)

[Front towing eye](#) (Fitting the front towing eye)

[Technical requirements](#)

Things to note

[Engine management system and exhaust purification system](#)

[Front view](#)

[Notes on tow starting](#)

[Rear view](#)

[Starting and stopping the engine](#)

[Steering](#)

[Tow starting and towing](#) (Front view)

[Towing a trailer](#) (Rear view)

R-Line

[Electrically folding ball coupling](#)

[Swivelling out the ball coupling \(R-Line\)](#) (Electrically folding ball coupling)

see Trailer

[Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)

[Anti-theft alarm](#)

[Braking, stopping and parking](#)

[Central locking system](#)

[Coolant](#)

[Driving a loaded vehicle](#)

[Driving notes](#)

[Fitting the rear towing eye](#)

[Luggage compartment](#)

[Rear view](#)

[Stowing items of luggage](#)

[Towing a trailer](#)

[Wheels and tyres](#) (Rear view)

[Towing bracket](#) (Electrically folding ball coupling)

[Fault](#) (Hitching and connecting the trailer)

[Fitting a bicycle carrier](#) (Fitting a bicycle carrier on the mechanically positioned ball coupling)

[Retrofitting](#) (Retrofitting a towing bracket)

see Towing bracket

[Electrically folding ball coupling](#)

[Notes on tow starting](#)

[Swivelling out the ball coupling \(R-Line\)](#) (Electrically folding ball coupling)

see Trailer

[Electrically folding ball coupling](#)

[Notes on tow starting](#)

[Swivelling out the ball coupling \(R-Line\)](#) (Electrically folding ball coupling)

[Towing bracket cover](#) (Electrically folding ball coupling)

[Traction](#) (Tyre lettering)

[Traction control system \(TCS\)](#) (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

[Trailer](#) (Rear view)

[Anti-theft alarm](#) (Hitching and connecting the trailer)

Connecting

[Hitching and connecting the trailer](#)

[Technical requirements](#)

Drawbar load

[Loading the trailer](#)

[Towing a trailer](#)

[Driving](#) (Towing a trailer)

Electrically folding ball coupling

[Electrically folding ball coupling](#)

[Notes on tow starting](#)

[Swivelling out the ball coupling \(R-Line\)](#) (Electrically folding ball coupling)

Emergency breakaway cable

[Hitching and connecting the trailer](#)

[Technical requirements](#)

[Exterior mirrors](#) (Technical requirements)

[Fault](#) (Hitching and connecting the trailer)

[Fire extinguisher](#) (Technical requirements)

[Headlight adjustment](#) (Towing a trailer)

Hitching

[Hitching and connecting the trailer](#)

[Technical requirements](#)

[Lane change assist system](#) (Lane change assist system (Side Assist))

LED rear lights

[Hitching and connecting the trailer](#)

[Technical requirements](#)

[Loading](#) (Loading the trailer)

Optical parking system

[Optical parking system \(OPS\)](#)

*Optical parking system (OPS) with all-round display* (Optical parking system (OPS))

*Parking distance warning system*

Rear lights

*Hitching and connecting the trailer*

*Technical requirements*

Releasing ball coupling

*Electrically folding ball coupling*

*Notes on tow starting*

*Swivelling out the ball coupling (R-Line)* (Electrically folding ball coupling)

*Retrofitting a towing bracket*

*Socket* (Hitching and connecting the trailer)

*Things to note* (Lane change assist system (Side Assist))

*Towing* (Towing a trailer)

*Trailer stabilisation*

Trailer weight

*Loading the trailer*

*Maximum permitted trailer weights* (Loading the trailer)

*Trailer socket* (Swivelling out the ball coupling (R-Line))

*Trailer stabilisation*

*Trailer weight* (Loading the trailer)

*Loading the trailer*

Maximum permitted

*Loading the trailer*

*Maximum permitted trailer weights* (Loading the trailer)

*Transporting* (Rear view)

*Bag hook*

*Driving tips* (Driving a loaded vehicle)

*Driving with an open boot lid*

*Fastening rings*

*Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards*

Load carrier system

*Driving a loaded vehicle*

*Driving notes*

*Loading the load carrier system*

*Roof carrier*

*Stowing items of luggage* (Driving notes)

*Loading the trailer*

*Luggage net*

*Protective covering for the rear bumper*

Roof carrier

*Driving a loaded vehicle*

*Driving notes*

*Roof carrier*

*Stowing items of luggage* (Driving notes)

*Ski and snowboard bag*

Stowing items of luggage

*Driving a loaded vehicle*

*Stowing items of luggage*

Through-loading aperture

*Ski and snowboard bag*

*Through-loading aperture*

*Towing* (Towing a trailer)

Trailer

*Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

*Anti-theft alarm*

*Braking, stopping and parking*

*Central locking system*

*Coolant*

*Driving a loaded vehicle*

*Driving notes*

*Fitting the rear towing eye*

[Luggage compartment](#)

[Rear view](#)

[Stowing items of luggage](#)

[Towing a trailer](#)

[Wheels and tyres \(Rear view\)](#)

Trailer weight

[Loading the trailer](#)

[Maximum permitted trailer weights](#) (Loading the trailer)

[Transporting children in the vehicle](#) (General information on transporting children in the vehicle)

[Tread depth](#) (Tread depth and wear indicators)

[Tread wear](#) (Tyre lettering)

[Trip recorder](#) (Instrument overview)

[Troubleshooting](#) (Frequently asked questions)

[Turn signal lever](#) (Indicator lamps)

[Two-way radio](#) (Retrofitting two-way radios)

[Type plate](#) (Vehicle identification data)

[Types of tyre monitoring systems](#)

[Tyre damage](#) (Handling of wheels and tyres)

[Tyre load](#) (Tyre lettering)

[Tyre mobility set](#) (Wheels and tyres)

[Tyre monitor display](#)

[Tyre monitoring systems](#) (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

Fault

[Tyre monitor indicator lamp](#)

[Tyre pressure monitoring system](#) (Tyre monitor indicator lamp)

Indicator lamp

[Tyre monitor indicator lamp](#)

[Tyre pressure monitoring system](#) (Tyre monitor indicator lamp)

[Types of tyre monitoring systems](#)

[Tyre monitor display](#)

[Tyre pressure](#)

[Tyre pressure monitoring system](#)

[Tyre pressure](#)

[Checking](#) (Tyre pressure)

[Spare wheel](#) (Tyre pressure)

[Tyre pressure monitoring system](#)

[Adjusting the tyre pressure](#) (Tyre pressure monitoring system)

[Display of tyre pressures](#) (Tyre pressure monitoring system)

[Replacing tyres](#) (New wheels and tyres)

[Selecting target pressures for partial or full vehicle loading](#) (Tyre pressure monitoring system)

[Selecting type of tyre](#) (Tyre pressure monitoring system)

[Spare wheel](#) (Tyre pressure monitoring system)

[Switching on or off](#) (Tyre pressure monitoring system)

[Tyre repair kit](#) (Wheels and tyres)

[Tyre wear](#) (Tyre damage)

[Tyres](#) (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

[Tyres with directional tread pattern](#) (Tyre lettering)

## U

[Underseal](#)

[Unlocking](#) (Description of the central locking system)

From the inside

[Description of the central locking system](#)

[Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside](#) (Description of the central locking system)

[From the outside](#) (Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the outside)

With Keyless Access

[Anti-theft alarm](#)

[Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery](#)

[Description of the central locking system](#)

[Electronic immobilizer](#)

[Locking and unlocking a vehicle with](#) (Description of the central locking system)

## V

[Valve caps](#) (Tyre pressure)

[Vehicle](#) (Description of the central locking system)

Loaded

[Boot lid](#)

[Driving notes](#)

[Luggage compartment](#)

[Roof carrier](#)

[Wheels and tyres](#) (Boot lid)

Locking and unlocking from the inside

[Description of the central locking system](#)

[Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside](#) (Description of the central locking system)

[Locking and unlocking from the outside](#) (Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the outside)

Locking and unlocking with Keyless Access

[Anti-theft alarm](#)

[Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery](#)

[Description of the central locking system](#)

[Electronic immobilizer](#)

[Locking and unlocking a vehicle with](#) (Description of the central locking system)

[Parking on an incline](#) (Parking)

[Recycling](#) (Recycling and scrapping end-of-life vehicles)

[Safety in the event of a breakdown](#) (Making you and your vehicle safe)

[Stopping on an incline](#) (Parking)

[Tracking system](#) (Vehicle tracking system)

[Vehicle battery](#) (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

[Automatic switch-off for electrical consumers](#) (Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery)

[Charging](#) (Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery)

[Checking the electrolyte level](#) (Checking the electrolyte level of the vehicle battery)

[Connecting](#) (Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery)

Discharged

[Central locking system](#)

[Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery](#)

[Ignition lock](#)

[Making you and your vehicle safe](#) (Central locking system)

[Disconnecting](#) (Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery)

[Disconnecting from vehicle network](#) (Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery)

[Electrolyte](#) (Checking the electrolyte level of the vehicle battery)

Location

[Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)

[Engine management system and exhaust purification system](#)

[Frequently asked questions](#)

[How to start the engine using jump leads](#)

[Preparation for working in the engine compartment](#)

[Pull-away assist systems](#)

[Starting the engine with jump leads](#)

[Steering](#)

[Switching the auxiliary heater on or off](#)

[Vehicle battery](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)

[Preparations](#) (Checking the electrolyte level of the vehicle battery)

[Replacing](#) (Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery)

[Switch off when airbag triggered](#) (Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery)

Symbol explanation

[Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#)

[Engine management system and exhaust purification system](#)

[Frequently asked questions](#)

[How to start the engine using jump leads](#)

[Preparation for working in the engine compartment](#)

*Pull-away assist systems*

*Starting the engine with jump leads*

*Steering*

*Switching the auxiliary heater on or off*

*Vehicle battery*

*Warning lamps and indicator lamps*

*Warning lamp*

*Vehicle care* (Locking and unlocking a vehicle with)

*Airbag (dash panel)* (Cleaning and caring for the dash panel, wooden trims and plastic parts)

*Alcantara* (Cleaning cloth seat covers, fabric trim and Alcantara upholstery)

*Aluminium trim parts* (Cleaning and caring for chrome and aluminium trim parts)

*Anodised surfaces* (Cleaning and caring for chrome and aluminium trim parts)

*Automatic car wash* (Washing the vehicle)

Camera's field of view

*Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist)*

*Main beam control*

*Road sign recognition (Sign Assist)* (Main beam control)

*Changing windscreen wiper blades* (Cleaning and changing windscreen wiper blades)

*Chrome trim parts* (Cleaning and caring for chrome and aluminium trim parts)

*Cleaning seat belts*

*Cleaning stowage compartments* (Cleaning stowage compartments, drink holders and ash trays)

*Cleaning wheels*

*Cleaning windscreen wiper blades* (Cleaning and changing windscreen wiper blades)

*Cloth seat covers* (Cleaning cloth seat covers, fabric trim and Alcantara upholstery)

*Dash panel* (Cleaning and caring for the dash panel, wooden trims and plastic parts)

*De-icing door lock cylinders*

Electrically adjustable seats

*Cleaning and caring for natural leather covers*

*Cleaning cloth seat covers, fabric trim and Alcantara upholstery*

*Cleaning leatherette upholstery* (Cleaning cloth seat covers, fabric trim and Alcantara upholstery)

*Engine compartment* (Cleaning the engine compartment)

Exterior

*Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

*Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior*

*Cleaning and caring for the interior*

*Heating, ventilating, cooling*

*Hub caps*

*Locking and unlocking a vehicle with*

*Park Assist system*

*Parking distance warning system*

*Tyre monitoring systems*

*Wheels and tyres*

*Windscreen wiper and washer* (Locking and unlocking a vehicle with)

Exterior mirrors

*Cleaning windows and exterior mirrors*

*Washing the vehicle*

*Fabric trim* (Cleaning cloth seat covers, fabric trim and Alcantara upholstery)

*Handling of seat covers*

*High-pressure cleaner* (Washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner)

Interior

*Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

*Airbag system*

*Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior*

*Cleaning and caring for the interior*

*Drink holder*

*Stowing* (Airbag system)

*Leatherette* (Cleaning leatherette upholstery)

*Natural leather* (Cleaning and caring for natural leather covers)

*Paintwork* (Waxing and polishing the vehicle)

*Plastic parts* (Cleaning and caring for the dash panel, wooden trims and plastic parts)

*Rubber seals* (Care of rubber seals)



## Seat cushions with seat heating

[Cleaning and caring for natural leather covers](#)

[Cleaning cloth seat covers, fabric trim and Alcantara upholstery](#)

[Cleaning leatherette upholstery](#) (Cleaning cloth seat covers, fabric trim and Alcantara upholstery)

[Seat cushions without seat heating](#) (Cleaning cloth seat covers, fabric trim and Alcantara upholstery)

## Seat with airbag components

[Cleaning and caring for natural leather covers](#)

[Cleaning cloth seat covers, fabric trim and Alcantara upholstery](#)

[Cleaning leatherette upholstery](#) (Cleaning cloth seat covers, fabric trim and Alcantara upholstery)

[Seats that are not electrically adjustable](#) (Cleaning cloth seat covers, fabric trim and Alcantara upholstery)

[Seats with no airbag components](#) (Cleaning cloth seat covers, fabric trim and Alcantara upholstery)

## Service position

[Service position for the front windscreen wipers](#)

[Windscreen wiper and washer](#)

## Things to note

[Washing the vehicle](#)

[Washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner](#) (Washing the vehicle)

[Underseal](#)

[Washing by hand](#) (Washing the vehicle)

[Washing the vehicle](#)

[Window aerial](#) (Radio reception and aerials)

## Windows

[Cleaning windows and exterior mirrors](#)

[Washing the vehicle](#)

[Wooden trim](#) (Cleaning and caring for the dash panel, wooden trims and plastic parts)

[Vehicle data sticker](#) (Vehicle identification data)

[Vehicle identification data](#)

[Vehicle identification number](#) (Vehicle identification data)

[Vehicle jack](#) (Side view)

[Vehicle key](#)

[Alarm button](#) (Vehicle key)

[Assigning](#) (Vehicle key)

[Indicator lamp](#) (Indicator lamp in the vehicle key)

[Panic button](#) (Vehicle key)

[Replacement key](#) (Vehicle key)

## Replacing the battery

[Indicator lamp in the vehicle key](#)

[Replacing the battery](#)

[Vehicle key](#)

## Spare key

[Replacing the battery](#)

[Spare key](#)

[Synchronising the vehicle key](#) (Spare key)

## Synchronising

[Synchronising the vehicle key](#)

[Vehicle key](#)

[Vehicle key set](#)

[Vehicle overview](#) (Side view)

[Front view](#)

[Rear view](#)

[Side view](#)

[Vehicle tools](#) (Wheels and tyres)

[Contents](#)

[Storing](#)

[Vehicle Tracking System](#)

[Vehicle wallet stowage](#) (Overview of the front passenger side)

[Vehicle weight rating](#) (Vehicle-specific weight ratings)

[Ventilated seats](#)

[Vents](#) (Information on the air conditioning system)

[Volkswagen information system](#) (Overview of the driver side)

[Displays](#) (Overview of the menu structure)

[Menu structure](#) (Overview of the menu structure)

## W

[Warning lamp](#) (Overview of the driver side)

[ACC](#) (Display, warning lamps and indicator lamps)

AdBlue

[Information on AdBlue](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)

[Alternator](#) (Warning lamp)

Bonnet

[Opening and closing the bonnet](#)

[Warning lamp](#)

[Boot lid](#) (Warning lamp)

Brake system

[Electronic parking brake](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)

[Changing gear](#) (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

[Coolant](#) (Warning lamp and coolant temperature display)

Depress brake

[Electronic parking brake](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#)

[Doors](#) (Warning lamp)

[Engine oil pressure](#) (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

Overview

[Displays](#)

[Instruments](#)

[Overview of the driver side](#)

[Warning lamps and indicator lamps](#) (Overview of the driver side)

[Seat belts](#) (Warning lamp)

[Steering column lock](#) (Warning lamps and indicator lamps)

[Vehicle battery](#) (Warning lamp)

[Warning triangle](#) (Making you and your vehicle safe)

[Washing the vehicle](#) (Locking and unlocking a vehicle with)

[By hand](#) (Washing the vehicle)

[Folding in mirrors](#) (Exterior mirrors)

[High-pressure cleaner](#) (Washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner)

Sensors

[Park Assist system](#)

[Parking distance warning system](#)

Things to note

[Locking and unlocking a vehicle with](#)

[Washing the vehicle](#) (Locking and unlocking a vehicle with)

[Waxing](#) (Waxing and polishing the vehicle)

[Wear indicator](#) (Tread depth and wear indicators)

[Weights](#) (Vehicle-specific weight ratings)

[What happens to passengers who have not fastened their seat belts](#)

[Wheel bolts](#) (Wheel bolt caps)

[Caps](#) (Wheel bolt caps)

Tightening torque.

[After changing a wheel](#)

[Wheel bolts](#)

[Wheels and tyres](#) (Side view)

[Avoiding damage](#) (Handling of wheels and tyres)

[Balancing](#) (Tyre damage)

Changing a wheel

[Changing a wheel](#)

[Hub caps](#)

[In an emergency](#)

[Rims](#)

[Side view](#)

[Vehicle tools](#)

[Wheels and tyres](#) (Side view)

[Cleaning](#) (Cleaning wheels)

[Foreign bodies](#) (Tyre damage)

[Handling of wheels and tyres](#)

Identification

[Handling of wheels and tyres](#)

[Tyre lettering](#)

[Winter tyres](#) (Handling of wheels and tyres)

[Incorrect wheel alignment](#) (Tyre damage)

[New tyres](#) (New wheels and tyres)

[Old tyres](#) (Handling of wheels and tyres)

[Replacing tyres](#) (New wheels and tyres)

[Rims](#)

[Rotating wheels front to rear](#) (Handling of wheels and tyres)

[Running in](#) (New wheels and tyres)

[Serial number](#) (Tyre lettering)

Snow chains

[Snow chains](#)

[Winter tyres](#)

[Spare wheel](#)

Speed index

[Tyre lettering](#)

[Storing the removed wheel](#) (Spare wheel)

[Storing tyres](#) (Handling of wheels and tyres)

Technical data

[Handling of wheels and tyres](#)

[Tyre lettering](#)

[Winter tyres](#) (Handling of wheels and tyres)

[Tread depth](#) (Tread depth and wear indicators)

Tyre damage

[Handling of wheels and tyres](#)

[Tyre damage](#) (Handling of wheels and tyres)

[Tyre identification number \(TIN\)](#) (Tyre lettering)

Tyre lettering

[Handling of wheels and tyres](#)

[Tyre lettering](#)

[Winter tyres](#) (Handling of wheels and tyres)

Tyre load

[Tyre lettering](#)

Tyre pressure

[Spare wheel](#)

[Tyre pressure](#)

[Tyre pressure sensor](#) (Tyre pressure)

[Tyre wear](#) (Tyre damage)

[Tyres with directional tread pattern](#) (Tyre lettering)

[Valve caps](#) (Tyre pressure)

[Wear indicator](#) (Tread depth and wear indicators)

[Wheel balancing](#) (Tyre damage)

Winter tyres

[Tyre lettering](#)

[Winter tyres](#) (Tyre lettering)

[With directional tread pattern](#) (Handling of wheels and tyres)

[Window aerial](#) (Radio reception and aerials)

[Windows](#) (Overview of the driver door)

[Windscreen](#) (Main beam control)

Checking for damage

[Lane departure warning system \(Lane Assist\)](#)

[Main beam control](#)

[Road sign recognition \(Sign Assist\)](#) (Main beam control)

[Insulating glass windscreen](#)

[Repairing \(note\)](#) (Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts)

[Repairing cracks \(note\)](#) (Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts)

[Replacing \(note\)](#) (Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts)

[Windscreen heating](#) (Controls)

[Windscreen washer](#) (Front view)

[Windscreen washer fluid](#) (Indicator lamp)

Checking

[Checking and refilling the windscreen washer fluid level](#)

[Indicator lamp](#)

[Indicator lamp](#)

Refilling

[Checking and refilling the windscreen washer fluid level](#)

[Indicator lamp](#)

[Windscreen wiper blades](#) (Cleaning and changing windscreen wiper blades)

[Changing](#) (Cleaning and changing windscreen wiper blades)

[Cleaning](#) (Cleaning and changing windscreen wiper blades)

[Windscreen wipers](#) (Front view)

Folding back wiper blade

[Service position for the front windscreen wipers](#)

[Windscreen wiper and washer](#)

[Functions](#) (Windscreen wiper functions)

[Headlight cleaning system](#) (Windscreen wiper functions)

[Heated windscreen washer jets](#) (Windscreen wiper functions)

Lifting wiper blade

[Service position for the front windscreen wipers](#)

[Windscreen wiper and washer](#)

[Rain sensor](#)

Service position

[Service position for the front windscreen wipers](#)

[Windscreen wiper and washer](#)

Windscreen wiper lever

[Rain sensor](#)

[Windscreen wiper lever](#)

[Winter conditions](#) (Displays)

Auxiliary heater

[An economic driving style](#)

[Auxiliary heater \(supplementary heating system\)](#)

[Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery](#)

[Controls](#)

[Displays](#)

[Filling the tank](#)

[Frequently asked questions](#)

[Heating, ventilating, cooling](#)

[Main menu](#)

[Overview of the menu structure](#)

[Volkswagen information system](#) (Displays)

Camera's field of view

[Lane departure warning system \(Lane Assist\)](#)

[Main beam control](#)

[Road sign recognition \(Sign Assist\)](#) (Main beam control)

[Filter pre-heater](#) (Diesel fuel)

[Fuel consumption](#) (Driving in a fuel-efficient manner)

[Headlight cleaning system](#) (Windscreen wiper functions)

[Heated windscreen washer jets](#) (Windscreen wiper functions)

[Menu setting](#) (Settings menu)

[Salt deposits](#) (Rain sensor)

[Sliding/tilting roof](#)

Snow chains

[Snow chains](#)

[Winter tyres](#)

[Towing](#) (Towing a trailer)

*Tread depth* (Tread depth and wear indicators)

*Tyre pressure*

*Washer fluid reservoir* (Cleaning windows and exterior mirrors)

Winter tyres

*Tyre lettering*

*Winter tyres* (Tyre lettering)

*Winter diesel* (Diesel fuel)

*see Diesel* (Diesel fuel)

*Winter conditions* (Diesel fuel)

*Winter tyres* (Tyre lettering)

*Four-wheel drive* (Winter tyres)

*Speed limitation* (Winter tyres)

*Workshop visits* (Frequently asked questions)

## X

*XDL* (Brake assist systems)

Volkswagen AG works continuously to develop and improve its vehicles. Please understand that we must therefore reserve the right to alter any part of the vehicle and its equipment or technical specifications at any time. The data provided concerning scope of delivery, appearance, performance, dimensions, weights, fuel consumption, standards and vehicle functions are all correct at the time of going to print. Some of the equipment described might not yet be available in a particular vehicle (information can be provided by your local Volkswagen dealership), and some equipment may not be available in certain countries. No legal commitment may be inferred from the information, illustrations or descriptions in this manual.

No part of this manual may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of Volkswagen AG.

All rights under the laws of copyright are expressly reserved by Volkswagen AG. Subject to alteration and amendment.

Printed in Germany.

© 2011 Volkswagen AG



This paper was bleached without the use of chlorine.